
HESA Student Record 2012/13

Table of Contents (by entity)

Course.....	11
Awardingbody.....	12
Bilingual ITT marker.....	14
Closedcourse.....	15
Collaboratingorganisation.....	16
Courseidentifier.....	18
Coursetitle.....	20
FE general qualification aim.....	22
General qualification aim of course.....	24
Major source of funding.....	36
NHSbursaries.....	40
Reduced course return indicator.....	41
Regulatory body for health and social care students.....	42
Subject Knowledge Enhancement placement.....	44
Subject Knowledge Enhancement units.....	45
Teacher training course.....	46
Teaching qualification sought sector.....	49
Teaching qualification sought subject.....	50
Coursesubject.....	52
Subject of course.....	53
Subject of ITT Specialism indicator.....	84
Subjectpercentage.....	85
Employment status monitoring.....	87
Employment status monitoring code.....	89
Employment status monitoring type.....	90
Entryprofile.....	91
Accessprogrammes.....	93
Articulation.....	94
Dependents on entry.....	96
Domicile.....	97
Highest qualification on entry.....	109
Highest qualification on entry.....	112
Last institution attended.....	117
Maritalstatus.....	119
New entrant to higher education.....	120
Occupationcode.....	122
Parentaleducation.....	129
PGCE class of undergraduate degree.....	131
PGCE subject of undergraduate degree.....	133
Postcode.....	159

Religion.....	161
Socio-economicclassification.....	162
UCAS Application Number.....	164
Welsh Baccaulaureate Advanced Diploma.....	165
Year left last institution.....	167
Instance.....	168
Actual Progression Route.....	170
Additional support cost.....	172
Amount of tuition fees received/expected for the student.....	174
Apprenticeshippathway.....	175
Campusidentifier.....	177
Change of mode date.....	178
Completion of year of instance.....	180
Completionstatus.....	182
Courseidentifier.....	184
Department of Health funding body.....	186
Destination.....	189
Destination of outward credit mobile students.....	190
Disabled Student Allowance.....	196
Disadvantage uplift factor.....	197
Distance Learning SLN.....	198
Employerrole.....	200
End date of instance.....	202
Exchangeprogrammes.....	205
Expected length of study.....	208
FE student marker.....	210
Feeeligibility.....	212
Fee regime indicator.....	214
Foundation degree to degree bridging course.....	218
Frameworkcode.....	220
Franchisepartner.....	221
Franchised out arrangements.....	232
FTE in year A.....	234
FTE in year B.....	236
FTEmethod.....	238
Fundabilitycode.....	241
Fundingmodel.....	245
Good standing marker.....	248
Grossfee.....	250
Guided learning hours.....	253
Initiatives.....	254
Institutions own campus identifier.....	257

Institution's own instance identifier.....	258
ITTphase/scope.....	260
ITTschemes.....	263
Learningdifficulty.....	265
Learning Planned end date.....	267
Length of current year of instance.....	269
Level applicable to funding council HESES.....	270
Location of study.....	272
Major source of tuition fees.....	275
Mode of study.....	279
Netfee.....	284
NHSEmployer.....	286
Number of units completed.....	303
Number of units to achieve full qualification.....	305
Outcome.....	306
PhD submission date.....	308
Programmetype.....	310
Proportion of funding remaining.....	312
Qualified teacher status.....	314
Reason for ending instance.....	315
Reduced instance return indicator.....	317
Regulatory body reference number.....	318
Research council student.....	319
Research council student identifier.....	321
SLDD-discreteprovision.....	322
Special fee indicator.....	323
Start date of instance.....	326
Student instance FTE.....	328
Student instance identifier.....	331
Student Support Number.....	333
Subject Knowledge Enhancement institution.....	336
Suspension of active studies.....	337
Teacher Reference Number.....	339
The type of aim recorded.....	341
Type of instance year.....	343
Units of length.....	347
WithdrawalReason.....	349
Year of course.....	351
Year of student on this instance.....	353
Institution.....	355
Indicator for HEFCE funding approximations.....	356
Record type indicator.....	358

UK Provider Reference Number.....	359
Learner Employment Status.....	360
Date employment status applies to.....	363
Employer identifier.....	364
Employment status.....	366
Workplace location postcode.....	367
Learner funding and monitoring.....	368
Learner funding and monitoring code.....	373
Learner funding and monitoring type.....	376
Learning delivery funding and monitoring.....	377
Learning delivery funding and monitoring code.....	384
Learning delivery funding and monitoring type.....	388
Module.....	389
Credit transfer scheme.....	390
Credit value of module.....	391
Level of credit points.....	392
Module franchise indicator.....	394
Module FTE.....	395
Module identifier.....	397
Module taught in a Celtic language.....	399
Module title.....	400
Other institution providing teaching.....	402
Percentage not taught by this institution.....	420
Module subject.....	421
Cost centre.....	422
Subject / cost centre percentage.....	425
Subject of module.....	426
Qualifications awarded.....	452
Classification.....	453
Outcome of ITT instance.....	455
Qualification awarded.....	457
Teaching qualification gained sector.....	463
Teaching qualification gained subject.....	464
Qualifications on entry.....	466
Qualification grade.....	468
Qualification sitting.....	473
Qualification subject.....	474
Qualification type.....	493
Qualification year.....	499
RAE Data.....	501
RAE unit of assessment.....	502
Unit of assessment percentage.....	505

Student.....	506
Date of birth.....	507
Dependants in reporting year.....	508
Disability.....	509
Ethnicity.....	511
Familyname.....	514
Family name on 16th birthday.....	516
Forenames.....	518
Genderidentity.....	520
HESA unique student identifier.....	521
Institution's own identifier for student.....	524
Nationalidentity.....	526
Nationality.....	528
Religion or belief.....	539
Scottish Candidate Number.....	542
Sexidentifier.....	544
Sexualorientation.....	545
Term-timeaccommodation.....	546
Term-timepostcode.....	548
UCAS Personal Identifier.....	550
Unique Learner Number.....	551
Welsh speaker indicator.....	553
Student on module.....	554
APELindicator.....	555
ModuleCountable.....	557
Moduleidentifier.....	559
Moduleoutcome.....	561
Modulestatus.....	564
Moduleyear.....	565
Percentage of module taught in Celtic language.....	567

Table of Contents (alphabetical)

Fields that are displayed here are sorted alphabetically by field description for ease of searching. Please note that C12051.xsd defines the order that entities and fields must be included within the xml file, which is different to this display order.

Accessprogrammes.....	93
Actual Progression Route.....	170
Additional support cost.....	172
Amount of tuition fees received/expected for the student.....	174
APELindicator.....	555
Apprenticeshippathway.....	175
Articulation.....	94
Awardingbody.....	12
Bilingual ITT marker.....	14
Campusidentifier.....	177
Change of mode date.....	178
Classification.....	453
Closedcourse.....	15
Collaboratingorganisation.....	16
Completion of year of instance.....	180
Completionstatus.....	182
Costcentre.....	422
Course.....	11
Courseidentifier.....	18
Courseidentifier.....	184
Coursesubject.....	52
Coursetitle.....	20
Credit transfer scheme.....	390
Credit value of module.....	391
Date employment status applies to.....	363
Date of birth.....	507
Department of Health funding body.....	186
Dependants in reporting year.....	508
Dependents on entry.....	96
Destination.....	189
Destination of outward credit mobile students.....	190
Disability.....	509
Disabled Student Allowance.....	196
Disadvantage uplift factor.....	197
Distance Learning SLN.....	198
Domicile.....	97
Employeridentifier.....	364
Employerrole.....	200
Employmentstatus.....	366

Employment status monitoring.....	87
Employment status monitoring code.....	89
Employment status monitoring type.....	90
End date of instance.....	202
Entryprofile.....	91
Ethnicity.....	511
Exchangeprogrammes.....	205
Expected length of study.....	208
Familyname.....	514
Family name on 16th birthday.....	516
FE general qualification aim.....	22
FE student marker.....	210
Feeeligibility.....	212
Fee regime indicator.....	214
Forenames.....	518
Foundation degree to degree bridging course.....	218
Frameworkcode.....	220
Franchisepartner.....	221
Franchised out arrangements.....	232
FTE in year A.....	234
FTE in year B.....	236
FTEmethod.....	238
Fundabilitycode.....	241
Fundingmodel.....	245
Genderidentity.....	520
General qualification aim of course.....	24
Good standing marker.....	248
Grossfee.....	250
Guided learning hours.....	253
HESA unique student identifier.....	521
Highest qualification on entry.....	109
Highest qualification on entry.....	112
Indicator for HEFCE funding approximations.....	356
Initiatives.....	254
Instance.....	168
Institution.....	355
Institutions own campus identifier.....	257
Institution's own identifier for student.....	524
Institution's own instance identifier.....	258
ITTphase/scope.....	260
ITTschemes.....	263
Last institution attended.....	117

Learner Employment Status.....	360
Learner funding and monitoring.....	368
Learner funding and monitoring code.....	373
Learner funding and monitoring type.....	376
Learning delivery funding and monitoring.....	377
Learning delivery funding and monitoring code.....	384
Learning delivery funding and monitoring type.....	388
Learning difficulty.....	265
Learning Planned end date.....	267
Length of current year of instance.....	269
Level applicable to funding council HESES.....	270
Level of credit points.....	392
Location of study.....	272
Major source of funding.....	36
Major source of tuition fees.....	275
Marital status.....	119
Mode of study.....	279
Module.....	389
Module Countable.....	557
Module franchise indicator.....	394
Module FTE.....	395
Module identifier.....	397
Module identifier.....	559
Module outcome.....	561
Module status.....	564
Module subject.....	421
Module taught in a Celtic language.....	399
Module title.....	400
Module year.....	565
National identity.....	526
Nationality.....	528
Net fee.....	284
New entrant to higher education.....	120
NHS bursaries.....	40
NHS employer.....	286
Number of units completed.....	303
Number of units to achieve full qualification.....	305
Occupation code.....	122
Other institution providing teaching.....	402
Outcome.....	306
Outcome of ITT instance.....	455
Parental education.....	129

Percentage not taught by this institution.....	420
Percentage of module taught in Celtic language.....	567
PGCE class of undergraduate degree.....	131
PGCE subject of undergraduate degree.....	133
PhD submission date.....	308
Postcode.....	159
Programtype.....	310
Proportion of funding remaining.....	312
Qualificationawarded.....	457
Qualificationgrade.....	468
Qualificationsitting.....	473
Qualificationsubject.....	474
Qualificationtype.....	493
Qualificationyear.....	499
Qualificationsawarded.....	452
Qualifications on entry.....	466
Qualified teacher status.....	314
RAEData.....	501
RAE unit of assessment.....	502
Reason for ending instance.....	315
Record type indicator.....	358
Reduced course return indicator.....	41
Reduced instance return indicator.....	317
Regulatory body for health and social care students.....	42
Regulatory body reference number.....	318
Religion.....	161
Religion or belief.....	539
Research council student.....	319
Research council student identifier.....	321
Scottish Candidate Number.....	542
Sexidentifier.....	544
Sexualorientation.....	545
SLDD-discreteprovision.....	322
Socio-economicclassification.....	162
Special fee indicator.....	323
Start date of instance.....	326
Student.....	506
Student instance FTE.....	328
Student instance identifier.....	331
Student on module.....	554
Student Support Number.....	333
Subject / cost centre percentage.....	425

Subject Knowledge Enhancement institution.....	336
Subject Knowledge Enhancement placement.....	44
Subject Knowledge Enhancement units.....	45
Subject of course.....	53
Subject of ITT Specialism indicator.....	84
Subject of module.....	426
Subjectpercentage.....	85
Suspension of active studies.....	337
Teacher Reference Number.....	339
Teacher training course.....	46
Teaching qualification gained sector.....	463
Teaching qualification gained subject.....	464
Teaching qualification sought sector.....	49
Teaching qualification sought subject.....	50
Term-timeaccommodation.....	546
Term-timepostcode.....	548
The type of aim recorded.....	341
Type of instance year.....	343
UCAS Application Number.....	164
UCAS Personal Identifier.....	550
UK Provider Reference Number.....	359
Unique Learner Number.....	551
Unit of assessment percentage.....	505
Units of length.....	347
Welsh Baccalaureate Advanced Diploma.....	165
Welsh speaker indicator.....	553
WithdrawalReason.....	349
Workplace location postcode.....	367
Year left last institution.....	167
Year of course.....	351
Year of student on this instance.....	353

Course

Type	entity
Short Name	Course
Description	A combination of subject and qualification that defines what a student is aiming for.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Compulsory for all returns
Notes	<p>Every Instance must be linked to one (and only one) course. Course records can exist without links to any Instances if it is easier for an institution to return all courses rather than just those that are active in the reporting year.</p> <p>The Course.COURSEID field is the primary key for the course entity. It also exists on the Instance as a foreign key.</p> <p>Where provision within the institution allows multiple possible qualification outcomes, institutions must return separate course records for each. Even where groups of students aiming for different qualification outcomes are taught in the same classes, each group must be returned on a different course with a different course aim.</p> <p>Further detailed notes are available in the supporting documents</p>
Reason Required	This entity exists to hold fields that describe courses without having to repeat the fields on individual instances.
Part Of	Institution
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	unbounded
Has Parts	Course identifier (COURSEID) Reduced course return indicator (REDUCEDC) General qualification aim of course (COURSEAIM) Course title (CTITLE) Teacher training course (TTCID) Bilingual ITT marker (BITTM) Teaching qualification sought sector (TQSSEC) Teaching qualification sought subject (TQSSUB) Collaborating organisation (COLLORG) Closed course (CLSDCRS) FE general qualification aim (FEQAIMC) Major source of funding (MSFUND) Regulatory body for health and social care students (REGBODY) NHS bursaries (NHSBURSARY) Subject Knowledge Enhancement units (SKEUNITS) Subject Knowledge Enhancement placement (SKEOS) Awarding body (AWARDBOD) Course subject
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Awarding body

Type	field												
Short Name	AWARDBOD												
Description	This field will collect the qualification awarding body of the qualification awarded in QualificationsAwarded.QUAL in the form of a UK Provider Reference Number (UKPRN) from the UK Register of Learning Providers or a generic code.												
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales												
Coverage	All UK institutions where Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L, M, H, I, J or C, excluding those ending in 99, and Course.REDUCEDC is not 09.												
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="width: 10%;"></td> <td>Edexcel</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td></td> <td>SQA</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> <td></td> <td>Other UK based awarding body</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">4</td> <td></td> <td>Other non-UK based awarding body</td> </tr> </table>	1		Edexcel	2		SQA	3		Other UK based awarding body	4		Other non-UK based awarding body
1		Edexcel											
2		SQA											
3		Other UK based awarding body											
4		Other non-UK based awarding body											
Notes	<p>In the majority of cases it is expected that this value will be the same UKPRN as the reporting institution. Where it is not possible to identify a UKPRN, a generic code from the valid entry list below should be used.</p> <p>This field can be repeated multiple times in order to enable institutions to report courses where an award is made jointly by several bodies. For example if an award is made jointly by the reporting institution and two other bodies, Course.AWARDBOD should occur three times within the course record. Although this field can occur more than once, institutions should only return the number to reflect the position with regard to the course.</p> <p>This field is not intended to record a body that accredits a course awarded by the institution e.g. ITT courses that lead to QTS awarded by the NCTL or engineering courses that lead to Chartered Engineer status.</p> <p>This field is collecting different data to that collected for Accreditation.ACCBODYID in the KIS record about accreditation.</p>												
Business rules	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="width: 10%; text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>Course.AWARDBOD must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L, M, H, I, J or C and does not end with 99) and Course.REDUCEDC = 00, 01, 03 or 04.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>Where there is more than one occurrence of Course.AWARDBOD each value must be unique.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>Where Course.AWARDBOD = 1, Course.COURSEAIM must be coded J30 or C30.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">4</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>Where Course.AWARDBOD = 2, Course.COURSEAIM must be coded J30 or C30.</td> </tr> </table>	1	Error	Course.AWARDBOD must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L, M, H, I, J or C and does not end with 99) and Course.REDUCEDC = 00, 01, 03 or 04.	2	Error	Where there is more than one occurrence of Course.AWARDBOD each value must be unique.	3	Error	Where Course.AWARDBOD = 1, Course.COURSEAIM must be coded J30 or C30.	4	Error	Where Course.AWARDBOD = 2, Course.COURSEAIM must be coded J30 or C30.
1	Error	Course.AWARDBOD must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L, M, H, I, J or C and does not end with 99) and Course.REDUCEDC = 00, 01, 03 or 04.											
2	Error	Where there is more than one occurrence of Course.AWARDBOD each value must be unique.											
3	Error	Where Course.AWARDBOD = 1, Course.COURSEAIM must be coded J30 or C30.											
4	Error	Where Course.AWARDBOD = 2, Course.COURSEAIM must be coded J30 or C30.											
Reason Required	This field is required due to the changing nature of the higher education sector and an increasing interest in the area of joint and collaborative provision.												
Part Of	Course												
Field Length	8												
Minimum Occurrences	0												
Maximum Occurrences	8												

Schema Components	Element: AWARDBOD Data type: AWARDBODType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.4
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 added to enforce coverage of the field. Business rule 2 added to ensure that awarding bodies are not duplicated. Business rules 3 and 4 added to validate that Edexcel and SQA can only be returned as the awarding bodies for eligible course aims (J30 and C30).

Bilingual ITT marker

Type	field
Short Name	BITTM
Description	This field is a one digit field giving details about whether the ITT course is bilingual.
Applicable to	Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All courses at institutions in Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 2 and Course.REDUCEDC = 00, 01 or 04
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>0 Course does not lead to a formal certificate of bilingual education nor is it designed to enable students to teach bilingually</p> <p>1 Course does not lead to a formal certificate in bilingual education but is designed to enable students to teach bilingually</p> <p>2 Course leads to a formal certificate of bilingual education</p>
Notes	<p>In this context:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bilingual means English/Welsh for institutions in Wales. • Bilingual means English/Gaedhlig for institutions in Scotland. • Bilingual means English/Irish for institutions in Northern Ireland. <p>For further guidance on the completion of this field please refer to HEFCW/SEETLLD/DEL.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Course.BITTM must exist for institutions in Wales, Northern Ireland or Scotland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 2 and Course.REDUCEDC = 00, 01 or 04.</p> <p>2 Error Course.BITTM must not exist for institutions in Wales, Northern Ireland or Scotland where Course.TTCID does not = 1 or 2 .</p> <p>3 Error Course.BITTM must not exist for institutions in England.</p> <p>4 Error For institutions in Wales Course.BITTM must not be coded 0 where Course.TTCID = 1 and any associated CourseSubject.SBJCA = Q560.</p>
Reason Required	To indicate whether ITT is bilingual.
Part Of	Course
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: BITTM Data type: BITTMCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Closed course

Type	field
Short Name	CLSDCRS
Description	This field identifies courses that are restricted to certain groups of people and are not available to any suitably qualified candidate.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All courses at institutions in England where Course.REDUCEDC = 00
Valid Entries and Labels	0 Not a closed course 1 Closed course
Notes	<p>Closed courses are those courses that are not open to any suitably qualified candidate, for example where a course is only available to employees of particular companies that course is closed.</p> <p>A course is defined as closed where the syllabus (and/or examinations) is specifically designed for a certain group of people and the course is not also available to other suitably qualified candidates. A course may be designed for a particular company (with examples and/or timings altered to suit the company). However if the same course is also run for other suitably qualified candidates, not employed by the company, then the course is not closed and should be coded 0 'Not a closed course'.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Course.CLSDCRS must exist for institutions in England where Course.REDUCEDC = 00.</p> <p>2 Error Course.CLSDCRS must not exist for institutions not in England.</p>
Reason Required	To allow monitoring of provision that is provided for specific groups
Part Of	Course
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: CLSDCRS Data type: CLSDCRSCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Collaborating organisation

Type	field																						
Short Name	COLLORG																						
Description	This field identifies a collaborating organisation providing significant input to a course.																						
Applicable to	England																						
Coverage	All courses at institutions in England where Course.REDUCEDC = 00 except where Course.COURSEAIM = D00, D01, D90, L00, L80, L90, L91																						
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="width: 10%;">0000</td><td>No collaborating organisation</td></tr> <tr><td>1000</td><td>Large private company</td></tr> <tr><td>2000</td><td>Small or medium enterprise (SME)</td></tr> <tr><td>3000</td><td>Overseas education provider</td></tr> <tr><td>4000</td><td>Other UK education provider - private</td></tr> <tr><td>5000</td><td>Other UK education provider - public sector</td></tr> <tr><td>6000</td><td>NHS</td></tr> <tr><td>7000</td><td>Other public sector organisation</td></tr> <tr><td>8000</td><td>Charity</td></tr> <tr><td>9000</td><td>Other</td></tr> <tr><td>9900</td><td>Multiple collaborators of different types</td></tr> </table>	0000	No collaborating organisation	1000	Large private company	2000	Small or medium enterprise (SME)	3000	Overseas education provider	4000	Other UK education provider - private	5000	Other UK education provider - public sector	6000	NHS	7000	Other public sector organisation	8000	Charity	9000	Other	9900	Multiple collaborators of different types
0000	No collaborating organisation																						
1000	Large private company																						
2000	Small or medium enterprise (SME)																						
3000	Overseas education provider																						
4000	Other UK education provider - private																						
5000	Other UK education provider - public sector																						
6000	NHS																						
7000	Other public sector organisation																						
8000	Charity																						
9000	Other																						
9900	Multiple collaborators of different types																						
Notes	<p>HEFCE will be developing new funding routes for collaborative provision and consequently needs information about the types of organisations institutions collaborate with. In future it may be necessary to expand this coding frame to collect detailed information about individual named organisations.</p> <p>Collaboration with external organisations should only be included where the external organisation has made a significant input to the course that affects the course for all, or nearly all, students on the course. This could include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Input to course content/curriculum or assessment • Contribution to the startup or ongoing costs of the course, this may include sponsoring a number of places on the course but would exclude paying the fees for individual students on the course • Provision of work based or project work opportunities • A significant and ongoing contribution of staff time and/or resources to support course delivery <p>Collaboration does not cover the following activities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Franchised provision • Input to course and curriculum design by professional bodies • Language years abroad and exchange programmes. 																						
Business rules	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%;">1</td> <td style="width: 15%;">Error</td> <td>Course.COLLORG must exist for institutions in England where Course.REDUCEDC = 00 except where Course.COURSEAIM = D00, D01, D90, L00, L80, L90, L91.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Course.COLLORG must not exist for institutions not in England.</td> </tr> </table>	1	Error	Course.COLLORG must exist for institutions in England where Course.REDUCEDC = 00 except where Course.COURSEAIM = D00, D01, D90, L00, L80, L90, L91.	2	Error	Course.COLLORG must not exist for institutions not in England.																
1	Error	Course.COLLORG must exist for institutions in England where Course.REDUCEDC = 00 except where Course.COURSEAIM = D00, D01, D90, L00, L80, L90, L91.																					
2	Error	Course.COLLORG must not exist for institutions not in England.																					
Reason Required	To identify partner organisations in collaborative provision.																						
Part Of	Course																						
Field Length	4																						
Minimum Occurrences	0																						

Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: COLLORG Data type: COLLORGCCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Course identifier

Type	field
Short Name	COURSEID
Description	This field records the institution's own unique internal identifier for the course. The Course identifier is the primary key for the Course entity and exists as a foreign key on Instance.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All courses
Notes	<p>Course identifiers will be allocated by the institution and should be unique for each course.</p> <p>The term 'course' in this context relates to the combination of subject and qualification that defines what a student is aiming for and which are described in fields Course.COURSEAIM and CourseSubject.SBJCA.</p> <p>The Course identifier links the course entity and the instance entity for the reporting period . There must be an entry in the course entity with a matching identifier in the instance entity to provide this link, and so give details about the student's study in the current year. Where a student changes course within an instance by changing either course aim (at the same level) or subject, the Course.COURSEID should be updated to reflect the course that is applicable at the end of the reporting period.</p> <p>Where the student continues on the same course, the same COURSEID should be kept for all years of the course. It is intended that in the future for some onward uses data from the student record should be aggregated to allow publication at a Course level. For the UNISTATS (TQI) site, for example, information about entrants, continuation, outcomes and destinations will be published together. If the COURSEID is not consistent throughout the course it will not be possible to compile a complete set of statistics as relating to a single course. Course.CTITLE will not allow for this aggregation: it is a text field and not suitable for the necessary validation. HESA has introduced a HIN validation warning when there is a HIN link but COURSEID changes.</p> <p>Year-on-year linking will continue by the HIN mechanism.</p> <p>Valid characters</p> <p>The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+IE00 to U+IEFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p>

	<p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>) and to ensure that their files are actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.</p>
Reason Required	To facilitate linkage with the Instance entity.
Part Of	Course Instance
Field Length	30
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: COURSEID Data type: COURSEIDType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Course title

Type	field
Short Name	CTITLE
Description	This field will be determined by the institution and in this context relates to the complete programme of study leading to the qualification aim referred to in fields Course.COURSEAIM and CourseSubject.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All courses
Notes	<p>Although a compulsory field, this field will not be subject to specific checks regarding its validity. The only validation checks will be that the field contains at least one character.</p> <p>Feedback from users of the TQI site has indicated that they would want to see information at the course level. With the introduction of the course entity it is likely that the funding councils will want to explore this option further. Should users of the HESA data choose to publish course level information it is likely that the course title will form a critical part of this. Therefore institutions need to ensure that the CTITLE field contains course titles that would be meaningful to a wide range of stakeholders including potential students</p> <p>It is intended that this field can be used by the institution as a cross-check to fields Course.COURSEAIM and CourseSubject.</p> <p>SKEPlus courses should be indicated through Course.CTITLE with the inclusion of 'SKEPLUS' at the beginning of the course title. This will assist the NCTL in identifying SKEPlus courses.</p> <p>Valid characters</p> <p>The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+1E00 to U+1EFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p> <p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>) and to ensure that their files are actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.</p>
Reason Required	To facilitate HESA cross-checking with institutions and to identify courses in onward analyses.
Part Of	Course
Field Length	255
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: CTITLE Data type: TitleType
Related Fields	COURSEAIM CourseSubject
Owner	Information Standards Board - Aligned Data Definitions
Version	1.0

FE general qualification aim

Type	field
Short Name	FEQAIMC
Description	This field describes the learning aim as listed on the Learning Aim Reference Application (LARA).
Applicable to	England Wales
Coverage	All courses where for any linked instance Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4
Notes	<p>Where there are any HE level students on an instance linked to this course and funded by SFA/EFA or Welsh Government DfES, (code 3 'The student is an SFA/EFA/Welsh Government DfES funded learner studying at HE level' in Instance.FESTUMK) then Course.COURSEAIM, Course.FEQAIMC, and Course subject must all be completed.</p> <p>For institutions in England, '66666666' is no longer a valid entry in this field.</p> <p>Welsh institutions</p> <p>For internally validated courses not funded by the Welsh Government DfES, institutions can use the ILR non-specific code of '66666666' to identify these courses in this field.</p> <p>If (after a discussion with Welsh Government DfES) a generic code or '66666666' is used within this field then Welsh Government DfES requires institutions to also complete Course subject in order to give detail of the subject area of the qualification.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Course.FEQAIMC must exist for institutions in England or Wales where any Instance.FESTUMK = 1,3 or 4.</p> <p>4 Error Course.FEQAIMC must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>5 Warning Course.FEQAIMC should not be coded '66666666' where Course.MSFUND = 06.</p> <p>6 Error Course.FEQAIMC must not be coded '66666666' for institutions in England.</p>
Reason Required	To allow monitoring of FE students by qualification aim.
Part Of	Course
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FEQAIMC Data type: LearningAimReferenceType
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	SFA/EFA/WG-DfES
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30

Change management notes

Business rule 5 amended as MSFUND code 05 is no longer valid. Business rule 6 added to prevent learning aim 66666666 being returned by institutions in England.

General qualification aim of course

Type	field
Short Name	COURSEAIM
Description	This field describes the general qualification aim of the course and is intended to record the qualification that will be attained as a result of successful completion of studies.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All courses
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>D00 Doctorate degree that meets the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>D01 New Route PhD that meets the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>D90 Advanced supervised research at level D for institutional credit</p> <p>E00 Doctorate degree that does not meet the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>E40 National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) at level E</p> <p>E43 Highly specialist diploma from a professional body</p> <p>E90 Advanced taught study at level E for institutional credit</p> <p>L00 Masters degree that meets the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>L80 Other postgraduate qualification at level L that meets the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>L90 Advanced supervised research at level L for institutional credit</p> <p>L91 Visiting research students at levels D or L, with formal or informal credit</p> <p>L99 Advanced supervised research at levels D or L with an unspecified qualification aim</p> <p>M00 Masters degree obtained typically by a combination of coursework and thesis/dissertation, that does not meet the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>M01 Taught masters degree designed specifically as a training in research methods and intended as a preparation for advanced supervised research</p> <p>M02 Masters in Teaching and Learning</p> <p>M10 Post-experience taught masters degree</p> <p>M11 Master of Business Administration (MBA)</p> <p>M16 Pre-registration masters degree leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body</p> <p>M22 Integrated undergraduate/postgraduate taught masters degree on the enhanced/extended pattern</p> <p>M26 Integrated undergraduate/postgraduate taught masters degree on the enhanced/extended pattern leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body</p> <p>M40 Fellowship at level M</p> <p>M41 Diploma at level M</p> <p>M42 Advanced professional certificate at level M</p> <p>M43 National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) at level M</p> <p>M44 Certificate at level M</p> <p>M45 Scottish Vocational Qualification (SVQ) 5</p> <p>M50 Postgraduate bachelors degree at level M obtained typically by a combination of coursework and thesis/dissertation, that does not meet the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>M70 Professional taught qualification at level M other than a masters degree</p> <p>M71 Postgraduate Certificate in Education or Professional Graduate Diploma in Education</p> <p>M72 Post-registration education qualification at level M other than a masters degree for serving schoolteachers</p> <p>M76 Post-registration health and social care qualification at level M</p> <p>M78 Taught qualification at level M (where qualification at level H and/or level M</p>

	is a pre-requisite for course entry) leading towards registration with the Architects Registration Board (Part 3 qualification)
M79	Level 7 Diploma in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector
M80	Other taught qualification at level M
M86	Taught qualification at level M leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body
M88	Taught qualification at level M (where a qualification at level H is a pre-requisite for course entry) leading towards registration with the Architects Registration Board (Part 2 qualification)
M90	Taught work at level M for institutional credit
M91	Visiting taught students at levels E or M, with formal or informal credit
M99	Taught work at levels E or M with an unspecified qualification aim
H00	First degree with honours
H11	First degree with honours leading to Qualified Teacher Status (QTS)/registration with a General Teaching Council (GTC)
H16	Pre-registration first degree with honours leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body
H18	First degree with honours leading towards registration with the Architects Registration Board (Part 1 qualification)
H22	First degree with honours on the enhanced/extended pattern but at level H
H23	First degree with honours and diploma
H24	First degree with honours on the intercalated pattern
H41	Diploma at level H
H42	Certificate at level H
H43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) at level H
H50	Postgraduate bachelors degree at level H
H60	Graduate diploma/certificate at level H
H61	Graduate diploma/certificate at level H but where a previous qualification at level H is a pre-requisite for course entry
H62	Pre-registration graduate diploma/certificate leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body
H70	Professional qualification at level H other than a first degree with honours
H71	Professional Graduate Certificate in Education
H72	Professional qualification at level H for serving schoolteachers other than a first degree with honours
H76	Post-registration health and social care qualification at level H other than a first degree with honours
H78	Other qualification at level H (where other qualifications at level H are a pre-requisite for course entry) leading towards registration with the Architects Registration Board (Part 3 qualification)
H79	Level 6 Diploma in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector
H80	Other qualification at level H
H81	Other qualification at level H but where a previous qualification at level H is a pre-requisite for course entry
H88	Qualification at level H (where another qualification at level H is a pre-requisite for course entry) leading towards registration with the Architects Registration Board (Part 2 qualification)
H90	Credits at level H
H91	Visiting students at level H, with formal or informal credit
H99	Taught work at level H with an unspecified qualification aim
I00	Ordinary (non-honours) first degree
I11	Ordinary (non-honours) first degree leading to Qualified Teacher Status (QTS)/registration with a General Teaching Council (GTC)
I16	Pre-registration ordinary (non-honours) first degree leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body
I60	Graduate diploma/certificate at level I
I61	Graduate diploma/certificate at level I but where a previous qualification at level I or H is a pre-requisite for course entry
I70	Professional qualification at level I other than an ordinary (non-honours) first degree

I71	Qualified Teacher Status (QTS)/registration with a General Teaching Council (GTC) only
I72	Professional qualification at level I for serving schoolteachers
I74	Teaching certificate (trained through the medium of Welsh)
I76	Post-registration health and social care qualification at level I other than an ordinary (non-honours) first degree
I79	Level 5 Diploma in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector
I80	Other qualification at level I
I81	Other qualification at level I but where a previous qualification at level I or H is a pre-requisite for course entry
I90	Credits at level I
I91	Visiting students at level I, with formal or informal credit
I99	Taught work at level I with an unspecified qualification aim
J10	Foundation degree
J16	Foundation degree which on completion meets entry requirement for pre-registration health and social care qualification
J20	Diploma of Higher Education (DipHE)
J26	Diploma of Higher Education (DipHE) leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body
J30	Higher National Diploma (HND)
J41	Diploma at level J
J42	Certificate at level J
J43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) at level J
J45	Scottish Vocational Qualification (SVQ) 4
J76	Post-registration health and social care qualification at level J
J80	Other qualification at level J
J90	Credits at level J
J99	Taught work at level J with an unspecified qualification aim
C20	Certificate of Higher Education (CertHE)
C30	Higher National Certificate (HNC)
C41	Diploma at level C
C42	Certificate at level C
C43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) at level C
C77	Level 4 Preparing to Teach in the Lifelong Learning Sector
C78	Level 4 Certificate in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector
C80	Other qualification at level C
C90	Credits at level C
C99	Taught work at level C with an unspecified qualification aim
P41	Diploma at level P
P42	Certificate at level P
P43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) 3
P45	Scottish Vocational Qualification (SVQ) 3
P50	A/AS level
P55	Advanced Higher (Scotland)
P56	Higher (Scotland)
P70	Professional qualification at level 3
P77	Level 3 Preparing to Teach in the Lifelong Learning Sector
P78	Level 3 Certificate in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector
P80	Other qualification at level 3
P85	Diploma in Foundation Studies (Art and Design) at level 3
P90	Credits at level 3
Q41	Diploma at level Q
Q42	Certificate at level Q
Q43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) 2
Q45	Scottish Vocational Qualification (SVQ) 2
Q50	GCSE at grade A*-C
Q56	Intermediate 2 (Scotland)
Q57	Standard Grade Credit (Scotland)
Q70	Professional qualification at level 2
Q80	Other qualification at level 2
Q90	Credits at level 2
R42	Certificate at level R
R43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) 1

	<p>R45 Scottish Vocational Qualification (SVQ) 1 R50 GCSE at grade D-G R56 Intermediate 1 (Scotland) R57 Standard Grade General (Scotland) R70 Professional qualification at level 1 R80 Other qualification at level 1 R90 Credits at level 1 S42 National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) Entry level certificate S57 Standard Grade Foundation (Scotland) S80 Other qualification at further education (FE) access level S90 Credits at further education (FE) access level X00 Higher education (HE) access course, Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) recognised X01 Higher education (HE) access course, not Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) recognised X41 Welsh for Adults Entry level X42 Welsh for Adults level 1 X43 Welsh for Adults level 2 X44 Welsh for Adults level 3 X45 Welsh for Adults level 4 X46 Welsh for Adults specialist/arbennig X99 No formal qualification aim, below HE level</p>																		
Notes	<p>Course aim describes the qualification that will be attained as a result of successful completion of the course.</p> <p>Overall framework and alignment with existing frameworks.</p> <p>The most relevant are the UK frameworks. For England, Wales and NI the HE qualifications framework identifies five levels (C/4, I/5, H/6, M/7, D/8) and these are aligned with the NVQ levels 4 to 8. The Scottish Credit and Qualifications Framework (SCQF), which is not HE-specific, is aligned with this except that the lower boundary of Scottish Level 7 is apparently slightly lower than the lower boundary of Level C / NVQ 4 (this is the lower cutoff for what may be regarded as HE in England and Wales, but, significantly, Scottish Advanced Highers fall into Level 7), and Level I /NVQ 5 is split into two levels in Scotland, Level 8 and 9.</p> <p>The ISCED framework is used for international reporting, and four levels within it are relevant, Levels 4, 5B, 5A and 6. The Bologna framework for European HE harmonisation is still in the process of development, but the current state may be summarised as recognising four levels: short-cycle, first-cycle, second-cycle, and third cycle.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>HESA</th> <th>SCQF</th> <th>E/W/NI HE †</th> <th></th> <th>NVQ HE</th> <th>ISCED</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>D</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Research</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>E</td> <td>12- Doctorates</td> <td>D - Doctoral degree/FHEQ Level 8</td> <td>Taught</td> <td>8 - Highly specialist Diploma from a professional body</td> <td>5A</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	HESA	SCQF	E/W/NI HE †		NVQ HE	ISCED	D			Research	N/A	6	E	12- Doctorates	D - Doctoral degree/FHEQ Level 8	Taught	8 - Highly specialist Diploma from a professional body	5A
HESA	SCQF	E/W/NI HE †		NVQ HE	ISCED														
D			Research	N/A	6														
E	12- Doctorates	D - Doctoral degree/FHEQ Level 8	Taught	8 - Highly specialist Diploma from a professional body	5A														

L			Research	N/A	6
M	11 - Masters, SVQ 5	M - Masters degree, postgraduate diplomas, postgraduate certificates/FHEQ Level 7	Taught	7 - NVQ 5, Level 7 Diploma, Level 7 Fellowship, Level 7 Advanced professional Certificate	5A
H	10 - Honours degree, Graduate Diploma / Certificate	H- Bachelors degrees with honours, Graduate certificates and diplomas/FHEQ Level 6		6 - Level 6 Certificate, Level 6 Diploma	6A
I	9 - Ordinary degree, Graduate Diploma / Certificate			5 - NVQ 4, Level 5 Certificate, Level 5 Diploma, Higher National Diploma	5B
J	8 Higher National Diploma, Diploma in Higher Education, SVQ 4	I - Foundation degrees, Diplomas of higher education and other higher diplomas/FHEQ Level 5			
C	7 - Higher National Certificate, Certificate of Higher Education	C - Certificates of Higher Education/FHEQ Level 4		4 - Level 4 Certificate, Level 4 Diploma	5B/4
P	Advanced Higher 6 - Higher, SVQ 3	-		3 - NVQ 3, Level 3 Certificate, Level 3 Diploma	
Q	5 - Intermediate 2, Credit Standard Grade, SVQ 2	-		2 - NVQ 2, Level 2 Certificate, Level 2 Diploma	
R	4 - Intermediate 1, Credit Standard Grade, SVQ 1	-		1 - NVQ 1, Level 1 Certificate, Level 1 Diploma	
S	1,2,3 Access Levels	-		Entry Level	-
X	-	-		-	-
† Note that the QAA level descriptors in the Framework for Higher Education Qualifications in England, Wales and Northern Ireland (FHEQ) have changed in the 2008 version compared with the 2001 version. Full details are available from the QAA					

publication The framework for higher education qualifications in England, Wales and Northern Ireland published August 2009. Although the 2008 FHEQ qualification descriptor for level 6 states that this can be used as a reference for ordinary Bachelors degrees, for HESA purposes first degrees with honours should be coded at level H, and first degrees without honours should be coded at level I.

There is a summary of qualification levels in the UK and Ireland available from the QAA publication Qualifications can cross boundaries - a rough guide to comparing qualifications in the UK and Ireland.

This coding frame is designed to support the alignment of course qualifications with the frameworks, with the first letter indicating the level. Codes of similar type at different levels have the same two-digit suffix.

Please note that although the first letter of the code identifies a framework level, institutions in England will identify the funding level appropriate to a student following a course using Instance.FUNDLEV. This may be different to the level identified in this coding frame.

The codes for visiting students can be used as alternatives to institutional credit codes, particularly for informal credit. Students are specifically identified as exchange students in Instance.EXCHANGE.

Additional guidance on specific codes:

D01 New Route PhD

The New Route PhD is an integrated programme of postgraduate training which combines research with a structured programme of advanced training in discipline specific and generic skills.

L99 Advanced supervised research at Levels D or L with an unspecified qualification aim.

Use this code for beginning research students not yet specifically registered for either a Masters or Doctorate degree.

M01 Taught Masters degree designed specifically as a training in research methods and intended as a preparation for advanced supervised research.

Use this code only for MRes degrees and similar.

M02 Masters in Teaching and Learning

The Masters in Teaching and Learning (MTL) is a new professional qualification for teachers

M10 Post-experience taught Masters degree

(MEd, for example). 'Post-experience' implies a period of at least two years' relevant work experience as a pre-requisite for entry to the programme leading to the qualification. Do not use this category simply because a qualification is being taken

post-experience.

M11 Master of Business Administration.

Use this code rather than M10 for post-experience MBA.

M22 Integrated undergraduate/postgraduate taught Masters degree on the enhanced/extended pattern.

Use this code for MEng and similar. Such masters degrees comprise an integrated programme of study spanning several years. While the final outcomes of the qualifications meet the expectations for level M in full, these integrated qualifications have an additional period of study at lower levels (typically level H). Use code M22 only where code M26 is not applicable.

M26 Integrated undergraduate/postgraduate taught Masters degree on the enhanced/extended pattern leading towards eligibility to practice with a Health or Social Care or Veterinary statutory regulatory body

This code can be used for degrees in medicine, dentistry and veterinary science comprising an integrated programme of study and professional practice.

M70 Professional taught qualification at Level M other than a Masters degree.

Use M71, M72, M76, M78 in preference if applicable.

M71 Postgraduate Certificate in Education or Professional Graduate Diploma in Education.

See H71 for Professional Graduate Certificate in Education. See Statement on the PGCE Qualification

M76 Post-registration health and social care qualification at level M.

This code includes Continuing Professional Development (CPD).

H00 First degree with honours.

This could be MA in Scotland.

H11 First degree with honours leading to QTS/registration with a GTC.

This code should only be used for BEd if it is at level H.

H61 Graduate Diploma/Certificate at Level H.

Use this code where a previous qualification at Level H is a pre-requisite for course entry; use H50 in preference if applicable.

H70 Professional qualification at Level H other than a first degree with honours.

Use H71, H72, H76, H88 in preference if applicable.

H71 Professional Graduate Certificate in Education.

See code M71 for Postgraduate Certificate in Education. See Statement on the PGCE Qualification

H76 Post-registration health and social care qualification at Level H other than a first degree with honours.

This code includes Continuing Professional Development (CPD).

H81 Other qualification at Level H but where a previous qualification at Level H is a pre-requisite for course entry.

Use H50, H71, H72, H76 in preference if applicable.

I11 Ordinary (non-honours) first degree leading to QTS/registration with a GTC.

Code BEd here unless it is at level H.

I70 Professional qualification at Level I other than an ordinary (non-honours) first degree.

Use I76 in preference if applicable.

I76 Post-registration health and social care qualification at Level I other than an ordinary (non-honours) first degree.

This code includes Continuing Professional Development (CPD).

J76 Post-registration health and social care qualification at level J.

This code includes Continuing Professional Development (CPD).

Health and Social Care courses

Courses which lead to a qualification to teach nursing, midwifery or health visiting courses should be coded 2 in Course.TTCID .

Post-Registration health and social care codes ('_76') should be returned for post-registration health and social care students taking continuing professional updating modules. Post-registration health and social care students studying for other qualifications should be coded to the appropriate code for that qualification. For example, a post-registration health and social care student studying for a first degree should be coded 'H00' for First degree, rather than H76. Validation rules have been relaxed to allow regulatory body information to be returned for these post-registration

students.

H16 'First degree leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a Health or Social Care or Veterinary statutory regulatory body' will be used in combination with the subject code or codes to identify those degrees which lead to eligibility to register to practice with a Health or Social Care or Veterinary statutory regulatory body.

Social work courses

HESA has been advised by the Department of Health that courses leading to eligibility to register to practice with a social care statutory regulatory body will not necessarily be coded with a '_16' code in this field. Institutions offering courses leading to eligibility to register to practice with a social care statutory regulatory body should return regulatory body information in Course.REGBODY and Instance.DHREGREF irrespective of the code used in this field.

Architecture courses

Codes are specifically set up for courses leading to registration with the Architects Registration Board. Use code H18 for Part 1 (even if your institutional assessment of the course is that it is at another level, such as level I). For parts 2 and 3, use the appropriate code to indicate the level of course as assessed by the institution (H88 or M88 for part 2, H78 or M78 for part 3).

Non-accredited and non-approved qualifications

QCA is nearing completion of its process of accrediting external awarding bodies (i.e. awarding bodies other than HEIs). It is important that qualifications made by external awarding bodies are distinguished between those with and those without QCA recognition.

Once completed, the HEFCE will only fund courses leading to qualifications made by external awarding bodies if they have received the appropriate QCA accreditation, or if the continued funding has been approved as part of transition arrangements. Codes for professional qualifications ('_70') should only be used for qualifications that have been accredited by QCA. Students who are on courses that are not QCA accredited should be indicated by code '99' in Instance.FUNDLEV.

For Welsh institutions to be eligible for funding, it is expected that qualifications made by external awarding bodies will be included (or awaiting inclusion) in the QCA framework.

Access courses

A recognised Access to HE course is one validated by an Authorised Validating Agency that has been licensed for the purpose by the Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA), under the terms of the QAA Recognition Scheme for Access to Higher Education in England, Wales and Northern Ireland. Relevant Access courses are recorded on the Access to HE Courses Database. QAA does not licence any AVAs in Scotland.

Welsh for Adults

There is no generic code for Welsh for Adults courses, these are coded at five levels

plus a separate code for Specialist/Arbennig courses. The definition of a Specialist/Arbennig course is: a taster, revision or residential course; a Saturday school; a coffee club, and any other short course that is organised in addition to the main programme of Welsh for Adults courses.

Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE)

Students on SKE schemes must be coded H99, and these instances will be excluded from the HESA standard populations.

Research-based higher degrees

A research-based higher degree is a postgraduate programme comprising a research component (including a requirement to produce original work) that is larger than any accompanying taught component when measured by student effort. The arrangements for assuring and maintaining the academic standards and enhancing the quality of these programmes should be fully compliant with chapter B11 (Research degrees) of the Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education's 'UK Quality Code for Higher Education'.

Some specialist doctoral degrees, such as Doctor of Education (EdD) and Doctor of Clinical Psychology (DClinPsychol), may include a research component but also include significant taught components and supervised practice. These degrees do not generally require the student to produce the same amount of original research as a PhD. Students registered for a specialist doctoral degree should only be included as research students if they satisfy the other criteria.

Only those courses that meet this definition should use codes D00, D01, D90, L00, L80, L90, L99.

Other guidance

The General qualification aim of course should be consistent with funding council HESES/Early Statistics.

Higher bachelors degrees at undergraduate level should be coded H50.

M22 includes Finnieston degrees and other 'undergraduate masters' degrees, e.g. MEng. Such courses should be coded M22 throughout.

An intercalated first degree (H24) is where students on a first degree, usually in medicine, dentistry or veterinary medicine, interrupt their studies to complete a one-year course of advanced studies in a related topic, usually to Honours standard. On completion of the intercalated year, the student resumes studies on their original course.

J10 and J16, Foundation Degrees, are intended to cover those programmes which HEIs are running as Foundation Degrees which are consistent with the 'Statement of Design Principles' for Foundation Degrees issued by UUK and SCOP.

Postgraduate professional qualifications are those which, regardless of their level, normally require the possession of a first degree for admission. Undergraduate professional diplomas and certificates should be coded to the appropriate '_70' code.

	<p>Where a student is following a programme of study leading potentially to two or more qualifications concurrently, and that combination is not specified under valid entries, please return the qualification code that is highest in level.</p> <p>For HE level students funded by the SFC/EFA or WG-DfES (coded 3 in Instance.FESTUMK) both this field and Course.FEQAIMC must be completed in full.</p> <p>For FE level students in England and Wales (codes 1 or 4 in Instance.FESTUMK) both this field and Course.FEQAIMC must be completed in full.</p> <p>However, codes P80, Q80 or R80 for 'Other qualification below HE level' may be returned as a default in this field provided a valid learning aims database reference is given Course.FEQAIMC for all FE level courses except for courses at institutions in Wales or Welsh for Adults courses which should be coded X41 - X46.</p> <p>Certificate in Further Education should be coded M80 if at postgraduate level or H80 if at undergraduate level.</p> <p>If a foundation course or year is integrated into another qualification e.g. a first degree, code H00 'First degree' should be returned in this field.</p> <p>Post/Higher Doctorates should not be included in the return.</p> <p>The HESA record for a Foundation Degree bridging course should indicate this Instance.BRIDGE. The FTE recorded in Instance.STULOAD should be increased to reflect the additional FTE of the bridging course. Where the bridging course spans two academic years, the first of these academic years should be returned as 'non-standard' in Instance.TYPEYR. Where a student is only active for the bridging course during the academic year, this field should be completed with the code for the appropriate level of credit (i.e. when a student withdraws during or following completion of the course, or where they transfer in from another institution prior to commencing the course). In comparing HESA data to HESES, HEFCE will use the above information to generate two countable years for such students.</p> <p>Students entering with enhanced first degrees, that is qualifications that would be coded H22/M22/M26 in the COURSEAIM field, should be recorded as having a higher degree (01) in EntryProfile.QVALENT2 field, or M2X in EntryProfile.QVALENT3.</p>
Examples	<p>With a course leading to an HND, where some of the students may subsequently carry on to take a degree, the current general qualification aim of HND should be recorded.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Course.COURSEAIM cannot be coded H16, H62, I16, M16, M26 or M86 where the first 2 characters of CourseSubject.SBJCA are 'D1' or 'D2' and Institution.UKPRN not = 10006842, 10007154, 10007779, 10007786, 10007788, 10007790 or 10007794.</p> <p>2 Error Course.COURSEAIM cannot be coded H16, H62, I16, M16, M26 or M86 where the first character of CourseSubject.SBJCA is 'A' and Institution.UKPRN not = 10000886, 10003270, 10003645, 10005343, 10006840, 10006842, 10007141, 10007143, 10007149, 10007154, 10007157, 10007158, 10007161, 10007163, 10007167, 10007767, 10007774, 10007775, 10007782, 10007783, 10007784, 10007785, 10007786, 10007788, 10007789, 10007790, 10007792, 10007794, 10007795, 10007796, 10007798, 10007799, 10007801, 10007803, 10007806, 10007814, 10007852 or 10007855.</p> <p>3 Error Course.COURSEAIM must be coded H71, M71, H11, I11 or I71 for</p>

	<p>4 Error institutions in England and Wales where Course.TTCID = 1, G or H. Course.COURSEAIM must be coded H71 or M71 for institutions in England where Course.TTCID = 8.</p> <p>5 Error Institutions in England, Scotland and Northern Ireland cannot use codes X41 - X46.</p> <p>6 Error Institutions in Scotland cannot use code X00.</p> <p>7 Warning Course.COURSEAIM should be coded D00, D01, E00, L00, M00, M01, M10, M11, M44, L80, H50, H60, M50, H80, M80, M70, L80, H70, I70, H72, I72, M72, H61, H81, I61, J20, C20, I60, I80, I81, J80, C90, H90, I90, J90, D90, E90, L90 or M90 where (Course.TTCID = 5 and Course.MSFUND = 07) or where (Course.TTCID = 5 and any Instance.FUNDCODE = 7).</p> <p>8 Error Course.COURSEAIM cannot be coded M02 for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland or Wales</p> <p>9 Error Where Course.REGBODY = 08, Course.COURSEAIM must be coded M00, M10, M16, M41, M50, M76, M80, M86, M90, H00, H16, H50, H61, H62, H76, C20 or (H80 where Institution.UKPRN = 10006840 only) or (J26 where Institution.UKPRN = 10007773 or 10007156 only).</p> <p>10 Error Course.COURSEAIM must be coded H99 where Course.TTCID = F.</p>
Reason Required	To allow analysis of the student population by level of study.
Part Of	Course
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: COURSEAIM Data type: COURSEAIMCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-06-25
Change management notes	Business rule 7 updated to add M44 to the list of valid course aims for NCTL funded Inset courses.

Major source of funding

Type	field
Short Name	MSFUND
Description	This field indicates the primary source of funding for the course. This field is not necessarily the main source of finance as it excludes the tuition fee element. In the majority of cases, the source of funding will be the appropriate funding council. The predominant source of funding should be selected where there is more than one source.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	For institutions in Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland, all courses where for any linked instance Course.REDUCEDC is 00, 01, or 04. For instances at institutions in England, all courses where Instance.FESTUMK is 2 and Course.REDUCEDC is 00, 01, or 04.
Valid Entries and Labels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 01 HEFCE 02 HEFCW 03 SFC 04 DELNI 06 Welsh Government DfES 07 NCTL 11 LEA 12 BIS 13 Welsh Government (WG) 14 Scottish Government - Employability, Skills and Lifelong Learning Directorate 15 Scottish Government - General Enterprise, Environment and Digital Directorate 16 Department of Agriculture & Rural Development for Northern Ireland (DARDNI) 21 Biotechnology & Biological Sciences Research Council (BBSRC) 22 Medical Research Council (MRC) 23 Natural Environment Research Council (NERC) 24 Engineering & Physical Sciences Research Council (EPSRC) 25 Economic & Social Research Council (ESRC) 26 Science & Technology Facilities Council (STFC) 27 Arts & Humanities Research Council (AHRC) 29 Research council - not specified 31 Departments of Health/NHS/Social Care 32 Departments of Social Services 33 Departments of Employment 34 Other HM government departments 35 Armed forces 36 Scottish Enterprise Network/Local Enterprise Companies (LECs)/Highland & Islands Enterprise 41 UK public corporation/nationalised industry 42 UK private industry/commerce 43 UK charity (medical) 44 UK charity (other) 46 EU commission (EC) 47 Voluntary organisation 51 Overseas government or other overseas organisation 61 Own institution 62 New Deal for young people (aged 18 to 24) 63 New Deal for long term unemployed (aged 25+) 64 Private training organisation 65 European Research Action Scheme for the Mobility of University Students

	<p>(ERASMUS)</p> <p>71 Joint between two sources including a funding council</p> <p>72 Joint between two bodies excluding a funding council</p> <p>73 TEC - YT students (as major source or joint with SFA/EFA or WG-DfES)</p> <p>74 TEC - other (non-YT) students (as major source or joint with SFA/EFA or WG-DfES)</p> <p>76 Youth Credits - YT students (as major source)</p> <p>77 Youth Credits - non YT students (as major source)</p> <p>78 Other YT (as major source or joint with SFA/EFA or WG-DfES)</p> <p>79 Link Scheme (as major source or joint with SFA/EFA or WG-DfES)</p> <p>81 Other funding</p> <p>83 Overseas learner award from HM Government/British Council</p> <p>84 Multinational organisation (non-UK based)</p> <p>85 Foundation Modern Apprenticeship (formerly known as National Traineeship (NT))</p> <p>86 European Social Fund for the first term of the current academic year</p> <p>87 European Social Fund for the second & third terms of the current academic year</p> <p>88 European Social Fund for all the current academic year</p> <p>89 FE Student - New Deal</p> <p>91 Funded entirely by student tuition fees</p> <p>92 European Regional Development Fund (ERDF)</p> <p>93 European Agricultural Guidance & Guarantee Fund (EAGGF)</p> <p>94 Financial Instrument for Fisheries Guidance (FIGF)</p> <p>95 DWP/Job Centre Plus</p> <p>96 Youth Gateway</p> <p>97 Youth Access</p> <p>98 LEA funding for Adult & Community Learning</p> <p>99 LEA funding, other than for Adult & Community Learning</p> <p>AA ESF - objective 1</p> <p>AB ESF - objective 2</p> <p>AC ESF - objective 3</p> <p>AD ESF community objectives</p>
Notes	<p>For FE courses in England, institutions should instead complete the LearningDeliveryFAM entity.</p> <p>The funding councils and DELNI fund places for students or credits associated with students, most home and EC students being 'fundable' (eligible for funding).</p> <p>The guidance for coding non-fundable students on funded courses should be to code to the appropriate funding council in this field and code as 2 'Not fundable by funding council' in Instance.FUNDCODE.</p> <p>Institutions funded by SFC should note that their funding from the Council is provided for a total number of student places, and cannot necessarily be related to particular students or to particular courses. For example, if funding is provided for 80 student places, and there are 100 students whose places are eligible for funding in that funding cell, one cannot identify 20 particular people as being 'fees only' students. Nor could one identify some of the courses which are eligible for funding in that cell as being 'fully-funded' and the rest 'partially funded' or 'unfunded': the funding is for the cell as a whole, not for any specific part of it. All students on courses which are eligible for funding in the funding cell would be returned with SFC shown as the major source of funding, code 03 'SFC'.</p> <p>Nurses and Midwives at institutions funded by SFC who are on courses directly funded through contracts with the Health Authorities should be coded 31 'Departments of Health/NHS/Social Care'. These are primarily courses formerly taught by the Nursing Colleges. Most other Medical, Dentistry, Nursing and Midwifery courses and courses for professions associated with medicine at SFC funded institutions, will be funded through</p>

	<p>SFC and students should usually be coded 03 'SFC'.</p> <p>For institutions in Wales, code 13 should be used when the primary source of funding for the course is the National Leadership and Innovation Agency for Healthcare (NLIAH). Code 31 should be used when the primary source of funding is an NHS trust.</p> <p>Code 34 'Other HM government departments' includes local government and non-departmental public bodies (NDPBs) including the British Council and the Royal Society.</p> <p>Codes 71 'Joint between two sources including a funding council' and 72 'Joint between two bodies excluding a funding council' should be interpreted as equal 50:50 funding between two bodies. In cases where the split is not exactly 50:50, the guidance is to code on the basis of the largest source.</p> <p>Codes 47, 62-64, 73-79, 83, 85-89, AA, AB, AC, AD can be used only for students at institutions in England and Wales who are following programmes of study at FE level, i.e. shown as code 1 or 4 in Instance.FESTUMK</p> <p>Codes 47, 62-64, 73-79, 83, 85-89, AA, AB, AC, AD are the codes to be used in preference to other codes for FE level students in England and Wales. 'Joint with SFA/EFA/DfES' in codes 73-79 indicates a source of funding in addition to a SFA/EFA/DfES and applies whether SFA/EFA/DfES or the other body is the major source of funding</p> <p>Codes 86-88 'European Social Fund' apply to FE level students only. For any students at HE level European Social Fund should be coded as 46 'EU commission (EC)'.</p> <p>Code 91 'Funded entirely by student tuition fees' will include some (but not all) 'cost recovery' courses, for example, cost recovery courses provided for particular firms might be covered by code 42 'UK private industry/commerce'. Code 91 may also cover a few 'fees only' students (in cells for which the institution receives no funding at present).</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error For institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales, Course.MSFUND must exist where Course.REDUCEDC = 00, 01 or 04.</p> <p>4 Error Course.MSFUND must not be coded 01 where Course.COURSEAIM begins P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>5 Error Course.MSFUND must not be coded 02 or 07 where Course.COURSEAIM begins P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>7 Error Course.MSFUND must not be coded 06 where any Instance.FESTUMK is coded 2.</p> <p>10 Error Course.MSFUND must be coded 07 for institutions in England where Course.TTCID = 1, 8, F, G or H.</p> <p>11 Error For institutions in Wales Course.MSFUND must not be coded 01, 03, 04, 07, 12 or 14.</p> <p>12 Error For institutions in England Course.MSFUND must not be coded 02, 03, 04, 06, 13 or 14.</p> <p>13 Error For institutions in Northern Ireland Course.MSFUND must not be coded 01, 02, 03, 06, 07, 11, 12, 13 or 14.</p> <p>14 Error For institutions in Scotland Course.MSFUND must not be coded 01, 02, 04, 06, 07, 11, 12 or 13.</p> <p>16 Warning For institutions in Wales Course.MSFUND should not be coded 06 where Course.COURSEAIM begins with D, E, L, M, H, I or J.</p> <p>17 Error For institutions in England, Course.MSFUND must exist where Course.REDUCEDC = 00, 01 or 04 and any linked instance has Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p>

Reason Required	To allow monitoring of actual student funding sources against funding.
Part Of	Course
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MSFUND Data type: MSFUNDCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid. Also, this rule will now only apply to institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales. Business rules 7, 11, 13, 14 and 16 updated for code 05 being removed from the coding frame. Business rule 10 updated for the introduction of TTCID codes G and H (School Direct initiatives). Business rule 17 added for institutions in England for the change of coverage of the field to exclude FE level and EFA/SFA funded courses. Business rule 6 deleted as superseded by business rule 10. Business rule 15 deleted as code 05 has been removed from the coding frame and the rule is no longer applicable.

NHS bursaries

Type	field
Short Name	NHSBURSARY
Description	This field identifies courses that attract NHS Bursaries
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Wales
Coverage	All courses at institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales
Valid Entries and Labels	0 Course not eligible for NHS bursaries 1 Entire course eligible for NHS bursaries 2 Part of the course eligible for NHS bursaries
Notes	<p>Code 2 should be used for those medical and dental courses for which bursaries are available only for the later years of the course.</p> <p>Social Work bursaries administered by the NHS as an NHS bursary should be recorded in NHSBURSARY. Social work bursaries administered by the NHS Business Services Authority are normally only applicable for Course.REGBODY = 08 courses. In addition, to be eligible for a social work bursary the student must be enrolled on a HCPC approved social work degree course leading to eligibility to practice and not a post qualifying course.</p> <p>Further information is available from the NHS Business Services Authority, the Department of Health and the National Leadership and Innovation Agency for Healthcare (NLIAH).</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Course.NHSBURSARY must exist for all courses at institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales where Course.REDUCEDC = 00.</p> <p>2 Error Course.NHSBURSARY must not exist for institutions in Scotland.</p> <p>3 Warning Course.NHSBURSARY should not be coded 1 or 2 where the first character of CourseSubject.SBJCA is not A or B, or the first 2 characters of CourseSubject.SBJCA are not L5.</p> <p>4 Warning Course.NHSBURSARY is coded 0 where all occurrences of CourseSubject have the first character of CourseSubject.SBJCA equal to A or B, or the first 2 characters of CourseSubject.SBJCA are equal to L5.</p>
Reason Required	In order to support funding calculations and also to flag exemptions from the ELQ policy, HEFCE need to be able to identify courses that attract NHS Bursaries. WG and the National Leadership and Innovation Agency for Healthcare (NLIAH) also have an interest in this information.
Part Of	Course
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: NHSBURSARY Data type: NHSBURSARYCodeContentType
Owner	HEFCE/WG-DfES
Version	1.0

Reduced course return indicator

Type	field
Short Name	REDUCEDC
Description	This field indicates whether a reduced return is being sent for this course and if so which type.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All courses
Valid Entries and Labels	00 Not a reduced return 01 Low credit bearing 03 Incoming visiting & exchange 04 Dormant 07 Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE) 09 Unistats only
Notes	All information relating to reduced returns is available here. Code 01 can only be used by institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Scotland. Reduced return type 08 can only be used at instance level, in Instance.REDUCEDI. Consequently, this return type is not valid in this field.
Business rules	4 Error If Course.REDUCEDC = 01, the institution must be in England, Scotland or Northern Ireland. 9 Error Course.REDUCEDC must be coded 00, 04 or 07 where Course.TTCID = F. 10 Error Course.REDUCEDC must not be coded 07 at institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland or Wales. 11 Error Where Course.REDUCEDC = 09, Institution.UKPRN must be 10000163, 10003331, 10005415, 10005470, 10007937, 10008289, 10020416, 10023454, 10031982, 10035638 or 10039956.
Reason Required	To identify and validate reduced returns
Part Of	Course
Field Length	02
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: REDUCEDC Data type: REDUCEDCCCodeContentType
Related Fields	REDUCEDI
Owner	HESA
Version	1.4
Date modified	2013-07-30
Change management notes	Business rule 11 updated to correct the UKPRN for the Anglo-European College of Chiropractic from 110000163 to 10000163.

Regulatory body for health and social care students

Type	field
Short Name	REGBODY
Description	This field identifies the regulatory body for medical, dental, health and social care, and veterinary students.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All courses where Course.COURSEAIM = M16, M26, M76, M86, H16, H62, H76, I16, I76, J26, J76 and Course.REDUCEDC = 00 or 01
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>01 General Medical Council (GMC)</p> <p>02 General Dental Council (GDC)</p> <p>03 General Optical Council (GOC)</p> <p>05 The Pharmaceutical Society of Northern Ireland (PSNI)</p> <p>06 The Nursing & Midwifery Council (NMC)</p> <p>07 Health and Care Professions Council (HCPC): excluding social workers in England</p> <p>08 Health and Care Professions Council (HCPC): social workers in England</p> <p>09 Scottish Social Services Council (SSSC)</p> <p>10 Care Council for Wales (CCW)</p> <p>11 Northern Ireland Social Care Council (NISCC)</p> <p>12 General Osteopathic Council (GOsC)</p> <p>13 General Chiropractic Council (GCC)</p> <p>14 Royal College of Veterinary Surgeons (RCVS)</p> <p>15 General Pharmaceutical Council (GPhC)</p>
Notes	<p>This field can be completed for students with Course.COURSEAIM M22, where applicable.</p> <p>The General Pharmaceutical Council (GPhC) replaced the Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain (RPSGB) as the regulator for pharmacists, pharmacy technicians and pharmacy premises on 27 September 2010. The General Pharmaceutical Council accredits and recognises pharmacy courses leading to registration and annotation, including Master of Pharmacy (MPharm) degrees leading to pre-registration then pharmacist registration.</p> <p>Valid entry 15 'General Pharmaceutical Council (GPhC)' has been introduced for new and continuing instances who would formerly have been coded 04 'Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain (RPSGB)'.</p> <p>The Health Professions Council (HPC) replaced the General Social Care Council (GSCC) as the regulator for the social work profession on 1 August 2012. The Health Professions Council (HPC) has been renamed the Health and Care Professions Council (HCPC) to reflect this new remit.</p> <p>To facilitate the regulation of social workers in England, it is necessary to identify those whose regulatory body is the Health and Care Professions Council (HCPC) for that purpose. To that end, a separate valid entry exists to continue the collection of data at a disaggregated level.</p> <p>Valid entry 08 'Health and Care Professions Council (HCPC): social workers in England' should continue to be used for courses who would formerly have been coded 08 'General Social Care Council (GSCC)'. Likewise, courses which would previously have been coded as 07 should continue to use this code. The label has been changed to</p>

	'Health and Care Professions Council (HCPC): excluding social workers in England' to align with the label for code 08, and maintain the coverage of 07 as in previous years.
Business rules	<p>1 Error Course.REGBODY must exist where Course.COURSEAIM = M16, M26, M76, M86, H16, H62, H76, I16, I76, J26 or J76 and Course.REDUCEDC = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Warning Course.REGBODY should only be coded 08 when Institution.UKPRN = 10000291, 10000824, 10000886, 10000961, 10000975, 10001143, 10001282, 10001478, 10001726, 10001883, 10002718, 10003614, 10003645, 10003678, 10003861, 10003956, 10003957, 10004048, 10004078, 10004180, 10004351, 10004797, 10004930, 10005553, 10005790, 10006022, 10006299, 10006566, 10006840, 10007137, 10007138, 10007139, 10007140, 10007141, 10007143, 10007144, 10007145, 10007146, 10007147, 10007148, 10007149, 10007150, 10007151, 10007152, 10007154, 10007155, 10007156, 10007157, 10007158, 10007159, 10007161, 10007163, 10007164, 10007165, 10007166, 10007167, 10007767, 10007768, 10007760, 10007773, 10007785, 10007786, 10007789, 10007791, 10007795, 10007796, 10007798, 10007801, 10007802, 10007806, 10007823, 10007842, 10007848, 10007850, 10007851 or 10014001.</p>
Reason Required	To establish relevant regulatory body for medical, dental, health and social care, and veterinary students.
Part Of	Course
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: REGBODY Data type: REGBODYCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated for the addition of course aim H62 to the coding frame. Business rule 2 updated for a revision to the institutions expected to return social work courses approved by the HCPC. Business rule 3 deleted as code 04 has been removed from the coding frame.

Subject Knowledge Enhancement placement

Type	field
Short Name	SKEOS
Description	This field records whether a Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE) course includes an overseas placement
Applicable to	England
Coverage	Courses at institutions in England where Course.REDUCEDC = 07 or Course.TTCID = F Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE)
Valid Entries and Labels	0 Course does not include an overseas placement 1 Course includes an overseas placement
Notes	
Business rules	1 Error Course.SKEOS must exist for courses at institutions in England where Course.REDUCEDC=07 or Course.TTCID = F. 2 Error Course.SKEOS must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland or Wales. 3 Error Course.SKEOS must not exist for courses at institutions in England where Course.TTCID not equal to F.
Reason Required	NCTL requirement to monitor students registered on SKE courses
Part Of	Course
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SKEOS Data type: SKEOSCodeContentType
Owner	NCTL
Version	1.0

Subject Knowledge Enhancement units

Type	field
Short Name	SKEUNITS
Description	This field records the number of Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE) units which the course contains.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	Courses at institutions in England where Course.REDUCEDC = 07 or Course.TTCID = F Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE)
Notes	
Business rules	<p>1 Error Course.SKEUNITS must exist for courses at institutions in England where Course.REDUCEDC=07 or Course.TTCID = F.</p> <p>2 Error Course.SKEUNITS must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland or Wales.</p> <p>3 Warning Course.SKEUNITS should be coded in the range 1 - 18.</p> <p>4 Error Course.SKEUNITS must not exist for courses at institutions in England where Course.TTCID not equal to F.</p>
Reason Required	NCTL requirement to monitor students registered on SKE courses
Part Of	Course
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SKEUNITS
Owner	NCTL
Version	1.0

Teacher training course

Type	field
Short Name	TTCID
Description	This field is a one character field completed for students on courses that lead to teacher qualifications. The selection will determine the type of the teacher training.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All courses where Course.REDUCEDC = 00, 01, 04, 07 or 09 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>0 Not a teacher training course</p> <p>1 On initial or pre-service teacher training course leading to Qualified Teacher Status or to registration as a school teacher with the General Teaching Council for Scotland</p> <p>2 On other initial teacher training course not leading to Qualified Teacher Status nor to registration as a school teacher with the General Teaching Council for Scotland</p> <p>5 Inset course</p> <p>8 NCTL funded flexible provision (ITT)</p> <p>9 Other NCTL funded provision not elsewhere specified</p> <p>D Other Pre-ITT activity funded by the NCTL</p> <p>F Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE) - NCTL funded</p> <p>G School Direct initiative (mainstream)</p> <p>H School Direct initiative (flexible)</p> <p>J School-led HEI provision (mainstream)</p> <p>K School-led HEI provision (flexible)</p>
Notes	<p>Institutions in Wales can only use codes 0, 1, 2 and 5.</p> <p>Students funded by DELNI on courses leading to eligibility to teach in Northern Ireland should be coded 1 in this field.</p> <p>Code 1 includes PGCE, BEd, first degree with Qualified Teacher Status and courses leading concurrently to a degree and to a diploma in Education.</p> <p>Code 2 includes courses leading to Further Education Teacher Qualification and to Nursing and Midwifery Teacher Qualification. FE courses will be specifically identified in Course.ITTPHSC code 31 'Further education'.</p> <p>Code 5: NCTL and HEFCE have given a working definition of an INSET course as follows:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">An INSET/In-service course is one for which the primary (but not necessarily the only) purpose is to improve the effectiveness of teachers, lecturers or trainers. In considering whether this is the purpose of particular course, institutions may wish to consider the content of the course and course literature, including prospectuses and any other marketing material.</p> <p>Institutions are not expected to return a record to HESA for students on employment-based routes (e.g. GTP, OTT and RTP). The NCTL collects this data via the Employment Based Routes Data Management System (EBRDMS).</p>

	<p>Code F (Subject Knowledge Enhancement) instances will not be included in HESA standard populations.</p> <p>Masters in Teaching and Learning (MTL) students must be coded 9 'Other NCTL funded provision not elsewhere specified' in this field. MTL students must be identified as such using the M02 code in Course.COURSEAIM field.</p> <p>School Direct initiative guidance</p> <p>The National College for Teaching and Leadership (NCTL) has provided some guidance for instances associated with the School Direct initiative:</p> <p>Code G 'School Direct initiative (mainstream)' should be used where the allocation is with a school.</p> <p>Code H 'School Direct initiative (flexible)' should be used as in Code G but when the course is non-standard.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Course.TTCID must exist where Course.REDUCEDC = 00, 01, 04, 07 or 09 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>2 Error Course.TTCID codes 8, 9, D, F, G and H must be for an institution in England.</p> <p>3 Error Course.TTCID must be coded 1 for institutions in Wales where Course.COURSEAIM = H11 or I11.</p> <p>4 Error If English institution and Course.TTCID is coded 1, 8, G or H Institution.UKPRN must be 10000291, 10000571, 10000712, 10000886, 10000961, 10001143, 10001282, 10002718, 10003614, 10003645, 10003678, 10003861, 10003863, 10003956, 10003957, 10004048, 10004078, 10004113, 10004180, 10004351, 10004797, 10004930, 10005790, 10006299, 10006840, 10007137, 10007138, 10007139, 10007140, 10007143, 10007144, 10007145, 10007146, 10007147, 10007148, 10007149, 10007152, 10007154, 10007155, 10007157, 10007158, 10007159, 10007163, 10007164, 10007166, 10007167, 10007713, 10007766, 10007767, 10007773, 10007774, 10007776, 10007786, 10007787, 10007788, 10007789, 10007792, 10007795, 10007796, 10007798, 10007799, 10007801, 10007802, 10007806, 10007811, 10007816, 10007823, 10007832, 10007842, 10007843, 10007848, 10007850, 10007851 or 10037449.</p> <p>6 Error Course.TTCID must not be coded 1, 8, G or H by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Instance.FUNDLEV is coded 11 or 21.</p> <p>7 Error Course.TTCID must not be coded 0 where Course.COURSEAIM is coded M71 or H71.</p> <p>8 Error Course.TTCID must be coded 9 where Course.COURSEAIM = M02</p> <p>9 Error Course.TTCID must be coded 2 where Course.COURSEAIM = M79, H79, I79, C77, C78, P77 or P78</p> <p>10 Error For institutions in England, Course.TTCID must be coded 1, 2, 8, G or H where Instance.SPECFEE = 6.</p> <p>13 Error For institutions in England, Course.TTCID must be coded F where Course.REDUCEDC = 07.</p> <p>14 Error For institutions in England, Course.TTCID must be coded F where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 07.</p> <p>16 Error Where Course.TTCID = F, Institution.UKPRN must be 10000291, 10000571, 10000886, 10000961, 10001143, 10002718, 10003863, 10003956, 10003957, 10004048, 10004113, 10004180, 10004351, 10004797, 10004930, 10005790, 10006299, 10006840, 10007137, 10007139, 10007140, 10007144, 10007145, 10007146, 10007147, 10007149, 10007152, 10007155, 10007158, 10007159, 10007163, 10007164, 10007166, 10007767, 10007773, 10007776, 10007789.</p>

	<p>10007798, 10007799, 10007801, 10007802, 10007806, 10007823, 10007832, 10007842, 10007843, 10007848 or 10037449.</p> <p>17 Error For institutions in England and Northern Ireland, Course.TTCID must not be coded 0 where Course.COURSEAIM = I11 or H11</p> <p>18 Error Where Course.TTCID = F and Course.CTITLE begins SKEPLUS, Institution.UKPRN must be 10000886, 10000961, 10001143, 10003956, 10003957, 10004113, 10004351, 10004797, 10005790, 10007137, 10007139, 10007140, 10007144, 10007146, 10007147, 10007164, 10007166, 10007773, 10007801, 10007802, 10007806, 10007823, 10007832 or 10007842</p> <p>19 Error Course.TTCID must not be coded J or K.</p> <p>20 Error Course.TTCID must be coded 0 where Institution.UKPRN = 10000163, 10003331, 10005415, 10005470, 10007937, 10008289, 10020416, 10023454, 10031982, 10035638 or 10039956.</p>
Reason Required	To identify and discriminate between teacher training students.
Part Of	Course
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: TTCID Data type: TTCIDCodeContentType
Related Fields	QTS ITTPHSC
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-06-25
Change management notes	Business rule 20 updated to reflect the alternative providers who will be submitting data to HESA.

Teaching qualification sought sector

Type	field															
Short Name	TQSSEC															
Description	This field is used by institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland for all teacher training courses and indicates the education sector in which teacher training students are pursuing their teaching qualification.															
Applicable to	Northern Ireland Scotland															
Coverage	All Course records at institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 2 and Course.REDUCEDC = 00															
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="border: none;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">1</td> <td>Primary</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Secondary</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Further education/Higher education</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Nursing & midwifery</td> </tr> </table>	1	Primary	2	Secondary	3	Further education/Higher education	4	Nursing & midwifery							
1	Primary															
2	Secondary															
3	Further education/Higher education															
4	Nursing & midwifery															
Notes	<p>Code 1 or 2 should be returned if code 1 is returned in Course.TTCID.</p> <p>Code 3 or 4 should be returned if code 2 is returned in Course.TTCID.</p> <p>If codes 0 or 5 are returned in Course.TTCID then this field must not be completed.</p>															
Business rules	<table style="border: none;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">1</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Course.TQSSEC must exist for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 2 and Course.REDUCEDC = 00.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Course.TQSSEC must be coded 1 or 2 for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Course.TQSSEC must be coded 3 or 4 for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 2.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Course.TQSSEC must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 0 or 5.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Course.TQSSEC must not exist for institutions in England or Wales.</td> </tr> </table>	1	Error	Course.TQSSEC must exist for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 2 and Course.REDUCEDC = 00.	2	Error	Course.TQSSEC must be coded 1 or 2 for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1.	3	Error	Course.TQSSEC must be coded 3 or 4 for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 2.	4	Error	Course.TQSSEC must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 0 or 5.	5	Error	Course.TQSSEC must not exist for institutions in England or Wales.
1	Error	Course.TQSSEC must exist for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 2 and Course.REDUCEDC = 00.														
2	Error	Course.TQSSEC must be coded 1 or 2 for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1.														
3	Error	Course.TQSSEC must be coded 3 or 4 for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 2.														
4	Error	Course.TQSSEC must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 0 or 5.														
5	Error	Course.TQSSEC must not exist for institutions in England or Wales.														
Reason Required	To allow monitoring of qualifications sought and gained.															
Part Of	Course															
Field Length	1															
Minimum Occurrences	0															
Maximum Occurrences	1															
Schema Components	Element: TQSSEC Data type: TQSSECCodeContentType															
Owner	HESA															
Version	1.0															

Teaching qualification sought subject

Type	field
Short Name	TQSSUB
Description	This field is used by institutions in Scotland for courses that lead to teacher qualifications and indicates the subject(s) in which teacher training students are pursuing their teaching qualification.
Applicable to	Scotland
Coverage	All course records at institutions in Scotland where Course.TQSSEC = 2 and Course.REDUCEDC = 00
Valid Entries and Labels	010 English 020 History 030 Geography 040 Modern studies 060 Economics (only as a 2nd subject) 070 French 080 German 090 Spanish 091 Italian 100 Russian 110 Gaelic 111 Community languages 120 Other modern language 130 Classics 140 Latin 150 Greek 160 Mathematics 161 Computing 180 Biology with science 190 Chemistry with science 200 Physics with science 220 Art & design 240 Business studies 250 Home economics 260 Physical education 280 Technological/technical education 290 Music 301 Drama 350 Religious Education 360 Other 370 Media studies
Notes	When more than one subject is returned the tags surrounding the main subject code should include the attribute Main="1". For example if the subjects of the teaching qualification gained are English and History, with English as the main subject, this should be returned as: <TQSSUB Main="1">010</TQSSUB> <TQSSUB>020</TQSSUB>. When only one subject is returned this subject should include the attribute Main="1"
Business rules	1 Error Course.TQSSUB must exist for institutions in Scotland where Course.TQSSEC = 2 and Course.REDUCEDC = 00. 2 Error When one or more instances of Course.TQSSUB exists, one and only one instance's attribute Main must be set to "1". 3 Error Course.TQSSUB must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Wales. 4 Error Course.TQSSUB must not exist for institutions in Scotland where

	Course.TQSSEC not = 2.
Reason Required	To allow monitoring of qualifications sought and gained.
Part Of	Course
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	3
Schema Components	Element: TQSSUB Data type: TQSSUBType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Course subject

Type	entity
Short Name	CourseSubject
Description	The subject descriptors for this course.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All courses at institutions in Scotland and Northern Ireland. All courses at institutions in England and Wales where (any Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Course.FEQAIMC in generic code or = '66666666' or Course.TTCID = F) or Course.REDUCEDC = 09.
Notes	
Business rules	<p>1 Error CourseSubject entity must exist for all courses at institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland.</p> <p>2 Error CourseSubject entity must exist for all courses at institutions in England or Wales where (any Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or 3) or (any Instance.REDUCEDI = 08) or Course.FEQAIMC = '66666666' or Course.TTCID = F or Course.REDUCEDC = 09.</p>
Reason Required	This repeating element exists to allow a course to hold up to three sets of subject information.
Part Of	Course
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	3
Has Parts	Subject of course (SBJCA) Subject percentage (SBJPCNT) Subject of ITT Specialism indicator (ITTSUBJECT)
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 2 amended to enforce coverage for SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return and the Unistats (09) reduced return.

Subject of course

Type	field
Short Name	SBJCA
Description	This field describes the subject or subjects appropriate to the current course.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All course subject records
Valid Entries and Labels	A100 Pre-clinical medicine A200 Pre-clinical dentistry A300 Clinical medicine A400 Clinical dentistry A900 Others in medicine & dentistry A990 Medicine & dentistry not elsewhere classified A000 Medicine & dentistry B100 Anatomy, physiology & pathology B110 Anatomy B120 Physiology B121 Clinical physiology B130 Pathology B131 Cellular pathology B132 Pathobiology B140 Neuroscience B160 Physiotherapy B170 Podiatry B190 Anatomy, physiology & pathology not elsewhere classified B200 Pharmacology, toxicology & pharmacy B210 Pharmacology B220 Toxicology B230 Pharmacy B290 Pharmacology, toxicology & pharmacy not elsewhere classified B300 Complementary medicines, therapies & well-being B310 Osteopathy B320 Chiropractic B340 Alternative medicine & therapies B341 Chinese B342 Herbalism B343 Acupuncture B344 Aromatherapy B345 Hypnotherapy B346 Reflexology B350 Hair & beauty science B351 Hair services B352 Beauty therapies B353 Make-up B360 Spa & water-based therapies B390 Complementary medicines, therapies & well-being not elsewhere classified B400 Nutrition B410 Dietetics B490 Nutrition not elsewhere classified B500 Ophthalmics B510 Optometry B520 Orthoptics B590 Ophthalmics not elsewhere classified B600 Aural & oral sciences B610 Audiology B620 Speech science B630 Language pathology

B690	Aural & oral sciences not elsewhere classified
B700	Nursing
B701	Palliative care nursing
B702	Clinical practice nursing
B710	Community nursing
B712	Health visiting
B713	School nursing
B714	Practice nursing
B720	Midwifery
B730	Children's nursing
B731	Neonatal care
B740	Adult nursing
B741	Older people nursing
B750	Dental nursing
B760	Mental health nursing
B761	Learning disability nursing
B770	Medical nursing
B771	Critical care nursing
B772	Surgical nursing
B773	Emergency nursing
B790	Nursing not elsewhere classified
B800	Medical technology
B810	Cardiography
B820	Radiology
B821	Radiography, diagnostic
B822	Radiography, therapeutic
B830	Biomechanics & prosthetics (non-clinical)
B840	Dental technology
B850	Mortuary technology
B890	Medical technology not elsewhere classified
B900	Others in subjects allied to medicine
B910	Environmental health
B920	Occupational health
B930	Occupational therapy
B940	Counselling
B950	Paramedical science
B960	Physician assistant studies
B990	Subjects allied to medicine not elsewhere classified
B000	Subjects allied to medicine
C100	Biology
C110	Applied biology
C111	Parasitology
C120	Behavioural biology
C130	Cell biology
C131	Applied cell biology
C140	Developmental/Reproductive biology
C141	Developmental biology
C142	Reproductive biology
C150	Environmental biology
C160	Marine/Freshwater biology
C161	Marine biology
C162	Freshwater biology
C170	Population biology
C180	Ecology
C181	Biodiversity
C182	Evolution
C183	Community ecology
C184	Conservation ecology
C185	Ecosystem ecology & land use
C186	Population ecology
C187	Ecotoxicology
C190	Biology not elsewhere classified
C191	Biometry
C200	Botany

C210	Applied botany
C220	Mycology
C230	Plant biotechnology
C240	Plant cell science
C250	Plant pathology
C260	Plant physiology
C270	Developmental & reproductive plant biology
C280	Systematic botany
C290	Botany not elsewhere classified
C300	Zoology
C310	Applied zoology
C320	Cell zoology
C330	Developmental & reproductive zoology
C340	Entomology
C350	Marine zoology
C360	Pest science
C380	Systematic zoology
C390	Zoology not elsewhere classified
C400	Genetics
C410	Applied genetics
C420	Human genetics
C430	Medical & veterinary genetics
C431	Medical genetics
C432	Veterinary genetics
C440	Molecular genetics
C441	Transcriptomics
C450	Genomics
C451	Functional genomics
C452	Genome organisation
C460	Genetic engineering
C470	Population genetics & evolution
C490	Genetics not elsewhere classified
C500	Microbiology
C510	Applied microbiology
C520	Medical & veterinary microbiology
C521	Medical microbiology
C522	Veterinary microbiology
C530	Bacteriology
C540	Virology
C550	Immunology
C570	Serology
C590	Microbiology not elsewhere classified
C600	Sport & exercise science
C610	Sport coaching
C620	Sport development
C630	Sport conditioning, rehabilitation & therapy
C640	Sport studies
C650	Sport technology
C690	Sport & exercise science not elsewhere classified
C700	Molecular biology, biophysics & biochemistry
C710	Applied molecular biology, biophysics & biochemistry
C720	Biological chemistry
C730	Metabolic biochemistry
C740	Medical & veterinary biochemistry
C741	Medical biochemistry
C742	Veterinary biochemistry
C750	Plant biochemistry
C760	Biomolecular science
C770	Biophysical science
C790	Molecular biology, biophysics & biochemistry not elsewhere classified
C800	Psychology
C810	Applied psychology
C811	Occupational psychology
C812	Educational psychology

C813	Sport psychology
C814	Organisational psychology
C815	Business psychology
C816	Forensic psychology
C820	Developmental psychology
C821	Child psychology
C822	The psychology of ageing
C830	Methodological & conceptual issues in psychology
C831	Research methods in psychology
C832	Quantitative psychology
C833	Qualitative psychology
C834	History of psychology
C835	Philosophy of psychology
C840	Psychology in health & medicine
C841	Health psychology
C842	Clinical psychology
C843	Counselling psychology
C844	Psychotherapy
C845	Clinical neuropsychology
C846	Community psychology
C847	Psychoanalytical studies
C848	Psychology of mental health
C850	Cognitive & affective psychology
C851	Psychological modelling
C852	Psychology of communication
C853	Psychology of memory & learning
C854	Psychology of perception
C855	Psychology of higher cognitive processes
C856	Experimental psychology
C857	Affective psychology
C858	Transpersonal psychology
C860	Psychobiology
C861	Cognitive neuroscience
C862	Affective neuroscience
C863	Psychopharmacology
C864	Evolutionary psychology
C865	Animal psychology
C870	Personality & individual differences
C871	Psychometrics
C872	Psychology of gender
C873	Cross-cultural psychology
C880	Social psychology
C881	Social cognition
C890	Psychology not elsewhere classified
C900	Others in Biological Sciences
C910	Applied biological sciences
C990	Biological sciences not elsewhere classified
C000	Biological sciences
D100	Pre-clinical veterinary medicine
D190	Pre-clinical veterinary medicine not elsewhere classified
D200	Clinical veterinary medicine & dentistry
D210	Clinical veterinary medicine
D220	Clinical veterinary dentistry
D290	Clinical veterinary medicine & dentistry not elsewhere classified
D300	Animal science
D310	Veterinary nursing
D320	Animal health
D321	Animal anatomy
D322	Animal physiology
D323	Animal pathology
D324	Animal pharmacology
D325	Animal toxicology
D326	Animal pharmacy
D327	Animal nutrition

D328	Animal welfare
D330	Veterinary public health
D340	Overseas veterinary development
D390	Animal sciences not elsewhere classified
D400	Agriculture
D410	Arable & fruit farming
D411	Agricultural pests & diseases
D412	Crop physiology
D413	Crop nutrition
D414	Crop protection
D415	Crop production
D416	Glasshouse culture
D417	Amenity horticulture
D418	Exotic plants & crops
D420	Livestock
D421	Livestock husbandry
D422	Equine studies
D423	Poultry keeping
D424	Game keeping
D425	Exotic livestock
D430	Fish farming
D431	Fish husbandry
D432	Freshwater fish
D433	Saltwater fish
D434	Ornamental fish
D435	Aquaculture
D440	Rural estate management
D441	Farm management
D442	Game keeping management
D443	Water resource management
D444	Land management for recreation
D445	Biological heritage site management
D446	Wilderness management
D447	Environmental conservation
D448	Sustainable agricultural & landscape development
D450	International agriculture
D460	Organic farming
D461	Organic arable & fruit farming
D462	Organic livestock
D463	Organic fish farming
D470	Agricultural technology
D471	Agricultural machinery
D472	Agricultural irrigation & drainage
D490	Agriculture not elsewhere classified
D500	Forestry & arboriculture
D510	Trees & shrubs
D511	Forestry pests & diseases
D512	Tree physiology
D513	Tree nutrition
D514	Tree protection
D515	Tree production
D516	Timber production
D517	Community forestry
D520	International forestry
D530	Organic forestry
D540	Forestry technology
D541	Forestry irrigation & drainage
D590	Forestry not elsewhere classified
D600	Food & beverage studies
D610	Food science
D611	Meat science
D612	Cereal science
D613	Vegetable science
D614	Fruit science

D620	Food hygiene
D630	Food & beverage production
D631	Food & beverage manufacture
D632	Food & beverage processing
D633	Food & beverage technology
D634	Industrial baking
D635	Industrial brewing
D640	Food & beverages for the consumer
D641	Food & beverage packaging
D642	Food & beverage delivery
D690	Food & beverage studies not elsewhere classified
D700	Agricultural sciences
D710	Agricultural biology
D711	Agricultural microbiology
D720	Agricultural chemistry
D721	Agricultural biochemistry
D730	Agricultural botany
D740	Agricultural zoology
D750	Soil as an agricultural medium
D790	Agricultural sciences not elsewhere classified
D900	Others in veterinary sciences, agriculture & related subjects
D990	Veterinary sciences, agriculture & related subjects not elsewhere classified
D000	Veterinary sciences, agriculture & related subjects
F100	Chemistry
F110	Applied chemistry
F111	Industrial chemistry
F112	Colour chemistry
F120	Inorganic chemistry
F130	Structural chemistry
F131	Crystallography
F140	Environmental chemistry
F141	Marine chemistry
F150	Medicinal chemistry
F151	Pharmaceutical chemistry
F160	Organic chemistry
F161	Organometallic chemistry
F162	Polymer chemistry
F163	Bio-organic chemistry
F164	Petrochemical chemistry
F165	Biomolecular chemistry
F170	Physical chemistry
F180	Analytical chemistry
F190	Chemistry not elsewhere classified
F200	Materials science
F290	Materials science not elsewhere classified
F300	Physics
F310	Applied physics
F311	Engineering physics
F320	Chemical physics
F321	Solid-state physics
F330	Environmental physics
F331	Atmospheric physics
F332	Marine physics
F340	Mathematical & theoretical physics
F341	Electromagnetism
F342	Quantum mechanics
F343	Computational physics
F350	Medical physics
F351	Radiation physics
F360	Optical physics
F361	Laser physics
F370	Nuclear & particle physics
F380	Acoustics
F390	Physics not elsewhere classified

F400	Forensic & archaeological sciences
F410	Forensic science
F420	Archaeological science
F490	Forensic & archaeological sciences not elsewhere classified
F500	Astronomy
F510	Astrophysics
F520	Space & planetary sciences
F521	Space science
F522	Planetary science
F530	Solar & solar terrestrial physics
F540	Astronomy observation
F550	Astronomy theory
F590	Astronomy not elsewhere classified
F600	Geology
F610	Applied geology
F611	Industrial geology
F612	Engineering geology
F620	Mining geology
F621	Exploration geology
F630	Geotechnology
F631	Marine geotechnology
F640	Earth science
F641	Palaeontology
F642	Geoscience
F643	Quaternary studies
F644	Hydrogeology
F645	Mantle & core processes
F646	Land-atmosphere interactions
F650	Geological oceanography
F660	Geophysics
F661	Exploration geophysics
F670	Geochemistry
F680	Geohazards
F681	Seismology & tectonics
F682	Vulcanology
F690	Geology not elsewhere classified
F700	Science of aquatic & terrestrial environments
F710	Marine sciences
F720	Hydrography
F730	Ocean sciences
F731	Ocean circulation
F732	Oceanographic survey & monitoring
F733	Land-ocean interaction
F734	Atmosphere-ocean interactions
F750	Environmental sciences
F751	Applied environmental sciences
F752	Hydrology
F753	Pollution control
F754	Biogeochemical cycles
F755	Environmental informatics
F756	Environmental physiology
F760	Climatology
F761	Meteorology
F762	Large-scale atmospheric dynamics & transport
F763	Boundary-layer meteorology
F764	Climate & climate change
F765	Radiative processes & effects
F770	Soil science
F780	Glaciology & cryospheric systems
F790	Science of aquatic & terrestrial environments not elsewhere classified
F800	Physical geographical sciences
F810	Environmental geography
F811	Biogeography
F840	Physical geography

F841	Maritime geography
F842	Geomorphology
F843	Topography
F844	Cartography
F845	Remote sensing
F846	Geographical information systems
F890	Physical geographical sciences not elsewhere classified
F900	Others in physical sciences
F990	Physical sciences not elsewhere classified
F000	Physical sciences
G100	Mathematics
G110	Pure mathematics
G120	Applied mathematics
G121	Mechanics (mathematical)
G130	Mathematical methods
G140	Numerical analysis
G150	Mathematical modelling
G160	Engineering/industrial mathematics
G170	Computational mathematics
G190	Mathematics not elsewhere classified
G200	Operational research
G290	Operational research not elsewhere classified
G300	Statistics
G310	Applied statistics
G311	Medical statistics
G320	Probability
G330	Stochastic processes
G340	Statistical modelling
G350	Mathematical statistics
G390	Statistics not elsewhere classified
G900	Others in mathematical sciences
H100	General engineering
H110	Integrated engineering
H120	Safety engineering
H121	Fire safety engineering
H122	Water quality control
H123	Public health engineering
H130	Computer-aided engineering
H131	Automated engineering design
H140	Mechanics
H141	Fluid mechanics
H142	Solid mechanics
H143	Structural mechanics
H150	Engineering design
H160	Bioengineering, biomedical engineering & clinical engineering
H161	Biomaterials
H162	Biomechanics (including fluid & solid mechanics)
H163	Bioelectronics & bioelectricity
H164	Rehabilitation engineering
H165	Tissue engineering & regenerative medicine
H166	Imaging
H167	Biosensors
H168	Medical devices & instrumentation
H169	Neural engineering
H190	General engineering not elsewhere classified
H200	Civil engineering
H210	Structural engineering
H220	Environmental engineering
H221	Energy resources
H222	Coastal decay
H223	Environmental impact assessment
H230	Transport engineering
H231	Permanent way engineering
H232	Pavement engineering

H240	Surveying science
H241	General practice surveying
H242	Engineering surveying
H250	Geotechnical engineering
H290	Civil engineering not elsewhere classified
H300	Mechanical engineering
H310	Dynamics
H311	Thermodynamics
H320	Mechanisms & machines
H321	Turbine technology
H330	Automotive engineering
H331	Road vehicle engineering
H332	Rail vehicle engineering
H333	Ship propulsion engineering
H340	Acoustics & vibration
H341	Acoustics
H342	Vibration
H350	Offshore engineering
H360	Electromechanical engineering
H390	Mechanical engineering not elsewhere classified
H400	Aerospace engineering
H410	Aeronautical engineering
H411	Air passenger transport engineering
H412	Air freight transport engineering
H413	Air combat engineering
H420	Astronautical engineering
H430	Avionics
H440	Aerodynamics
H441	Flight mechanics
H450	Propulsion systems
H460	Aviation studies
H490	Aerospace engineering not elsewhere classified
H500	Naval architecture
H510	Shipbuilding
H511	Surface passenger ship building
H512	Surface freight ship building
H513	Surface combat ship building
H514	Submarine building
H520	Ship design
H521	Surface passenger ship design
H522	Surface freight ship design
H523	Surface combat ship design
H524	Submarine design
H590	Naval architecture not elsewhere classified
H600	Electronic & electrical engineering
H610	Electronic engineering
H611	Microelectronic engineering
H612	Integrated circuit design
H620	Electrical engineering
H630	Electrical power
H631	Electrical power generation
H632	Electrical power distribution
H640	Communications engineering
H641	Telecommunications engineering
H642	Broadcast engineering
H643	Satellite engineering
H644	Microwave engineering
H650	Systems engineering
H651	Digital circuit engineering
H652	Analogue circuit engineering
H660	Control systems
H661	Instrumentation control
H662	Control by light systems
H670	Robotics & cybernetics

H671	Robotics
H672	Cybernetics
H674	Virtual reality engineering
H680	Optoelectronic engineering
H690	Electronic & electrical engineering not elsewhere classified
H700	Production & manufacturing engineering
H710	Manufacturing systems engineering
H711	Manufacturing systems design
H712	Manufacturing installation systems
H713	Production processes
H714	Manufacturing systems maintenance
H720	Quality assurance engineering
H730	Mechatronics
H790	Production & manufacturing engineering not elsewhere classified
H800	Chemical, process & energy engineering
H810	Chemical engineering
H811	Biochemical engineering
H812	Pharmaceutical engineering
H820	Atomic engineering
H821	Nuclear engineering
H830	Chemical process engineering
H831	Bioprocess engineering
H840	Gas engineering
H850	Petroleum engineering
H890	Chemical, process & energy engineering not elsewhere classified
H900	Others in engineering
H990	Engineering not elsewhere classified
H000	Engineering
I100	Computer science
I110	Computer architectures & operating systems
I111	Computer architectures
I112	Operating systems
I113	Displays & imaging
I114	High end computing
I115	Parallel computing
I120	Networks & communications
I130	Computational science foundations
I140	Human-computer interaction
I150	Multimedia computing science
I160	Internet
I161	e-business
I190	Computer science not elsewhere classified
I200	Information systems
I210	Information modelling
I220	Systems design methodologies
I230	Systems analysis & design
I240	Databases
I250	Systems auditing
I260	Data management
I270	Intelligent & expert systems
I290	Systems analysis & design not elsewhere classified
I300	Software engineering
I310	Software design
I320	Programming
I321	Procedural programming
I322	Object-oriented programming
I323	Declarative programming
I390	Software engineering not elsewhere classified
I400	Artificial intelligence
I410	Speech & natural language processing
I420	Knowledge representation
I430	Neural computing
I440	Computer vision
I450	Cognitive modelling

I460	Machine learning
I461	Automated reasoning
I490	Artificial intelligence not elsewhere classified
I500	Health informatics
I510	Health technologies
I520	Bioinformatics
I530	Tele healthcare
I590	Health informatics not elsewhere classified
I600	Games
I610	Computer games programming
I620	Computer games design
I630	Computer games graphics
I700	Computer generated visual & audio effects
I710	Computer generated imagery
I900	Others in Computer sciences
I990	Computer sciences not elsewhere classified
J100	Minerals technology
J110	Mining
J120	Quarrying
J130	Rock mechanics
J140	Minerals processing
J150	Minerals surveying
J160	Petrochemical technology
J190	Minerals technology not elsewhere classified
J200	Metallurgy
J210	Applied metallurgy
J220	Metallic fabrication
J221	Pattern making
J230	Corrosion technology
J290	Metallurgy not elsewhere classified
J300	Ceramics & glass
J310	Ceramics
J320	Glass technology
J390	Ceramics & glass not elsewhere classified
J400	Polymers & textiles
J410	Polymers technology
J411	Plastics
J420	Textiles technology
J421	Textile chemistry
J422	Dyeing & colouring of textiles
J430	Leather technology
J431	Tanning
J440	Clothing production
J441	Machine knitting
J442	Commercial tailoring
J443	Pattern cutting
J444	Millinery
J445	Footwear production
J490	Polymers & textiles not elsewhere classified
J500	Materials technology not otherwise specified
J510	Materials technology
J511	Engineering materials
J512	Paper technology
J513	Furniture technology
J520	Printing
J521	Offset lithography
J522	Photo-lithography
J523	Reprographic techniques
J524	Screen process printing
J530	Gemmology
J590	Materials technology not elsewhere classified
J600	Maritime technology
J610	Marine technology
J611	Marine navigation

J612	Marine radar
J613	Marine radio
J614	Marine plumbing
J690	Maritime technology not elsewhere classified
J700	Biotechnology
J710	Plant biotechnology (crops, trees, shrubs etc.)
J720	Animal biotechnology
J730	Environmental biotechnology
J740	Industrial biotechnology
J750	Medical biotechnology
J790	Biotechnology not elsewhere classified
J900	Others in technology
J910	Energy technologies
J920	Ergonomics
J930	Audio technology
J931	Music recording
J940	Machinery maintenance
J941	Office machinery maintenance
J942	Industrial machinery maintenance
J950	Musical instrument technology
J960	Transport logistics
J970	Emergency & disaster technologies
J990	Technologies not elsewhere classified
J000	Technologies
K100	Architecture
K110	Architectural design theory
K120	Interior architecture
K130	Architectural technology
K190	Architecture not elsewhere classified
K200	Building
K210	Building technology
K220	Construction management
K230	Building surveying
K240	Quantity surveying
K250	Conservation of buildings
K251	Property development
K290	Building not elsewhere classified
K300	Landscape & garden design
K310	Landscape architecture
K320	Landscape studies
K330	Landscape design
K340	Garden design
K341	Garden horticulture
K390	Landscape & garden design not elsewhere classified
K400	Planning (urban, rural & regional)
K410	Regional planning
K420	Urban & rural planning
K421	Urban planning
K422	Rural planning
K430	Planning studies
K440	Urban studies
K450	Housing
K460	Transport planning
K490	Planning (urban, rural & regional) not elsewhere classified
K900	Others in architecture, building & planning
K990	Architecture, building & planning not elsewhere classified
K000	Architecture, building & planning
L100	Economics
L110	Applied economics
L111	Financial economics
L112	Agricultural economics
L113	Economic policy
L120	Microeconomics
L130	Macroeconomics

L140	Econometrics
L150	Political economics
L160	International economics
L170	Economic systems
L171	Capitalism
L172	Monetarism
L173	Keynesianism
L174	Collectivism
L190	Economics not elsewhere classified
L200	Politics
L210	Political theories
L211	Liberalism
L212	Conservatism
L213	Socialism
L214	Nationalism
L215	Fascism
L216	Feminism
L217	Environmentalism
L218	Anarchism
L220	Political systems
L221	Autocracy
L222	Democracy
L223	Plutocracy
L224	Oligarchy
L230	UK government/parliamentary studies
L231	Public administration
L232	UK constitutional studies
L240	International politics
L241	European Union politics
L242	Commonwealth politics
L243	Politics of a specific country/region
L244	International constitutional studies
L250	International relations
L251	Strategic studies
L252	War & peace studies
L253	International criminology
L260	Comparative politics
L290	Politics not elsewhere classified
L300	Sociology
L310	Applied sociology
L311	Applied criminology
L312	Victimology
L320	Gender studies
L321	Women's studies
L322	Men's studies
L330	Ethnic studies
L340	Disability in society
L350	Religion in society
L360	Socio-economics
L370	Social theory
L371	Social hierarchy
L380	Political sociology
L390	Sociology not elsewhere classified
L391	Sociology of science & technology
L400	Social policy
L410	UK social policy
L420	International social policy
L430	Public policy
L431	Health policy
L432	Welfare policy
L433	Education policy
L434	Transport policy
L435	Security policy
L436	Emergency services policy

L437	Criminal justice policy
L490	Social policy not elsewhere classified
L500	Social work
L510	Health & welfare
L520	Child care
L530	Youth work
L540	Community work
L541	Community justice
L550	Careers guidance
L560	Probation/after-care
L590	Social work not elsewhere classified
L600	Anthropology
L610	Social & cultural anthropology
L611	Criminological theory
L620	Physical & biological anthropology
L690	Anthropology not elsewhere classified
L700	Human & social geography
L710	Human & social geography by area
L711	Human & social geography of Europe
L712	Human & social geography of Asia
L713	Human & social geography of Africa
L714	Human & social geography of Australasia
L715	Human & social geography of the Americas
L716	Human & social geography of the Arctic/Antarctic
L720	Human & social geography by topic
L721	Economic geography
L722	Urban geography
L723	Political geography
L724	Transport geography
L725	Historical geography
L726	Cultural geography
L727	Agricultural geography
L728	Human Demography
L790	Human & social geography not elsewhere classified
L800	Development studies
L900	Others in social studies
L990	Social studies not elsewhere classified
L000	Social studies
M100	Law by area
M110	UK legal systems
M111	English law
M112	Welsh law
M113	Northern Irish law
M114	Scottish law
M120	European Union law
M130	Public international law
M140	Comparative law
M190	Law by area not elsewhere classified
M200	Law by topic
M210	Public law
M211	Criminal law
M220	Private law
M221	Business & commercial law
M222	Contract law
M223	Property law
M224	Torts
M240	Jurisprudence
M250	Legal practice
M260	Medical law
M270	Sociology of law
M290	Law by topic not elsewhere classified
M900	Others in law
M990	Law not elsewhere classified
M000	Law

N100	Business studies
N110	European business studies
N120	International business studies
N190	Business studies not elsewhere classified
N200	Management studies
N210	Management techniques
N211	Strategic management
N212	Creative management
N213	Project management
N214	Change management
N215	Organisational development
N220	Institutional management
N223	Domestic management
N224	Management & organisation of education
N225	Criminal justice management
N230	Land & property management
N231	Land management
N232	Property management
N234	Property valuation & auctioneering
N240	Retail management
N250	Emergency & disaster management
N251	Emergency services management
N252	Disaster management
N290	Management studies not elsewhere classified
N300	Finance
N310	Banking
N320	Investment & insurance
N321	Investment
N322	Insurance
N323	Actuarial science
N330	Taxation
N340	Financial management
N341	Financial risk
N390	Finance not elsewhere classified
N400	Accounting
N410	Accountancy
N411	Cost & management accountancy
N412	Public accountancy
N413	Book keeping
N420	Accounting theory
N421	Auditing of accounts
N422	Financial reporting
N490	Accounting not elsewhere classified
N500	Marketing
N510	Market research
N520	Sales management
N530	Distribution
N550	International marketing
N560	Promotion & advertising
N561	Advertising
N562	Corporate image
N563	Sponsorship
N590	Marketing not elsewhere classified
N600	Human resource management
N611	Industrial relations
N612	Staff development
N613	Training methods
N614	Recruitment methods
N620	Health & safety issues
N690	Human resources management not elsewhere classified
N700	Office skills
N710	Office administration
N720	Secretarial & typing skills
N721	Audio typing

N722	Shorthand & shorthand transcription
N790	Office skills not elsewhere classified
N800	Hospitality, leisure, sport, tourism & transport
N810	Travel management
N820	Event management
N830	Tourism
N831	Tourism studies
N832	Tourism management
N850	Transport studies
N851	Land travel
N852	Sea travel
N853	Air travel
N860	Hospitality
N861	Hospitality studies
N862	Hospitality management
N870	Recreation & leisure studies
N871	Spa management
N872	Salon management
N880	Sport management
N890	Hospitality, leisure, sport, tourism & transport not elsewhere classified
N900	Others in business & administrative studies
N990	Business & administrative studies not elsewhere classified
N000	Business & administrative studies
P100	Information services
P110	Information management
P120	Librarianship
P121	Library studies
P130	Curatorial studies
P131	Museum studies
P132	Archive studies
P190	Information services not elsewhere classified
P200	Publicity studies
P210	Public relations
P290	Publicity studies not elsewhere classified
P300	Media studies
P301	Television studies
P302	Radio studies
P303	Film studies
P304	Electronic media studies
P305	Paper-based media studies
P310	Media production
P311	Television production
P312	Radio production
P313	Film production
P390	Media studies not elsewhere classified
P400	Publishing
P410	Electronic publishing
P411	Publishing on audio/video tape
P412	Publishing on CD-ROM
P413	Publishing via the World Wide Web
P420	Multimedia publishing
P430	Interactive publishing
P490	Publishing not elsewhere classified
P500	Journalism
P510	Factual reporting
P590	Journalism not elsewhere classified
P900	Others in mass communications & documentation
P990	Mass communications & documentation not elsewhere classified
P000	Mass communications & documentation
Q100	Linguistics
Q110	Applied linguistics
Q120	Historical linguistics
Q130	Phonetics & phonology
Q131	Phonetics

Q132	Phonology
Q140	Sociolinguistics
Q150	Psycholinguistics
Q160	British Sign Language
Q190	Linguistics not elsewhere classified
Q200	Comparative literary studies
Q210	Literature in translation
Q220	Literature in its original language
Q290	Comparative literary studies not elsewhere classified
Q300	English studies
Q310	English language
Q320	English literature
Q321	English literature by period
Q322	English literature by author
Q323	English literature by topic
Q330	English as a second language
Q340	English literature written as a second language
Q350	Scots language
Q360	Scots literature
Q370	Irish language
Q380	Irish literature
Q390	English studies not elsewhere classified
Q400	Ancient language studies
Q410	Ancient Egyptian
Q411	Coptic
Q420	Classical Arabic
Q430	Akkadian
Q440	Sumerian
Q450	Sanskrit
Q460	Prakrit
Q470	Aramaic
Q480	Hebrew
Q490	Ancient language studies not elsewhere classified
Q500	Celtic studies
Q510	Ancient Celtic studies
Q520	Modern Celtic studies
Q521	Goidelic group of languages
Q522	Brythonic group of languages
Q530	Scottish Gaelic
Q531	Scottish Gaelic literature
Q540	Irish Gaelic
Q541	Irish Gaelic literature
Q550	Manx
Q551	Manx literature
Q560	Welsh
Q561	Welsh literature
Q570	Cornish
Q571	Cornish literature
Q580	Breton
Q581	Breton literature
Q590	Celtic studies not elsewhere classified
Q600	Latin studies
Q610	Latin language
Q611	Church Latin
Q612	Medieval Latin
Q620	Latin literature
Q630	Latin literature in translation
Q690	Latin studies not elsewhere classified
Q700	Classical Greek studies
Q710	Classical Greek language
Q711	Classical Church Greek
Q712	Late Greek
Q720	Classical Greek literature
Q730	Classical Greek literature in translation

Q790	Classical Greek studies not elsewhere classified
Q800	Classical studies
Q810	Classical reception
Q890	Classical studies not elsewhere classified
Q900	Others in linguistics, classics & related subjects
Q910	Translation studies
Q920	Translation theory
Q990	Linguistics, classics & related subjects not elsewhere classified
Q000	Linguistics, classics & related subjects
R100	French studies
R110	French language
R120	French literature
R130	French society & culture
R190	French studies not elsewhere classified
R200	German studies
R210	German language
R220	German literature
R230	German society & culture
R290	German studies not elsewhere classified
R300	Italian studies
R310	Italian language
R320	Italian literature
R330	Italian society & culture
R390	Italian studies not elsewhere classified
R400	Spanish studies
R410	Spanish language
R411	Spanish languages in other countries
R420	Spanish literature
R430	Spanish society & culture
R490	Spanish studies not elsewhere classified
R500	Portuguese studies
R510	Portuguese language
R511	Portuguese languages in other countries
R520	Portuguese literature
R530	Portuguese society & culture
R590	Portuguese studies not elsewhere classified
R600	Scandinavian studies
R610	Scandinavian languages
R611	Swedish language
R612	Norwegian language
R613	Finnish language
R614	Danish language
R620	Scandinavian literature
R621	Swedish literature
R622	Norwegian literature
R623	Finnish literature
R624	Danish literature
R630	Scandinavian society & culture
R631	Swedish society & culture
R632	Norwegian society & culture
R633	Finnish society & culture
R634	Danish society & culture
R690	Scandinavian studies not elsewhere classified
R700	Russian & East European studies
R701	Russian studies
R702	Czech studies
R703	Polish studies
R704	Belarusian studies
R705	Bulgarian studies
R706	Hungarian studies
R707	Romanian studies
R708	Slovak studies
R709	Ukrainian studies
R710	Russian & East European languages

R711	Russian language
R712	Polish language
R713	Czech language
R720	Russian & east European Literature
R721	Russian literature
R722	Polish literature
R723	Czech literature
R730	Russian & east European society & culture
R731	Russian society & culture
R732	Polish society & culture
R733	Czech society & culture
R790	Russian & east European studies not elsewhere classified
R800	European studies
R900	Others in European languages, literature & related subjects
R910	Other European languages
R911	Dutch
R912	Flemish
R920	Other European literature
R930	Other European societies & cultures
R990	European languages, literature & related subjects not elsewhere classified
R000	European languages, literature & related subjects
T100	Chinese studies
T110	Chinese language studies
T120	Chinese literature studies
T130	Chinese society & culture studies
T190	Chinese studies not elsewhere classified
T200	Japanese studies
T210	Japanese language studies
T220	Japanese literature studies
T230	Japanese society & culture studies
T290	Japanese studies not elsewhere classified
T300	South Asian studies
T310	South Asian language studies
T311	Indian language studies
T312	Pakistani language studies
T313	Sri Lankan language studies
T314	Bangladeshi language studies
T315	Nepali language studies
T320	South Asian literature studies
T321	Indian literature studies
T322	Pakistani literature studies
T323	Sri Lankan literature studies
T324	Bangladeshi literature studies
T325	Nepali literature studies
T330	South Asian society & culture studies
T331	Indian society & culture studies
T332	Pakistani society & culture studies
T333	Sri Lankan society & culture studies
T334	Bangladeshi society & culture studies
T335	Nepali society & culture studies
T390	South Asian studies not elsewhere classified
T400	Other Asian studies
T410	Other Asian language studies
T411	East Asian language studies
T412	South East Asian language studies
T420	Other Asian literature studies
T421	East Asian literature studies
T422	South East Asian literature studies
T430	Other Asian society & culture studies
T431	East Asian society & culture studies
T432	South East Asian society & culture studies
T490	Other Asian studies not elsewhere classified
T500	African studies
T510	African language studies

T511	Eastern African language studies
T512	Central African language studies
T513	Northern African language studies
T514	Southern African language studies
T515	Western African language studies
T520	African literature studies
T521	Eastern African literature studies
T522	Central African literature studies
T523	Northern African literature studies
T524	Southern African literature studies
T525	Western African literature studies
T530	African society & culture studies
T531	Eastern African society & culture studies
T532	Central African society & culture studies
T533	Northern African society & culture studies
T534	Southern African society & culture studies
T535	Western African society & culture studies
T590	African studies not elsewhere classified
T600	Modern Middle Eastern studies
T610	Modern Middle Eastern language studies
T611	Arabic language studies
T612	Modern Standard Arabic language studies
T613	Persian language studies
T614	Modern Hebrew language studies
T615	Kurdish language studies
T616	Turkish language studies
T620	Modern Middle Eastern literature studies
T621	Arabic literature studies
T623	Persian literature studies
T624	Modern Hebrew literature studies
T625	Kurdish literature studies
T626	Turkish literature studies
T630	Modern Middle Eastern society & culture studies
T631	Arab society & culture studies
T633	Persian society & culture studies
T634	Modern Hebrew society & culture studies
T635	Kurdish society & culture studies
T636	Turkish society & culture studies
T690	Modern Middle Eastern studies not elsewhere classified
T700	American studies
T710	American language studies
T711	Latin American language studies
T712	United States language studies
T713	Canadian language studies
T714	Caribbean language studies
T720	American literature studies
T721	Latin American literature studies
T722	United States literature studies
T723	Canadian literature studies
T724	Caribbean literature studies
T730	American society & culture studies
T731	Latin American society & culture studies
T732	United States society & culture studies
T733	Canadian society & culture studies
T734	Caribbean society & culture studies
T790	American studies not elsewhere classified
T800	Australasian studies
T810	Australasian language studies
T820	Australasian literature studies
T830	Australasian society & culture studies
T890	Australasian studies not elsewhere classified
T900	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages, literature & related subjects
T910	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages

T920	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian literature
T930	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian societies & culture
T990	Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages, literature
T000	Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages, literature & related subjects
V100	History by period
V140	Modern history
V141	Modern history 1500-1599
V142	Modern history 1600-1699
V143	Modern history 1700-1799
V144	Modern history 1800-1899
V145	Modern history 1900-1919
V146	Modern history 1920-1949
V147	Modern history 1950-1999
V148	Modern history 2000-2099
V150	Medieval history
V160	Ancient history
V161	Late Antique history
V190	History by period not elsewhere classified
V200	History by area
V210	British history
V211	Irish history
V212	Scottish history
V213	Welsh history
V214	English history
V220	European history
V221	French history
V222	German history
V223	Italian history
V224	Iberian history
V225	Russian history
V230	American history
V231	Canadian history
V232	USA history
V233	South American history
V234	Central American history
V240	Asian history
V241	Chinese history
V242	Indian history
V243	South East Asian history
V244	Byzantine History
V250	African history
V251	North African history
V252	Central African history
V253	Southern African history
V254	East African history
V255	West African history
V260	Australasian history
V261	Australian history
V262	New Zealand history
V270	World history
V271	International history
V290	History by area not elsewhere classified
V300	History by topic
V310	Economic history
V320	Social history
V321	Local history
V322	Oral history
V323	Family history
V324	Crime history
V330	History of religions
V340	Intellectual history
V350	History of art

V360	History of architecture
V370	History of design
V380	History of science
V381	History of physics
V382	History of chemistry
V383	History of mathematics
V384	History of medicine
V390	History by topic not elsewhere classified
V391	Military history
V400	Archaeology
V410	Egyptology
V420	Stone Age
V430	Bronze Age
V440	Iron Age
V450	Archaeological conservation
V460	Archaeological techniques
V470	Classical art & archaeology
V471	Roman art & archaeology
V472	Greek art & archaeology
V490	Archaeology not elsewhere classified
V500	Philosophy
V510	Metaphysics
V511	Epistemology
V520	Moral philosophy
V530	Scholastic philosophy
V540	Social philosophy
V550	Philosophy of science
V560	Mental philosophy
V590	Philosophy not elsewhere classified
V600	Theology & religious studies
V610	Theology
V620	Religious studies
V621	Christian studies
V622	Islamic studies
V623	Judaism
V624	Hinduism
V625	Buddhism
V626	Other Asian religious studies
V627	Comparative religious studies
V630	Divinity
V640	Religious writings
V641	The Bible & Christian texts
V642	The Qur'an & Islamic texts
V643	The Torah & Judaic texts
V644	Asian religious texts
V645	Comparative religious texts
V650	Pastoral studies
V690	Theology & religious studies not elsewhere classified
V700	Heritage studies
V710	Heritage theory
V720	Heritage site management
V730	Natural heritage
V731	Coastal heritage management
V740	Visitor management including interpretation
V750	Oral history, heritage & genealogy
V900	Others in historical & philosophical studies
V990	Historical & philosophical studies not elsewhere classified
V000	Historical & philosophical studies
W100	Fine art
W110	Drawing
W120	Painting
W130	Sculpture
W140	Printmaking
W150	Calligraphy

W160	Fine art conservation
W190	Fine art not elsewhere classified
W200	Design studies
W210	Graphic design
W211	Typography
W212	Multimedia design
W213	Visual communication
W220	Illustration
W230	Clothing/fashion design
W231	Textile design
W240	Industrial/product design
W250	Interior design
W260	Furniture design
W270	Ceramics design
W280	Interactive & electronic design
W290	Design studies not elsewhere classified
W300	Music
W310	Musicianship/performance studies
W311	Instrumental or vocal performance
W312	Musical theatre
W313	Conducting
W314	Jazz performance
W315	Popular music performance
W316	Electronic/electro-acoustic music performance
W317	Historical performance practice
W320	Music education/teaching
W330	History of music
W340	Types of music
W341	Popular music
W342	Film music/screen music
W343	Jazz
W344	Folk music
W345	Opera
W346	Sacred music
W350	Musicology
W351	Ethnomusicology/world music
W352	Community music
W353	Music & gender
W354	Philosophy, aesthetics & criticism of music
W355	Music psychology
W356	Music theory & analysis
W357	Sociology of music
W360	Musical instrument history
W370	Music technology & industry
W371	Sound design/commercial music recording
W372	Creative music technology
W373	Electro-acoustic studies
W374	Music production
W375	Music management/music industry management/arts management
W376	Music marketing
W380	Composition
W381	Electroacoustic composition/acousmatic composition
W382	Sonic arts
W383	Electronic music
W384	Applied music/musicianship
W385	Commercial music composition
W386	Multimedia music composition
W387	Jazz composition
W388	Popular music composition
W390	Music not elsewhere classified
W400	Drama
W410	Acting
W420	Directing for theatre
W430	Producing for theatre

W440	Theatre studies
W441	Theatre & professional practice
W442	Contemporary theatre
W443	Technical arts & special effects for theatre
W450	Stage management
W451	Theatrical wardrobe design
W452	Theatrical make-up
W453	Technical stage management
W460	Theatre design
W461	Stage design
W470	Performance & live arts
W471	European/world theatre arts
W472	Circus arts
W473	Community theatre
W490	Drama not elsewhere classified
W500	Dance
W510	Choreography
W520	Body awareness
W530	History of dance
W531	Dance & culture
W532	Community dance
W540	Types of dance
W541	Ballet
W542	Dance theatre
W543	Contemporary dance
W544	Jazz dance
W550	Dance performance
W590	Dance not elsewhere classified
W600	Cinematics & photography
W610	Moving image techniques
W611	Directing motion pictures
W612	Producing motion pictures
W613	Film & sound recording
W614	Visual & audio effects
W615	Animation techniques
W620	Cinematography
W630	History of cinematics & photography
W631	History of cinematics
W632	History of photography
W640	Photography
W690	Cinematics & photography not elsewhere classified
W700	Crafts
W710	Fabric & leather crafts
W711	Needlecraft
W712	Dressmaking
W713	Soft furnishing
W714	Weaving
W715	Leatherwork
W720	Metal crafts
W721	Silversmithing/goldsmithing
W722	Blacksmithing
W723	Clock/watchmaking
W730	Wood crafts
W731	Carpentry/joinery
W732	Cabinet making
W733	Marquetry & inlaying
W734	Veneering
W740	Surface decoration
W750	Clay & stone crafts
W751	Pottery
W752	Tile making
W753	Stone crafts
W760	Reed crafts
W761	Basketry

	W762 Thatching W770 Glass crafts W771 Glassblowing W780 Paper crafts W781 Bookbinding W782 Origami W790 Crafts not elsewhere classified W800 Imaginative writing W810 Scriptwriting W820 Poetry writing W830 Prose writing W890 Imaginative writing not elsewhere classified W900 Others in creative arts & design W990 Creative arts & design not elsewhere classified W000 Creative arts & design X100 Training teachers X110 Training teachers - nursery X120 Training teachers - primary X121 Training teachers - infant (key stage 1) X122 Training teachers - junior (key stage 2) X130 Training teachers - secondary X131 Training teachers - key stage 3 X132 Training teachers - key stage 4 X140 Training teachers - tertiary X141 Training teachers - further education X142 Training teachers - higher education X150 Training teachers - adult education X151 Training teachers - coaching X160 Training teachers - specialist X161 Training teachers - special needs X162 Teaching English as a Foreign Language (TEFL) X190 Training teachers not elsewhere classified X200 Research & study skills in education X210 Research skills X220 Study skills X290 Research & study skills in education not elsewhere classified X300 Academic studies in education X310 Academic studies in nursery education X320 Academic studies in primary education X330 Academic studies in secondary education X340 Academic studies in tertiary education X341 Academic studies in further education X342 Academic studies in higher education X350 Academic studies in adult education X360 Academic studies in specialist education X370 Academic studies in education (across phases) X390 Academic studies in education not elsewhere classified X900 Others in education X990 Education not elsewhere classified X000 Education Y000 Combined/general subject unspecified
Notes	<p>The Joint Academic Coding System (JACS3) provides for all subjects to be coded according to a common, truly hierarchical, four-character subject code. JACS3 will be used substantially in subject representation across the sector. The full JACS 3.0 classification provides definitions for each JACS subject to assist in coding.</p> <p>Institutions are required to make appropriate use of the full 4-digit JACS coding in all subject areas. This is needed to future-proof work on strategically important and vulnerable subjects, so that as the landscape changes, it will be possible to assess the past performance of newly important subjects. This requirement applies to both Courses and Modules. There will be some courses and modules where it remains appropriate to code at principal subject level, but others where a more detailed code should be used.</p>

So for example, a general Biology course would continue to be coded as C100, but a specific course/module in Biodiversity would be coded C181. Similarly, a generic Religious Studies course would be V600, but a specific Islamic Studies course would be V622.

The generic codes that consist of a subject group and letter (and Y000) can be used in this field to describe a truly interdisciplinary programme.

For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction.

Research Councils

Where courses are taken by students funded by Research Councils, (Code Instance.RCSTDNT of 01 to 09) then this field must be coded to JACS3 Principal subject level, that is, using the first two characters of the code (the second digit cannot be 0, so generic codes cannot be used for such courses).

Postgraduate courses in England and Northern Ireland in Price Group A

For institutions in England and Northern Ireland, codes A300, A400 and C842/C845 can only be used for postgraduate taught students if

- The course bears very high costs comparable to the clinical unit of resource, or
- A substantial proportion of the staff teaching time contributed to the course is provided by medically or dentally qualified university funded clinical academic staff, who hold honorary contracts with the NHS. This includes general practitioners.
- The course is normally taught in a clinical environment.

For institutions in England and Northern Ireland, codes A300, A400 and C842/C845 can only be used for research students if focus of their research is in a clinical environment and the lead supervisor should be a clinical academic.

Dental courses

Codes A200 and A400 must only be used for pre-clinical and clinical dentists: other courses must use either A900 (Others in medicine & dentistry) or B750 Dental nursing.

Medical, Dental and Veterinary students:

Institutions in England, Wales and NI:

For undergraduate medical and dental courses where students move from pre-clinical to clinical subjects in later years of the course, this should normally be recorded as one course for all years of the instance. CourseSubject.SBJCA should in this case be coded as joint clinical/pre-clinical ie both A100 and A300 or both A200 and A400. It may, in some cases, be appropriate to code this as two separate courses where there is a clear separation between the two parts of the course.

Institutions in Scotland:

For undergraduate medical and veterinary courses where students move from pre-clinical to clinical subjects in later years of the course, this must be recorded as separate courses for the pre-clinical and clinical years of the instance.

General guidance on HE and FE coverage

This field must be completed for HE level students funded by the SFA/EFA or DfES (Instance.FESTUMK = 3).

For FE level students in England and Wales (Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 4) for whom Course.FEQAIMC is completed, CourseSubject entity must not be returned.

However, if a generic code is used within Course.FEQAIMC then the SFA/EFA requires institutions to also complete this field in order to give detail of the subject area of the qualification.

From 2012/13, EFA will be replacing YPLA. More information about EFA replacing YPLA can be found on the Department for Education website.

For initial teacher training students in England and Wales

The National College for Teaching and Leadership (NCTL) needs to be able to link ITT students in England to the intake target from which the NCTL has allocated numbers. In addition, only a subset of JACS3 codes are appropriate for ITT programmes. The NCTL wants to ensure that only appropriate subjects are recorded. There is a similar requirement from HEFCW for ITT students in Wales. At institutions in England and Wales students identified as being initial teacher training students (Course.TTCID = 1 or 8) must be coded using this subset of JACS3. Further details are given below.

Further guidance from the NCTL is available from the Department of Education website at www.education.gov.uk.

Primary ITT Programmes (Course.ITTPHSC = 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 51, 52, 53, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77)

The requirement on primary programmes to train students in at least one specialism is no longer compulsory.

Students commencing programmes of study after 1 September 2002 who choose not to study a primary specialism should use code X120 in this field.

Where trainees continue to study a primary specialism, a valid JACS3 code should be used in this field as follows:

Subject	JACS3 code:
Art	W900
Creative and Media	P390
Design and technology	W200
English	Q300
Geography	L700
German	R200
History	V100

Information and communications technology	I200
Italian	R300
Mathematics	G100
Music	W300
Physical education	C600
Religious education	V600
Science (Biology, Chemistry, Physics)	C100, F100, F300
Spanish	R400
French	R100
Portuguese	R500
Welsh	Q560
Advanced study of early years	X900
Drama	W400
Dance	W500
Citizenship	L230
PHSE	L390

No primary specialism X120 (code available for students where Instance.COMDATE is after 1 September 2002 only).

Where a primary specialism is being studied institutions must enter the code of the main specialism in this field and indicate 'S' in CourseSubject.ITTSUBJECT. If a second specialism is offered, institutions should also record this.

Institutions should ensure that codes relating to the subject the student is funded for are returned. Any institution wishing to enter a code not included in the current subject list should contact the NCTL or HEFCW directly.

Secondary ITT Programmes and ITT Programmes Covering the 7-14 Age Range
(Course.ITTPHSC = 24, 25, 26, 54, 55, 56, 57, 78, 79, 80 or 81)

All programmes must train students in at least one specialism. It is essential that this specialism corresponds to the target from which the NCTL has allocated numbers. Some programmes will train students to teach additional specialisms.

For the specialisms: The table below sets out the list of subjects appropriate to secondary ITT programmes with corresponding JACS3 codes.

Subject	JACS3 code:
Art	W900
Design and technology	W200
Graphics	W210
English	Q300
Dance	W500
Drama	W400
Geography	L700
Textiles	J420
History	V100
Information and communications technology	I200
Mathematics	G100
French	R100
German	R200

Italian	R300
Portuguese	R500
Russian	R700
Spanish	R400
Welsh	Q560
Other modern languages	R900
Music	W300
Business studies	N100
Social sciences/Social studies	L900
Classics	Q800
Physical education	C600
Religious education	V600
Biology	C100
Food technology	D600
Chemistry	F100
Physics	F300
Media	P300
Combined/General sciences	C900 F900 with a 50/50 balance
Citizenship	L230
Vocational - Applied science	Applied biology C110, Applied chemistry F110, Applied physics F310
Vocational - Engineering	H900
Vocational - Recreation, sport and leisure studies	N870
Vocational - Applied art and design	W990
Vocational - Manufacturing	H700
Vocational - Applied ICT	I900
Vocational - Health and social care	L510
Vocational - Applied business	N190
Media studies not elsewhere classified	P390
Psychology	C800
PHSE	L390
Physics with Maths	F390

If a second, or third, specialism is offered institutions should also record it in a repeating occurrence of this field.

HESA has introduced validation checks to ensure that only those codes listed above can be recorded.

Institutions should ensure that codes relating to the subject the student is funded for are returned. Any institution wishing to enter a code not included in the current subject list should contact the NCTL or HEFCW directly.

Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE)

The table below sets out the list of subjects appropriate to Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE) programmes with corresponding JACS codes (i.e. Course.TTCID F)

	<p>Subject JACS code</p> <p>Physics F300</p> <p>Chemistry F100</p> <p>Mathematics G100</p> <p>Design and Technology W200</p> <p>ICT I200</p> <p>Modern Languages R900</p> <p>Music W300</p> <p>Other Science C900</p> <p>Religious Education V600</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error The second character of CourseSubject.SBJCA cannot be 0 where any Instance.RCSTDNT = 01 - 09.</p> <p>2 Error CourseSubject.SBJCA must be coded C100, C600, F100, F300, G100, I200, L230, L390, L700, P390, Q300, Q560, R100, R200, R300, R400, R500, V100, V600, W200, W300, W400, W500, W900, X900, X120 or X121 where Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H and Instance.ITTPHSC = 15 - 19, 51 - 53, 61 - 65 or 71 - 77.</p> <p>4 Error CourseSubject.SBJCA must be coded C100, C110, C600, C800, C900, D600, F100, F110, F300, F310, F390, F900, G100, H700, H900, I200, I900, J420, L230, L390, L510, L700, L900, N100, N190, N870, P300, P390, Q300, Q560, Q800, R100, R200, R300, R400, R500, R700, R900, V100, V600, W200, W210, W300, W400, W500, W900 or W990 where Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H and Instance.ITTPHSC = 24 - 26, 54 - 57, or 78 - 81.</p> <p>5 Error For institutions in England, one, and only one, CourseSubject.SBJCA must be coded F900 where any CourseSubject.SBJCA = C900 and Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H and Instance.ITTPHSC = 24 -26, 54 - 57, or 78 - 81.</p> <p>6 Warning If CourseSubject.SBJCA begins with B82 for institutions in England and Course.COURSEAIM ends with '16' then CourseSubject.SBJCA should be coded B821 or B822.</p> <p>7 Warning If CourseSubject.SBJCA begins with B7 for institutions in England and Course.COURSEAIM ends with '16' then CourseSubject.SBJCA should be coded B720, B730, B740, B750, B760 or B761.</p> <p>8 Error The first character of CourseSubject.SBJCA must be 'D' where Course.COURSEAIM is coded H16, H62, I16, M16, M26 or M86 and Course.REGBODY = 14.</p> <p>9 Error The first character of CourseSubject.SBJCA must be 'A' or CourseSubject.SBJCA must equal B750, where Course.COURSEAIM is coded H16, H62, I16, M16, M26 or M86 and Course.REGBODY = 02.</p> <p>10 Error CourseSubject.SBJCA cannot be coded X110, X120, X121 or X122 for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 8 and QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC = 2.</p> <p>11 Error CourseSubject.SBJCA cannot be coded X130, X131, X132, X140, X141,</p>

	<p>13 Error X142, X150 or X151 for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 8 and QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC = 1</p> <p>14 Error CourseSubject.SBJCA must be unique for each Course entity</p> <p>15 Error For institutions in England, one, and only one, CourseSubject.SBJCA must be coded C900 where any CourseSubject.SBJCA = F900 and Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H and Instance.ITTPHSC = 24 -26, 54 - 57, or 78 - 81.</p> <p>16 Error For institutions in England where Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H and Instance.ITTPHSC = 24 - 26, 54 - 57, or 78 - 81, CourseSubject.SBJCA codes C110, F110 and F310 must always be used together as a triplet.</p> <p>17 Error For institutions in England CourseSubject.SBJCA codes C100, F100 and F300 can only be used together where Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H and Instance.ITTPHSC = 15 - 19, 51 - 53 or 71 -77.</p> <p>20 Error CourseSubject.SBJCA must be coded B700, B760, B761, B790, L300, L310, L400, L410, L500, L510, L520, L530, L540, L541, L560 or L590 where Course.REGBODY = 08.</p> <p>21 Error Where Course.SKEOS is coded 1 at least one occurrence of CourseSubject.SBJCA must begin with R.</p> <p>22 Error For institutions in Scotland CourseSubject.SBJCA must not be coded A300 where any other occurrence of CourseSubject.SBJCA = A100.</p> <p>23 Error For institutions in Scotland CourseSubject.SBJCA must not be coded A400 where any other occurrence of CourseSubject.SBJCA = A200.</p> <p>24 Error For institutions in Scotland CourseSubject.SBJCA must not be coded D200, D210, D220 or D290 where any other occurrence of CourseSubject.SBJCA = D100 or D190.</p> <p>25 Error CourseSubject.SBJCA must be coded C900, F100, F300, G100, I200, R900, V600, W200 or W300 where Course.TTCID = F.</p> <p>CourseSubject.SBJCA must be coded F100, F300, or G100 where Course.TTCID = F and Course.CTITLE begins SKEPLUS</p>
Reason Required	To allow analysis and monitoring of the student population by subject of study.
Part Of	Course subject
Field Length	4
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SBJCA Data type: SBJCACodeContentType
Related Fields	SBJPCNT ITTSUBJECT
Owner	HESA/UCAS
Version	1.3
Date modified	2013-07-30
Change management notes	Link to the full JACS 3.0 classification added to Notes.

Subject of ITT Specialism indicator

Type	field
Short Name	ITTSUBJECT
Description	This field indicates which subject field is the ITT specialism(s) for the course
Applicable to	England
Coverage	Compulsory for one subject for NCTL funded courses (Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G, H, J or K)
Valid Entries and Labels	S ITT Programme subject specialism
Notes	
Business rules	<p>1 Error At least one CourseSubject.ITTSUBJECT must exist where institution is in England and Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H and any Instance.ITTPHSC is anything other than 31 or 49.</p> <p>2 Error CourseSubject.ITTSUBJECT must not exist for institutions not in England.</p> <p>3 Error CourseSubject.ITTSUBJECT must not exist where Institutions in England and Course.TTCID = 0.</p>
Reason Required	To enable NCTL to monitor student numbers against funding allocations for primary and secondary subject specialisms.
Part Of	Course subject
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ITTSUBJECT Data type: ITTSUBJECTCodeContentType
Related Fields	TTCID ITTPHSC SBJCA
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated for the introduction of TTCID codes G and H (School Direct initiatives).

Subject percentage

Type	field
Short Name	SBJPCNT
Description	This field indicates the proportion of time allocated for each subject studied on a course. It should contain an integer between 1 and 100.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All course subject records
Notes	<p>This field allows institutions to assign their own percentages for joint honours courses. It is not expected that these percentages will be derived from a detailed analysis of the contributions of subjects to individual students' programmes of study but will instead be based on a broad assessment of the relative contributions of each subject. It is therefore expected that most institutions will apply the same percentages to all courses and only vary this where there is a substantially different expectation.</p> <p>For institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales the listed standard percentages are recommended. Where broad assessment of the subject contributions markedly differs from these standard percentages alternative values can be returned.</p> <p>For institutions in Scotland the listed standard percentages are obligatory.</p> <p>Balanced 50 for each of the two subjects Major - Minor 67 and 33 Triple 34, 33 and 33</p> <p>For each Course entity the sum of SBJPCNT must equal 100.</p> <p>The length of this field is 3 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros, e.g. 003 or 3.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error For each Course entity the sum of CourseSubject.SBJPCNT must equal 100.</p> <p>2 Error All CourseSubject.SBJPCNT must be coded '50' where any CourseSubject.SBJCA = F000 or C000 and Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H and any Instance.ITTPHSC = 24 -26, 51 - 57, or 78 - 81.</p> <p>3 Error CourseSubject.SBJPCNT must contain '33, 34, 50, 67 or 100 for institutions in Scotland.</p>
Reason Required	To allow analysis and monitoring of the student population by subject of study.
Part Of	Course subject
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SBJPCNT Data type: SBJPCNTType
Related Fields	SBJCA
Owner	HESA

Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 2 updated for the introduction of TTCID codes G and H (School Direct initiatives).

Employment status monitoring

Type	entity
Short Name	EmploymentStatusMonitoring
Description	This entity collects additional monitoring data about the employment status.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All LearnerEmploymentStatus records where LearnerEmploymentStatus.EMPSTAT = 10, 11 or 12.
Notes	<p>This entity should be completed to provide additional employment status monitoring data and is collected in association with certain types of employment status as detailed below. Where more than one of the indicators (listed in EmploymentStatusMonitoring.ESMTYPE) applies the entity should be repeated.</p> <p>Self employment indicator (SEI) Max no. of occurrences = 1</p> <p>This should be completed if applicable for records where Instance.EMPSTAT is recorded as code 10 "In paid employment".</p> <p>Employment Intensity indicator (EII) Max no. of occurrences = 1</p> <p>This should be completed on all records dated on or after 1 August 2011 (in LearnerEmploymentStatus.DATEEMPSTATAPP) where Instance.EMPSTAT is recorded as code 10 "In paid employment".</p> <p>Length of Unemployment (LOU) Max no. of occurrences = 1</p> <p>This should be completed on all records where Instance.EMPSTAT is recorded as either code 11 "Not in paid employment and looking for work" or code 12 "Not in paid employment and not looking for work".</p> <p>Benefit Status Indicator (BSI) Max no. of occurrences = 1</p> <p>This should be completed on all records dated on or after 1 August 2011 (in LearnerEmploymentStatus.DATEEMPSTATAPP) where applicable. The benefit status indicator will be used to monitor learner eligibility for Job Outcome Achievement payments.</p> <p>Code 4 should only be used where the learner can show that they are part of Universal Credit Pathfinder pilot. This code is available to be used from 1 April 2013.</p> <p>Previous Education Indicator (PEI) Max no. of occurrences = 1</p> <p>This should be completed if applicable.</p> <p>Risk of NEET (RON) Max no. of occurrences = 1</p>

	This code must only be used if the learner is aged 14-15, is at risk of NEET and is participating in ESF funded learning.
Business rules	1 Error LearnerEmploymentStatus.EmploymentStatusMonitoring entity must exist where LearnerEmploymentStatus.EMPSTAT = 10, 11 or 12.
Reason Required	
Part Of	Learner Employment Status
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	6
Has Parts	Employment status monitoring type (ESMTYPE) Employment status monitoring code (ESMCODE)
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 added to enforce coverage of new entity.

Employment status monitoring code

Type	field
Short Name	ESMCODE
Description	This field identifies additional monitoring data associated with the employment status.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All EmploymentStatusMonitoring records that are returned.
Notes	For additional guidance please refer to the Employment Status Monitoring entity notes. The following table shows valid codes for ESMCODE depending on the value in EmploymentStatusMonitoring.ESMTYPE.
Reason Required	To monitor economic activity of learners, support delivery of programmes for the unemployed and establish eligibility for ESF funded programmes.
Part Of	Employment status monitoring
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ESMCODE Data type: ESMCODEType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.1
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Coverage statement and guidance revised to align more closely with the Individual Learner Record (ILR). Notes amended to add code 4 'Learner is in receipt of Universal Credit' to valid codes in this field for a corresponding EmploymentStatusMonitoring.ESMTYPE of BSI. The range of unassigned codes in this field for an EmploymentStatusMonitoring.ESMTYPE of BSI has been updated to '5-10' as a result.

Employment status monitoring type

Type	field
Short Name	ESMTYPE
Description	This field identifies additional monitoring data associated with the employment status
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All EmploymentStatusMonitoring records that are returned.
Valid Entries and Labels	SEI Self employment indicator EII Employment intensity indicator LOU Length of unemployment BSI Benefit status indicator PEI Previous education indicator RON Risk of NEET
Notes	For additional guidance please refer to the Employment Status Monitoring entity notes.
Reason Required	To monitor economic activity of learners, support delivery of programmes for the unemployed and establish eligibility for ESF funded programmes
Part Of	Employment status monitoring
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ESMTYPE Data type: ESMTYPECodeContentType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.1
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Coverage statement and guidance revised to align more closely with the Individual Learner Record (ILR).

Entry profile

Type	entity
Short Name	EntryProfile
Description	This describes a student's academic and personal history as at the beginning of the Instance.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Compulsory for instances where Instance.COMDATE is in the current reporting year or where the Instance has not been previously reported. Optional in cases where previously supplied EntryProfile data needs to be corrected.
Notes	<p>An Entry Profile is required for all entrants, that is instances with a Instance.COMDATE in the current reporting year or instances not previously reported to HESA.</p> <p>The Entry Profile and Qualification on Entry entities are only compulsory when a new instance is created. HESA will rely on HIN linkage to link data from these entities to the Instance in subsequent years and institutions should not routinely return Entry Profile data for continuing instances. Since the Entry Profile contains fields that describe information at the beginning of the Instance, the information should not change in subsequent years, unless to correct identified errors or to provide previously unknown data. If an Entry Profile is returned for a continuing instances it must be complete i.e. all required fields must be completed and no previously returned data replaced by default or unknown values.</p> <p>There is further guidance available here on Entry Profile Processing.</p>
Business rules	1 Error EntryProfile entity must exist where corresponding Instance.COMDATE is in the current reporting year.
Reason Required	This entity is defined to hold those fields that describe the situation at the beginning of the instance.
Part Of	Instance
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Has Parts	Domicile (DOMICILE) Postcode (POSTCODE) Highest qualification on entry (QUALENT2) UCAS Application Number (UCASAPPID) Parental education (PARED) Dependents on entry (NIDEPEND) Marital status (MARSTAT) Religion (RELIGION) Socio-economic classification (SEC) Occupation code (SOC2000) Year left last institution (YRLLINST) Last institution attended (PREVINST) Articulation (ARTICLN) Access programmes (ACCESS) New entrant to higher education (NEWENT) PGCE subject of undergraduate degree (PGCESBJ) PGCE class of undergraduate degree (PGCECLSS)

	Welsh Baccalaureate Advanced Diploma (WELBACC) Highest qualification on entry (QUALENT3) Qualifications on entry
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Access programmes

Type	field
Short Name	ACCESS
Description	This field records whether entrants have entered HE via SWAP courses.
Applicable to	Scotland
Coverage	All entrants to institutions in Scotland where EntryProfile.QUALENT2 = 44 or 45 or EntryProfile.QUALENT3 is X00 or X01
Valid Entries and Labels	1 Entered HE via the SWAP 2 Entered HE via other access programme excluding SWAP
Notes	Access to HE programmes have played an important role in widening access to higher education in Scotland. The majority of Scottish Access Programmes are run under the auspices of the Scottish Wider Access Programme (SWAP) and Continuing Education Departments in Scottish HEIs.
Business rules	1 Error EntryProfile.ACCESS must exist for institutions in Scotland where (EntryProfile.QUALENT2 = 44 or 45) or (EntryProfile.QUALENT3 = X00 or X01) 2 Error EntryProfile.ACCESS must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Wales.
Reason Required	To monitor the success of SWAP.
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ACCESS Data type: ACCESSCodeContentType
Related Fields	QUALENT2
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Articulation

Type	field
Short Name	ARTICLN
Description	This field identifies whether a student has been admitted to the current instance with advanced standing; the advanced standing having been awarded on the basis of an HND/HNC qualification and the student has not previously studied at degree or post-graduate level
Applicable to	Scotland
Coverage	All entrants to institutions in Scotland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE, IM and on courses where Course.COURSEAIM = M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, H24, I00, I11, I16 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04 and Instance.COMDATE is after 2007-07-31
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Articulating student: Previous HNC obtained at an FEC</p> <p>2 Articulating student: Previous HNC obtained at an HEI (including UHI)</p> <p>3 Articulating student: Previous HND obtained at an FEC</p> <p>4 Articulating student: Previous HND obtained at an HEI (including UHI)</p> <p>7 First degree level student who is/was not articulating in this programme</p> <p>8 Information sought but not known</p>
Notes	<p>The information for this field should come from the institutions' admissions office and reflect the reasons why a student has been granted advanced standing i.e. is allowed to start part-way through the course. Usually this will be under formal articulation arrangements for the course, but any entry with advanced standing where the advanced standing was granted because of an HND/HNC qualification (including partial completion) and the student has never studied at degree level should be included.</p> <p>Where previous qualifications/HE experience is not known some students may have to be asked a direct question along the lines of: "Have you ever started a degree level course before?" those answering yes would not be regarded as articulating for this field. The outcome of any previous study is not relevant to this particular field nor is whether the degree level study was before or after obtaining the HND/HNC.</p> <p>All first degree students should have one of the codes 1 to 8.</p> <p>Code 7 'First degree level student who is/was not articulating in this programme' covers both students coming in with qualifications other than HND/HNC and also those who are coming in with those qualifications but who are excluded on the grounds of having previously started a course at degree level.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error EntryProfile.ARTICLN must exist for institutions in Scotland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM and Course.COURSEAIM = M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, H24, I00, I11 or I16 and Instance.COMDATE is after 2007-07-31 and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04</p> <p>2 Error EntryProfile.ARTICLN must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Wales.</p>
Reason Required	To assess the effectiveness of measures to improve access to degree level study through recruitment to HNC/HND programmes in colleges; the student has to demonstrate that they are moving up, not sideways, i.e. no previous degree level study has taken place.

Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ARTICLN Data type: ARTICLNCodeContentType
Related Fields	YRLLINST
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Dependents on entry

Type	field
Short Name	NIDEPEND
Description	This field will record whether the student has any dependents.
Applicable to	Northern Ireland
Coverage	All entrants to institutions in Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XG and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04
Valid Entries and Labels	01 Young people/children 02 Other relatives/friends 03 No dependents 04 Both young people/children & other relatives/friends 99 Not known/Not answered
Notes	In codes 01 and 04, 'Young people/children' refers to young people aged 17 and under financially or otherwise dependant on the student.
Business rules	1 Error EntryProfile.NIDEPEND must exist for institutions in Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XG and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04. 2 Error EntryProfile.NIDEPEND must not exist for institutions in England, Scotland or Wales.
Reason Required	To comply with Northern Ireland statutory Equal Opportunities monitoring
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: NIDEPEND Data type: NIDEPENDCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	New valid entry added - '99 Not known/Not answered'.

Domicile

Type	field
Short Name	DOMICILE
Description	This field holds the country code of the student's permanent or home address prior to entry to the course. It is not necessarily the correspondence address of the student.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All entrants
Valid Entries and Labels	AF Afghanistan XQ Africa not otherwise specified AX Åland Islands {Ahvenamaa} AL Albania DZ Algeria AS American Samoa AD Andorra AO Angola AI Anguilla XX Antarctica and Oceania not otherwise specified AG Antigua and Barbuda AR Argentina AM Armenia AW Aruba XS Asia (Except Middle East) not otherwise specified AU Australia AT Austria AZ Azerbaijan BS Bahamas, The BH Bahrain BD Bangladesh BB Barbados BY Belarus BE Belgium BZ Belize BJ Benin BM Bermuda BT Bhutan BO Bolivia BQ Bonaire, Sint Eustatius and Saba BA Bosnia and Herzegovina BW Botswana BR Brazil VG British Virgin Islands [Virgin Islands, British] BN Brunei [Brunei Darussalam] BG Bulgaria BF Burkina [Burkina Faso] MM Burma [Myanmar] BI Burundi KH Cambodia CM Cameroon CA Canada IC Canary Islands CV Cape Verde XW Caribbean not otherwise specified KY Cayman Islands CF Central African Republic XU Central America not otherwise specified TD Chad

XL	Channel Islands not otherwise specified
CL	Chile
CN	China
CX	Christmas Island
CC	Cocos (Keeling) Islands
CO	Colombia
KM	Comoros
CG	Congo
CD	Congo (Democratic Republic) [Congo (The Democratic Republic of the)] {formerly Zaire}
CK	Cook Islands
CR	Costa Rica
HR	Croatia
CU	Cuba
CW	Curaçao
XA	Cyprus (European Union)
XB	Cyprus (Non-European Union)
XC	Cyprus not otherwise specified
CZ	Czech Republic
DK	Denmark
DJ	Djibouti
DM	Dominica
DO	Dominican Republic
TL	East Timor [Timor Leste]
EC	Ecuador
EG	Egypt
SV	El Salvador
XF	England
GQ	Equatorial Guinea
ER	Eritrea
EE	Estonia
ET	Ethiopia
XP	Europe not otherwise specified
EU	European Union not otherwise specified
FK	Falkland Islands [Falkland Islands (Malvinas)]
FO	Faroe Islands
FJ	Fiji
FI	Finland
FR	France {includes Corsica}
GF	French Guiana
PF	French Polynesia
GA	Gabon
GM	Gambia, The
GE	Georgia
DE	Germany
GH	Ghana
GI	Gibraltar
GR	Greece
GL	Greenland
GD	Grenada
GP	Guadeloupe
GU	Guam
GT	Guatemala
GG	Guernsey
GN	Guinea
GW	Guinea-Bissau
GY	Guyana
HT	Haiti
HN	Honduras
HK	Hong Kong (Special Administrative Region of China) [Hong Kong]
HU	Hungary
IS	Iceland
IN	India
ID	Indonesia

IR	Iran [Iran, Islamic Republic of]
IQ	Iraq
IE	Ireland
IM	Isle of Man
IL	Israel
IT	Italy {Includes Sardinia, Sicily}
CI	Ivory Coast [Côte D'ivoire]
JM	Jamaica
JP	Japan
JE	Jersey
JO	Jordan
KZ	Kazakhstan
KE	Kenya
KI	Kiribati
KP	Korea (North) [Korea, Democratic People's Republic of]
KR	Korea (South) [Korea, Republic of]
QO	Kosovo
KW	Kuwait
KG	Kyrgyzstan
LA	Laos [Lao People's Democratic Republic]
LV	Latvia
LB	Lebanon
LS	Lesotho
LR	Liberia
LY	Libya [Libyan Arab Jamahiriya]
LI	Liechtenstein
LT	Lithuania
LU	Luxembourg
MO	Macao (Special Administrative Region of China) [Macao]
MK	Macedonia [Macedonia, The Former Yugoslav Republic of]
MG	Madagascar
MW	Malawi
MY	Malaysia
MV	Maldives
ML	Mali
MT	Malta
MH	Marshall Islands
MQ	Martinique
MR	Mauritania
MU	Mauritius
YT	Mayotte
MX	Mexico
FM	Micronesia [Micronesia, Federated States of]
XR	Middle East not otherwise specified
MD	Moldova [Moldova, Republic of]
MC	Monaco
MN	Mongolia
ME	Montenegro
MS	Montserrat
MA	Morocco
MZ	Mozambique
NA	Namibia
NR	Nauru
NP	Nepal
NL	Netherlands
AN	Netherlands Antilles
NC	New Caledonia
NZ	New Zealand
NI	Nicaragua
NE	Niger
NG	Nigeria
NU	Niue
NF	Norfolk Island
XT	North America not otherwise specified

XG	Northern Ireland
MP	Northern Mariana Islands
NO	Norway
ZZ	Not known
PS	Occupied Palestinian Territories [Palestine, State of] {formerly West Bank (including East Jerusalem) and Gaza Strip}
OM	Oman
PK	Pakistan
PW	Palau
PA	Panama
PG	Papua New Guinea
PY	Paraguay
PE	Peru
PH	Philippines
PN	Pitcairn, Henderson, Ducie and Oeno Islands [Pitcairn]
PL	Poland
PT	Portugal {includes Madeira, Azores}
PR	Puerto Rico
QA	Qatar
RE	Réunion
RO	Romania
RU	Russia [Russian Federation]
RW	Rwanda
WS	Samoa
SM	San Marino
ST	Sao Tome and Principe
SA	Saudi Arabia
XH	Scotland
SN	Senegal
RS	Serbia
SC	Seychelles
SL	Sierra Leone
SG	Singapore
SX	Sint Maarten (Dutch part)
SK	Slovakia
SI	Slovenia
SB	Solomon Islands
SO	Somalia
ZA	South Africa
XV	South America not otherwise specified
GS	South Georgia and The South Sandwich Islands
SS	South Sudan
ES	Spain {includes Ceuta, Melilla}
LK	Sri Lanka
BL	St Barthélemy
SH	St Helena, Ascension and Tristan da Cunha
KN	St Kitts and Nevis
LC	St Lucia
MF	St Martin (French Part) [St Martin]
PM	St Pierre and Miquelon
VC	St Vincent and The Grenadines
SD	Sudan
SR	Surinam [Suriname]
SJ	Svalbard and Jan Mayen
SZ	Swaziland
SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland
SY	Syria [Syrian Arab Republic]
TW	Taiwan [Taiwan, Province of China]
TJ	Tajikistan
TZ	Tanzania [Tanzania, United Republic of]
TH	Thailand
TG	Togo
TK	Tokelau

	<p>TO Tonga TT Trinidad and Tobago TN Tunisia TR Turkey TM Turkmenistan TC Turks and Caicos Islands TV Tuvalu UG Uganda UA Ukraine AE United Arab Emirates XK United Kingdom, not otherwise specified US United States VI United States Virgin Islands [Virgin Islands, U. S.] UY Uruguay UZ Uzbekistan VU Vanuatu VA Vatican City [Holy See (Vatican City State)] VE Venezuela VN Vietnam [Viet Nam] XI Wales WF Wallis and Futuna EH Western Sahara YE Yemen ZM Zambia ZW Zimbabwe</p>
Notes	<p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction. UCAS will first use the complete new code list for entrants in 2009. Therefore in 2008/09 institutions can use the more limited codes as provided in the *J, however, institutions can recode if they choose. The details of the coding that will be provided by UCAS can be found in the *J specification.</p> <p>HESA Guidance</p> <p>This coding frame is determined by the National Statistics Country Classification 2006 (NSCC), which is based on ISO 3166-1 Codes for the Representation of Names of Countries and their Subdivisions, and the United Nations' Standard Country or Area Codes for Statistical Use. In a small number of cases, the NSCC usage differs from the usage in ISO 3166 on which the NSCC is based. Where that happens, the ISO 3166 usage is given in brackets after the preferred UK usage, to facilitate cross-reference to the international standard. For example for code KR the description is Korea (South). The text in brackets, [Korea, Republic of], is the ISO 3166 description. Information in braces is provided by HESA to clarify usage, and is not derived either from NSCC or ISO 3166 lists of short country names, for example Spain {includes Ceuta, Melilla}.</p> <p>Where HESA publishes domicile and nationality data it does so using the National Statistics Country Classification 2006 (NSCC) code labels. HESA includes the ISO 3166-1 description [text in brackets] and additional information {text in braces} within the valid entry labels to ensure that labeling standards, both UK and international, are available only for cross-referencing. HESA does not insist that HEIs display these additional descriptions in their own output.</p> <p>Note: 'no settled inhabitants' means no inhabitants apart from military and scientific personnel, staff of contractors, and seasonal residents. Codes for countries with no settled inhabitants are referred to in the guidance but omitted from the valid entries list, for example, AQ Antarctica.</p>

GB, XF, XG, XH, XI, XJ, XK: United Kingdom

For **domicile** the separate country codes XF, XG, XH, XI must be used, and if domicile is known to be United Kingdom but the individual country is not known, XK must be used. The code GB is invalid for domicile. For **nationality** the code GB must be used. The codes XF, XG, XH, XI, XK are invalid for nationality. The code XJ is invalid for both domicile and nationality. Note that the code UK is not in the NSCC list and is invalid for both domicile and nationality.

GG, JE, XL: Guernsey and Jersey (Channel Islands)

The Channel Islands are not part of the United Kingdom and not part of the European Union. United Kingdom codes must not be used for either domicile or nationality. The Bailiwicks of Guernsey (which includes the smaller islands of Alderney and Sark) and of Jersey must be treated separately, and the codes GG and JE must be used for both **domicile** and **nationality**. The code XL may be used for either domicile or nationality, but only for student instances from 2007/08 onwards that were already current in 2006/07, to avoid the need for re-coding.

IM: Isle of Man

The Isle of Man is not part of the United Kingdom and not part of the European Union. United Kingdom codes must not be used either for domicile or nationality. The code IM must be used for both **domicile** and **nationality**.

CY, XA, XB, XC: Cyprus

The following treatment does not imply any recognition that the *de facto* Turkish occupation and control of northern Cyprus is legitimate, but does deal with the practical need to record the source of students. The separate codes Cyprus (European Union) (XA) and Cyprus (non European Union) (XB) must be used for both **domicile** and **nationality**. The code XC may be used for either domicile or nationality, but only for student instances from 2007/08 that were already current in 2006/07, to avoid the need for re-coding, or for new entrants in 2007/08 who entered through UCAS. Note that an appropriate United Kingdom code should be used for both domicile and nationality for students from the British sovereign military areas on Cyprus. The code CY is invalid for both domicile and nationality unless and until there is any change in the political situation, in which case the coding arrangements will be reviewed.

FI, AX: Finland and the Åland Islands

The Åland Islands (Åhvenamaa) are an autonomous demilitarised region of Finland, and are part of the European Union subject to some derogations and special provisions. For **domicile** the code FI must be used only for Finland excluding the Åland Islands, and the code AX must be used for the Åland Islands. The passport held by Åland Islanders is an EU-style passport distinguished from the normal Finnish passport by the addition of the word 'Åland' below 'FINLAND', but this does not imply a separate nationality. Accordingly, for **nationality** only the code FI is to be used, and the code AX is invalid.'

FO, GL: Faroe Islands and Greenland

The Faroe Islands and Greenland must be treated separately, and the codes FO and GL must be used for both **domicile** and **nationality**. Note that, despite their relationship with Denmark, neither Greenland nor the Faroe Islands are part of the European Union.

FR, GF, GP, MQ, RE, YT, PM, PF, WF, BL, MF, TF and NC: French Republic

The French Republic comprises Metropolitan France (France Métropolitain) [including Corsica], the four Overseas Departments (Départements d'Outre-Mer, or D.O.M.) of French Guiana (GF), Guadeloupe (GP), Martinique (MQ), and Réunion (RE), the six Overseas Collectivities (Collectivités d'Outre-Mer, or C.O.M.) of Mayotte (YT), St Pierre & Miquelon (PM), French Polynesia (PF) [also designated as a Pays d'Outre-Mer], and Wallis & Futuna (WF), St Barthélemy (BL), St Martin (French Part) (MF), the Overseas Territory (Territoire d'Outre-Mer, or T.O.M.) of the French Southern Territories (TF), and finally New Caledonia (NC) which has a special status similar to a T.O.M..

Metropolitan France and the four Overseas Departments are all part of the European Union. For **domicile**, the code FR must be used **only** for Metropolitan France, and other codes must be used with their natural meaning, except that there are no settled inhabitants in the French Southern Territories, so code TF is invalid. For **nationality** the code FR must be used throughout, and all the other codes in this group are invalid.

IT, VA: Italy and Vatican City (Holy See)

Italy and Vatican City must be treated separately, and the codes IT and VA must be used for both **domicile** and **nationality**.

NL, AW, CW, SX, BQ, AN: Kingdom of the Netherlands

The Kingdom of the Netherlands comprises the European country of The Netherlands (NL); the Caribbean country of Aruba (AW), and the former island territories of the Netherlands Antilles: Curaçao (CW); Sint Maarten (Dutch part) (SX); and the combined special municipalities of Bonaire, Sint Eustatius and Saba (BQ).

On October 10th 2010, the Netherlands Antilles (AN) was dissolved and its constituent island territories became constituent countries or special municipalities of the Kingdom of the Netherlands in their own right. Consequently, the Netherlands Antilles (AN) has ceased to be a valid code for entrants from 2011/12 onwards in DOMICILE, and has been superseded by the following codes:

- CW** Curaçao
- SX** Sint Maarten (Dutch part)
- BQ** Bonaire, Sint Eustatius and Saba

Where institutions are using the 2011 UCAS data for HESA transaction (formerly *J), any 2011 entrants coded (AN) Netherlands Antilles (UCAS code 637) must be recoded (CW) Curaçao, (SX) Sint Maarten (Dutch part) or (BQ) Bonaire, Sint Eustatius and Saba to pass HESA validation.

There is no obligation for institutions to recode continuing students recorded with a domicile of the Netherlands Antilles (AN) to these domiciles, but they may do so if the information is available.

For **domicile**, the code NL must be used only for The Netherlands in Europe, and the codes AW, CW, SX, and BQ must be used with their natural meaning. AN may continue to be used for students who entered prior to 2011/12 if more detailed information is not available. For **nationality** the code NL must be used throughout, and codes AW, CW, SX, BQ and AN are invalid.

ES, IC, XD, XE: Spain and the Canary Islands

The Canary Islands are part of Spain, and hence of the European Union, but with some special derogations and provisions particularly relating to customs and fiscal matters. For **domicile**, the code ES must be used for mainland Spain and the code IC must be used for the Canaries. For **nationality**, the code ES must be used for both mainland Spain and the Canaries. The codes XD and XE, although in the NSCC list, are invalid for both domicile and nationality. No separate codes are provided in the NSCC list for the exclaves of Ceuta and Melilla on the coast of north Africa, and for both domicile and nationality purposes they should be regarded as part of mainland Spain.

NO, SJ, BV: Norway and Svalbard and Jan Mayen

Svalbard (Spitzbergen) is an inhabited Norwegian territory in the Arctic Ocean. for **domicile** the code SJ must be used for Svalbard, and the code NO must be used only for Norway excluding Svalbard. For **nationality** the code NO must be used throughout, and SJ is invalid. Jan Mayen Island is included with Svalbard under code SJ, but has no settled inhabitants. Bouvet Island (BV) is a Norwegian island in the South Atlantic Ocean, but has no settled inhabitants, so code BV is invalid for both domicile and nationality.

MA, EH; Morocco, Western Sahara

Western Sahara (EH) is a disputed territory occupied and administered by Morocco (MA). The code EH should be used where appropriate for both **domicile** and **nationality**.

PS: Occupied Palestinian Territories

This code description changed in 2008/09 to reflect the change in the National Statistics Country Classification. It must be used where appropriate for both **domicile** and **nationality**.

US, PR, VI, GU, MP, AS, UM, MH, FM, PW: United States, Puerto Rico, US Virgin Islands, Guam, Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, United States Minor Outlying Islands, Marshall Islands, Micronesia, Palau

The Commonwealth of Puerto Rico is an Unincorporated Organized Territory of the United States; its current Commonwealth status grants it a measure of internal self-government, but the US Constitution reserves ultimate governance of the island to the US Congress and President. The Democratic Party 2008 Platform included an undertaking to resolve the permanent status of Puerto Rico by 2012, the principal alternatives being independence, US statehood, or a clarification of the present position. Puerto Ricans have been citizens of the United States since 1917. For **domicile** the code PR must be used. For **nationality** the code US must be used and the code PR is invalid.

The US Virgin Islands (the former Danish West Indies, purchased from Denmark by the United States in 1916) is an Unincorporated Organized Territory of the United States. US Virgin Islanders are citizens of the United States. For **domicile** the code VI must be used. For **nationality** the code US must be used and the code VI is invalid.

Guam (formerly part of the UN Trust Territory of the Pacific) is an Unincorporated Organized Territory of the United States. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code GU must be used.

The Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (formerly part of the UN Trust Territory of the Pacific) is an Unincorporated Organized Territory of the United States; its Commonwealth status grants it a measure of internal self-government. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code MP must be used.

American Samoa is an Unincorporated Unorganized Territory of the United States. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code AS must be used. The United States Minor Outlying Islands comprise Baker Island, Howland Island, Jarvis Island, Johnston Atoll, Kingman Reef, Midway Atoll, Palmyra Atoll and Wake Island in the Pacific, and Navassa Island in the Caribbean. They are Unincorporated (Incorporated in the case of Palmyra Atoll) Unorganized Territories of the United States. They have no settled inhabitants and the code UM is accordingly invalid for both **domicile** and **nationality**.

The Marshall Islands (formerly part of the UN Trust Territory of the Pacific) are a self-governing state in free association with the United States. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code MH must be used.

The Federated States of Micronesia (formerly part of the UN Trust Territory of the Pacific) are a self-governing state in free association with the United States. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code FM must be used.

Palau (formerly part of the UN Trust Territory of the Pacific) is a self-governing state in free association with the United States. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code PW must be used.

The use of the code US for **domicile** is accordingly limited to the United States only.

CN, TW, HK, MO: China, Taiwan, Hong Kong, Macao

China (CN) should be used for both **domicile** and **nationality** where relevant in cases not covered by the following guidance. Taiwan (TW) - The United Kingdom acknowledges the position of the Chinese Government that Taiwan is a province of China and recognises the Chinese Government as the sole legal government of China. The United Kingdom does not recognise Taiwan as a state and does not have diplomatic relations with Taiwan. However, because the United Kingdom accepts passports issued by the Taiwanese Authorities for immigration purposes, it is necessary to use a separate country code TW for Taiwan in both the **domicile** and **nationality** fields. This has no bearing on the United Kingdom's position on Taiwan's status.

Hong Kong (Special Administrative Region of China) (HK) appears separately for historical and immigration reasons as this Special Administrative Region issues different passports from those of the PRC. This code is not regarded as having any implications for issues of nationality, but should continue to be used in both the **domicile** and **nationality** fields.

Macao (Special Administrative Region of China) (MO) appears separately for historical and immigration reasons as this Special Administrative Region issues different passports from those of the PRC. This code is not regarded as having any implications for issues of nationality, but should continue to be used in both the **domicile** and **nationality** fields.

AU, CX, CC, NF, HM: Australia, Christmas Island, Cocos (Keeling) Islands, Norfolk Island, Heard Island and MacDonal Islands.

Christmas Island is a non-self-governing territory of Australia. For **domicile** the code CX

must be used. For **nationality** the code AU must be used and the code CX is invalid.

Cocos (Keeling) Islands is a non-self-governing territory of Australia. For **domicile** the code CC must be used. For **nationality** the code AU must be used and the code CC is invalid.

Norfolk Island is a non-self-governing territory of Australia. For **domicile** the code NF must be used. For **nationality** the code AU must be used and the code NF is invalid.

Heard Island and MacDonal Islands are a territory of Australia with no settled inhabitants. The code HM is accordingly invalid for both **domicile** and **nationality**

The use of the code AU for **domicile** is accordingly limited to Australia only.

NZ, CK, NU, TK: New Zealand, Cook Islands, Niue, and Tokelau

The Cook Islands are a self-governing state in free association with New Zealand; they form part of the Realm of New Zealand and Cook Islanders are New Zealand citizens. Accordingly, for **domicile** the code CK must be used for the Cook Islands, but for **nationality** the code NZ must be used and the code CK is invalid.

Niue is a self-governing state in free association with New Zealand; it forms part of the Realm of New Zealand and Niueans are New Zealand citizens. Accordingly, for **domicile** the code NU must be used for Niue, but for **nationality** the code NZ must be used and the code NU is invalid.

Tokelau is a non-self-governing territory of New Zealand. A proposal for Tokelau to become a self-governing state in free association with New Zealand, on a basis similar to that of the Cook Islands and Niue, narrowly failed to achieve the required two-thirds majority at a second referendum on self-determination in 2007. Following that outcome, further consideration of any change in the status of the territory has been suspended sine die. Accordingly, for **domicile** the code TK must be used, but for **nationality** the code NZ must be used and the code TK is invalid.

The use of the code NZ for **domicile** is accordingly limited to New Zealand only.

IO: British Indian Ocean Territory (BIOT)

The Chagos Islands form the principal part of this territory, and these include the island of Diego Garcia which is a leased to the United States of America as a major military base. The indigenous inhabitants of BIOT have been displaced elsewhere, and the territory accordingly has no settled inhabitants at present (on the above definition). Accordingly the code IO is invalid for **domicile**, but may be used as a **nationality** code for displaced indigenous inhabitants. IO will be made valid for domicile if at some point return of the indigenous inhabitants is permitted.

AQ: Antarctica

Since there are no settled inhabitants in Antarctica, code AQ is invalid for both domicile and nationality and is omitted from the list. See also code XX. Although there are a number of national territorial claims to parts of Antarctica, these have been in abeyance since the coming into force of the Antarctic Treaty in 1961.

	<p>QO: Kosovo</p> <p>A new code for Kosovo (QO) has been added to the classification in acknowledgement of the UK's recognition of Kosovo as an independent nation. This code is available for use from 2007/08, but institutions are not required to re-code existing students.</p> <p>SD and SS: Sudan and South Sudan</p> <p>South Sudan (SS), formerly part of Sudan (SD), became a country in its own right on July 9th 2011. There is no obligation for institutions to recode continuing students recorded with a domicile of Sudan (SD) to the newer domicile, but they may do so if the information is available.</p> <p>XM, XN, XO, EU, XP-XX, XY, XZ, AA, ZZ: Obsolete Countries, Regions, Stateless, and Unknown</p> <p>Codes XM, XN, XO, AA may not be used for domicile, for which they are invalid. The regional codes EU and XP to XX may be used if domicile is known only to this level of accuracy, in preference to using ZZ which should be a last resort. EU should be used in preference to XP if appropriate. For nationality, codes XM, XN, XO may be used only for students who hold these obsolete nationalities and no other, presumably because they emigrated at a time when the nationalities were current and they have never acquired any other nationality. Codes EU and XP to XX may not be used for nationality, for which they are invalid. Code XX may be used only in relation to Oceania, not Antarctica. Code AA should be used only when a student is known to be stateless, and code ZZ should be used when nationality is not known or when it is impossible from the available documentation to assign a nationality from the above list. Codes XY and XZ although in the NSCC list, are invalid for both domicile and nationality. Note that codes AA, EU and ZZ do not appear on the NSCC list.</p>
Examples	
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error EntryProfile.DOMICILE code XC must have an Instance.COMDATE before 2007-08-01 or EntryProfile.UCASAPPID must exist. 2 Error EntryProfile.DOMICILE code XL must have an Instance.COMDATE before 2007-08-01. 3 Error EntryProfile.DOMICILE must not be coded ZZ (unknown) when corresponding Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or Instance.REDUCEDI = 08. 4 Error For institutions in Northern Ireland, EntryProfile.DOMICILE must not be coded XK where Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L, M, H, I, J, C and Instance.COMDATE > Y1-07-31. 5 Error EntryProfile.DOMICILE must not be coded AN where Instance.COMDATE > 2011-07-31.
Reason Required	<p>To distinguish between home and overseas students and to disaggregate students by origin.</p> <p>To obtain the numbers of students domiciled in particular EC countries and elsewhere abroad, and hence calculate participation rates.</p> <p>To forecast the demand for student allowances and grants.</p> <p>To record cross-border flows.</p>
Part Of	Entry profile

Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: DOMICILE Data type: DOMICILECodeContentType
Owner	Information Standards Board - Aligned Data Definitions
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Valid entry PS relabelled from 'Occupied Palestinian Territories [Palestinian Territory, Occupied] {formerly West Bank (including East Jerusalem) and Gaza Strip}' to 'Occupied Palestinian Territories [Palestine, State of] {formerly West Bank (including East Jerusalem) and Gaza Strip}' to align with ISO 3166-1. Business rule 3 updated to stop DOMICILE being returned as unknown for the SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return as these students must be eligible to pay home fees.

Highest qualification on entry

Type	field
Short Name	QUALENT2
Description	This field indicates the highest qualification that a student holds on entry, not necessarily that applicable for entry to the course.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All entrants where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 04 and Instance.COMDATE is before 2010-08-01, unless EntryProfile.QUALENT3 is provided
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>01 Higher degree of UK institution</p> <p>02 Postgraduate diploma or certificate, excluding PGCE</p> <p>03 PGCE with QTS/GTC registration</p> <p>04 PGCE without QTS/GTC registration</p> <p>05 Postgraduate equivalent qualification not elsewhere specified</p> <p>10 Undergraduate qualifications with QTS</p> <p>11 First degree of UK institution</p> <p>12 Graduate of EU institution</p> <p>13 Graduate of other overseas institution</p> <p>14 GNVQ/GSVQ level 5</p> <p>15 NVQ/SVQ level 5</p> <p>16 Graduate equivalent qualification not elsewhere specified</p> <p>21 OU credit(s)</p> <p>22 Other credits from UK HE institution</p> <p>23 Certificate or diploma of education (i.e. non-graduate initial teacher training qualification)</p> <p>24 HNC or HND (including BTEC & SQA equivalents)</p> <p>25 Dip. HE</p> <p>26 GNVQ/GSVQ level 4</p> <p>27 NVQ/SVQ level 4</p> <p>28 Professional qualifications</p> <p>29 Foundation course at HE level</p> <p>30 Other HE qualification of less than degree standard</p> <p>31 Foundation Degree</p> <p>37 GNVQ/GSVQ level 3</p> <p>38 NVQ/SVQ level 3</p> <p>39 'A' level equivalent qualification not elsewhere specified</p> <p>40 Any combinations of GCE 'A'/SQA 'Higher'/SQA 'Advanced Higher' & GNVQ/GSVQ or NVQ/SVQ at level 3</p> <p>41 ONC or OND (including BTEC & SQA equivalents)</p> <p>43 Foundation course at FE level</p> <p>44 Access course (QAA recognised)</p> <p>45 Access course (not QAA recognised)</p> <p>47 Baccalaureate</p> <p>55 GCSE/'O' level qualifications only; SQA 'O' grades & Standard grades</p> <p>56 Other non-advanced qualification</p> <p>57 NVQ/SVQ level 2</p> <p>72 Diploma in Foundation Studies (Art & Design)</p> <p>92 Accreditation of Prior (Experiential) Learning (APEL/APL)</p> <p>93 Mature student admitted on basis of previous experience (without formal APEL/APL) &/or institution's own entrance examinations</p> <p>94 Advanced Modern Apprenticeships</p> <p>97 Other non-UK qualification, level not known</p> <p>98 Student has no formal qualification</p> <p>99 Not known</p>
Notes	For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction.

Where Instance.COMDATE is before 2010-08-01, this coding frame may be used. It is not a requirement to recode to EntryProfile.QVALENT3 for continuing student instances, but institutions may do so if they wish.

Code 99 'Not known' should not be used as a standard default. Institutions are expected to seek and code 'Highest qualification on entry'.

Should a student have more than one of the qualifications listed, it is for the institution to decide which is the 'highest'. In cases where it is unclear which qualification is the 'highest', enter the code which is closest to '01'.

Codes 37 GNVQ/GSVQ level 3 and 38 NVQ/SVQ level 3 may be used where a student holds both level 3 qualifications and GCE 'A' Level/SCE 'Higher' qualifications, if it is the institution's judgement that these the GNVQ/GSVQ/NVQ/SVQ qualifications are 'highest'. Such students will not normally be included in tariff calculations.

Code 31 Foundation Degree covers those programmes which HEIs are running as Foundation Degrees which are consistent with the 'Statement of Design Principles' for Foundation Degrees issued by UUK and SCOP.

GNVQ qualifications are being phased out, but are included as these may be the students highest qualification on entry.

Code 41 is designed to capture ONC and OND level qualifications, including those awarded by BTEC.

Code 39 may be used for BTEC Nationals, which are Level 3 qualifications, equivalent to A levels on the National Qualifications Framework.

Further guidance for codes

44 Access course validated by QAA

45 Access course not validated by QAA

A recognised Access to HE course is one validated by an Authorised Validating Agency that has been licensed for the purpose by the Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA), under the terms of the QAA Recognition Scheme for Access to Higher Education in England, Wales and Northern Ireland. Relevant Access courses are recorded on the Access to HE Courses Database. QAA does not licence any AVAs in Scotland.

Access courses at institutions in Scotland can only be coded 45 'Access course not validated'.

HEFCE use qualification on entry data to inform funding. Since 2005-06 funding students with unknown entry qualifications have received zero weighting in the widening participation and improving retention funding streams. In particular, where students have entered via UCAS with qualifications that are made available by UCAS for inclusion on the HESA student record which are not returned by institutions HEFCE expect them to receive a zero weight.

	<p>Students entering with enhanced first degrees, that is qualifications that would be coded H22/M22 in the COURSEAIM field, should be recorded as having a higher degree (01) in the QVALENT2 field.</p> <p>Instance.QVALENT2 records a student's highest qualification on entry to the instance, it should NOT be updated to reflect qualifications gained during the instance. Institutions in England will need to consider qualifications gained by students during the instance to establish ELQ status but should not subsequently update Instance.QVALENT2. Any potential change to the fundability status as a result of ELQ should be reflected year-on-year within the Instance.FUNDCODE field.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error EntryProfile.QVALENT2 must exist where corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, or 04 and Instance.COMDATE < 2010-08-01 and EntryProfile.QVALENT3 does not exist.</p> <p>2 Error EntryProfile.QVALENT2 cannot be coded 99 where QualificationsOnEntry entity exists.</p> <p>3 Error EntryProfile.QVALENT2 cannot be coded 99 where EntryProfile.WELBACC = 1.</p> <p>4 Error EntryProfile.QVALENT2 must be 01-45 where EntryProfile.ACCESS exists.</p> <p>5 Error EntryProfile.QVALENT2 must not exist where EntryProfile.QVALENT3 exists or corresponding Instance.COMDATE > 2010-07-31</p>
Reason Required	This field, together with information in QualificationsOnEntry gives information about a student's qualifications on entry to a course. It is also used to identify students with tariff-bearing qualifications.
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: QVALENT2 Data type: QVALENT2CodeContentType
Related Fields	QVALENT3
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Highest qualification on entry

Type	field
Short Name	QUALENT3
Description	This field indicates the highest qualification that a student holds on entry, not necessarily that applicable for entry to the course.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All entrants where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04 or 09 and Instance.COMDATE is on or after 2010-08-01
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>DUK UK doctorate degree</p> <p>DZZ Non-UK doctorate degree</p> <p>D80 Other qualification at level D</p> <p>MUK UK masters degree</p> <p>MZZ Non-UK masters degree</p> <p>M2X Integrated undergraduate/postgraduate taught masters degree on the enhanced/extended pattern</p> <p>M41 Diploma at level M</p> <p>M44 Certificate at level M</p> <p>M71 Postgraduate Certificate in Education or Professional Graduate Diploma in Education</p> <p>M80 Other taught qualification at level M</p> <p>M90 Taught work at level M for institutional credit</p> <p>HUK UK first degree with honours</p> <p>HZZ Non-UK first degree</p> <p>H11 First degree with honours leading to Qualified Teacher Status (QTS)/registration with a General Teaching Council (GTC)</p> <p>H71 Professional Graduate Certificate in Education</p> <p>H80 Other qualification at level H</p> <p>JUK UK ordinary (non-honours) first degree</p> <p>J10 Foundation degree</p> <p>J20 Diploma of Higher Education (DipHE)</p> <p>J30 Higher National Diploma (HND)</p> <p>J49 Foundation course at level J</p> <p>J48 Certificate in Education (CertEd) or Diploma in Education (DipEd) (i.e. non-graduate initial teacher training qualification)</p> <p>J80 Other qualification at level J</p> <p>C20 Certificate of Higher Education (CertHE)</p> <p>C30 Higher National Certificate (HNC)</p> <p>C44 Higher Apprenticeship (level 4)</p> <p>C80 Other qualification at level C</p> <p>C90 Undergraduate credits</p> <p>P41 Diploma at level 3</p> <p>P42 Certificate at level 3</p> <p>P46 Award at level 3</p> <p>P47 AQA Baccalaureate (Bacc)</p> <p>P50 A/AS level</p> <p>P51 14-19 Advanced Diploma (level 3)</p> <p>P53 Scottish Baccalaureate</p> <p>P62 International Baccalaureate (IB) Diploma</p> <p>P63 International Baccalaureate (IB) Certificate</p> <p>P64 Cambridge Pre-U Diploma</p> <p>P65 Cambridge Pre-U Certificate</p> <p>P68 Welsh Baccalaureate Advanced Diploma (level 3)</p> <p>P80 Other qualification at level 3</p> <p>P91 Level 3 qualifications of which some or all are subject to UCAS Tariff</p> <p>P92 Level 3 qualifications of which none are subject to UCAS Tariff</p> <p>P93 Level 3 qualifications of which all are subject to UCAS Tariff</p>

	<p>P94 Level 3 qualifications of which some are subject to UCAS Tariff</p> <p>Q51 14-19 Higher Diploma (level 2)</p> <p>Q52 Welsh Baccalaureate Intermediate Diploma (level 2)</p> <p>Q80 Other qualification at level 2</p> <p>R51 14-19 Foundation Diploma (level 1)</p> <p>R52 Welsh Baccalaureate Foundation Diploma (level 1)</p> <p>R80 Other qualification at level 1</p> <p>X00 Higher education (HE) access course, Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) recognised</p> <p>X01 Higher education (HE) access course, not Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) recognised</p> <p>X02 Mature student admitted on basis of previous experience and/or admissions test</p> <p>X04 Other qualification level not known</p> <p>X05 Student has no formal qualification</p> <p>X06 Not known</p>
Notes	<p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction.</p> <p>Where Instance.COMDATE is on or after 2010-08-01, this coding frame must be used. Where Instance.COMDATE is before 2010-08-01 it is not a requirement to recode for continuing student instances, but institutions may do so if they wish.</p> <p>EntryProfile.QVALENT3 records a student's highest qualification on entry to the instance. It should NOT be updated to reflect qualifications gained during the instance. Institutions in England need to consider qualifications gained by students during the instance to establish ELQ status, but should not subsequently update EntryProfile.QVALENT3. Any potential change to fundability status as a result of ELQ should be reflected year-on-year within Instance.FUNDCODE.</p> <p>For guidance on the use of academic qualification codes in EntryProfile.QVALENT3, institutions should refer to the guidance for Course.COURSEAIM, as it was always intended that the two coding frames be closely linked. For guidance on the use of the vocational qualification codes, colleagues can refer to the recently revised Framework for Higher Education Qualifications QAA publication Qualifications can cross boundaries - a rough guide to comparing qualifications in the UK and Ireland.</p> <p>Institutions may wish to seek advice from UK NARIC (www.naric.org.uk) about the relative level of qualifications awarded from abroad.</p> <p>These data are used extensively in publications including Unistats and in the PI benchmarks.</p> <p>Multiple Level 3 qualifications - P91, P92, P93, and P94</p> <p>The following codes are available for the coding of students who may have multiple highest qualifications on entry at Level 3:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • P92 Level 3 qualifications of which none are subject to UCAS Tariff • P93 Level 3 qualifications of which all are subject to UCAS Tariff • P94 Level 3 qualifications of which some are subject to UCAS Tariff <p>P93 and P94 have been introduced for 2012/13 to replace the previously available code P91 'Level 3 qualifications of which some or all are subject to UCAS Tariff'. This code is still valid for continuing student instances, and it is not a requirement to recode to P93 and P94, but institutions may choose to do so if they wish.</p> <p>P91 'Level 3 qualifications of which some or all are subject to UCAS Tariff' is not valid</p>

for instances with a Instance.COMDATE on or after 2012-08-01.

For institutions who receive the UCAS data for HESA (*J) transaction, the QUALENT3 value for applicants will be derived using P93 and P94.

No hierarchy is implied in level 3 qualifications. If a mixture of qualifications are relevant, then use code P92, P93 or P94 rather than any single qualification included, such as A/AS level. Please be aware that P92 may be used as a filter to exclude instances with no tariffable qualifications from calculations of UCAS tariff. P93 or P94 are acceptable as a general code for qualifications, or mixtures of qualifications, that are subject to tariff (the detail of qualifications should be returned in the QualificationsOnEntry entity).

Code 'P92 Level 3 qualifications of which none are subject to UCAS Tariff' relates to the type of qualification. This code should not be used in cases where the student holds non-tariff bearing grades for a tariff-bearing qualification. In these circumstances the appropriate P code for the level 3 qualification or P93/P94 should be used in EntryProfile.QUALENT3.

Any level 3 qualification not featured in the coding frame should be coded to P92, P93 or P94.

Please note that the Diploma in Foundation Studies in Art and Design is a level 3 qualification.

Further guidance for specific codes:

**X00 'Higher education (HE) access course, Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) recognised', and
X01 'Higher education (HE) access course, not Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) recognised':**

A recognised Access to HE course is one validated by an Authorised Validating Agency, licensed for the purpose by the Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA) under the terms of the QAA Recognition Scheme for Access to Higher Education in England, Wales and Northern Ireland. Relevant Access courses are recorded on the Access to HE Courses Database. QAA does not licence any AVAs in Scotland.

Access courses at institutions in Scotland can only be coded X01 'Higher education (HE) access course, not Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) recognised'.

J10 'Foundation degree'

Code J10 covers those programmes institutions are running as foundation degrees, which are consistent with the 'Statement of Design Principles' for foundation degrees issued by UUK and GuildHE.

X02 'Mature student admitted on basis of previous experience and/or admissions test'

Code X02 should only be used where the student does not have any formal qualifications at level 3 or above. For students holding qualifications at level 3 or above who are admitted on the basis of APL or an admissions test, the relevant code for their level 3 or above qualifications should be used in preference to X02.

	<p>X06 'Not known'</p> <p>Code X06 should not be used as a default. Institutions are expected to seek and code the highest qualification on entry.</p> <p>Full information, where available should be reported in QualificationsOnEntry.</p> <p>HEIs in England</p> <p>For HEFCE fundable students (Instance.FUNDCODE=1 or 4) it is expected that the highest qualification on entry will be known, as without these data it is not possible to determine whether or not the student falls under the ELQ policy. Details of the ELQ policy can be found in HESES Annex G, which can be downloaded via the HEFCE website http://www.hefce.ac.uk/pubs/.</p> <p>Some students are exempt from the ELQ policy, for example those on foundation degrees. Whilst the requirement for highest qualification on entry data for these students is less, HEFCE would still expect institutions to make reasonable endeavours to ensure that these data are as precise as possible. This is because these students may move from an exempt to a non-exempt category, at which point their highest qualification would be relevant in determining their fundability. Notwithstanding the increased granularity in this field it is still not possible, in all cases, to fully determine whether or not a student is an ELQ solely using EntryProfile.QVALENT3 and Course.COURSEAIM (e.g. where the student has gained a qualification since starting their instance this could lead to them becoming an ELQ, but would not be reflected in EntryProfile.QVALENT3).</p> <p>For codes P91, P93 and P94, HEFCE expect to see entries in the QualificationsOnEntry entity.</p> <p>P80 should only be used where no other code is appropriate. In particular students holding UK qualifications should not be allocated to P80 as another P code will normally be applicable. Students recorded as P80 will therefore typically be international students with non-UK qualifications.</p> <p>HEFCE use qualification on entry data to inform funding. Since 2005-06 students with unknown entry qualifications have received zero weighting in the widening participation and improving retention funding streams. In particular, where students have entered via UCAS with qualifications that are made available by UCAS for inclusion on the HESA Student record which are not returned by institutions HEFCE may give them a zero weight.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error EntryProfile.QVALENT3 must exist where corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04 or 09 and Instance.COMDATE > 2010-07-31. 2 Error EntryProfile.QVALENT3 must not exist where EntryProfile.QVALENT2 exists and corresponding Instance.COMDATE < 2010-08-01. 3 Error EntryProfile.QVALENT3 cannot be coded X06 where QualificationsOnEntry entity exists. 4 Error EntryProfile.QVALENT3 cannot be coded X06 where EntryProfile.WELBACC = 1. 5 Error Where EntryProfile.ACCESS exists EntryProfile.QVALENT3 must be coded X00 or X01 or begin with P, C, J, H, M or D. 6 Error EntryProfile.QVALENT3 must not be coded P91 where Instance.COMDATE > 2012-07-31.
Reason Required	<p>This field, together with information in QualificationsOnEntry gives information about a student's qualifications on entry to a course. It is also used to identify students with</p>

	tariff-bearing qualifications.
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: QUALENT3 Data type: QUALENT3CodeContentType
Related Fields	QUALENT2
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Additional guidance added to Notes, specifying that code X02 must only be used where a student does not hold any formal qualifications at level 3 or above. Business rule 1 updated to extend coverage to include the Unistats (09) reduced return. Business rule 6 added as code P91 is only valid for continuing students.

Last institution attended

Type	field										
Short Name	PREVINST										
Description	This field describes previous institution attended by the student.										
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales										
Coverage	All entrants where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM and Course.COURSEAIM = M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, I00, I11, I16, J10, J16, J20, J26, J30, C20, C30 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04										
Notes	<p>This field seeks to categorise types of expected code, and uses the first character to indicate from which code set the institute identifier belongs. HESA codes should be prefixed with an H, government codes should be prefixed with a D and UCAS codes should be prefixed with a U. Generic codes do not require a prefix.</p> <p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction. It is not expected that the information contained within the *J will be updated by institutions, however where updates are made these should be made with reference to the schools codes listing issued by UCAS to institutions.</p> <p>UCAS will make available an HEI, FEC or government number, if they have one, or in the absence of same, default to the five digit UCAS number, but the letter prefixing the code will differentiate between type of institution.</p> <p>UCAS holds the school/FE/HE or other institution from which the UCAS application was received. HESA recognises that this will give a small percentage statistical error in the data for this field.</p> <p>For non-UCAS entrants institutions may use the generic codes and not provide details of individual named institutions. The generic codes are:</p> <table style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>4901</td> <td>UK state school</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4911</td> <td>UK independent school</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4921</td> <td>UK FE college</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4931</td> <td>Any non-UK institution</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4941</td> <td>UK HEI</td> </tr> </table> <p>If the previous institution is not known and none of the other generic codes are suitable, code as H9999, U99999, U00000, D9999999 or D0000000, 9999 or 0000.</p>	4901	UK state school	4911	UK independent school	4921	UK FE college	4931	Any non-UK institution	4941	UK HEI
4901	UK state school										
4911	UK independent school										
4921	UK FE college										
4931	Any non-UK institution										
4941	UK HEI										
Business rules	<p>1 Error EntryProfile.PREVINST must exist where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM and Course.COURSEAIM = M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, I00, I11, I16, J10, J16, J20, J26, J30, C20 or C30 and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.</p> <p>2 Error Where EntryProfile.PREVINST begins 'H' and is followed by 4 numbers it must be coded H9999 or begin H0.</p>										
Reason Required	To monitor school, etc, background of students and to assist the tracking of students through their experience of higher education.										
Part Of	Entry profile										

Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: PREVINST Data type: PrevInstType
Related Fields	YRLLINST
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Marital status

Type	field
Short Name	MARSTAT
Description	This field records the marital status of the student
Applicable to	Northern Ireland
Coverage	All entrants to institutions in Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XG and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04
Valid Entries and Labels	01 Single (never married or never in civil partnership) 02 Married or in civil partnership 03 Separated (but still legally married or in a civil partnership) 04 Divorced or civil partnership dissolved 05 Widowed or a surviving partner from a civil partnership 06 Co-habiting
Notes	
Business rules	1 Error EntryProfile.MARSTAT must exist for institutions in Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XG and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04. 2 Error EntryProfile.MARSTAT must not exist for institutions in England, Scotland or Wales.
Reason Required	To comply with Northern Ireland statutory Equal Opportunities monitoring.
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MARSTAT Data type: MARSTATCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

New entrant to higher education

Type	field
Short Name	NEWENT
Description	This field indicates if a student has previously studied at HE level in the UK for six months or more.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Optional
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>A This student has had prior HE experience in the UK lasting six months or more</p> <p>B This student has not had prior HE experience in the UK lasting six months or more</p> <p>C It is not known whether this student has had prior HE experience in the UK lasting six months or more</p>
Notes	<p>Institutions are advised that completion of this field is optional from 2010/11. Should data be returned in this field, the following guidance must be followed:</p> <p>Institutions should request new entrant to HE information directly from students during the enrolment/registration process, and not infer it from information in the QualificationsOnEntry entity fields.</p> <p>Institutions should ask students a direct question along the lines of: 'Have you ever started a higher education course (i.e. above A level or equivalent) in the UK before, and if so did you attend this course for 6 months or more?' Institutions should ensure that the question stresses that this question refers to activity undertaken in HE prior to the commencement of their current instance of study to prevent the field being erroneously updated by continuing students when they update registration details in subsequent years.</p> <p>The outcome of any previous HE study is not relevant to this particular field. This field was very important to BIS because it was used to identify "initial entrants" and it helped to inform the monitoring of progress towards the Government's HE participation targets.</p> <p>What is important is whether or not the student is new to HE level courses, not whether the student is new to the HE institution sector. For example, a student who has already taken an HNC or HND at a UK FE college is not a new entrant to HE. HE, for the purposes of this field, is defined as those programmes of study for which the level of instruction is above that of courses leading to GCE 'A' levels, SCE 'Highers' and the Certificate of Sixth Year Studies, ONC and OND.</p> <p>Code A includes all students who have previously studied a course at HE level for a minimum of six months either at the reporting institution or at another UK institution.</p> <p>Code A should be used for all students who have previously studied at higher education level for a minimum of six months, at a UK institution, whether or not the course resulted in success.</p> <p>A student who started an HE course but subsequently left within six months should be coded B.</p>

	<p>Overseas students who have previously studied at HE level but not in the UK should be coded B.</p> <p>Where a student transfers from one course to another, this field should NOT be updated where the same Instance.NUMHUS is kept.</p> <p>Code C should not be used as a standard default but only in cases where the information has been sought but is still unknown.</p>
Business rules	<p>3 Warning EntryProfile.NEWENT should not be coded B or C if (EntryProfile.QVALENT2 is 01, 02, 03, 04, 05, 10, 11, 16, 23, 24, 25, 28, 29, 30, 15, 21, 22 or 27) or (EntryProfile.QVALENT3 begins with D, M, H, J or C (excluding HZZ))</p>
Reason Required	<p>Originally required to analyse patterns of entry into HE, including the Higher Education Initial Participation Rate (HEIPR) calculation made by BIS</p>
Part Of	<p>Entry profile</p>
Field Length	<p>1</p>
Minimum Occurrences	<p>0</p>
Maximum Occurrences	<p>1</p>
Schema Components	<p>Element: NEWENT Data type: NEWENTCodeContentType</p>
Owner	<p>HESA</p>
Version	<p>1.0</p>

Occupation code

Type	field	
Short Name	SOC2000	
Description	This field holds the 4-digit SOC2000 occupation code for the student if aged 21 or over at the start of their course, or parental occupation code if the student is under 21.	
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales	
Coverage	All entrants where EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists and Course.COURSEAIM begins with H, I, J or C or is M22, M26 and EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM	
Valid Entries and Labels	0000	Not stated
	0001	Information refused
	0007	Retired
	0008	Unemployed
	0009	Not known
	1111	Senior officials in national government
	1112	Directors & chief executives of major organisations
	1113	Senior officials in local government
	1114	Senior officials of special interest organisations
	1121	Production, works & maintenance managers
	1122	Managers in construction
	1123	Managers in mining & energy
	1131	Financial managers & chartered secretaries
	1132	Marketing & sales managers
	1133	Purchasing managers
	1134	Advertising & public relations managers
	1135	Personnel, training & industrial relations managers
	1136	Information & communication technology managers
	1137	Research & development managers
	1141	Quality assurance managers
	1142	Customer care managers
	1151	Financial institution managers
	1152	Office managers
	1161	Transport & distribution managers
	1162	Storage & warehouse managers
	1163	Retail & wholesale managers
	1171	Officers in armed forces
	1172	Police officers (inspectors & above)
	1173	Senior officers in fire, ambulance, prison & related services
	1174	Security managers
	1181	Hospital & health service managers
	1182	Pharmacy managers
	1183	Healthcare practice managers
	1184	Social services managers
	1185	Residential & day care managers
	1211	Farm managers
	1212	Natural environment & conservation managers
	1219	Managers in animal husbandry, forestry & fishing n.e.c
	1221	Hotel & accommodation managers
	1222	Conference & exhibition managers
	1223	Restaurant & catering managers
	1224	Publicans & managers of licensed premises
	1225	Leisure & sports managers
	1226	Travel agency managers
	1231	Property, housing & land managers
	1232	Garage managers & proprietors
	1233	Hairdressing & beauty salon managers & proprietors

1234	Shopkeepers & wholesale/retail dealers
1235	Recycling & refuse disposal managers
1239	Managers & proprietors in other services n.e.c
2111	Chemists
2112	Biological scientists & biochemists
2113	Physicists, geologists & meteorologists
2121	Civil engineers
2122	Mechanical engineers
2123	Electrical engineers
2124	Electronics engineers
2125	Chemical engineers
2126	Design & development engineers
2127	Production & process engineers
2128	Planning & quality control engineers
2129	Engineering professionals n.e.c
2131	IT strategy & planning professionals
2132	Software professionals
2211	Medical practitioners
2212	Psychologists
2213	Pharmacists/pharmacologists
2214	Ophthalmic opticians
2215	Dental practitioners
2216	Veterinarians
2311	Higher education teaching professionals
2312	Further education teaching professionals
2313	Education officers, school inspectors
2314	Secondary education teaching professionals
2315	Primary & nursery education teaching professionals
2316	Special needs education teaching professionals
2317	Registrars & senior administrators of educational establishments
2319	Teaching professionals n.e.c
2321	Scientific researchers
2322	Social science researchers
2329	Researchers n.e.c
2411	Solicitors & lawyers, judges & coroners
2419	Legal professionals n.e.c
2421	Chartered & certified accountants
2422	Management accountants
2423	Management consultants, actuaries, economists & statisticians
2431	Architects
2432	Town planners
2433	Quantity surveyors
2434	Chartered surveyors (not quantity surveyors)
2441	Public service administrative professionals
2442	Social workers
2443	Probation officers
2444	Clergy
2451	Librarians
2452	Archivists & curators
3111	Laboratory technicians
3112	Electrical/electronics technicians
3113	Engineering technicians
3114	Building & civil engineering technicians
3115	Quality assurance technicians
3119	Science & engineering technicians n.e.c
3121	Architectural technologists & town planning technicians
3122	Draughtspersons
3123	Building inspectors
3131	IT operations technicians
3132	IT user support technicians
3211	Nurses
3212	Midwives
3213	Paramedics
3214	Medical radiographers

3215	Chiropodists
3216	Dispensing opticians
3217	Pharmaceutical dispensers
3218	Medical & dental technicians
3221	Physiotherapists
3222	Occupational therapists
3223	Speech & language therapists
3229	Therapists n.e.c
3231	Youth & community workers
3232	Housing & welfare officers
3311	NCOs & other ranks
3312	Police officers (sergeant & below)
3313	Fire service officers (leading fire officer & below)
3314	Prison service officers (below principal officer)
3319	Protective service associate professionals n.e.c
3411	Artists
3412	Authors, writers
3413	Actors, entertainers
3414	Dancers & choreographers
3415	Musicians
3416	Arts officers, producers & directors
3421	Graphic designers
3422	Product, clothing & related designers
3431	Journalists, newspaper & periodical editors
3432	Broadcasting associate professionals
3433	Public relations officers
3434	Photographers & audio-visual equipment operators
3441	Sports players
3442	Sports coaches, instructors & officials
3443	Fitness instructors
3449	Sports & fitness occupations n.e.c
3511	Air traffic controllers
3512	Aircraft pilots & flight engineers
3513	Ship & hovercraft officers
3514	Train drivers
3520	Legal associate professionals
3531	Estimators, valuers & assessors
3532	Brokers
3533	Insurance underwriters
3534	Finance & investment analysts/advisers
3535	Taxation experts
3536	Importers, exporters
3537	Financial & accounting technicians
3539	Business & related associate professionals n.e.c
3541	Buyers & purchasing officers
3542	Sales representatives
3543	Marketing associate professionals
3544	Estate agents, auctioneers
3551	Conservation & environmental protection officers
3552	Countryside & park rangers
3561	Public service associate professionals
3562	Personnel & industrial relations officers
3563	Vocational & industrial trainers & instructors
3564	Careers advisers & vocational guidance specialists
3565	Inspectors of factories, utilities & trading standards
3566	Statutory examiners
3567	Occupational hygienists & safety officers (health & safety)
3568	Environmental health officers
4111	Civil Service executive officers
4112	Civil Service administrative officers & assistants
4113	Local government clerical officers & assistants
4114	Officers of non-governmental organisations
4121	Credit controllers
4122	Accounts & wages clerks, book-keepers, other financial clerks

4123	Counter clerks
4131	Filing & other records assistants/clerks
4132	Pensions & insurance clerks
4133	Stock control clerks
4134	Transport & distribution clerks
4135	Library assistants/clerks
4136	Database assistants/clerks
4137	Market research interviewers
4141	Telephonists
4142	Communication operators
4150	General office assistants/clerks
4211	Medical secretaries
4212	Legal secretaries
4213	School secretaries
4214	Company secretaries
4215	Personal assistants & other secretaries
4216	Receptionists
4217	Typists
5111	Farmers
5112	Horticultural trades
5113	Gardeners & groundsmen/groundswomen
5119	Agricultural & fishing trades n.e.c
5211	Smiths & forge workers
5212	Moulders, core makers, die casters
5213	Sheet metal workers
5214	Metal plate workers, shipwrights, riveters
5215	Welding trades
5216	Pipe fitters
5221	Metal machining setters & setter-operators
5222	Tool makers, tool fitters & markers-out
5223	Metal working production & maintenance fitters
5224	Precision instrument makers & repairers
5231	Motor mechanics, auto engineers
5232	Vehicle body builders & repairers
5233	Auto electricians
5234	Vehicle spray painters
5241	Electricians, electrical fitters
5242	Telecommunications engineers
5243	Lines repairers & cable jointers
5244	TV, video & audio engineers
5245	Computer engineers, installation & maintenance
5249	Electrical/electronics engineers n.e.c
5311	Steel erectors
5312	Bricklayers, masons
5313	Roofers, roof tilers & slaters
5314	Plumbers, heating & ventilating engineers
5315	Carpenters & joiners
5316	Glaziers, window fabricators & fitters
5319	Construction trades n.e.c
5321	Plasterers
5322	Floorers & wall tilers
5323	Painters & decorators
5411	Weavers & knitters
5412	Upholsterers
5413	Leather & related trades
5414	Tailors & dressmakers
5419	Textiles, garments & related trades n.e.c
5421	Originators, compositors & print preparers
5422	Printers
5423	Bookbinders & print finishers
5424	Screen printers
5431	Butchers, meat cutters
5432	Bakers, flour confectioners
5433	Fishmongers, poultry dressers

5434	Chefs, cooks
5491	Glass & ceramics makers, decorators & finishers
5492	Furniture makers, other craft woodworkers
5493	Pattern makers (moulds)
5494	Musical instrument makers & tuners
5495	Goldsmiths, silversmiths, precious stone workers
5496	Floral arrangers, florists
5499	Hand craft occupations n.e.c
6111	Nursing auxiliaries & assistants
6112	Ambulance staff (excluding paramedics)
6113	Dental nurses
6114	Houseparents & residential wardens
6115	Care assistants & home carers
6121	Nursery nurses
6122	Childminders & related occupations
6123	Playgroup leaders/assistants
6124	Educational assistants
6131	Veterinary nurses & assistants
6139	Animal care occupations n.e.c
6211	Sports & leisure assistants
6212	Travel agents
6213	Travel & tour guides
6214	Air travel assistants
6215	Rail travel assistants
6219	Leisure & travel service occupations n.e.c
6221	Hairdressers, barbers
6222	Beauticians & related occupations
6231	Housekeepers & related occupations
6232	Caretakers
6291	Undertakers & mortuary assistants
6292	Pest control officers
7111	Sales & retail assistants
7112	Retail cashiers & check-out operators
7113	Telephone salespersons
7121	Collector salespersons & credit agents
7122	Debt, rent & other cash collectors
7123	Roundsmen/women & van salespersons
7124	Market & street traders & assistants
7125	Merchandisers & window dressers
7129	Sales related occupations n.e.c
7211	Call centre agents/operators
7212	Customer care occupations
8111	Food, drink & tobacco process operatives
8112	Glass & ceramics process operatives
8113	Textile process operatives
8114	Chemical & related process operatives
8115	Rubber process operatives
8116	Plastics process operatives
8117	Metal making & treating process operatives
8118	Electroplaters
8119	Process operatives n.e.c
8121	Paper & wood machine operatives
8122	Coal mine operatives
8123	Quarry workers & related operatives
8124	Energy plant operatives
8125	Metal working machine operatives
8126	Water & sewerage plant operatives
8129	Plant & machine operatives n.e.c
8131	Assemblers (electrical products)
8132	Assemblers (vehicles & metal goods)
8133	Routine inspectors & testers
8134	Weighers, graders, sorters
8135	Tyre, exhaust & windscreen fitters
8136	Clothing cutters

	8137 Sewing machinists 8138 Routine laboratory testers 8139 Assemblers & routine operatives n.e.c 8141 Scaffolders, staggers, riggers 8142 Road construction operatives 8143 Rail construction & maintenance operatives 8149 Construction operatives n.e.c 8211 Heavy goods vehicle drivers 8212 Van drivers 8213 Bus & coach drivers 8214 Taxi, cab drivers & chauffeurs 8215 Driving instructors 8216 Rail transport operatives 8217 Seafarers (merchant navy); barge, lighter & boat operatives 8218 Air transport operatives 8219 Transport operatives n.e.c 8221 Crane drivers 8222 Fork-lift truck drivers 8223 Agricultural machinery drivers 8229 Mobile machine drivers & operatives n.e.c 9111 Farm workers 9112 Forestry workers 9119 Fishing & agriculture related occupations n.e.c 9121 Labourers in building & woodworking trades 9129 Labourers in other construction trades n.e.c 9131 Labourers in foundries 9132 Industrial cleaning process occupations 9133 Printing machine minders & assistants 9134 Packers, bottlers, canners, fillers 9139 Labourers in process & plant operations n.e.c 9141 Stevedores, dockers & slingers 9149 Other goods handling & storage occupations n.e.c 9211 Postal workers, mail sorters, messengers, couriers 9219 Elementary office occupations n.e.c 9221 Hospital porters 9222 Hotel porters 9223 Kitchen & catering assistants 9224 Waiters, Waitresses 9225 Bar staff 9226 Leisure & theme park attendants 9229 Elementary personal services occupations n.e.c 9231 Window cleaners 9232 Road sweepers 9233 Cleaners, domestics 9234 Launderers, dry cleaners, pressers 9235 Refuse & salvage occupations 9239 Elementary cleaning occupations n.e.c 9241 Security guards & related occupations 9242 Traffic wardens 9243 School crossing patrol attendants 9244 School mid-day assistants 9245 Car park attendants 9249 Elementary security occupations n.e.c 9251 Shelf fillers 9259 Elementary sales occupations n.e.c
Notes	<p>A full coding frame for SOC2000 can be obtained from the Office for National Statistics.</p> <p>UCAS codes 0000 (Not stated), 0001 (Information refused), 0007 (Retired), 0008 (Unemployed) and 0009 (Not known) will be accepted as valid entries.</p>

	<p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction.</p> <p>Institutions are encouraged to provide this information for other full-time undergraduates in order to provide more complete statistical information for the sector.</p> <p>The student should be asked for parental occupation or, if 21 or over, for their own occupation. For example, "If you are under 21, please give the occupation of your parent, step-parent or guardian who earns the most. If he or she is retired or unemployed, give their most recent occupation. If you are 21 or over, please give your own occupation."</p>
Business rules	1 Error EntryProfile.SOC2000 must exist where EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists and Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J or C or is M22 or M26 and EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM.
Reason Required	To monitor social background of students in a standard way.
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	4
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SOC2000 Data type: SOC2000CodeContentType
Related Fields	SEC
Owner	Office for National Statistics
Version	1.0

Parental education

Type	field
Short Name	PARED
Description	This field records information about whether an entrant's parents have higher education qualifications.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	<p>All entrants to institutions in England and Scotland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM and Course.COURSEAIM = M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, I00, I11, I16, J10, J16, J20, J26, J30, C20, C30 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04 and Instance.COMDATE is after 2007-07-31.</p> <p>All entrants to institutions in Wales and Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM and Course.COURSEAIM = M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, I00, I11, I16, J10, J16, J20, J26, J30, C20 or C30 and Instance.COMDATE is after 2008-07-31 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04 and EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists.</p>
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Yes</p> <p>2 No</p> <p>8 Don't know</p> <p>9 Information refused</p>
Notes	<p>Institutions should ask the following question of all entrants for whom this information is required:</p> <p>The following question is about your parents' level of education. This includes natural parents, adoptive parents, step-parents or guardians who have brought you up.</p> <p>Do any of your parents (as defined above) have any higher education qualifications, such as a degree, diploma or certificate of higher education?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes • No • Don't know • Information refused <p>Provision of this information does not constitute the disclosure of third party personal information as defined in the Data Protection Act 1998. This is because the question does not relate to a specific person.</p> <p>From 2008/09 onwards this question will be asked on the UCAS application form and the data for UCAS entrants provided to institutions by UCAS. As a consequence coverage of the field has been extended in 2008/09 to include UCAS entrants to institutions in Wales and Northern Ireland. Institutions in England and Scotland will still need to collect this information directly from relevant non-UCAS entrants.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error EntryProfile.PARED must exist for institutions in England or Scotland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM and Course.COURSEAIM = M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, I00, I11, I16, J10, J16, J20, J26, J30, C20 or C30 and Instance.COMDATE is after 31-Jul-2007 and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.</p> <p>3 Error EntryProfile.PARED must exist for institutions in Wales or Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM and</p>

	Course.COURSEAIM = M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, I00, I11, I16, J10, J16, J20, J26, J30, C20 or C30 and Instance.COMDATE is after 31-Jul-2008 and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04 and EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists.
Reason Required	This data will allow monitoring of another aspect of widening participation and may be used for the production of performance indicators.
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: PARED Data type: PAREDCoContentype
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

PGCE class of undergraduate degree

Type	field																																
Short Name	PGCECLSS																																
Description	This field is used to indicate the qualification class of the student's undergraduate degree.																																
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales																																
Coverage	All entrants where Course.COURSEAIM = M71 or H71 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04																																
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="width: 5%;">01</td><td>First class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>02</td><td>Upper second class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>03</td><td>Lower second class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>04</td><td>Undivided second class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>05</td><td>Third class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>06</td><td>Fourth class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>07</td><td>Unclassified honours</td></tr> <tr><td>08</td><td>Aegrotat (whether to honours or pass)</td></tr> <tr><td>09</td><td>Pass - degree awarded without honours following an honours course</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>Ordinary (to include divisions of ordinary, if any) degree awarded after following a non-honours course</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>General degree - degree awarded after following a non-honours course/degree that was not available to be classified</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>Distinction</td></tr> <tr><td>13</td><td>Merit</td></tr> <tr><td>14</td><td>Pass</td></tr> <tr><td>98</td><td>Not applicable</td></tr> <tr><td>99</td><td>Not known</td></tr> </table>	01	First class honours	02	Upper second class honours	03	Lower second class honours	04	Undivided second class honours	05	Third class honours	06	Fourth class honours	07	Unclassified honours	08	Aegrotat (whether to honours or pass)	09	Pass - degree awarded without honours following an honours course	10	Ordinary (to include divisions of ordinary, if any) degree awarded after following a non-honours course	11	General degree - degree awarded after following a non-honours course/degree that was not available to be classified	12	Distinction	13	Merit	14	Pass	98	Not applicable	99	Not known
01	First class honours																																
02	Upper second class honours																																
03	Lower second class honours																																
04	Undivided second class honours																																
05	Third class honours																																
06	Fourth class honours																																
07	Unclassified honours																																
08	Aegrotat (whether to honours or pass)																																
09	Pass - degree awarded without honours following an honours course																																
10	Ordinary (to include divisions of ordinary, if any) degree awarded after following a non-honours course																																
11	General degree - degree awarded after following a non-honours course/degree that was not available to be classified																																
12	Distinction																																
13	Merit																																
14	Pass																																
98	Not applicable																																
99	Not known																																
Notes	<p>Codes 12-14 should only be used for integrated taught masters degrees, where these are appropriate.</p> <p>Code 99 should be used for 'Not known' and code 98 should be used for 'Not applicable'.</p> <p>For instances where Course.COURSEAIM is M71 or H71 only, the NCTL has advised that this field may be coded other than '98 Not applicable' for non-UK undergraduate qualifications. Institutions should use their judgement to decide which code is the most appropriate for the qualification.</p> <p>'98 Not applicable' includes those students who do not have an undergraduate degree.</p> <p>This may be the case, for example, with students studying for PGCE (FE).</p>																																
Business rules	1 Error EntryProfile.PGCECLSS must exist where Course.COURSEAIM = M71 or H71 and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.																																
Reason Required	To provide data on the qualifications of teachers.																																
Part Of	Entry profile																																
Field Length	2																																

Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: PGCECLSS Data type: PGCECLSSCodeContentType
Related Fields	PGCESBJ
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Additional guidance added on the coding of students with a Course.COURSEAIM of M71 or H71 in this field.

PGCE subject of undergraduate degree

Type	field
Short Name	PGCESBJ
Description	This field holds the subject(s) of the student's undergraduate degree.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All entrants where Course.COURSEAIM = M71 or H71 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04
Valid Entries and Labels	A100 Pre-clinical medicine A200 Pre-clinical dentistry A300 Clinical medicine A400 Clinical dentistry A900 Others in medicine & dentistry A990 Medicine & dentistry not elsewhere classified A000 Medicine & dentistry B100 Anatomy, physiology & pathology B110 Anatomy B120 Physiology B121 Clinical physiology B130 Pathology B131 Cellular pathology B132 Pathobiology B140 Neuroscience B160 Physiotherapy B170 Podiatry B190 Anatomy, physiology & pathology not elsewhere classified B200 Pharmacology, toxicology & pharmacy B210 Pharmacology B220 Toxicology B230 Pharmacy B290 Pharmacology, toxicology & pharmacy not elsewhere classified B300 Complementary medicines, therapies & well-being B310 Osteopathy B320 Chiropractic B340 Alternative medicine & therapies B341 Chinese B342 Herbalism B343 Acupuncture B344 Aromatherapy B345 Hypnotherapy B346 Reflexology B350 Hair & beauty science B351 Hair services B352 Beauty therapies B353 Make-up B360 Spa & water-based therapies B390 Complementary medicines, therapies & well-being not elsewhere classified B400 Nutrition B410 Dietetics B490 Nutrition not elsewhere classified B500 Ophthalmics B510 Optometry B520 Orthoptics B590 Ophthalmics not elsewhere classified B600 Aural & oral sciences B610 Audiology B620 Speech science

B630	Language pathology
B690	Aural & oral sciences not elsewhere classified
B700	Nursing
B701	Palliative care nursing
B702	Clinical practice nursing
B710	Community nursing
B712	Health visiting
B713	School nursing
B714	Practice nursing
B720	Midwifery
B730	Children's nursing
B731	Neonatal care
B740	Adult nursing
B741	Older people nursing
B750	Dental nursing
B760	Mental health nursing
B761	Learning disability nursing
B770	Medical nursing
B771	Critical care nursing
B772	Surgical nursing
B773	Emergency nursing
B790	Nursing not elsewhere classified
B800	Medical technology
B810	Cardiography
B820	Radiology
B821	Radiography, diagnostic
B822	Radiography, therapeutic
B830	Biomechanics & prosthetics (non-clinical)
B840	Dental technology
B850	Mortuary technology
B890	Medical technology not elsewhere classified
B900	Others in subjects allied to medicine
B910	Environmental health
B920	Occupational health
B930	Occupational therapy
B940	Counselling
B950	Paramedical science
B960	Physician assistant studies
B990	Subjects allied to medicine not elsewhere classified
B000	Subjects allied to medicine
C100	Biology
C110	Applied biology
C111	Parasitology
C120	Behavioural biology
C130	Cell biology
C131	Applied cell biology
C140	Developmental/Reproductive biology
C141	Developmental biology
C142	Reproductive biology
C150	Environmental biology
C160	Marine/Freshwater biology
C161	Marine biology
C162	Freshwater biology
C170	Population biology
C180	Ecology
C181	Biodiversity
C182	Evolution
C183	Community ecology
C184	Conservation ecology
C185	Ecosystem ecology & land use
C186	Population ecology
C187	Ecotoxicology
C190	Biology not elsewhere classified
C191	Biometry

C200	Botany
C210	Applied botany
C220	Mycology
C230	Plant biotechnology
C240	Plant cell science
C250	Plant pathology
C260	Plant physiology
C270	Developmental & reproductive plant biology
C280	Systematic botany
C290	Botany not elsewhere classified
C300	Zoology
C310	Applied zoology
C320	Cell zoology
C330	Developmental & reproductive zoology
C340	Entomology
C350	Marine zoology
C360	Pest science
C380	Systematic zoology
C390	Zoology not elsewhere classified
C400	Genetics
C410	Applied genetics
C420	Human genetics
C430	Medical & veterinary genetics
C431	Medical genetics
C432	Veterinary genetics
C440	Molecular genetics
C441	Transcriptomics
C450	Genomics
C451	Functional genomics
C452	Genome organisation
C460	Genetic engineering
C470	Population genetics & evolution
C490	Genetics not elsewhere classified
C500	Microbiology
C510	Applied microbiology
C520	Medical & veterinary microbiology
C521	Medical microbiology
C522	Veterinary microbiology
C530	Bacteriology
C540	Virology
C550	Immunology
C570	Serology
C590	Microbiology not elsewhere classified
C600	Sport & exercise science
C610	Sport coaching
C620	Sport development
C630	Sport conditioning, rehabilitation & therapy
C640	Sport studies
C650	Sport technology
C690	Sport & exercise science not elsewhere classified
C700	Molecular biology, biophysics & biochemistry
C710	Applied molecular biology, biophysics & biochemistry
C720	Biological chemistry
C730	Metabolic biochemistry
C740	Medical & veterinary biochemistry
C741	Medical biochemistry
C742	Veterinary biochemistry
C750	Plant biochemistry
C760	Biomolecular science
C770	Biophysical science
C790	Molecular biology, biophysics & biochemistry not elsewhere classified
C800	Psychology
C810	Applied psychology
C811	Occupational psychology

C812	Educational psychology
C813	Sport psychology
C814	Organisational psychology
C815	Business psychology
C816	Forensic psychology
C820	Developmental psychology
C821	Child psychology
C822	The psychology of ageing
C830	Methodological & conceptual issues in psychology
C831	Research methods in psychology
C832	Quantitative psychology
C833	Qualitative psychology
C834	History of psychology
C835	Philosophy of psychology
C840	Psychology in health & medicine
C841	Health psychology
C842	Clinical psychology
C843	Counselling psychology
C844	Psychotherapy
C845	Clinical neuropsychology
C846	Community psychology
C847	Psychoanalytical studies
C848	Psychology of mental health
C850	Cognitive & affective psychology
C851	Psychological modelling
C852	Psychology of communication
C853	Psychology of memory & learning
C854	Psychology of perception
C855	Psychology of higher cognitive processes
C856	Experimental psychology
C857	Affective psychology
C858	Transpersonal psychology
C860	Psychobiology
C861	Cognitive neuroscience
C862	Affective neuroscience
C863	Psychopharmacology
C864	Evolutionary psychology
C865	Animal psychology
C870	Personality & individual differences
C871	Psychometrics
C872	Psychology of gender
C873	Cross-cultural psychology
C880	Social psychology
C881	Social cognition
C890	Psychology not elsewhere classified
C900	Others in Biological Sciences
C910	Applied biological sciences
C990	Biological sciences not elsewhere classified
C000	Biological sciences
D100	Pre-clinical veterinary medicine
D190	Pre-clinical veterinary medicine not elsewhere classified
D200	Clinical veterinary medicine & dentistry
D210	Clinical veterinary medicine
D220	Clinical veterinary dentistry
D290	Clinical veterinary medicine & dentistry not elsewhere classified
D300	Animal science
D310	Veterinary nursing
D320	Animal health
D321	Animal anatomy
D322	Animal physiology
D323	Animal pathology
D324	Animal pharmacology
D325	Animal toxicology
D326	Animal pharmacy

D327	Animal nutrition
D328	Animal welfare
D330	Veterinary public health
D340	Overseas veterinary development
D390	Animal sciences not elsewhere classified
D400	Agriculture
D410	Arable & fruit farming
D411	Agricultural pests & diseases
D412	Crop physiology
D413	Crop nutrition
D414	Crop protection
D415	Crop production
D416	Glasshouse culture
D417	Amenity horticulture
D418	Exotic plants & crops
D420	Livestock
D421	Livestock husbandry
D422	Equine studies
D423	Poultry keeping
D424	Game keeping
D425	Exotic livestock
D430	Fish farming
D431	Fish husbandry
D432	Freshwater fish
D433	Saltwater fish
D434	Ornamental fish
D435	Aquaculture
D440	Rural estate management
D441	Farm management
D442	Game keeping management
D443	Water resource management
D444	Land management for recreation
D445	Biological heritage site management
D446	Wilderness management
D447	Environmental conservation
D448	Sustainable agricultural & landscape development
D450	International agriculture
D460	Organic farming
D461	Organic arable & fruit farming
D462	Organic livestock
D463	Organic fish farming
D470	Agricultural technology
D471	Agricultural machinery
D472	Agricultural irrigation & drainage
D490	Agriculture not elsewhere classified
D500	Forestry & arboriculture
D510	Trees & shrubs
D511	Forestry pests & diseases
D512	Tree physiology
D513	Tree nutrition
D514	Tree protection
D515	Tree production
D516	Timber production
D517	Community forestry
D520	International forestry
D530	Organic forestry
D540	Forestry technology
D541	Forestry irrigation & drainage
D590	Forestry not elsewhere classified
D600	Food & beverage studies
D610	Food science
D611	Meat science
D612	Cereal science
D613	Vegetable science

D614	Fruit science
D620	Food hygiene
D630	Food & beverage production
D631	Food & beverage manufacture
D632	Food & beverage processing
D633	Food & beverage technology
D634	Industrial baking
D635	Industrial brewing
D640	Food & beverages for the consumer
D641	Food & beverage packaging
D642	Food & beverage delivery
D690	Food & beverage studies not elsewhere classified
D700	Agricultural sciences
D710	Agricultural biology
D711	Agricultural microbiology
D720	Agricultural chemistry
D721	Agricultural biochemistry
D730	Agricultural botany
D740	Agricultural zoology
D750	Soil as an agricultural medium
D790	Agricultural sciences not elsewhere classified
D900	Others in veterinary sciences, agriculture & related subjects
D990	Veterinary sciences, agriculture & related subjects not elsewhere classified
D000	Veterinary sciences, agriculture & related subjects
F100	Chemistry
F110	Applied chemistry
F111	Industrial chemistry
F112	Colour chemistry
F120	Inorganic chemistry
F130	Structural chemistry
F131	Crystallography
F140	Environmental chemistry
F141	Marine chemistry
F150	Medicinal chemistry
F151	Pharmaceutical chemistry
F160	Organic chemistry
F161	Organometallic chemistry
F162	Polymer chemistry
F163	Bio-organic chemistry
F164	Petrochemical chemistry
F165	Biomolecular chemistry
F170	Physical chemistry
F180	Analytical chemistry
F190	Chemistry not elsewhere classified
F200	Materials science
F290	Materials science not elsewhere classified
F300	Physics
F310	Applied physics
F311	Engineering physics
F320	Chemical physics
F321	Solid-state physics
F330	Environmental physics
F331	Atmospheric physics
F332	Marine physics
F340	Mathematical & theoretical physics
F341	Electromagnetism
F342	Quantum mechanics
F343	Computational physics
F350	Medical physics
F351	Radiation physics
F360	Optical physics
F361	Laser physics
F370	Nuclear & particle physics
F380	Acoustics

F390	Physics not elsewhere classified
F400	Forensic & archaeological sciences
F410	Forensic science
F420	Archaeological science
F490	Forensic & archaeological sciences not elsewhere classified
F500	Astronomy
F510	Astrophysics
F520	Space & planetary sciences
F521	Space science
F522	Planetary science
F530	Solar & solar terrestrial physics
F540	Astronomy observation
F550	Astronomy theory
F590	Astronomy not elsewhere classified
F600	Geology
F610	Applied geology
F611	Industrial geology
F612	Engineering geology
F620	Mining geology
F621	Exploration geology
F630	Geotechnology
F631	Marine geotechnology
F640	Earth science
F641	Palaeontology
F642	Geoscience
F643	Quaternary studies
F644	Hydrogeology
F645	Mantle & core processes
F646	Land-atmosphere interactions
F650	Geological oceanography
F660	Geophysics
F661	Exploration geophysics
F670	Geochemistry
F680	Geohazards
F681	Seismology & tectonics
F682	Vulcanology
F690	Geology not elsewhere classified
F700	Science of aquatic & terrestrial environments
F710	Marine sciences
F720	Hydrography
F730	Ocean sciences
F731	Ocean circulation
F732	Oceanographic survey & monitoring
F733	Land-ocean interaction
F734	Atmosphere-ocean interactions
F750	Environmental sciences
F751	Applied environmental sciences
F752	Hydrology
F753	Pollution control
F754	Biogeochemical cycles
F755	Environmental informatics
F756	Environmental physiology
F760	Climatology
F761	Meteorology
F762	Large-scale atmospheric dynamics & transport
F763	Boundary-layer meteorology
F764	Climate & climate change
F765	Radiative processes & effects
F770	Soil science
F780	Glaciology & cryospheric systems
F790	Science of aquatic & terrestrial environments not elsewhere classified
F800	Physical geographical sciences
F810	Environmental geography
F811	Biogeography

F840	Physical geography
F841	Maritime geography
F842	Geomorphology
F843	Topography
F844	Cartography
F845	Remote sensing
F846	Geographical information systems
F890	Physical geographical sciences not elsewhere classified
F900	Others in physical sciences
F990	Physical sciences not elsewhere classified
F000	Physical sciences
G100	Mathematics
G110	Pure mathematics
G120	Applied mathematics
G121	Mechanics (mathematical)
G130	Mathematical methods
G140	Numerical analysis
G150	Mathematical modelling
G160	Engineering/industrial mathematics
G170	Computational mathematics
G190	Mathematics not elsewhere classified
G200	Operational research
G290	Operational research not elsewhere classified
G300	Statistics
G310	Applied statistics
G311	Medical statistics
G320	Probability
G330	Stochastic processes
G340	Statistical modelling
G350	Mathematical statistics
G390	Statistics not elsewhere classified
G900	Others in mathematical sciences
H100	General engineering
H110	Integrated engineering
H120	Safety engineering
H121	Fire safety engineering
H122	Water quality control
H123	Public health engineering
H130	Computer-aided engineering
H131	Automated engineering design
H140	Mechanics
H141	Fluid mechanics
H142	Solid mechanics
H143	Structural mechanics
H150	Engineering design
H160	Bioengineering, biomedical engineering & clinical engineering
H161	Biomaterials
H162	Biomechanics (including fluid & solid mechanics)
H163	Bioelectronics & bioelectricity
H164	Rehabilitation engineering
H165	Tissue engineering & regenerative medicine
H166	Imaging
H167	Biosensors
H168	Medical devices & instrumentation
H169	Neural engineering
H190	General engineering not elsewhere classified
H200	Civil engineering
H210	Structural engineering
H220	Environmental engineering
H221	Energy resources
H222	Coastal decay
H223	Environmental impact assessment
H230	Transport engineering
H231	Permanent way engineering

H232	Pavement engineering
H240	Surveying science
H241	General practice surveying
H242	Engineering surveying
H250	Geotechnical engineering
H290	Civil engineering not elsewhere classified
H300	Mechanical engineering
H310	Dynamics
H311	Thermodynamics
H320	Mechanisms & machines
H321	Turbine technology
H330	Automotive engineering
H331	Road vehicle engineering
H332	Rail vehicle engineering
H333	Ship propulsion engineering
H340	Acoustics & vibration
H341	Acoustics
H342	Vibration
H350	Offshore engineering
H360	Electromechanical engineering
H390	Mechanical engineering not elsewhere classified
H400	Aerospace engineering
H410	Aeronautical engineering
H411	Air passenger transport engineering
H412	Air freight transport engineering
H413	Air combat engineering
H420	Astronautical engineering
H430	Avionics
H440	Aerodynamics
H441	Flight mechanics
H450	Propulsion systems
H460	Aviation studies
H490	Aerospace engineering not elsewhere classified
H500	Naval architecture
H510	Shipbuilding
H511	Surface passenger ship building
H512	Surface freight ship building
H513	Surface combat ship building
H514	Submarine building
H520	Ship design
H521	Surface passenger ship design
H522	Surface freight ship design
H523	Surface combat ship design
H524	Submarine design
H590	Naval architecture not elsewhere classified
H600	Electronic & electrical engineering
H610	Electronic engineering
H611	Microelectronic engineering
H612	Integrated circuit design
H620	Electrical engineering
H630	Electrical power
H631	Electrical power generation
H632	Electrical power distribution
H640	Communications engineering
H641	Telecommunications engineering
H642	Broadcast engineering
H643	Satellite engineering
H644	Microwave engineering
H650	Systems engineering
H651	Digital circuit engineering
H652	Analogue circuit engineering
H660	Control systems
H661	Instrumentation control
H662	Control by light systems

H670	Robotics & cybernetics
H671	Robotics
H672	Cybernetics
H674	Virtual reality engineering
H680	Optoelectronic engineering
H690	Electronic & electrical engineering not elsewhere classified
H700	Production & manufacturing engineering
H710	Manufacturing systems engineering
H711	Manufacturing systems design
H712	Manufacturing installation systems
H713	Production processes
H714	Manufacturing systems maintenance
H720	Quality assurance engineering
H730	Mechatronics
H790	Production & manufacturing engineering not elsewhere classified
H800	Chemical, process & energy engineering
H810	Chemical engineering
H811	Biochemical engineering
H812	Pharmaceutical engineering
H820	Atomic engineering
H821	Nuclear engineering
H830	Chemical process engineering
H831	Bioprocess engineering
H840	Gas engineering
H850	Petroleum engineering
H890	Chemical, process & energy engineering not elsewhere classified
H900	Others in engineering
H990	Engineering not elsewhere classified
H000	Engineering
I100	Computer science
I110	Computer architectures & operating systems
I111	Computer architectures
I112	Operating systems
I113	Displays & imaging
I114	High end computing
I115	Parallel computing
I120	Networks & communications
I130	Computational science foundations
I140	Human-computer interaction
I150	Multimedia computing science
I160	Internet
I161	e-business
I190	Computer science not elsewhere classified
I200	Information systems
I210	Information modelling
I220	Systems design methodologies
I230	Systems analysis & design
I240	Databases
I250	Systems auditing
I260	Data management
I270	Intelligent & expert systems
I290	Systems analysis & design not elsewhere classified
I300	Software engineering
I310	Software design
I320	Programming
I321	Procedural programming
I322	Object-oriented programming
I323	Declarative programming
I390	Software engineering not elsewhere classified
I400	Artificial intelligence
I410	Speech & natural language processing
I420	Knowledge representation
I430	Neural computing
I440	Computer vision

I450	Cognitive modelling
I460	Machine learning
I461	Automated reasoning
I490	Artificial intelligence not elsewhere classified
I500	Health informatics
I510	Health technologies
I520	Bioinformatics
I530	Tele healthcare
I590	Health informatics not elsewhere classified
I600	Games
I610	Computer games programming
I620	Computer games design
I630	Computer games graphics
I700	Computer generated visual & audio effects
I710	Computer generated imagery
I900	Others in Computer sciences
I990	Computer sciences not elsewhere classified
J100	Minerals technology
J110	Mining
J120	Quarrying
J130	Rock mechanics
J140	Minerals processing
J150	Minerals surveying
J160	Petrochemical technology
J190	Minerals technology not elsewhere classified
J200	Metallurgy
J210	Applied metallurgy
J220	Metallic fabrication
J221	Pattern making
J230	Corrosion technology
J290	Metallurgy not elsewhere classified
J300	Ceramics & glass
J310	Ceramics
J320	Glass technology
J390	Ceramics & glass not elsewhere classified
J400	Polymers & textiles
J410	Polymers technology
J411	Plastics
J420	Textiles technology
J421	Textile chemistry
J422	Dyeing & colouring of textiles
J430	Leather technology
J431	Tanning
J440	Clothing production
J441	Machine knitting
J442	Commercial tailoring
J443	Pattern cutting
J444	Millinery
J445	Footwear production
J490	Polymers & textiles not elsewhere classified
J500	Materials technology not otherwise specified
J510	Materials technology
J511	Engineering materials
J512	Paper technology
J513	Furniture technology
J520	Printing
J521	Offset lithography
J522	Photo-lithography
J523	Reprographic techniques
J524	Screen process printing
J530	Gemmology
J590	Materials technology not elsewhere classified
J600	Maritime technology
J610	Marine technology

J611	Marine navigation
J612	Marine radar
J613	Marine radio
J614	Marine plumbing
J690	Maritime technology not elsewhere classified
J700	Biotechnology
J710	Plant biotechnology (crops, trees, shrubs etc.)
J720	Animal biotechnology
J730	Environmental biotechnology
J740	Industrial biotechnology
J750	Medical biotechnology
J790	Biotechnology not elsewhere classified
J900	Others in technology
J910	Energy technologies
J920	Ergonomics
J930	Audio technology
J931	Music recording
J940	Machinery maintenance
J941	Office machinery maintenance
J942	Industrial machinery maintenance
J950	Musical instrument technology
J960	Transport logistics
J970	Emergency & disaster technologies
J990	Technologies not elsewhere classified
J000	Technologies
K100	Architecture
K110	Architectural design theory
K120	Interior architecture
K130	Architectural technology
K190	Architecture not elsewhere classified
K200	Building
K210	Building technology
K220	Construction management
K230	Building surveying
K240	Quantity surveying
K250	Conservation of buildings
K251	Property development
K290	Building not elsewhere classified
K300	Landscape & garden design
K310	Landscape architecture
K320	Landscape studies
K330	Landscape design
K340	Garden design
K341	Garden horticulture
K390	Landscape & garden design not elsewhere classified
K400	Planning (urban, rural & regional)
K410	Regional planning
K420	Urban & rural planning
K421	Urban planning
K422	Rural planning
K430	Planning studies
K440	Urban studies
K450	Housing
K460	Transport planning
K490	Planning (urban, rural & regional) not elsewhere classified
K900	Others in architecture, building & planning
K990	Architecture, building & planning not elsewhere classified
K000	Architecture, building & planning
L100	Economics
L110	Applied economics
L111	Financial economics
L112	Agricultural economics
L113	Economic policy
L120	Microeconomics

L130	Macroeconomics
L140	Econometrics
L150	Political economics
L160	International economics
L170	Economic systems
L171	Capitalism
L172	Monetarism
L173	Keynesianism
L174	Collectivism
L190	Economics not elsewhere classified
L200	Politics
L210	Political theories
L211	Liberalism
L212	Conservatism
L213	Socialism
L214	Nationalism
L215	Fascism
L216	Feminism
L217	Environmentalism
L218	Anarchism
L220	Political systems
L221	Autocracy
L222	Democracy
L223	Plutocracy
L224	Oligarchy
L230	UK government/parliamentary studies
L231	Public administration
L232	UK constitutional studies
L240	International politics
L241	European Union politics
L242	Commonwealth politics
L243	Politics of a specific country/region
L244	International constitutional studies
L250	International relations
L251	Strategic studies
L252	War & peace studies
L253	International criminology
L260	Comparative politics
L290	Politics not elsewhere classified
L300	Sociology
L310	Applied sociology
L311	Applied criminology
L312	Victimology
L320	Gender studies
L321	Women's studies
L322	Men's studies
L330	Ethnic studies
L340	Disability in society
L350	Religion in society
L360	Socio-economics
L370	Social theory
L371	Social hierarchy
L380	Political sociology
L390	Sociology not elsewhere classified
L391	Sociology of science & technology
L400	Social policy
L410	UK social policy
L420	International social policy
L430	Public policy
L431	Health policy
L432	Welfare policy
L433	Education policy
L434	Transport policy
L435	Security policy

L436	Emergency services policy
L437	Criminal justice policy
L490	Social policy not elsewhere classified
L500	Social work
L510	Health & welfare
L520	Child care
L530	Youth work
L540	Community work
L541	Community justice
L550	Careers guidance
L560	Probation/after-care
L590	Social work not elsewhere classified
L600	Anthropology
L610	Social & cultural anthropology
L611	Criminological theory
L620	Physical & biological anthropology
L690	Anthropology not elsewhere classified
L700	Human & social geography
L710	Human & social geography by area
L711	Human & social geography of Europe
L712	Human & social geography of Asia
L713	Human & social geography of Africa
L714	Human & social geography of Australasia
L715	Human & social geography of the Americas
L716	Human & social geography of the Arctic/Antarctic
L720	Human & social geography by topic
L721	Economic geography
L722	Urban geography
L723	Political geography
L724	Transport geography
L725	Historical geography
L726	Cultural geography
L727	Agricultural geography
L728	Human Demography
L790	Human & social geography not elsewhere classified
L800	Development studies
L900	Others in social studies
L990	Social studies not elsewhere classified
L000	Social studies
M100	Law by area
M110	UK legal systems
M111	English law
M112	Welsh law
M113	Northern Irish law
M114	Scottish law
M120	European Union law
M130	Public international law
M140	Comparative law
M190	Law by area not elsewhere classified
M200	Law by topic
M210	Public law
M211	Criminal law
M220	Private law
M221	Business & commercial law
M222	Contract law
M223	Property law
M224	Torts
M240	Jurisprudence
M250	Legal practice
M260	Medical law
M270	Sociology of law
M290	Law by topic not elsewhere classified
M900	Others in law
M990	Law not elsewhere classified

M000	Law
N100	Business studies
N110	European business studies
N120	International business studies
N190	Business studies not elsewhere classified
N200	Management studies
N210	Management techniques
N211	Strategic management
N212	Creative management
N213	Project management
N214	Change management
N215	Organisational development
N220	Institutional management
N223	Domestic management
N224	Management & organisation of education
N225	Criminal justice management
N230	Land & property management
N231	Land management
N232	Property management
N234	Property valuation & auctioneering
N240	Retail management
N250	Emergency & disaster management
N251	Emergency services management
N252	Disaster management
N290	Management studies not elsewhere classified
N300	Finance
N310	Banking
N320	Investment & insurance
N321	Investment
N322	Insurance
N323	Actuarial science
N330	Taxation
N340	Financial management
N341	Financial risk
N390	Finance not elsewhere classified
N400	Accounting
N410	Accountancy
N411	Cost & management accountancy
N412	Public accountancy
N413	Book keeping
N420	Accounting theory
N421	Auditing of accounts
N422	Financial reporting
N490	Accounting not elsewhere classified
N500	Marketing
N510	Market research
N520	Sales management
N530	Distribution
N550	International marketing
N560	Promotion & advertising
N561	Advertising
N562	Corporate image
N563	Sponsorship
N590	Marketing not elsewhere classified
N600	Human resource management
N611	Industrial relations
N612	Staff development
N613	Training methods
N614	Recruitment methods
N620	Health & safety issues
N690	Human resources management not elsewhere classified
N700	Office skills
N710	Office administration
N720	Secretarial & typing skills

N721	Audio typing
N722	Shorthand & shorthand transcription
N790	Office skills not elsewhere classified
N800	Hospitality, leisure, sport, tourism & transport
N810	Travel management
N820	Event management
N830	Tourism
N831	Tourism studies
N832	Tourism management
N850	Transport studies
N851	Land travel
N852	Sea travel
N853	Air travel
N860	Hospitality
N861	Hospitality studies
N862	Hospitality management
N870	Recreation & leisure studies
N871	Spa management
N872	Salon management
N880	Sport management
N890	Hospitality, leisure, sport, tourism & transport not elsewhere classified
N900	Others in business & administrative studies
N990	Business & administrative studies not elsewhere classified
N000	Business & administrative studies
P100	Information services
P110	Information management
P120	Librarianship
P121	Library studies
P130	Curatorial studies
P131	Museum studies
P132	Archive studies
P190	Information services not elsewhere classified
P200	Publicity studies
P210	Public relations
P290	Publicity studies not elsewhere classified
P300	Media studies
P301	Television studies
P302	Radio studies
P303	Film studies
P304	Electronic media studies
P305	Paper-based media studies
P310	Media production
P311	Television production
P312	Radio production
P313	Film production
P390	Media studies not elsewhere classified
P400	Publishing
P410	Electronic publishing
P411	Publishing on audio/video tape
P412	Publishing on CD-ROM
P413	Publishing via the World Wide Web
P420	Multimedia publishing
P430	Interactive publishing
P490	Publishing not elsewhere classified
P500	Journalism
P510	Factual reporting
P590	Journalism not elsewhere classified
P900	Others in mass communications & documentation
P990	Mass communications & documentation not elsewhere classified
P000	Mass communications & documentation
Q100	Linguistics
Q110	Applied linguistics
Q120	Historical linguistics
Q130	Phonetics & phonology

Q131	Phonetics
Q132	Phonology
Q140	Sociolinguistics
Q150	Psycholinguistics
Q160	British Sign Language
Q190	Linguistics not elsewhere classified
Q200	Comparative literary studies
Q210	Literature in translation
Q220	Literature in its original language
Q290	Comparative literary studies not elsewhere classified
Q300	English studies
Q310	English language
Q320	English literature
Q321	English literature by period
Q322	English literature by author
Q323	English literature by topic
Q330	English as a second language
Q340	English literature written as a second language
Q350	Scots language
Q360	Scots literature
Q370	Irish language
Q380	Irish literature
Q390	English studies not elsewhere classified
Q400	Ancient language studies
Q410	Ancient Egyptian
Q411	Coptic
Q420	Classical Arabic
Q430	Akkadian
Q440	Sumerian
Q450	Sanskrit
Q460	Prakrit
Q470	Aramaic
Q480	Hebrew
Q490	Ancient language studies not elsewhere classified
Q500	Celtic studies
Q510	Ancient Celtic studies
Q520	Modern Celtic studies
Q521	Goidelic group of languages
Q522	Brythonic group of languages
Q530	Scottish Gaelic
Q531	Scottish Gaelic literature
Q540	Irish Gaelic
Q541	Irish Gaelic literature
Q550	Manx
Q551	Manx literature
Q560	Welsh
Q561	Welsh literature
Q570	Cornish
Q571	Cornish literature
Q580	Breton
Q581	Breton literature
Q590	Celtic studies not elsewhere classified
Q600	Latin studies
Q610	Latin language
Q611	Church Latin
Q612	Medieval Latin
Q620	Latin literature
Q630	Latin literature in translation
Q690	Latin studies not elsewhere classified
Q700	Classical Greek studies
Q710	Classical Greek language
Q711	Classical Church Greek
Q712	Late Greek
Q720	Classical Greek literature

Q730	Classical Greek literature in translation
Q790	Classical Greek studies not elsewhere classified
Q800	Classical studies
Q810	Classical reception
Q890	Classical studies not elsewhere classified
Q900	Others in linguistics, classics & related subjects
Q910	Translation studies
Q920	Translation theory
Q990	Linguistics, classics & related subjects not elsewhere classified
Q000	Linguistics, classics & related subjects
R100	French studies
R110	French language
R120	French literature
R130	French society & culture
R190	French studies not elsewhere classified
R200	German studies
R210	German language
R220	German literature
R230	German society & culture
R290	German studies not elsewhere classified
R300	Italian studies
R310	Italian language
R320	Italian literature
R330	Italian society & culture
R390	Italian studies not elsewhere classified
R400	Spanish studies
R410	Spanish language
R411	Spanish languages in other countries
R420	Spanish literature
R430	Spanish society & culture
R490	Spanish studies not elsewhere classified
R500	Portuguese studies
R510	Portuguese language
R511	Portuguese languages in other countries
R520	Portuguese literature
R530	Portuguese society & culture
R590	Portuguese studies not elsewhere classified
R600	Scandinavian studies
R610	Scandinavian languages
R611	Swedish language
R612	Norwegian language
R613	Finnish language
R614	Danish language
R620	Scandinavian literature
R621	Swedish literature
R622	Norwegian literature
R623	Finnish literature
R624	Danish literature
R630	Scandinavian society & culture
R631	Swedish society & culture
R632	Norwegian society & culture
R633	Finnish society & culture
R634	Danish society & culture
R690	Scandinavian studies not elsewhere classified
R700	Russian & East European studies
R701	Russian studies
R702	Czech studies
R703	Polish studies
R704	Belarusian studies
R705	Bulgarian studies
R706	Hungarian studies
R707	Romanian studies
R708	Slovak studies
R709	Ukrainian studies

R710	Russian & East European languages
R711	Russian language
R712	Polish language
R713	Czech language
R720	Russian & east European Literature
R721	Russian literature
R722	Polish literature
R723	Czech literature
R730	Russian & east European society & culture
R731	Russian society & culture
R732	Polish society & culture
R733	Czech society & culture
R790	Russian & east European studies not elsewhere classified
R800	European studies
R900	Others in European languages, literature & related subjects
R910	Other European languages
R911	Dutch
R912	Flemish
R920	Other European literature
R930	Other European societies & cultures
R990	European languages, literature & related subjects not elsewhere classified
R000	European languages, literature & related subjects
T100	Chinese studies
T110	Chinese language studies
T120	Chinese literature studies
T130	Chinese society & culture studies
T190	Chinese studies not elsewhere classified
T200	Japanese studies
T210	Japanese language studies
T220	Japanese literature studies
T230	Japanese society & culture studies
T290	Japanese studies not elsewhere classified
T300	South Asian studies
T310	South Asian language studies
T311	Indian language studies
T312	Pakistani language studies
T313	Sri Lankan language studies
T314	Bangladeshi language studies
T315	Nepali language studies
T320	South Asian literature studies
T321	Indian literature studies
T322	Pakistani literature studies
T323	Sri Lankan literature studies
T324	Bangladeshi literature studies
T325	Nepali literature studies
T330	South Asian society & culture studies
T331	Indian society & culture studies
T332	Pakistani society & culture studies
T333	Sri Lankan society & culture studies
T334	Bangladeshi society & culture studies
T335	Nepali society & culture studies
T390	South Asian studies not elsewhere classified
T400	Other Asian studies
T410	Other Asian language studies
T411	East Asian language studies
T412	South East Asian language studies
T420	Other Asian literature studies
T421	East Asian literature studies
T422	South East Asian literature studies
T430	Other Asian society & culture studies
T431	East Asian society & culture studies
T432	South East Asian society & culture studies
T490	Other Asian studies not elsewhere classified
T500	African studies

T510	African language studies
T511	Eastern African language studies
T512	Central African language studies
T513	Northern African language studies
T514	Southern African language studies
T515	Western African language studies
T520	African literature studies
T521	Eastern African literature studies
T522	Central African literature studies
T523	Northern African literature studies
T524	Southern African literature studies
T525	Western African literature studies
T530	African society & culture studies
T531	Eastern African society & culture studies
T532	Central African society & culture studies
T533	Northern African society & culture studies
T534	Southern African society & culture studies
T535	Western African society & culture studies
T590	African studies not elsewhere classified
T600	Modern Middle Eastern studies
T610	Modern Middle Eastern language studies
T611	Arabic language studies
T612	Modern Standard Arabic language studies
T613	Persian language studies
T614	Modern Hebrew language studies
T615	Kurdish language studies
T616	Turkish language studies
T620	Modern Middle Eastern literature studies
T621	Arabic literature studies
T623	Persian literature studies
T624	Modern Hebrew literature studies
T625	Kurdish literature studies
T626	Turkish literature studies
T630	Modern Middle Eastern society & culture studies
T631	Arab society & culture studies
T633	Persian society & culture studies
T634	Modern Hebrew society & culture studies
T635	Kurdish society & culture studies
T636	Turkish society & culture studies
T690	Modern Middle Eastern studies not elsewhere classified
T700	American studies
T710	American language studies
T711	Latin American language studies
T712	United States language studies
T713	Canadian language studies
T714	Caribbean language studies
T720	American literature studies
T721	Latin American literature studies
T722	United States literature studies
T723	Canadian literature studies
T724	Caribbean literature studies
T730	American society & culture studies
T731	Latin American society & culture studies
T732	United States society & culture studies
T733	Canadian society & culture studies
T734	Caribbean society & culture studies
T790	American studies not elsewhere classified
T800	Australasian studies
T810	Australasian language studies
T820	Australasian literature studies
T830	Australasian society & culture studies
T890	Australasian studies not elsewhere classified
T900	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages, literature & related subjects

T910	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages
T920	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian literature
T930	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian societies & culture
T990	Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages, literature
T000	Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages, literature & related subjects
V100	History by period
V140	Modern history
V141	Modern history 1500-1599
V142	Modern history 1600-1699
V143	Modern history 1700-1799
V144	Modern history 1800-1899
V145	Modern history 1900-1919
V146	Modern history 1920-1949
V147	Modern history 1950-1999
V148	Modern history 2000-2099
V150	Medieval history
V160	Ancient history
V161	Late Antique history
V190	History by period not elsewhere classified
V200	History by area
V210	British history
V211	Irish history
V212	Scottish history
V213	Welsh history
V214	English history
V220	European history
V221	French history
V222	German history
V223	Italian history
V224	Iberian history
V225	Russian history
V230	American history
V231	Canadian history
V232	USA history
V233	South American history
V234	Central American history
V240	Asian history
V241	Chinese history
V242	Indian history
V243	South East Asian history
V244	Byzantine History
V250	African history
V251	North African history
V252	Central African history
V253	Southern African history
V254	East African history
V255	West African history
V260	Australasian history
V261	Australian history
V262	New Zealand history
V270	World history
V271	International history
V290	History by area not elsewhere classified
V300	History by topic
V310	Economic history
V320	Social history
V321	Local history
V322	Oral history
V323	Family history
V324	Crime history
V330	History of religions
V340	Intellectual history

V350	History of art
V360	History of architecture
V370	History of design
V380	History of science
V381	History of physics
V382	History of chemistry
V383	History of mathematics
V384	History of medicine
V390	History by topic not elsewhere classified
V391	Military history
V400	Archaeology
V410	Egyptology
V420	Stone Age
V430	Bronze Age
V440	Iron Age
V450	Archaeological conservation
V460	Archaeological techniques
V470	Classical art & archaeology
V471	Roman art & archaeology
V472	Greek art & archaeology
V490	Archaeology not elsewhere classified
V500	Philosophy
V510	Metaphysics
V511	Epistemology
V520	Moral philosophy
V530	Scholastic philosophy
V540	Social philosophy
V550	Philosophy of science
V560	Mental philosophy
V590	Philosophy not elsewhere classified
V600	Theology & religious studies
V610	Theology
V620	Religious studies
V621	Christian studies
V622	Islamic studies
V623	Judaism
V624	Hinduism
V625	Buddhism
V626	Other Asian religious studies
V627	Comparative religious studies
V630	Divinity
V640	Religious writings
V641	The Bible & Christian texts
V642	The Qur'an & Islamic texts
V643	The Torah & Judaic texts
V644	Asian religious texts
V645	Comparative religious texts
V650	Pastoral studies
V690	Theology & religious studies not elsewhere classified
V700	Heritage studies
V710	Heritage theory
V720	Heritage site management
V730	Natural heritage
V731	Coastal heritage management
V740	Visitor management including interpretation
V750	Oral history, heritage & genealogy
V900	Others in historical & philosophical studies
V990	Historical & philosophical studies not elsewhere classified
V000	Historical & philosophical studies
W100	Fine art
W110	Drawing
W120	Painting
W130	Sculpture
W140	Printmaking

W150	Calligraphy
W160	Fine art conservation
W190	Fine art not elsewhere classified
W200	Design studies
W210	Graphic design
W211	Typography
W212	Multimedia design
W213	Visual communication
W220	Illustration
W230	Clothing/fashion design
W231	Textile design
W240	Industrial/product design
W250	Interior design
W260	Furniture design
W270	Ceramics design
W280	Interactive & electronic design
W290	Design studies not elsewhere classified
W300	Music
W310	Musicianship/performance studies
W311	Instrumental or vocal performance
W312	Musical theatre
W313	Conducting
W314	Jazz performance
W315	Popular music performance
W316	Electronic/electro-acoustic music performance
W317	Historical performance practice
W320	Music education/teaching
W330	History of music
W340	Types of music
W341	Popular music
W342	Film music/screen music
W343	Jazz
W344	Folk music
W345	Opera
W346	Sacred music
W350	Musicology
W351	Ethnomusicology/world music
W352	Community music
W353	Music & gender
W354	Philosophy, aesthetics & criticism of music
W355	Music psychology
W356	Music theory & analysis
W357	Sociology of music
W360	Musical instrument history
W370	Music technology & industry
W371	Sound design/commercial music recording
W372	Creative music technology
W373	Electro-acoustic studies
W374	Music production
W375	Music management/music industry management/arts management
W376	Music marketing
W380	Composition
W381	Electroacoustic composition/acousmatic composition
W382	Sonic arts
W383	Electronic music
W384	Applied music/musicianship
W385	Commercial music composition
W386	Multimedia music composition
W387	Jazz composition
W388	Popular music composition
W390	Music not elsewhere classified
W400	Drama
W410	Acting
W420	Directing for theatre

W430	Producing for theatre
W440	Theatre studies
W441	Theatre & professional practice
W442	Contemporary theatre
W443	Technical arts & special effects for theatre
W450	Stage management
W451	Theatrical wardrobe design
W452	Theatrical make-up
W453	Technical stage management
W460	Theatre design
W461	Stage design
W470	Performance & live arts
W471	European/world theatre arts
W472	Circus arts
W473	Community theatre
W490	Drama not elsewhere classified
W500	Dance
W510	Choreography
W520	Body awareness
W530	History of dance
W531	Dance & culture
W532	Community dance
W540	Types of dance
W541	Ballet
W542	Dance theatre
W543	Contemporary dance
W544	Jazz dance
W550	Dance performance
W590	Dance not elsewhere classified
W600	Cinematics & photography
W610	Moving image techniques
W611	Directing motion pictures
W612	Producing motion pictures
W613	Film & sound recording
W614	Visual & audio effects
W615	Animation techniques
W620	Cinematography
W630	History of cinematics & photography
W631	History of cinematics
W632	History of photography
W640	Photography
W690	Cinematics & photography not elsewhere classified
W700	Crafts
W710	Fabric & leather crafts
W711	Needlecraft
W712	Dressmaking
W713	Soft furnishing
W714	Weaving
W715	Leatherwork
W720	Metal crafts
W721	Silversmithing/goldsmithing
W722	Blacksmithing
W723	Clock/watchmaking
W730	Wood crafts
W731	Carpentry/joinery
W732	Cabinet making
W733	Marquetry & inlaying
W734	Veneering
W740	Surface decoration
W750	Clay & stone crafts
W751	Pottery
W752	Tile making
W753	Stone crafts
W760	Reed crafts

	W761 Basketry W762 Thatching W770 Glass crafts W771 Glassblowing W780 Paper crafts W781 Bookbinding W782 Origami W790 Crafts not elsewhere classified W800 Imaginative writing W810 Scriptwriting W820 Poetry writing W830 Prose writing W890 Imaginative writing not elsewhere classified W900 Others in creative arts & design W990 Creative arts & design not elsewhere classified W000 Creative arts & design X100 Training teachers X110 Training teachers - nursery X120 Training teachers - primary X121 Training teachers - infant (key stage 1) X122 Training teachers - junior (key stage 2) X130 Training teachers - secondary X131 Training teachers - key stage 3 X132 Training teachers - key stage 4 X140 Training teachers - tertiary X141 Training teachers - further education X142 Training teachers - higher education X150 Training teachers - adult education X151 Training teachers - coaching X160 Training teachers - specialist X161 Training teachers - special needs X162 Teaching English as a Foreign Language (TEFL) X190 Training teachers not elsewhere classified X200 Research & study skills in education X210 Research skills X220 Study skills X290 Research & study skills in education not elsewhere classified X300 Academic studies in education X310 Academic studies in nursery education X320 Academic studies in primary education X330 Academic studies in secondary education X340 Academic studies in tertiary education X341 Academic studies in further education X342 Academic studies in higher education X350 Academic studies in adult education X360 Academic studies in specialist education X370 Academic studies in education (across phases) X390 Academic studies in education not elsewhere classified X900 Others in education X990 Education not elsewhere classified X000 Education Y000 Combined/general subject unspecified 9998 Not applicable 9999 Reserved for instances where information is provided but is inadequate for coding purposes
Notes	Code 9999 is to be used for 'Not known' and code 9998 is to be used for 'Not applicable'. Not applicable includes those students who do not have a UK undergraduate degree. This may be the case, for example, with students studying for PGCE (FE).

	<p>Codes G000 and G900 are not valid entries in this field.</p> <p>Joint honours degrees must be returned with up to three occurrences of this field. The generic codes that consist of a subject group and letter (and Y000) can be used in this field to describe a truly interdisciplinary programme.</p> <p>The NCTL have advised that their preference is for institutions to code subjects at 3-digit JACS3 level, e.g. R110 and F160 - French language and Organic chemistry. The balance between two subjects cannot be separately indicated, and so it will have to be assumed to be equal</p>
Examples	R110 - French language
Business rules	<p>1 Error EntryProfile.PGCESBJ must exist where Course.COURSEAIM = M71 or H71 and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.</p> <p>2 Error Where EntryProfile.PGCESBJ = 9998 or 9999, there must be only one occurrence of EntryProfile.PGCESBJ.</p>
Reason Required	To provide data on the qualifications of teachers
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	4
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	3
Schema Components	<p>Element: PGCESBJ</p> <p>Data type: PGCESBJCodeContentType</p>
Related Fields	COURSEAIM
Owner	HESA/UCAS
Version	1.0

Postcode

Type	field
Short Name	POSTCODE
Description	This field identifies the postcode of the student's permanent or home address prior to entry to the course. It is not necessarily the correspondence address of the student.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All entrants where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04, 07 or 08
Notes	<p>UK domiciled, for the purposes of this field, means domiciled in England, Wales, Scotland, Northern Ireland, Channel Islands or Isle of Man.</p> <p>In the event that the full postcode is not known, institutions must return at least the outward part. The first part of the postcode (the outward part) is essential for allowing HESA to do geographic analysis.</p> <p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction</p> <p>Information about postcodes and postcodes for known addresses can be obtained from Postcodes Online at: www.royalmail.com.</p> <p>Country of domicile is collected in EntryProfile.DOMICILE.</p> <p>If no valid postcode (full or outward only) can be ascertained an empty element should be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 1 (not known), i.e:</p> <pre><POSTCODE ReasonForNull="1"></POSTCODE></pre> <p>British Forces Post Office (BFPO) postcodes</p> <p>Where BFPO codes relate to UK locations, institutions will need to locate the Royal Mail equivalent postcode for the base. If this is not known, then an empty element must be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 1 (not known), i.e:</p> <pre><POSTCODE ReasonForNull="1"></POSTCODE></pre> <p>Note that for funding allocations HEFCE, HEFCW and WG-DfES can only use data that includes both the outward and inward parts of the postcode.</p> <p>There is further guidance on valid postcode formats at: http://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/+http://www.cabinetoffice.gov.uk/govtalk/schemasstandards The business rule structure validation will be slightly less strict than that described in UK Government Data Standards Catalogue, as not all parsers will support the full GDSC definition. All postcodes are validated against valid postcodes at exception.</p>
Examples	A typical postcode such as GL50 3DA would be coded with a blank in the fifth character position. A postcode such as B1 6SR would have a blank in position 3. The part of the

	<p>postcode before the space is known as the outward part of the postcode and can be 2, 3 or 4 characters long. The part of the postcode after the space is known as the inward part of the postcode and is a fixed length of 3 characters. The space between the outward and inward parts of the postcode must always be shown as part of the postcode.</p> <p>There is further guidance on valid postcode formats at: http://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/+/http://www.cabinetoffice.gov.uk/govtalk/schemasstandards The business rule structure validation is slightly less strict than that described in UK Government Data Standards Catalogue, as not all parsers will support the full GDSC definition. All postcodes are validated against valid postcodes at exception, using the Office for National Statistics Postcode Directory (ONSPD).</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error EntryProfile.POSTCODE must exist where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04, 07 or 08.</p> <p>2 Error EntryProfile.POSTCODE must not be null except when ReasonForNull = 1.</p> <p>3 Error EntryProfile.POSTCODE must be null when ReasonForNull = 1.</p> <p>4 Error EntryProfile.POSTCODE must not exist where EntryProfile.DOMICILE is not in (XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM).</p> <p>5 Error Where exists EntryProfile.POSTCODE must contain: a valid full postcode structure or a valid outward postcode structure.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor student population by source location, especially in the widening participation context.
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: POSTCODE Data type: PostCodeWithNullStructure
Related Fields	DOMICILE
Owner	BS7666
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Clarification added to 'Examples', stating that validation of postcodes is performed against the Office for National Statistics Postcode Directory (ONSPD). Business rule 1 amended as postcode is required for the SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return.

Religion

Type	field												
Short Name	RELIGION												
Description	This field describes the religious grouping of Northern Ireland domiciled students at institutions in Northern Ireland.												
Applicable to	Northern Ireland												
Coverage	All entrants to institutions in Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XG and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04												
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="width: 15%;"></td> <td>Protestant</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td></td> <td>Roman Catholic</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> <td></td> <td>Other</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">4</td> <td></td> <td>Missing data</td> </tr> </table>	1		Protestant	2		Roman Catholic	3		Other	4		Missing data
1		Protestant											
2		Roman Catholic											
3		Other											
4		Missing data											
Notes													
Business rules	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="width: 15%; text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>EntryProfile.RELIGION must exist for institutions in Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XG and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>EntryProfile.RELIGION must not exist for institutions in England, Scotland or Wales.</td> </tr> </table>	1	Error	EntryProfile.RELIGION must exist for institutions in Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XG and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.	2	Error	EntryProfile.RELIGION must not exist for institutions in England, Scotland or Wales.						
1	Error	EntryProfile.RELIGION must exist for institutions in Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XG and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.											
2	Error	EntryProfile.RELIGION must not exist for institutions in England, Scotland or Wales.											
Reason Required	To comply with Northern Ireland statutory Equal Opportunities monitoring.												
Part Of	Entry profile												
Field Length	1												
Minimum Occurrences	0												
Maximum Occurrences	1												
Schema Components	Element: RELIGION Data type: RELIGIONCodeContentType												
Owner	HESA												
Version	1.0												

Socio-economic classification

Type	field																		
Short Name	SEC																		
Description	This field collects the socio-economic classification of students participating in HE if 21 or over at the start of their course or parental classification if under 21																		
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales																		
Coverage	All entrants where EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists where Course.COURSEAIM begins with H, I, J or C or is M22, M26 and EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM																		
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: right;">1</td> <td>Higher managerial & professional occupations</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> <td>Lower managerial & professional occupations</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">3</td> <td>Intermediate occupations</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">4</td> <td>Small employers & own account workers</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">5</td> <td>Lower supervisory & technical occupations</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">6</td> <td>Semi-routine occupations</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">7</td> <td>Routine occupations</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">8</td> <td>Never worked & long-term unemployed</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">9</td> <td>Not classified</td> </tr> </table>	1	Higher managerial & professional occupations	2	Lower managerial & professional occupations	3	Intermediate occupations	4	Small employers & own account workers	5	Lower supervisory & technical occupations	6	Semi-routine occupations	7	Routine occupations	8	Never worked & long-term unemployed	9	Not classified
1	Higher managerial & professional occupations																		
2	Lower managerial & professional occupations																		
3	Intermediate occupations																		
4	Small employers & own account workers																		
5	Lower supervisory & technical occupations																		
6	Semi-routine occupations																		
7	Routine occupations																		
8	Never worked & long-term unemployed																		
9	Not classified																		
Notes	<p>This collects the socio-economic background of students aged 21 and over at the start of their course, or for students under 21 the socio-economic background of their parent, step-parent or guardian who earns the most. It is based on occupation, and if the parent or guardian is retired or unemployed, this is based on their most recent occupation.</p> <p>Code 9 'Not classified' includes the 3 categories:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • students • occupations not stated or inadequately described • not classifiable for other reasons. <p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction.</p> <p>Institutions are encouraged to provide this information for other full-time undergraduates in order to provide more complete statistical information for the sector.</p> <p>A full coding frame for SEC can be obtained from the Office for National Statistics.</p>																		
Business rules	1 Error EntryProfile.SEC must exist where EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists and Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J or C or is M22, M26 and EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM.																		
Reason Required	To monitor social background of students in a standard way.																		
Part Of	Entry profile																		
Field Length	1																		
Minimum Occurrences	0																		
Maximum Occurrences	1																		
Schema Components	Element: SEC																		

	Data type: SECCodeContentType
Related Fields	SOC2000
Owner	Office for National Statistics
Version	1.0

UCAS Application Number

Type	field
Short Name	UCASAPPID
Description	This field is the UCAS application code/number, which is a four or nine character code issued by UCAS
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All entrants who entered this Instance via a UCAS scheme
Notes	<p>The UCAS Application Code/Number together with the UCAS Personal identifier (Student.UCASPERID) forms the UCAS Application Identifier. The application code/number will normally be a four character code (two alpha and two numeric) or the old style UCAS Application Number of nine numeric characters. For students entering from 2011/12 and onwards, the old style UCAS Application Number is no longer valid in this field, as it does not appear in UCAS transactions. The four character UCAS Application Code should be returned instead.</p> <p>This field is used by HESA to identify and validate students who entered an HEI through a UCAS scheme.</p>
Business rules	<p>2 Error EntryProfile.UCASAPPID must pass the checksum test as applied to Student.HUSID where it is nine characters long and (digits 1-8 are not in ranges 06000999 to 06009996 inclusive or 06690999 to 06692257 inclusive).</p> <p>3 Error Where EntryProfile.UCASAPPID digits 1-8 are in ranges (06000999 to 06009996 inclusive or 06690999 to 06692257 inclusive), this field must pass either the checksum test as applied to Student.HUSID or the 'incorrectly calculated checksum' test, details of which are in the student circular: http://www.hesa.ac.uk/circulars/student/2006/06_04.html.</p> <p>4 Error Where EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists it must be nine characters long where Student.UCASPERID does not exist.</p> <p>5 Error EntryProfile.UCASAPPID must not contain all zeros.</p> <p>6 Warning EntryProfile.UCASAPPID should be four characters long where Student.UCASPERID exists.</p> <p>7 Error EntryProfile.UCASAPPID must be four characters long when Instance.COMDATE > 2011-07-31</p>
Reason Required	To identify students who entered their current instance via a UCAS application system and to facilitate linking between UCAS and HESA records.
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	9
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: UCASAPPID Data type: UCASAPPIDType
Related Fields	UCASPERID
Owner	UCAS
Version	1.0

Welsh BaccaLaureate Advanced Diploma

Type	field
Short Name	WELBACC
Description	This field identifies those students who undertook a Welsh BaccaLaureate Advanced Diploma course and also distinguishes those students who were awarded the qualification from those students who were not awarded the qualification
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All Welsh domiciled entrants at institutions in Wales (and optional for all Welsh domiciled entrants at institutions in England, NI or Scotland) where Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J or C and where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Undertook Welsh BaccaLaureate Advanced Diploma awarded qualification</p> <p>2 Undertook Welsh BaccaLaureate Advanced Diploma not awarded qualification</p> <p>3 Student did not undertake the Welsh BaccaLaureate Advanced Diploma course</p>
Notes	<p>Optional for Welsh domiciled students at institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Scotland.</p> <p>The Welsh BaccaLaureate Advanced Diploma is comprised of two parts: Core and Options. Core consisting of four components, i.e. Key Skills, Wales, Europe and the World, Work-related Education and Personal and Social Education. Options courses/programmes currently offered, e.g. GCSE, VGCSE, AS/A levels, VCE (Vocational A levels), GNVQ, NVQ, BTEC. Together, the Core and Options make up the Welsh BaccaLaureate Advanced Diploma, a qualification at Level 3 of the National Qualifications Framework.</p> <p>For clarification, any students undertaking a course leading to the Welsh BaccaLaureate Intermediate Diploma, a qualification at Level 2 of the National Qualifications Framework, should be coded 3 'Student did not undertake the Welsh BaccaLaureate Advanced Diploma course' in this field.</p>
Business rules	1 Error EntryProfile.WELBACC must exist for institutions in Wales where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XI and Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J, C and corresponding Instance.COMDATE is greater than 2005-07-31 and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.
Reason Required	<p>This field is a requirement of the Welsh Government (WG) following the introduction of the new Welsh BaccaLaureate qualification programme in September 2003. The Welsh Government has set the target that 25% of students in Wales will be following the Welsh BaccaLaureate by 2010.</p> <p>Monitoring and analysis of the numbers of students entering HE with the Welsh BaccaLaureate Advanced Diploma.</p>
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1

Schema Components	Element: WELBACC Data type: WELBACCCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Year left last institution

Type	field
Short Name	YRLLINST
Description	This field is a four digit number linked to EntryProfile.PREVINST, denoting the year in which the student left the previous institution.
Applicable to	Scotland
Coverage	All entrants to institutions in Scotland where EntryProfile.ARTICLN = 1, 2, 3 or 4
Notes	Code 9999 should be used for 'Not known'.
Business rules	<p>1 Error EntryProfile.YRLLINST must exist for institutions in Scotland where EntryProfile.ARTICLN = 1, 2, 3 or 4.</p> <p>2 Error EntryProfile.YRLLINST must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Wales.</p>
Reason Required	<p>This information is used by the Scottish Government in projections and planning for the sector and analysis of trends in the take-up of higher education. Knowing the year left last institution helps with the matching of students to their previous study details at another institution.</p> <p>Information about articulating students is required by the Scottish Government who wish to compare educational outcomes for those students moving without a gap into a course at an HEI and those who have left a gap of a year or more.</p>
Part Of	Entry profile
Field Length	4
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: YRLLINST Data type: YearWithUnknownType
Related Fields	PREVINST
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Instance

Type	entity
Short Name	Instance
Description	This records a coherent engagement with the institution aiming towards the award of a qualification(s) or credit.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students
Notes	<p>A student undertakes a course; the course being a combination of subject and qualification that define what the student is aiming for e.g. BSc degree in English Literature. A student on a course is referred to as an instance. Since it is possible for a student to undertake more than one course during the reporting year, there may be more than one instance for a student in an institution's return.</p> <p>An instance is tracked over time using HIN linking. An instance can be linked to different course records in different years but these course records must all be at the same level (i.e. undergraduate or postgraduate).</p>
Reason Required	The instance is the central concept in the specification of the HESA Student Record.
Part Of	Student
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	unbounded
Has Parts	Student instance identifier (NUMHUS) Reduced instance return indicator (REDUCEDI) Course identifier (COURSEID) Campus identifier (CAMPID) Institutions own campus identifier (INSTCAMP) Research council student (RCSTDNT) Research council student identifier (RCSTDID) Start date of instance (COMDATE) Mode of study (MODE) Change of mode date (MCDATE) Student instance FTE (STULOAD) FTE method (FTEMETHOD) FTE in year A (LOADYRA) FTE in year B (LOADYRB) Expected length of study (SLENGTH) Units of length (UNITLGTH) End date of instance (ENDDATE) Reason for ending instance (RSNEND) Good standing marker (PROGRESS) Fee eligibility (FEEELIG) Special fee indicator (SPECFEE) Major source of tuition fees (MSTUFEE) Level applicable to funding council HESES (FUNDFEE) Fundability code (FUNDCODE) Year of student on this instance (YEARSTU) Year of course (YEARPRG) Length of current year of instance (YEARLGTH) Type of instance year (TYPEYR) Completion of year of instance (FUNDCOMP)

	<p> Location of study (LOCSDY) SLDD-discrete provision (ST13) Exchange programmes (EXCHANGE) ITT schemes (ITTSCHMS) PhD submission date (PHDSUB) Franchised out arrangements (FROUTARR) Franchise partner (FRANPART) Disabled Student Allowance (DISALL) FE student marker (FESTUMK) Teacher Reference Number (TREFNO) Completion status (CSTAT) Destination of outward credit mobile students (DESTOCM) Amount of tuition fees received/expected for the student (RECFEE) Guided learning hours (GLHRS) Suspension of active studies (NOTACT) Destination (DESTIN) Regulatory body reference number (DHREGREF) NHS employer (NHSEMP) Additional support cost (ADDSUPCT) Learning difficulty (LEARNDIF) Number of units completed (NUMUNITS) Number of units to achieve full qualification (NOUNTACH) Disadvantage uplift factor (DISUPFAC) Employer role (EMPROLE) Qualified teacher status (QTS) Student Support Number (SSN) Gross fee (GROSSFEE) Fee regime indicator (FEEREGIME) Net fee (NETFEE) Apprenticeship pathway (PWAYCODE) Outcome (FEOUTCOME) Withdrawal Reason (WITHDRAWREASON) Actual Progression Route (ACTPROGROUTE) Funding model (FUNDMODEL) The type of aim recorded (AIMTYPE) Programme type (PROGTYPE) Distance Learning SLN (DISTLEARNSLN) Proportion of funding remaining (PROPFUNDREMAIN) Framework code (FWORKCODE) Learning Planned end date (LEARNPLANENDDATE) Entry profile Qualifications awarded Student on module RAE Data Learner Employment Status Learning delivery funding and monitoring Learner funding and monitoring ITT phase/scope (ITTPHSC) Foundation degree to degree bridging course (BRIDGE) Department of Health funding body (DHFUND) Institution's own instance identifier (OWNINST) Initiatives (INITIATIVES) Subject Knowledge Enhancement institution (SKEITT) </p>
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Actual Progression Route

Type	field
Short Name	ACTPROGROUTE
Description	This field details the learner's actual progression route at the end of the learning programme.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01 and Instance.ENDDATE is not null and Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 19, 20, or 21 and Instance.AIMTYPE = 1.
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>01 Learner progressing to an Intermediate Level Apprenticeship or Advanced Level Apprenticeship</p> <p>02 Learner progressing to further education or training below level 2</p> <p>03 Learner progressing to further education or training at level 2 or above</p> <p>04 Learner progressing to employment with training</p> <p>05 Learner progressing to employment without training</p> <p>06 Learner progressing to independent living or supported employment</p> <p>98 Other</p>
Notes	<p>This field must be completed at the end of the learning programme for learners undertaking Foundation learning programmes (young people aged 16-18 and adults aged 19-24 with learning difficulties and disabilities funded by the EFA) (Instance.PROGTYPE = 19) and all Apprenticeship programmes. (Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03,10, 20 or 21). It is recorded on the programme aim only (Instance.AIMTYPE = 1) for these programmes.</p> <p>This field must not be returned for Apprenticeship programmes where Instance.AIMTYPE = 2 or 3.</p> <p>This field is available for non-funded Apprenticeship learners, but it does not need to be recorded for any other type of non-funded learning.</p> <p>Level 2 includes GCSE grade A* to C, BTEC First Diploma and NVQ level 2.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.ACTPROGROUTE must exist for institutions in England where Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 19, 20 or 21 and Instance.AIMTYPE = 1 and Instance.ENDDATE is not null and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.ACTPROGROUTE must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.ACTPROGROUTE must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p>
Reason Required	This data will be used for performance monitoring and for judgements on the effectiveness of this provision.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ACTPROGROUTE

	Data type: ACTPROGROUTECodeContentType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Additional support cost

Type	field
Short Name	ADDSUPCT
Description	This field indicates the level of additional support the provider is claiming for the learner.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Notes	<p>Where no additional support costs have been incurred zero should be returned.</p> <p>The additional support costs correspond to the amount of extra resource identified by the institution as required to meet the needs of learners such as those with learning difficulties and/or disabilities per year.</p> <p>Additional funding may be claimed where an institution provides additional support to a learner and the extra costs of doing so are above a threshold level.</p> <p>Where a learner for whom additional support costs are incurred withdraws, the actual - not projected - support cost should be recorded.</p> <p>Additional support is defined as any activity which provides direct support for learning to individual learners, which is over and above that which is normally provided in a standard learning programme which leads to their primary learning goal. The additional support is required to help learners gain access to, progress towards and successfully achieve their learning goals. The need for additional support may arise from a learning difficulty or disability or from literacy, numeracy or language support requirements.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.ADDSUPCT must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.ADDSUPCT must not exist for institutions not in England.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.ADDSUPCT must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p>
Reason Required	For the management of additional financial support for students with learning difficulties and/or disabilities.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	6
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ADDSUPCT
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	SFA/EFA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30

Change management notes

Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 01 is now within coverage for FE for institutions in England.

Amount of tuition fees received/expected for the student

Type	field
Short Name	RECFEE
Description	This field records the actual amount of tuition fees the provider has received during this teaching year for the learner on this learning aim. This field is applicable to further education instances only.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Notes	Not applicable to economic cost recovery fees. The length of this field is 5 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros, e.g. 00780 or 780
Examples	Where a learning aim has tuition fees of £780 this would appear as 780.
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.RECFEE must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.RECFEE must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.RECFEE must not exist for institutions in England and Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p>
Reason Required	To determine the extent of remission of fees in the sector.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: RECFEE Data type: RECFEEType
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 01 is now within coverage for FE for institutions in England.

Apprenticeship pathway

Type	field
Short Name	PWAYCODE
Description	This field identifies the pathway of the Apprenticeship framework being undertaken.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01 and Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 20 or 21.
Notes	<p>This data must not be returned for 14-19 Diplomas or Foundation Learning Programmes.</p> <p>The Apprenticeship pathway must be recorded on all aims within an Apprenticeship programme, including the programme aim. For continuing learners this field must be completed with 0.</p> <p>For Apprenticeship frameworks that start on or after 1 August 2012, if the Framework pathway code is listed in LARA, then the pathway code recorded in this field must match the pathway code listed in LARA. This must be recorded on all aims within the programme.</p> <p>If the Framework pathway code is not available in LARA at the start of the programme, then this field must be completed with 0.</p> <p>If the Framework pathway code is added to LARA after the programme start date, then there is no requirement to update this field, although providers can do so if they wish to.</p> <p>Providers should consult the Provider Support manual for details of how to record pathway changes in the ILR.</p> <p>The list of valid values are available in LARA download from the IM Services gateway.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.PWAYCODE must exist for institutions in England where Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 20 or 21 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.PWAYCODE must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales</p> <p>3 Error Instance.PWAYCODE must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p>
Reason Required	To track multiple pathways within a framework which identify different types of employment/job roles.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: PWAYCODE

Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Campus identifier

Type	field
Short Name	CAMPID
Description	This field identifies the campus with which a student instance is associated
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances
Notes	<p>The criteria for assessing whether a campus identifier is appropriate are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A separate campus identifier should be used if a substantial number of students are studying on a campus at a substantial distance from where the main institution is based, such that it would be regarded as not being in the same city/town. Greater London can be treated as a single location. This is to facilitate analysis of geographic patterns of study. • A separate campus identifier should be used when a merger takes place, to identify any merged institutions as separate campuses if they fit the criteria specified. • Campus identifiers can only be used where a student can be associated with a single site. It is recognised that because of the flexibility of study patterns adopted by some institutions, it will be impossible to say categorically that some students are assigned to a particular campus. • Although this field is compulsory, in the majority of cases, it will default to the generic value A indicating the entire institution or main campus. • HEFCE expect separate campus identifiers for any part of the institution funded separately e.g. within 0151 London University (Institutes and activities) <p>An institution that wishes separately to identify campuses may do so by using any alphanumeric character except for A in this field. Only those CAMPID codes submitted to HESA as part of the Campus Information System can be returned in this field.</p>
Reason Required	To allow breakdown by campus, and hence geographical location of study, for multi-campus institutions.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: CAMPID
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Change of mode date

Type	field
Short Name	MCDATE
Description	This field records the date when a postgraduate student formally moves from an active study mode to 'writing-up' (Instance.MODE=43 or 44), 'changed to dormant' (Instance.MODE=73 or 74) or 'sabbatical'(Instance.MODE=51) or the date when such a student returns to an active study mode.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England and Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L or M (excluding M22, M26) and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04
Notes	<p>This is only applicable to postgraduate students in institutions in England and Northern Ireland.</p> <p>All date fields in the Student Record must be completed using the ISO8601 format of YYYY-MM-DD. The specification of this field falls within the scope of the Aligned Data Definitions and follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <p>If the mode has not changed, an empty element should be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 9 (not applicable), i.e:</p> <pre><MCDATE ReasonForNull="9" ></MCDATE></pre> <p>Where a student starts and finishes the reporting year with an active mode, a date is not required regardless of any mode changes during the year.</p> <p>Where a student finishes the year with a non-active mode but has had an active mode at some point in the year then the last change from active to non-active mode should be returned, changes between different non-active modes should be ignored. Where a student finishes the year with an active mode the last date they moved from a non-active to active mode should be recorded.</p> <p>Where a student is non-active for an entire reporting period, having been on an active mode of study at the end of the previous reporting period, Instance.MCDATE should be returned as Y1-08-01, unless Instance.ENDDATE is before Y1-07-31. Instance.MCDATE can be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute in this circumstance.</p> <p>Where a student moves from active study to dormant (code 73 or 74) Instance.MCDATE must be completed with the date at which the instance moves to dormant.</p> <p>Non-active modes for the purpose of this field are defined as dormant (63, 64), changed to dormant (73, 74), writing up (43, 44) and sabbatical (51).</p> <p>Further guidance is available on the completion of this field.</p>
Business rules	1 Error Instance.MCDATE must exist for institutions in England or Northern Ireland

	<p>and Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L or M (excluding M22, M26) and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.MCDATE must not be null except when ReasonForNull = 9.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.MCDATE must be null when ReasonForNull = 9.</p> <p>4 Error Where Instance.MCDATE is not null, it must be < Y1-08-02 for institutions in England and Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L or M (excluding M22, M26) and Instance.MODE = 63 or 64.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.MCDATE must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Wales.</p> <p>6 Error Where exists and is not null Instance.MCDATE must be later than Y1-07-31 unless Instance.MODE = 63 or 64.</p> <p>7 Error Where exists and is not null Instance.MCDATE must be earlier than Y2-08-01.</p> <p>8 Error Instance.MCDATE must not be null when Instance.MODE = 73 or 74. For further information please see the documentation in the coding manual - Further guidance on reporting Instance.MCDATE and Instance.MODE.</p> <p>9 Error Where exists and not null Instance.MCDATE must be earlier than Instance.ENDDATE</p> <p>10 Error Where it exists and is not null Instance.MCDATE must be later than Instance.COMDATE</p>
Reason Required	As dormant and writing-up students are not funded it is necessary to identify the point at which they move to these modes.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	10
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MCDATE Data type: DateWithNullStructure9
Related Fields	MODE
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-07-30
Change management notes	Guidance in Notes updated for students who are non-active for an entire reporting period.

Completion of year of instance

Type	field
Short Name	FUNDCOMP
Description	This field refers to the year of instance being funded. The field records the student's completion status with respect to that year.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Wales
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Completed the current year of programme of study</p> <p>2 Did not complete the current year of programme of study</p> <p>3 Year of programme of study not yet completed, but has not failed to complete</p> <p>4 Partially completed the year of study (HEFCW HESES rules)</p> <p>9 Not in HESES Population</p>
Notes	<p>Coding should be consistent with funding council early statistics. Refer to relevant funding council for full definitions.</p> <p>Normally when code 2 is returned, then either Instance.RSNEND and Instance.ENDDATE will be completed to end the student instance, or Instance.NOTACT will be completed to show the study is suspended. It has become more common for students to fail to complete the current year of instance but continue to study with the institution, this is particularly true of part-time students who drop a module.</p> <p>Code 4 'is as defined in HEFCW HESES, and should be used for students studying full-time on taught courses only.</p> <p>Code 9 can be used if the HESA reporting year does not contain, in part or in whole, a year of instance which has previously, is, or will be, included in the HESES population. Institutions can however also use the other codes for such records.</p> <p>Where a student undertakes a foundation degree and bridging course in the same HESA reporting year Instance.FUNDCOMP, should reflect whether the student completed the foundation degree and will therefore usually be returned with a value of 1. Similarly where the student progresses to a degree after completion of the bridging course this field should reflect the completion status of the degree.</p> <p>Any queries on this field should be addressed to HEFCE. Some additional guidance can be found in HESES.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.FUNDCOMP must exist for institutions in England, Wales and Northern Ireland where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.FUNDCOMP must not exist for institutions in Scotland.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.FUNDCOMP cannot be coded 3 where Instance.RSNEND is coded 01 - 11, 98 or 99.</p> <p>4 Error Where Instance.FUNDCOMP is 4, the institution must be in Wales and Instance.MODE must be 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 52 or 53 and Course.COURSEAIM must not begin with D, L, P, Q, R, S or X</p>
Reason Required	For alignment with funding definitions.

Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FUNDCOMP Data type: FUNDCOMPCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Completion status

Type	field
Short Name	CSTAT
Description	This field provides an indication of the degree of completion of the learning activities leading to the qualification aim.
Applicable to	England Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 The student is continuing or intending to continue, the learning activities leading to the qualification aim</p> <p>2 The student has completed all the learning activities leading to the qualification aim</p> <p>3 The student has withdrawn from the learning activities leading to the qualification aim</p> <p>4 The student has transferred to a new qualification aim. That is the student has withdrawn from this qualification aim & as a direct result has at the same time started studying for another qualification aim</p> <p>6 Learner has temporarily withdrawn from the aim due to an agreed break in learning</p>
Notes	<p>Code 4 'The student has transferred to a new qualification aim. That is the student has withdrawn from this qualification aim & as a direct result has at the same time started studying for another qualification aim' is only valid for institutions in Wales.</p> <p>Code 6 'Learner has temporarily withdrawn from the aim due to an agreed break in learning' is only valid for institutions in England.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.CSTAT must exist for institutions in England or Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.CSTAT must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.CSTAT must not exist for institutions in England or Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.CSTAT must be coded 1 where Instance.PROGRESS is coded 9.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.CSTAT must be coded 4 where Instance.PROGRESS is coded W.</p> <p>6 Error For institutions in England Instance.CSTAT must not be coded 4.</p> <p>7 Error For institutions in Wales Instance.CSTAT must not be coded 6.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor completion.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: CSTAT Data type: CSTATCodeContentType
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	HESA

Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid. Business rule 6 added to ensure correct coding by institutions in England. Business rule 7 added to ensure correct coding by institutions in Wales.

Course identifier

Type	field
Short Name	COURSEID
Description	This field records the institution's own unique internal identifier for the course. The Course identifier is the primary key for the Course entity and exists as a foreign key on Instance.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances
Notes	<p>Course identifiers will be allocated by the institution and should be unique for each course.</p> <p>The term 'course' in this context relates to the combination of subject and qualification that defines what a student is aiming for and which are described in fields Course.COURSEAIM and CourseSubject.SBJCA.</p> <p>The Course identifier links the course entity and the instance entity for the reporting period . There must be an entry in the course entity with a matching identifier in the instance entity to provide this link, and so give details about the student's study in the current year. Where a student changes course within an instance by changing either course aim (at the same level) or subject, the Course.COURSEID should be updated to reflect the course that is applicable at the end of the reporting period.</p> <p>Where the student continues on the same course, the same COURSEID should be kept for all years of the course. It is intended that in the future for some onward uses data from the student record should be aggregated to allow publication at a Course level. For the UNISTATS (TQI) site, for example, information about entrants, continuation, outcomes and destinations will be published together. If the COURSEID is not consistent throughout the course it will not be possible to compile a complete set of statistics as relating to a single course. Course.CTITLE will not allow for this aggregation: it is a text field and not suitable for the necessary validation. HESA has introduced a HIN validation warning when there is a HIN link but COURSEID changes.</p> <p>Year-on-year linking will continue by the HIN mechanism.</p> <p>Valid characters</p> <p>The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+IE00 to U+IEFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p>

	<p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>) and to ensure that their files are actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.</p>
Business rules	1 Error This entry must exist in Course.COURSEID.
Reason Required	To facilitate linkage with the Instance entity.
Part Of	Course Instance
Field Length	30
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: COURSEID Data type: COURSEIDType
Related Fields	COURSEAIM CourseSubject
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Department of Health funding body

Type	field
Short Name	DHFUND
Description	This field describes the Strategic Health Authority (SHA).
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances where Course.MSFUND = 31 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Valid Entries and Labels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 01 North East LETB 02 North West LETB 03 Yorkshire & Humber LETB 04 East of England LETB 05 East Midlands LETB 06 West Midlands LETB 07 Kent, Surrey & Sussex LETB 08 Thames Valley LETB 09 Wessex LETB 10 South West LETB 11 North, Central & East London LETB 12 North West London LETB 13 South London LETB 14 All London LETBs 99 HEE funding not at LETB level LWF01 Northern England LWF02 Cumbria and Lancashire LWF03 County Durham and Tees Valley LWF04 North and East Yorkshire and North Lincolnshire LWF05 West Yorkshire LWF06 South Yorkshire LWF07 Greater Manchester LWF08 Cheshire and Merseyside LWF09 Norfolk, Suffolk and Cambridgeshire LWF10 Trent LWF11 Leicestershire, Northamptonshire and Rutland LWF12 Birmingham and the Black Country LWF13 Staffordshire and Shropshire LWF14 West Midlands South LWF15 Bedfordshire and Hertfordshire LWF16 Devon and Cornwall LWF17 Avon Gloucestershire and Wiltshire LWF18 Somerset and Dorset LWF19 Thames Valley LWF20 Hampshire and Isle of Wight LWF21 Essex LWF22 Kent Surrey and Sussex LWF23 North East London LWF24 North Central London LWF25 North West London LWF26 South East London LWF27 South West London Q00 Other NHS organisation Q01 Funded centrally by the Department of Health Q30 North East Strategic Health Authority Q31 North West Strategic Health Authority Q32 Yorkshire & The Humber Strategic Health Authority Q33 East Midlands Strategic Health Authority Q34 West Midlands Strategic Health Authority Q35 East of England Strategic Health Authority

	<p>Q36 London Strategic Health Authority Q37 South East Coast Strategic Health Authority Q38 South Central Strategic Health Authority Q39 South West Strategic Health Authority 998 Not Applicable</p>
Notes	<p>This field will provide additional detail about the actual source of DH funding.</p> <p>Please note:</p> <p>Strategic Health Authorities (SHAs) will be abolished on 31 March 2013. Health Education England (HEE) will be the organisation responsible for national oversight of the education funding system within the NHS as from 1 April 2013, delegating responsibility to Local Education and Training Boards (LETBs), who will be responsible for the contracting and commissioning of healthcare education.</p> <p>Consequently, this field will change from recording Strategic Health Authorities to recording Local Education and Training Boards for the 2013/14 Student record.</p> <p>For the 2012/13 record, LETBs have been included to allow for funding allocated between April 1st 2013 and the end of the HESA reporting year.</p> <p>Code 14 'All London LETBs' is a code to be used for funding allocated jointly from all three London LETBs (codes 11, 12 and 13) working in partnership.</p> <p>Code 15 'HEE funding not at LETB level' is to be used for exceptional funding allocated at HEE level rather than at delegated LETB level.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.DHFUND must exist for institutions in England where Course.MSFUND = 31 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>3 Warning Instance.DHFUND should be coded 998 for institutions in England where CourseSubject.SBJCA = A300 or A400 and Course.MSFUND = 31 and Course.COURSEAIM = H16 or I16.</p> <p>7 Warning Instance.DHFUND should not be coded 998 for institutions in England where Course.MSFUND = 31 unless CourseSubject.SBJCA begins 'L5'.</p> <p>8 Error Instance.DHFUND must not exist for institutions not in England.</p> <p>9 Error Instance.DHFUND must not exist for institutions in England where Course.MSFUND not = 31.</p> <p>10 Error Instance.DHFUND codes LWF01 - LWF27 must have an Instance.COMDATE before 1 August 2006.</p>
Reason Required	To track funding streams.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: DHFUND Data type: DHFUNDCodeContentType
Owner	Department of Health
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30

Change management notes

Valid entries for Local Education and Training Boards (LETBs) added, which come into existence from April 1st 2013. Additional guidance added to Notes reflecting this.

Destination

Type	field
Short Name	DESTIN
Description	This field describes the destination of students at institutions in Wales who follow a course at FE level or are funded by WG-DfES.
Applicable to	Wales
Coverage	Optional for FE students (where Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S, X) at institutions in Wales
Valid Entries and Labels	55 FE student - higher education, at another provider 56 FE student - entering new employment or changing employment 57 FE student - continuing current employment 58 FE student - other 59 FE student - unknown 60 Continuing existing programme of learning with same provider 61 Continuing existing programme of learning with another provider 62 New programme of learning at same provider (not HE) 63 New programme of learning (not HE) with another provider 64 Higher education at same provider 65 Education or training - type not known 66 Seeking work/unemployed 67 Self-employment own business 68 Self-employment other 69 Voluntary work
Notes	
Business rules	2 Error Instance.DESTIN must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland. 3 Error Instance.DESTIN must not exist for institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.
Reason Required	For Welsh Government DfES to monitor the destinations of non-adult FE students at Welsh institutions.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: DESTIN Data type: DESTINCodeContentType
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Destination of outward credit mobile students

Type	field
Short Name	DESTOCM
Description	This field identifies the country or countries where either the instance is an outwards credit mobile student undertaking a credit-bearing part of their course at one or more institutions overseas; or is a student is studying outside of the UK (Instance.LOCSDY = S).
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Wales
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England, Wales and Northern Ireland where Instance.EXCHANGE = 7, B, C, D or E or Instance.LOCSDY = F, G or S and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>AF Afghanistan</p> <p>XQ Africa not otherwise specified</p> <p>AX Åland Islands {Ahvenamaa}</p> <p>AL Albania</p> <p>DZ Algeria</p> <p>AS American Samoa</p> <p>AD Andorra</p> <p>AO Angola</p> <p>AI Anguilla</p> <p>XX Antarctica and Oceania not otherwise specified</p> <p>AG Antigua and Barbuda</p> <p>AR Argentina</p> <p>AM Armenia</p> <p>AW Aruba</p> <p>XS Asia (Except Middle East) not otherwise specified</p> <p>AU Australia</p> <p>AT Austria</p> <p>AZ Azerbaijan</p> <p>BS Bahamas, The</p> <p>BH Bahrain</p> <p>BD Bangladesh</p> <p>BB Barbados</p> <p>BY Belarus</p> <p>BE Belgium</p> <p>BZ Belize</p> <p>BJ Benin</p> <p>BM Bermuda</p> <p>BT Bhutan</p> <p>BO Bolivia</p> <p>BQ Bonaire, Sint Eustatius and Saba</p> <p>BA Bosnia and Herzegovina</p> <p>BW Botswana</p> <p>BR Brazil</p> <p>VG British Virgin Islands [Virgin Islands, British]</p> <p>BN Brunei [Brunei Darussalam]</p> <p>BG Bulgaria</p> <p>BF Burkina [Burkina Faso]</p> <p>MM Burma [Myanmar]</p> <p>BI Burundi</p> <p>KH Cambodia</p> <p>CM Cameroon</p> <p>CA Canada</p> <p>IC Canary Islands</p> <p>CV Cape Verde</p> <p>XW Caribbean not otherwise specified</p>

KY	Cayman Islands
CF	Central African Republic
XU	Central America not otherwise specified
TD	Chad
CL	Chile
CN	China
CX	Christmas Island
CC	Cocos (Keeling) Islands
CO	Colombia
KM	Comoros
CG	Congo
CD	Congo (Democratic Republic) [Congo (The Democratic Republic of the)] {formerly Zaire}
CK	Cook Islands
CR	Costa Rica
HR	Croatia
CU	Cuba
CW	Curaçao
XA	Cyprus (European Union)
XB	Cyprus (Non-European Union)
CZ	Czech Republic
DK	Denmark
DJ	Djibouti
DM	Dominica
DO	Dominican Republic
TL	East Timor [Timor Leste]
EC	Ecuador
EG	Egypt
SV	El Salvador
GQ	Equatorial Guinea
ER	Eritrea
EE	Estonia
ET	Ethiopia
XP	Europe not otherwise specified
EU	European Union not otherwise specified
FK	Falkland Islands [Falkland Islands (Malvinas)]
FO	Faroe Islands
FJ	Fiji
FI	Finland
FR	France {includes Corsica}
GF	French Guiana
PF	French Polynesia
GA	Gabon
GM	Gambia, The
GE	Georgia
DE	Germany
GH	Ghana
GI	Gibraltar
GR	Greece
GL	Greenland
GD	Grenada
GP	Guadeloupe
GU	Guam
GT	Guatemala
GG	Guernsey
GN	Guinea
GW	Guinea-Bissau
GY	Guyana
HT	Haiti
HN	Honduras
HK	Hong Kong (Special Administrative Region of China) [Hong Kong]
HU	Hungary
IS	Iceland
IN	India

ID	Indonesia
IR	Iran [Iran, Islamic Republic of]
IQ	Iraq
IE	Ireland
IM	Isle of Man
IL	Israel
IT	Italy {Includes Sardinia, Sicily}
CI	Ivory Coast [Côte D'ivoire]
JM	Jamaica
JP	Japan
JE	Jersey
JO	Jordan
KZ	Kazakhstan
KE	Kenya
KI	Kiribati
KP	Korea (North) [Korea, Democratic People's Republic of]
KR	Korea (South) [Korea, Republic of]
QO	Kosovo
KW	Kuwait
KG	Kyrgyzstan
LA	Laos [Lao People's Democratic Republic]
LV	Latvia
LB	Lebanon
LS	Lesotho
LR	Liberia
LY	Libya [Libyan Arab Jamahiriya]
LI	Liechtenstein
LT	Lithuania
LU	Luxembourg
MO	Macao (Special Administrative Region of China) [Macao]
MK	Macedonia [Macedonia, The Former Yugoslav Republic of]
MG	Madagascar
MW	Malawi
MY	Malaysia
MV	Maldives
ML	Mali
MT	Malta
MH	Marshall Islands
MQ	Martinique
MR	Mauritania
MU	Mauritius
YT	Mayotte
MX	Mexico
FM	Micronesia [Micronesia, Federated States of]
XR	Middle East not otherwise specified
MD	Moldova [Moldova, Republic of]
MC	Monaco
MN	Mongolia
ME	Montenegro
MS	Montserrat
MA	Morocco
MZ	Mozambique
NA	Namibia
NR	Nauru
NP	Nepal
NL	Netherlands
AN	Netherlands Antilles
NC	New Caledonia
NZ	New Zealand
NI	Nicaragua
NE	Niger
NG	Nigeria
NU	Niue
NF	Norfolk Island

XT	North America not otherwise specified
MP	Northern Mariana Islands
NO	Norway
ZZ	Not known
PS	Occupied Palestinian Territories [Palestine, State of] {formerly West Bank (including East Jerusalem) and Gaza Strip}
OM	Oman
PK	Pakistan
PW	Palau
PA	Panama
PG	Papua New Guinea
PY	Paraguay
PE	Peru
PH	Philippines
PN	Pitcairn, Henderson, Ducie and Oeno Islands [Pitcairn]
PL	Poland
PT	Portugal {includes Madeira, Azores}
PR	Puerto Rico
QA	Qatar
RE	Réunion
RO	Romania
RU	Russia [Russian Federation]
RW	Rwanda
WS	Samoa
SM	San Marino
ST	Sao Tome and Principe
SA	Saudi Arabia
SN	Senegal
RS	Serbia
SC	Seychelles
SL	Sierra Leone
SG	Singapore
SX	Sint Maarten (Dutch part)
SK	Slovakia
SI	Slovenia
SB	Solomon Islands
SO	Somalia
ZA	South Africa
XV	South America not otherwise specified
GS	South Georgia and The South Sandwich Islands
SS	South Sudan
ES	Spain {includes Ceuta, Melilla}
LK	Sri Lanka
BL	St Barthélemy
SH	St Helena, Ascension and Tristan da Cunha
KN	St Kitts and Nevis
LC	St Lucia
MF	St Martin (French Part) [St Martin]
PM	St Pierre and Miquelon
VC	St Vincent and The Grenadines
SD	Sudan
SR	Surinam [Suriname]
SJ	Svalbard and Jan Mayen
SZ	Swaziland
SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland
SY	Syria [Syrian Arab Republic]
TW	Taiwan [Taiwan, Province of China]
TJ	Tajikistan
TZ	Tanzania [Tanzania, United Republic of]
TH	Thailand
TG	Togo
TK	Tokelau
TO	Tonga

	TT Trinidad and Tobago TN Tunisia TR Turkey TM Turkmenistan TC Turks and Caicos Islands TV Tuvalu UG Uganda UA Ukraine AE United Arab Emirates US United States VI United States Virgin Islands [Virgin Islands, U. S.] UY Uruguay UZ Uzbekistan VU Vanuatu VA Vatican City [Holy See (Vatican City State)] VE Venezuela VN Vietnam [Viet Nam] WF Wallis and Futuna EH Western Sahara YE Yemen ZM Zambia ZW Zimbabwe
Notes	<p>This coding frame is determined by the National Statistics Country Classification 2006 (NSCC), which is based on ISO 3166-1 Codes for the Representation of Names of Countries and their Subdivisions, and the United Nations' Standard Country or Area Codes for Statistical Use. In a small number of cases, the NSCC usage differs from the usage in ISO 3166 on which the NSCC is based. Where that happens, the ISO 3166 usage is given in brackets after the preferred UK usage, to facilitate cross-reference to the international standard. For example for code KP the description is Korea (South). The text in brackets, [Korea, Republic of], is the ISO 3166 description.</p> <p>Information in braces is provided by HESA to clarify usage, and is not derived either from NSCC or ISO 3166 lists of short country names, for example Spain {includes Ceuta, Melilla}.</p> <p>Up to three occurrences of this field can be included in the data for a reporting period where the student has spent parts of the year in different countries.</p> <p>AN: Netherlands Antilles</p> <p>On October 10th 2010, the Netherlands Antilles (AN) was dissolved and its constituent island territories became constituent countries or special municipalities of the Kingdom of the Netherlands in their own right. Consequently, the Netherlands Antilles (AN) has ceased to be a valid code for entrants from 2011/12 onwards in DESTOCM, and has been superseded by the following codes:</p> <p>There is no obligation for institutions to recode continuing students recorded with a destination of the Netherlands Antilles (AN) to these countries, but they may do so if the information is available.</p> <p>SD and SS: Sudan and South Sudan</p> <p>South Sudan (SS), formerly part of Sudan (SD), became a country in its own right on July 9th 2011. There is no obligation for institutions to recode continuing students recorded with a destination of Sudan (SD) to the newer destination, but they may do so</p>

	<p>if the information is available.</p> <p>EU, XP-XX, ZZ: Obsolete Countries, Regions, Stateless, and Unknown</p> <p>The regional codes EU and XP to XX may be used if information is known only to this level of accuracy, in preference to using ZZ which should be a last resort. EU should be used in preference to XP if appropriate.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.DESTOCCM must exist for institutions in England, Wales and Northern Ireland where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 7, B, C, D or E or Instance.LOCSDY = F, G or S).</p> <p>2 Error Instance.DESTOCCM must not exist for institutions in Scotland.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.DESTOCCM must not be coded AN where Instance.COMDATE > 2011-07-31.</p>
Reason Required	This information is required by BIS to identify details of student migration patterns.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	3
Schema Components	Element: DESTOCCM Data type: DESTOCCMCodeContentType
Related Fields	EXCHANGE LOCSDY
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Valid entry PS relabelled from 'Occupied Palestinian Territories [Palestinian Territory, Occupied] {formerly West Bank (including East Jerusalem) and Gaza Strip}' to 'Occupied Palestinian Territories [Palestine, State of] {formerly West Bank (including East Jerusalem) and Gaza Strip}' to align with ISO 3166-1.

Disabled Student Allowance

Type	field
Short Name	DISALL
Description	This field identifies whether the student with a disability is in receipt of Disabled Students' Allowance (DSA) or not.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All Instances where Student.DISABLE is between 02 and 96 inclusive and where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>4 In receipt of Disabled Students' Allowance</p> <p>5 Not in receipt of Disabled Students' Allowance</p> <p>9 Information about Disabled Students' Allowance is not known/not sought</p>
Notes	<p>If Student.DISABLE is coded 02-96 indicating that the student has a disability, then this field should be coded 4, 5 or 9.</p> <p>Code 9 should be used for all cases where it is known that the student has a disability, but it is not known whether or not they are in receipt of Disabled Students' Allowance.</p> <p>Institutions are expected to collect this information from students annually.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.DISALL must exist where Student.DISABLE = 02 - 96 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.DISALL code 4 must have a Course.COURSEAIM beginning with D, E, L, M, H, I, J or C.</p> <p>3 Warning Instance.DISALL should not exist where Student.DISABLE = 00, 97, 98 or 99.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.DISALL cannot be coded 4 where (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is not coded GG, JE, XL, XK, IM, XF, XI, XH, XG).</p>
Reason Required	To permit disability-based analysis; for monitoring levels and trends in participation by particular groups of people; to monitor take-up of Disabled Students' Allowance as Disabled Students' Allowance is now not means tested; to support the allocation for disability premium by HEFCW; to permit analysis based on type of disability.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: DISALL Data type: DISALLCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Disadvantage uplift factor

Type	field
Short Name	DISUPFAC
Description	This field records the disadvantage uplift factor for a learner for whom a disadvantage uplift is being claimed.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Notes	<p>For many learners eligible for widening participation funding, the factor can be entered automatically from the file of postcodes and factors available on the Data Service website.</p> <p>Where a learner comes from a ward eligible for widening participation funding and the postcode is not on the Data Service file of postcodes and widening participation factors, the factor can be entered manually from the file of wards and widening participation factors also available on the website. The revised index should be used for special cases and where the postcode is not on the Data Service file. Institutions should keep evidence of the learner's eligibility for widening participation funding.</p> <p>Where a learner is not eligible for a disadvantage uplift, 0.0000 should be returned.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Warning Instance.DISUPFAC should exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01. Please consider whether this field is relevant for the student.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.DISUPFAC must not exist for institutions not in England.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.DISUPFAC must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p>
Reason Required	To calculate SFC/EFA funding for the institution.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	6
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: DISUPFAC Data type: DISUPFACType
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	SFA/EFA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 has been changed to a warning and updated as reduced return 01 is now within coverage for FE for institutions in England.

Distance Learning SLN

Type	field
Short Name	DISTLEARNSLN
Description	The Standard Learner Number (SLN) value, agreed with the Skills Funding Agency (SFA) or Education Funding Agency (EFA) for distance learning.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01 and Instance.FUNDMODEL = 21 or 22 and Instance.AIMTYPE = 2, 3 or 4. Optional where Instance.FUNDMODEL = 80, 81 or 82.
Notes	<p>A Standard Learner Number (SLN) is a value used to calculate funding. It is a measure of the volume of activity associated with a qualification, learning aim, learner, contract, allocation or any other set of training or education.</p> <p>This field records the agreed base rate for unlisted qualifications delivered under distance learning. The value should be recorded in SLNs and must be agreed with your local partnership team.</p> <p>The agreed value should be based on the approach set out in the funding guidance documentation.</p> <p>A number in the range 0 to 9.999 is allowed for this field.</p> <p>For more information on Field status, please see ILR specification.</p> <p>For more funding guidance, please visit the Skills Funding Agency website or the EFA website.</p> <p>From 2012/13, EFA will be replacing YPLA. More information about EFA replacing YPLA can be found on the Department for Education website.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.DISTLEARNSLN must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3 and Instance.FUNDMODEL = 21 or 22 and Instance.AIMTYPE = 2, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.DISTLEARNSLN must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.DISTLEARNSLN must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p>
Reason Required	To support funding of Distance and Electronic Learning (DELG).
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: DISTLEARNSLN Data type: DISTLEARNSLNType

Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Employer role

Type	field
Short Name	EMPROLE
Description	This field records the role of the employer in the learning aim of the learner.
Applicable to	England Wales
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01. This field is optional for all students at institutions in Wales.
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 The DfES learner is employed & is on a WBL programme</p> <p>2 The DfES learner is not on a WBL programme, but is employed & released by the employer to study on a vocational programme relevant to that employment</p> <p>3 The DfES learner is not on a WBL programme but is employed & studying on a vocational programme relevant to that employment. The employer has not released the learner to attend but is providing other support (eg payment of fees)</p> <p>4 The DfES learner is not on a WBL programme, but is attending dedicated employer provision</p> <p>5 The DfES learner is not employed, but is on a WBL programme</p> <p>6 The SFA/EFA learner is employed & released by the employer to study a vocational learning aim relevant to that employment</p> <p>7 The SFA/EFA learner is employed & studying a vocational learning aim relevant to that employment. The employer has not released the learner to attend</p> <p>9 None of the above</p>
Notes	<p>Codes 6 - 7 can be used only by institutions in England.</p> <p>For learners at institutions in England, this field should be completed for employed learners who are studying learning aims relevant to their employment. This field is optional for all students at institutions in Wales.</p> <p>Where a learner is employed and released by their employer to study a vocational learning aim which is relevant to their employment, code 6 'The SFA/EFA learner is employed and released by the employer to study a vocational learning aim relevant to that employment' should be used.</p> <p>Where a learner is employed and studying a vocational learning aim relevant to that employment and their employer has not released the learner to attend, code 7 'The SFA/EFA learner is employed and studying a vocational learning aim relevant to that employment. The employer has not released the learner to attend' should be used.</p> <p>Code 9 'None of the above' should be used for all 16 -19 year old learners following a programme of 450 or more guided learning hours per year, learners studying learning aims unrelated to their employment and the unemployed.</p> <p>Where a provider is not aware of the learners employment or is unable to establish a link between the learning aim and the learners employment, code 9 'None of the above' should be used.</p> <p>Codes 1 - 5 can be used only by institutions in Wales.</p>

	This employer role should be as at the beginning of the learning aim. Do not amend this field if the learners employment status changes during the programme.
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.EMPROLE must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.EMPROLE codes 1 - 5 must be for an institution in Wales.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.EMPROLE codes 6 and 7 must be for an institution in England.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.EMPROLE must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.EMPROLE must not exist for institutions in England or Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p>
Reason Required	<p>To identify the different types of employment-related learning.</p> <p>To monitor the role that employers play in the learner's attendance to study learning aims and to calculate funds for dedicated employer provision.</p>
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: EMPROLE Data type: EMPROLECodeContentType
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	SFA/EFA/WG-DfES
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid and reduced return 01 now extends to FE. Business rule 3 updated as code 8 is no longer valid.

End date of instance

Type	field
Short Name	ENDDATE
Description	This field records the date the student left the student instance detailed in this return.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances
Notes	<p>All date fields in the Student Record must be completed using the ISO8601 format of YYYY-MM-DD. The specification of this field falls within the scope of the Aligned Data Definitions and follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <p>If the instance has not ended, an empty element should be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 9 (not applicable), i.e:</p> <pre><ENDDATE ReasonForNull="9"></ENDDATE></pre> <p>A date is not required in cases where a student transfers from one course to another within the same student instance. Guidance on when a new student instance is required is given in Instance.NUMHUS. Normally where a student progresses from one course directly onto another at the same level (e.g. HND to Degree, MPhil to PhD) a new student instance is not required and hence this field would not be completed</p> <p>An entry in this field means that an entry in Instance.RSNEND will also be expected.</p> <p>Sometimes there will be a delay in knowing whether or not a student has left a course. Where the precise date of the student leaving is not known, the date of the end of the month, term or semester in which the student last attended should be given.</p> <p>Where Y0/Y1/Y2 appear in business rules, these refer to the reporting period Y1-Y2 (e.g. for the 2007-08 reporting period, Y0 is 2006, Y1 is 2007 and Y2 is 2008).</p> <p>Taught students</p> <p>For the purpose of HESA returns, completing an instance is defined as being the point at which the taught or structured part of the instance, including any formal writing-up period, is completed, ie. once the student is no longer actively following the course, and not any later stage such as, for example, final confirmation of award. This may mean that Instance.RSNEND is completed using code 98 'Completion of course - result unknown'.</p> <p>Resit Exams and/or Results from Late Exam Boards</p> <p>Students who complete their instance by 31 July but who have resit examinations to take and/or whose final confirmation of award by exam boards may be after this date should be returned to HESA as leavers, with a dateleft in the reporting period ending 31 July. If their results are known before the Student Record data collection closes, these results should be included in the return. Records for such students will be included in the POPDLHE (assuming that they meet all other criteria). However, if the results are not known before the Student Record data collection closes, a record should be</p>

	<p>submitted with a dateleft in the reporting period ending 31 July completed and code 98 'Completion of course - result unknown' in Instance.RSNEND. Once known, these results should be returned in the next reporting period by submitting a record with the appropriate dormant code in Instance.MODE. The date returned in Instance.ENDDATE must be the original dateleft and not be up-dated. Records returned in this way will not be included in the POPDLHE.</p> <p>Institutions may wish to decommit their return late in the data collection period in order to include results from late exam or re-sit boards.</p> <p>This same guidance applies to ITT NCTL students where the award of QTS may be delayed.</p> <p>ITT NCTL students may finish their course in June/July of the HESA reporting year. This date should be date recorded in ENDDATE. However the institution may not know whether the student has been awarded QTS until later. If award information is known before the HESA data collection closes at the end of November, then this should be included in QUAL and OUTCOME. NCTL have confirmed that trainees who obtain a successful award up until 1 November, and are shown as such in the main HESA return, will be counted in the profiles publication. Award dates after 31 October should be included in the following HESA data collection. In neither case should ENDDATE be up-dated.</p> <p>It is expected that students coded other than 1 or 4 in OUTCOME who are subsequently awarded QTS should have this recorded in QualificationsAwarded.QUAL and QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME in a subsequent return to HESA as an award from dormant status.</p> <p>Research students</p> <p>For research students the award should be recorded when the institution's Senate, or other body or person empowered, formally approves the award. For such students this field should be completed with the same date.</p> <p>Dormant students</p> <p>This field should reflect the date the student was last active on the instance and should not be updated.</p> <p>FE learners at institutions in Wales</p> <p>The guidance below applies at institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3.</p> <p>Learners should generally be regarded as leaving prior to completion if they have not attended classes/activities for a continuous period of four weeks or more, unless there is auditable evidence that they intend to rejoin the learning activity without increasing the overall length of the learning activity. The end date for a learner leaving prior to completion should be the last day of attendance plus four weeks.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.ENDDATE must not be null where Instance.RSNEND exists or Instance.REDUCEDI = 08. 2 Error Instance.ENDDATE must not be null where Instance.CSTAT = 2, 3 or 4. 3 Error Instance.ENDDATE must be null where Instance.CSTAT = 1. 4 Error Where exists Instance.ENDDATE must be less than Y2-08-01.

	<p>5 Error If Instance.MODE is not equal to 63 or 64, then Instance.ENDDATE (where exists) must be greater than Y1-07-31.</p> <p>6 Error If Instance.MODE = 63 or 64, then Instance.ENDDATE (where exists) must be greater than (Y2-6)-07-31.</p> <p>7 Error Instance.ENDDATE (where exists) must be greater than or equal to Instance.COMDATE (where exists) unless (Instance.MODE = 63 or 64 and Instance.ENDDATE = Y0-08-01).</p> <p>9 Error Instance.ENDDATE must be null with ReasonForNull=9 where Instance.RSNEND does not exist and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04 or 07.</p> <p>10 Error Instance.ENDDATE must not be null except when ReasonForNull=9.</p> <p>11 Error Instance.ENDDATE must not be null where Instance.MODE = 63 or 64 and Course.TTCID = F.</p>
Reason Required	To determine whether to include a student in any particular population definition.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	10
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ENDDATE Data type: DateWithNullStructure9
Related Fields	RSNEND
Owner	Information Standards Board - Aligned Data Definitions
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated to ensure an end date is returned for the SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return. Business rule 9 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid.

Exchange programmes

Type	field
Short Name	EXCHANGE
Description	This field identifies whether the student is an exchange or visiting student.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 03 or 09 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>0 Not an exchange or visiting student</p> <p>2 Incoming TEMPUS student</p> <p>4 Other incoming exchange or visiting student</p> <p>7 Other outgoing exchange student</p> <p>8 Incoming LLP ERASMUS student</p> <p>9 Incoming LLP COMENIUS student</p> <p>A Incoming ERASMUS MUNDUS student</p> <p>B Outgoing TEMPUS student</p> <p>C Outgoing LLP ERASMUS student</p> <p>D Outgoing LLP COMENIUS student</p> <p>E Outgoing ERASMUS MUNDUS student</p> <p>Y Student studying mainly in UK as part of a collaborative programme between reporting institution and an overseas institution</p> <p>Z Student studying mainly overseas as part of a collaborative programme between reporting institution and an overseas institution</p>
Notes	<p>A reduced return will be acceptable for incoming exchange and visiting students (codes 2, 4, 8, 9 and A).</p> <p>For valid entries 8, 9, C or D LLP stands for Lifelong Learning Programme.</p> <p>Collaborative Programmes</p> <p>Where an instance is part of a programme where there is a formal collaborative arrangement with an overseas institution and study at one institution is a pre-requisite for study at, and eventual award of a qualification from, a UK institution then the instance must be identified as either Z or Y in the Instance.EXCHANGE field depending upon whether the time spent studying is primarily overseas or in the UK.</p> <p>In general, collaborative programmes involve a student being registered with two Higher Education Institutions.</p> <p>Where there is an equal split (for example, 2 years overseas followed by 2 years at reporting institution) then the instance should be coded Y. The intended study pattern for the entire instance is considered when determining whether an instance is mainly UK or overseas, so Instance.EXCHANGE should not be changed to reflect the pattern within any particular reporting period.</p> <p>Where the pattern of study evolves over an instance, so that considering the overall instance most of the time is spent in the in the UK rather than abroad, the code should change from Z to Y, or Y to Z as appropriate. These codes are not applicable to distance learning instances which will be identified by Instance.LOCSDY. Distance learning students located overseas will typically only be included in the Student Record where they spend more than 8 consecutive weeks in the UK.</p>

For example a student starts on a 3 year collaborative programme of which 2 years were to be spent in the UK, however following year 1 the student decides to spend the remainder of the course at the collaborative institution:

	LOCSDY	STULOAD	EXCHANGE	FUNDCODE
Year 1	X	100	Y	1
Year 2	S	0	Z	2
Year 3	S	0	Z	2

Students will be coded Instance.LOCSDY 'X' where the entire reporting period is in the UK, and 'S' for reporting periods where some or all of the study is overseas. Students coded Y or Z in this field cannot be coded Instance.LOCSDY 6 or 9.

Examples:

1) A student studies on a 3 year collaborative programme spending years 1 and 3 abroad and 12 consecutive weeks in the UK in year 2:

	LOCSDY	STULOAD	EXCHANGE	FUNDCODE
Year 1	S	0	Z	2
Year 2	S	33	Z	2
Year 3	S	0	Z	2

In year 2 the Instance.STULOAD would be adjusted to reflect the period of time spent in the UK.

2) A student starts in the UK on a 3 year collaborative programme with an overseas institution. The student then studies at the overseas institution for the second year before returning to the UK in the final year:

	LOCSDY	STULOAD	EXCHANGE	FUNDCODE
Year 1	X	100	Y	1
Year 2	F	100	Y	1
Year 3	X	100	Y	1

3) A student studies in the UK on a non-collaborative 3 year degree but spends year 2 in China on a study placement:

	LOCSDY	STULOAD	EXCHANGE	FUNDCODE
Year 1	X	100	0	1
Year 2	F	100	0	1
Year 3	X	100	0	1

As this is a standard year abroad and not part of a collaborative programme Instance.EXCHANGE is coded 0 'Not an exchange or visiting student'.

4) Where a student spends the majority of a 3 year programme overseas as part of a collaborative programme, but comes to the UK in the final year Instance.EXCHANGE should not be changed:

	LOCSDY	STULOAD	EXCHANGE	FUNDCODE
Year 1	S	0	Z	2
Year 2	S	0	Z	2
Year 3	X	100	Z	2

Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.EXCHANGE must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 03 or 09 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.EXCHANGE must be coded B, C, D or E when Instance.SPECFEE = 3.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.EXCHANGE must be coded 0, 7, B, C, D, E or Y where Instance.LOCSDY = F or G.</p> <p>4 Warning Instance.EXCHANGE should not be coded 0 where Instance.LOCSDY = F or G.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.EXCHANGE must not be coded 0, 7, B, C, D, E or Y where Course.COURSEAIM code ends with 91.</p> <p>6 Error Instance.EXCHANGE must be coded 0 or Z where Instance.LOCSDY = S</p>
Reason Required	To identify students involved in specific exchange or visiting programmes.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: EXCHANGE Data type: EXCHANGECodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated to extend coverage to include the Unistats (09) reduced return.

Expected length of study

Type	field
Short Name	SLENGTH
Description	This field is used to indicate the normal elapsed time in the units indicated by Instance.UNITLGTH from the commencement of study, (the first learning/teaching week) to completion of the instance. This will normally include time for examinations. It does not purport to indicate the amount of study time, learning time or contact time.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09
Notes	<p>This should be the length applicable to the instance as a whole even if particular students may have different lengths of study, e.g. because of direct entry into the second year.</p> <p>Where there are both part-time and full-time students following a programme of study, the expected length of study should be the normal length applicable for the mode of study of the student.</p> <p>Cases where there is not a defined normal length for the programme of study, or where the programme of study is self-paced with an indefinite length, should have an empty element returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 9 (not applicable), i.e:</p> <pre><SLENGTH ReasonForNull="9"></SLENGTH></pre> <p>Validation will ensure that if this field is an empty string then Instance.UNITLGTH must be coded 9.</p> <p>Length of study includes holiday time.</p> <p>For postgraduate research students, any extra writing-up period must be ignored. For example, a full-time PhD would typically be coded 3 years.</p> <p>Foundation years</p> <p>It is not expected that the length of study be adjusted for individual students. However, where there are different options that students can take, for example, foundation years and sandwich placements, it is expected that the length reflects the options taken. For example, where a student undertakes an integrated foundation year it is normally expected that the length be recorded as one year longer than if the student had just taken a stand-alone degree.</p> <p>Sandwich courses</p> <p>Where the option of a sandwich course is available but it is not taken up by a student then Instance.SLENGTH should be revised at the point where the student makes a decision not to take-up the sandwich option, normally by the end of their second year, to reflect the expected length excluding the sandwich year. For example students coded 4 in Instance.SLENGTH and 1 in Instance.UNITLGTH in the first year should be recoded 3 in Instance.SLENGTH at the end of the second year if they are not</p>

	<p>expected to take the sandwich option. This re-coding is required to ensure that the correct cohort of student is identified in the National Student Survey (NSS) target list.</p> <p>The length of this field is 2 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros, e.g. 03 or 3.</p>
Examples	An instance lasting for two and a half years would be coded 30 months.
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.SPLENGTH must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09.</p> <p>2 Error Where exists Instance.SPLENGTH must not be coded 99 by institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK is coded 1 or 3.</p> <p>3 Error Where exists Instance.SPLENGTH cannot be greater than 09 where Instance.MODE not equal to 63 or 64 and Instance.UNITLGTH =1.</p> <p>4 Error Where exists Instance.SPLENGTH cannot be greater than 72 where Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24 or 25 and Instance.UNITLGTH = 2.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.SPLENGTH must not be null except when ReasonForNull = 9.</p> <p>6 Error Instance.SPLENGTH must be null when ReasonForNull = 9.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor patterns of study.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SPLENGTH Data type: PositiveIntegerWithNullStructure2
Related Fields	UNITLGTH
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid, and to enforce coverage for the Unistats (09) reduced return.

FE student marker

Type	field
Short Name	FESTUMK
Description	This field identifies students at HE institutions who are studying at FE level or are funded by the SFA, the EFA or WG-DfES
Applicable to	England Wales
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England and Wales where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 03 or 04.
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 The student is an SFA/EFA/DfES FE funded learner studying at FE level</p> <p>2 The student is not an SFA/EFA/DfES FE funded learner nor is the learner studying at FE level</p> <p>3 The student is an SFA/EFA/DfES FE funded learner studying at HE level</p> <p>4 The student is not an SFA/EFA/DfES FE funded learner but is studying at FE level</p>
Notes	<p>For England and Wales, an SFA/EFA/DfES student is defined as a student following a course leading to a general qualification aim at FE level and any other student following a course funded by the SFA, the EFA or WG-DfES (and which may be at FE or HE level). Students coded 1, 3 or 4 will be regarded as FE funding council students. Students coded 2 will be assumed to be HE level students, with no SFA/EFA/DfES funding.</p> <p>Code 3 'The student is an SFA/EFA/DfES funded student studying at HE level'</p> <p>The funding councils have advised that the SFA, the EFA and WG-DfES do not ordinarily fund students studying at HE level within HEIs. It is therefore recommended that any institution who believes they have students in this category contact HESA before coding.</p> <p>Access to HE courses are regarded as FE level courses.</p> <p>'Foundation years that are not integrated into an HE level course are generally considered to be FE level'.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.FESTUMK must exist for institutions in England and Wales where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 03, 04.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.FESTUMK code 2 must not have Course.MSFUND = 06.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.FESTUMK must be coded 1 or 4 where Course.COURSEAIM begins P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.FESTUMK must be coded 2 or 3 where Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L, M, H, I, J or C.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.FESTUMK must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p>
Reason Required	To distinguish between FE and HE level of study, and between FE and HE funding, so as to allow separation of HE and FE work and funding in HEIs.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1

Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FESTUMK Data type: FESTUMKCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as FESTUMK not required for the new reduced returns. Business rule 2 updated for MSFUND code 05 being removed from the coding frame.

Fee eligibility

Type	field															
Short Name	FEEELIG															
Description	This field is to distinguish those students who are eligible to pay home fees from those who are not, in cases where there are separate levels of fees for 'home' students and for others.															
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales															
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09															
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="width: 10%;"></td> <td>Eligible to pay home fees</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td></td> <td>Not eligible to pay home fees</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> <td></td> <td>Eligibility to pay home fees not assessed</td> </tr> </table>	1		Eligible to pay home fees	2		Not eligible to pay home fees	3		Eligibility to pay home fees not assessed						
1		Eligible to pay home fees														
2		Not eligible to pay home fees														
3		Eligibility to pay home fees not assessed														
Notes	<p>Channel Islands and Isle of Man domiciled students should be coded as code 2 'Not eligible to pay home fees'.</p> <p>Code 3 'Eligibility to pay home fees not assessed' may be used for all courses or programmes of study for which the concept of 'home fees' does not apply. Typical examples would be students on most FE level or full cost-recovery courses.</p> <p>Code 3 'Eligibility to pay home fees not assessed' may be used for incoming exchange students.</p> <p>The allocation of a student to a particular fee eligibility category should be consistent with the treatment in the HESSES/Early Statistics return.</p>															
Business rules	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="width: 10%; text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>Instance.FEEELIG must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>Instance.FEEELIG must be coded 1 where Instance.FUNDCODE = 1 for institutions in England and Northern Ireland.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>Instance.FEEELIG must not be coded 2 where Instance.FUNDCODE is coded 1.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">4</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>Instance.FEEELIG must not be coded 3 where Instance.FUNDCODE is coded 1 for institutions in England and Northern Ireland.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">5</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Error</td> <td>Instance.FEEELIG must be coded 2 where (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded IM, XL, GG or JE) and Instance.FESTUMK not coded 1 or 3.</td> </tr> </table>	1	Error	Instance.FEEELIG must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.	2	Error	Instance.FEEELIG must be coded 1 where Instance.FUNDCODE = 1 for institutions in England and Northern Ireland.	3	Error	Instance.FEEELIG must not be coded 2 where Instance.FUNDCODE is coded 1.	4	Error	Instance.FEEELIG must not be coded 3 where Instance.FUNDCODE is coded 1 for institutions in England and Northern Ireland.	5	Error	Instance.FEEELIG must be coded 2 where (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded IM, XL, GG or JE) and Instance.FESTUMK not coded 1 or 3.
1	Error	Instance.FEEELIG must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.														
2	Error	Instance.FEEELIG must be coded 1 where Instance.FUNDCODE = 1 for institutions in England and Northern Ireland.														
3	Error	Instance.FEEELIG must not be coded 2 where Instance.FUNDCODE is coded 1.														
4	Error	Instance.FEEELIG must not be coded 3 where Instance.FUNDCODE is coded 1 for institutions in England and Northern Ireland.														
5	Error	Instance.FEEELIG must be coded 2 where (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded IM, XL, GG or JE) and Instance.FESTUMK not coded 1 or 3.														
Reason Required	<p>To allow financial calculations to take account of the fee difference between home/EU and overseas students and of other fee offsets.</p> <p>To resolve otherwise indeterminate home/overseas cases.</p>															
Part Of	Instance															
Field Length	1															
Minimum Occurrences	0															
Maximum Occurrences	1															
Schema Components	<p>Element: FEEELIG</p> <p>Data type: FEEELIGCodeContentType</p>															

Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated to extend coverage to include the Unistats (09) reduced return. Business rules 3 and 4 updated as Instance.FUNDCODE code 4 is no longer a valid value.

Fee regime indicator

Type	field
Short Name	FEEREGIME
Description	This field will capture the fee regime that the student is following.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	<p>Institutions in England (Postgraduate instances): All instances where (Course.COURSEAIM begins with E or M, excluding M22 and M26) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or null) and (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 31, 52, 53, 73, 74, 43 (if Instance.MCDATE is in current reporting year) or 44 (if Instance.MCDATE is in current reporting year)) and (Instance.REDUCEDI is 00 or 01).</p> <p>Institutions in England (Undergraduate instances): All instances where (Course.COURSEAIM begins with H, I, J, C or is M22 or M26) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or null) and (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 31, 43, 44, 52 or 53) and (Instance.REDUCEDI is 00 or 01) and Course.TTCID is not F.</p> <p>Institutions in Wales: All instances where (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 43, 52 or 53) and (Course.COURSEAIM = M22, M26, M71, M88 or begins with H, I, J or C) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or null) and Instance.REDUCEDI is 00 and where Instance.SSN does not exist.</p> <p>Institutions in Scotland: All instances where (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 52 or 53) and (Course.COURSEAIM = M71, M88, M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, H24, H50, I00, I11, I16, C20, C30, J20, J26 or J30) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E or null) and (Instance.REDUCEDI is 00 or 01) and where Instance.SSN does not exist.</p> <p>Institutions in Northern Ireland (Postgraduate instances): All instances where (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 52, 53 or 43 (if Instance.MCDATE is in current reporting year)) and (Course.COURSEAIM = M71 or M88) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or null) and (Instance.REDUCEDI is 00 or 01) and where Instance.SSN does not exist.</p> <p>Institutions in Northern Ireland (Undergraduate instances): All instances where (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 43, 52 or 53) and (Course.COURSEAIM begins with H, I, J, C or is M22 or M26) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or null) and (Instance.REDUCEDI is 00 or 01) and where Instance.SSN does not exist.</p>
Valid Entries and Labels	10 Pre-Sept 2012 regime 20 Post-Sept 2012 regime
Notes	<p>Institutions in England</p> <p>For institutions in England this field is required for all full and part-time undergraduate and taught postgraduate instances, irrespective whether they have applied for student finance or not to SLC and should be coded using the HEFCE definition of fee regime.</p> <p>The HEFCE definition of fee regime, whilst closely mimicking the fee regulations is different to that in the fee regulations. Institutions should therefore ensure that they use the definition of old and new regime in the most recent HESES publication, the definition used in 2011-12 can be found in annex Q of HESES11 (HEFCE 2011/27), the definition</p>

for 2012 will be given in HESES12. HEFCE do not expect to make any material changes to the definition given in HESES11.

Institutions in Wales

For institutions in Wales, the SLC will have this information for students who apply for student finance so this field is not required if the Student Support Number (Instance.SSN) is returned. It is required for all students not applying for student finance.

Code 10 'Pre-Sept 2012 regime' applies to those students who started pre-September 2012 and, hence, are not covered by the new fee regime.

Code 10 'Pre-Sept 2012 regime' should also be used for students starting at the institution in 2012 who are not under the new fee regime. This will be, for example, students who transfer in from another institution or come from another institution to do a top up to a degree, having started their original course before 1 September 2012.

Institutions in Scotland

For institutions in Scotland, the SLC will be able to provide this information to HESA for students who are paying tuition fees (typically fee regime 20 'Post-Sept 2012 regime' these are students domiciled in England, Wales and Northern Ireland) and so this field can either be completed by the HEI directly or be populated with SLC data if the Student Support Number (Instance.SSN) is returned. It is required for all students not applying for student finance.

Code 10 'Pre-Sept 2012 regime' applies to those students who started pre-September 2012 and, hence, are not covered by the new fee regime, as well as those students who started post-September 2012 and are Scottish domiciled students in institutions in Scotland or EU domiciled students in institutions in Scotland.

Code 10 'Pre-Sept 2012 regime' should also be used for students starting at the institution in 2012 who are not under the new fee regime. This will be, for example, students who transfer in from another institution or come from another institution to do a top up to a degree, having started their original course before 1 September 2012.

Code 20 'Post-Sept 2012 regime' applies to rest of UK students who start post-September 2012 and who are paying de-regulated tuition fees. Students who are paying the regulated fees should be coded 10 'Pre-Sept 2012 regime'.

Institutions in Northern Ireland

For institutions in Northern Ireland, the SLC will have this information for students who apply for student finance so this field is not required if the Student Support Number (Instance.SSN) is returned. It is required for all students not applying for student finance.

Code 10 'Pre-Sept 2012 regime' applies to those students who started pre-September 2012 and, hence, are not covered by the new fee regime, as well as those students who started post-September 2012 and are Northern Ireland domiciled students in institutions in Northern Ireland, or EU domiciled students in institutions in Northern Ireland.

	Code 10 'Pre-Sept 2012 regime' should also be used for students starting at the institution in 2012 who are not under the new fee regime. This will be, for example, students who transfer in from another institution or come from another institution to do a top up to a degree, having started their original course before 1 September 2012.
Business rules	<p>1 Error For institutions in England, Instance.FEEREGIME must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins with H, I, J or C or is M22 or M26) and (Course.TTCID not equal to F) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or Instance.EXCHANGE does not exist) and (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 31, 43, 44, 52, or 53) and (Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01).</p> <p>2 Error For institutions in England, Instance.FEEREGIME must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins with E or M (excluding M22, M26)) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or Instance.EXCHANGE does not exist) and (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 31, 52, 53, 73 or 74) and (Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01).</p> <p>3 Error For institutions in England, Instance.FEEREGIME must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins with E or M (excluding M22, M26)) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or Instance.EXCHANGE does not exist) and (Instance.MODE = 43 or 44) and Instance.MCDATE is not null and (Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01).</p> <p>4 Error For institutions in England, Instance.FEEREGIME must not exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins with D, L, P, Q, R, S or X) or (Course.TTCID = F) or (Instance.FEEELIG = 2) or (Instance.EXCHANGE = 2, 4, 8, 9 or A) or (Instance.MODE = 51).</p> <p>5 Error For institutions in Northern Ireland, Instance.FEEREGIME must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins with H, I, J or C or is M22 or M26) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or Instance.EXCHANGE does not exist) and (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 43, 52, or 53) and (Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01) and Instance.SSN does not exist.</p> <p>6 Error For institutions in Northern Ireland, Instance.FEEREGIME must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM = M71 or M88) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or Instance.EXCHANGE does not exist) and (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 52, 53) and (Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01) and Instance.SSN does not exist.</p> <p>7 Error For institutions in Northern Ireland, Instance.FEEREGIME must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM = M71 or M88) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or Instance.EXCHANGE does not exist) and Instance.MODE = 43) and (Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01) and Instance.MCDATE is not null and Instance.SSN does not exist.</p> <p>8 Error For institutions in Northern Ireland, Instance.FEEREGIME must not exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins with D, L, E, M, P, Q, R, S or X (excluding M22, M26, M71, M88)) or (Instance.FEEELIG = 2) or (Instance.EXCHANGE = 2, 4, 8, 9 or A) or (Instance.MODE = 31, 44, 51 or 64).</p> <p>9 Error For institutions in Scotland, Instance.FEEREGIME must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM = M71, M88, M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, H24, H50, I00, I11, I16, J20, J26, J30, C20 or C30) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E or Instance.EXCHANGE does not exist) and (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 52 or 53) and (Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01) and Instance.SSN does not exist.</p> <p>10 Error For institutions in Scotland, Instance.FEEREGIME must not exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins with D, L, E, P, Q, R, S or X) or (Instance.FEEELIG = 2) or (Instance.EXCHANGE = 2, 4, 8, 9, A, Y or Z) or (Instance.MODE = 38, 39, 43, 44, 51 or 64).</p> <p>11 Error For institutions in Scotland, Instance.FEEREGIME must not exist where Course.COURSEAIM begins with M, H, I, J or C (excluding M71, M88, M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, H24, H50, H88, I00, I11, I16,</p>

	<p>J20, J26, J30, C20, C30).</p> <p>12 Error For institutions in Wales, Instance.FEEREGIME must exist where (Course.COURSEAIM = M22, M26, M71, M88 or begins with H, I, J or C) and (Instance.FEEELIG = 1 or 3) and (Instance.EXCHANGE = 0, 7, B, C, D, E, Y, Z or Instance.EXCHANGE does not exist) and (Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 43, 52, or 53) and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 and Instance.SSN does not exist.</p> <p>13 Error For institutions in Wales, Instance.FEEREGIME must not exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins with D, L, E, M, P, Q, R, S or X (excluding M22, M26, M71, M88) or (Instance.FEEELIG = 2) or (Instance.EXCHANGE = 2, 4, 8, 9 or A) or (Instance.MODE = 31, 44, 51 or 64).</p> <p>14 Warning For institutions in England or Wales, Instance.FEEREGIME should not be coded 10 where Instance.COMDATE is later than 2012-08-31.</p> <p>15 Error For institutions in Wales, Instance.FEEREGIME must not be coded 20 where Instance.COMDATE is earlier than 2012-09-01.</p> <p>16 Warning For institutions in England and Northern Ireland, Instance.FEEREGIME should not be coded 20 where Instance.COMDATE is earlier than 2012-09-01.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor the number of students under the new regime.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FEEREGIME Data type: FEEREGIMECodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.7
Date modified	2013-08-29
Change management notes	Business rule 14 updated in line with the change of guidance for institutions in Northern Ireland for the coding of FEEREGIME.

Foundation degree to degree bridging course

Type	field
Short Name	BRIDGE
Description	This field identifies instances where any part of the instance involves a foundation degree to degree bridging course
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X
Valid Entries and Labels	0 Not a foundation degree to degree bridging course 1 Foundation degree to degree bridging course
Notes	<p>Foundation degree to degree bridging courses are taken after completing a foundation degree to enable students to join the final year of an honours degree. They are short courses which are not an integral part of the course they are bridging from, although progression from a successful completion of the bridging course to the final year of an honours degree is assured.</p> <p>Where a student's studies include, within the same instance, a foundation degree to degree bridging course this bridging course element will be shown by code 1 'Foundation degree to degree bridging course' in Instance.BRIDGE and an increased FTE in Instance.STULOAD.</p> <p>Where a student studies only a bridging course within the HESA reporting year Course.COURSEAIM should be returned with a value of H90.</p> <p>Where a student undertakes a foundation degree and bridging course in the same HESA reporting year Instance.FUNDCOMP, should reflect whether the student completed the foundation degree and will therefore usually be returned with a value of 1. Similarly where the student progresses to a degree after completion of the bridging course Instance.FUNDCOMP should reflect the completion status of the degree.</p> <p>Guidance from HEFCE</p> <p>Where the bridging course spans HESA reporting years, HEFCE advise that the FTE must all be returned in the second HESA reporting year; this differs from the method used for other non-standard course academic years. Institutions should also indicate in Instance.BRIDGE that the student has studied a foundation degree to degree bridging course only in the year in which the FTE is increased. It may be that the inclusion of a foundation degree to degree bridging course means that the year of instance becomes non-standard ie. no longer contained within the HESA reporting year. However, where the year would otherwise have been recorded as a standard academic year the year should still be recorded as such.</p> <p>Guidance from HEFCW</p> <p>Where the bridging course spans HESA reporting years, HEFCW advise that the FTE must be split between the years, as for other courses. Institutions should also indicate in Instance.BRIDGE that the student has studied a foundation degree to degree bridging course, in the year in which the bridging course started.</p>

Examples	<p>A student completes a foundation degree in June 2008 and then undertakes a bridging course from July to September and then joins the final year of a degree which they complete in June 2009.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Field</td> <td>2007/08</td> <td>2008/09</td> </tr> <tr> <td>COURSEAIM</td> <td>J10</td> <td>H00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STULOAD</td> <td>100.0</td> <td>130.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TYPEYR</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BRIDGE</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </table> <p>Example for institutions in Wales</p> <p>A student completes a foundation degree in June 2008 and then undertakes a bridging course from July to September and then joins the final year of a degree which they complete in June 2009.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Field</td> <td>2007/08</td> <td>2008/09</td> </tr> <tr> <td>COURSEAIM</td> <td>J16</td> <td>H00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STULOAD</td> <td>110.0</td> <td>120.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TYPEYR</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BRIDGE</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </table>	Field	2007/08	2008/09	COURSEAIM	J10	H00	STULOAD	100.0	130.0	TYPEYR	1	1	BRIDGE	0	1	Field	2007/08	2008/09	COURSEAIM	J16	H00	STULOAD	110.0	120.0	TYPEYR	2	1	BRIDGE	1	0
Field	2007/08	2008/09																													
COURSEAIM	J10	H00																													
STULOAD	100.0	130.0																													
TYPEYR	1	1																													
BRIDGE	0	1																													
Field	2007/08	2008/09																													
COURSEAIM	J16	H00																													
STULOAD	110.0	120.0																													
TYPEYR	2	1																													
BRIDGE	1	0																													
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.BRIDGE must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.BRIDGE code 1 must have Course.COURSEAIM = H16, I16, M16, M26, M86, H11, I11, H00, I00, H23, H24, J16, J30, C90, H90, I90 or J90.</p>																														
Reason Required	To identify students who undertook bridging courses.																														
Part Of	Instance																														
Field Length	1																														
Minimum Occurrences	0																														
Maximum Occurrences	1																														
Schema Components	Element: BRIDGE Data type: BRIDGECodeContentType																														
Owner	HESA																														
Version	1.0																														

Framework code

Type	field
Short Name	FWORKCODE
Description	This field identifies the framework code for the type of learning being undertaken.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01 and Instance.PROGTYPE is between 02 and 21 inclusive.
Notes	<p>14-19 Diplomas (Instance.PROGTYPE = 15, 16, 17 or 18)</p> <p>The framework code to identify the diploma line of learning must be entered in this field.</p> <p>Foundation Learning programmes (Instance.PROGTYPE = 19)</p> <p>A framework code of 55 must be entered in this field.</p> <p>Apprenticeships (Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 20 or 21)</p> <p>The framework code records the sector framework of the Apprenticeship programme and enables the collected information to be analysed by those Sector Skills Councils (SSC) frameworks that have been approved for all Apprenticeship programmes.</p> <p>The list of valid values are available in LARA download from the IM Services gateway.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error For institutions in England, Instance.FWORKCODE must exist where Instance.PROGTYPE exists and is not equal to 99 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.FWORKCODE must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.FWORKCODE must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p>
Reason Required	For all programmes (as identified by Instance.PROGTYPE) to identify the framework.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FWORKCODE
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Franchise partner

Type	field
Short Name	FRANPART
Description	This field identifies the provider delivering the learning to this learner through a partnership/franchise/subcontracted arrangement.
Applicable to	Wales
Coverage	Optional for FE students (where Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S, X) at institutions in Wales
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>00000000 No arrangement</p> <p>A0660000 Isle of Anglesey (660)</p> <p>A0661000 Gwynedd (661)</p> <p>A0662000 Conwy (662)</p> <p>A0663000 Denbighshire (663)</p> <p>A0664000 Flintshire (664)</p> <p>A0665000 Wrexham (665)</p> <p>A0666000 Powys (666)</p> <p>A0667000 Ceredigion (667)</p> <p>A0668000 Pembrokeshire (668)</p> <p>A0669000 Carmarthenshire (669)</p> <p>A0670000 Swansea (670)</p> <p>A0671000 Neath Port Talbot (671)</p> <p>A0672000 Bridgend (672)</p> <p>A0673000 The Vale of Glamorgan (673)</p> <p>A0674000 Rhondda Cynon Taff (674)</p> <p>A0675000 Merthyr Tydfil (675)</p> <p>A0676000 Caerphilly (676)</p> <p>A0677000 Blaenau Gwent (677)</p> <p>A0678000 Torfaen (678)</p> <p>A0679000 Monmouthshire (679)</p> <p>A0680000 Newport (680)</p> <p>A0681000 Cardiff (681)</p> <p>F0009003 Barry College</p> <p>F0009004 Bridgend College</p> <p>F0009005 Coleg Sir Gâr</p> <p>F0009006 Coleg Ceredigion</p> <p>F0009007 Deeside College</p> <p>F0009008 Coleg Glan Hafren</p> <p>F0009009 Gorseinon College</p> <p>F0009010 Coleg Gwent</p> <p>F0009012 Coleg Llandrillo</p> <p>F0009013 Coleg Llysfasi</p> <p>F0009014 Coleg Meirion Dwyfor</p> <p>F0009015 Merthyr Tydfil College</p> <p>F0009017 Pembrokeshire College</p> <p>F0009020 Coleg Morgannwg</p> <p>F0009021 Coleg Powys</p> <p>F0009023 St David's Sixth Form College</p> <p>F0009024 Swansea College</p> <p>F0009025 Welsh College of Horticulture</p> <p>F0009026 Yale College</p> <p>F0009027 Ystrad Mynach College</p> <p>F0009030 WEA South</p> <p>F0009031 YMCA</p> <p>F0009032 Coleg Menai</p> <p>F0009033 Neath Port Talbot College</p> <p>F0009034 Coleg Harlech/WEA (North)</p>

F0009035	Gower College Swansea
H0000086	The University of Wales, Newport
H0000087	Glynd#r University
H0000089	Cardiff Metropolitan University
H0000090	University of Glamorgan
H0000091	Swansea Metropolitan University
H0000092	Trinity University College
H0000176	University of Wales Trinity Saint David
H0000177	Aberystwyth University
H0000178	Bangor University
H0000179	Cardiff University
H0000180	Swansea University
H0000181	University of Wales College of Medicine
H0000182	Royal Welsh College of Music and Drama
S6604025	Ysgol Syr Thomas Jones
S6604026	Ysgol Uwchradd Caergybi
S6604027	Ysgol Gyfun Llangefni
S6604028	Ysgol David Hughes
S6604029	Ysgol Uwchradd Bodedern
S6606027	Treffos School
S6607011	Ysgol Y Bont
S6614002	Ysgol Dyffryn Ogwen
S6614003	Ysgol Botwnnog
S6614004	Ysgol Brynrefail
S6614007	Ysgol Dyffryn Nantlle
S6614009	Ysgol Eifionydd
S6614030	Ysgol Y Gader
S6614031	Ysgol Y Moelwyn
S6614032	Ysgol Uwchradd Tywyn
S6614033	Ysgol Y Berwyn
S6614034	Ysgol Ardudwy
S6614036	Ysgol Friars
S6614037	Ysgol Tryfan
S6614039	Ysgol Syr Hugh Owen
S6614040	Ysgol Glan Y Mor
S6616007	Hillgrove School
S6616008	St Gerards School Trust
S6616022	Aran Hall School
S6617000	Ysgol Coedmenai
S6617002	Ysgol Pendalar
S6617010	Ysgol Hafod Lon
S6624022	Ysgol John Bright
S6624023	Ysgol Aberconwy
S6624035	Ysgol Dyffryn Conwy
S6624038	Ysgol Y Creuddyn
S6625400	Ysgol Emrys Ap Iwan
S6625402	Eirias High School
S6625403	Ysgol Bryn Elian
S6626017	St David's College
S6626019	Rydal Penrhos
S6626029	Lyndon School
S6627001	Canolfan Addysgol Y Gogarth
S6627006	Ysgol-Y-Graig
S6634003	Rhyl High School
S6634014	Prestatyn High School
S6634020	Ysgol Uwchradd Glan Clwyd
S6634026	Denbigh High School
S6634027	Ysgol Dinas Bran
S6634031	Ysgol Brynhyfryd
S6634601	Blessed Edward Jones R.C. School
S6635900	St Brigid's School
S6636013	Fairholme Prep. School
S6636021	Howell's School
S6636027	Ruthin School

S6636038	Northgate Preparatory School
S6636039	Howell's Preparatory School
S6637000	Ysgol Tir Morfa
S6637010	Ysgol Plas Brondyffryn
S6644000	Hawarden High School
S6644006	Mold Alun School
S6644011	Elfed High School
S6644012	Holywell High School
S6644013	St David's High School
S6644017	Castell Alun High School
S6644018	Ysgol Maes Garmon
S6644019	John Summers High School
S6644021	Flint High School
S6644022	Connah's Quay High School
S6644042	Argoed School
S6644600	St Richard Gwyn Roman Catholic High School
S6646000	Oakwood Small School
S6647013	Ysgol Delyn
S6647014	Ysgol Belmont
S6647018	Ysgol Y Bryn
S6654029	Ysgol-Y-Grango
S6654032	Ysgol Morgan Llwyd
S6654033	Ysgol Bryn Alyn
S6654034	Darland High School
S6654035	St David's High School
S6654036	Ysgol Bryn Offa
S6654044	Ysgol Rhiwabon
S6654047	The Groves High School
S6654602	St Joseph's Catholic High School
S6655401	The Maelor School
S6656039	Prospects Centre For Young People
S6656042	Woodlands Children's Development Centre
S6657005	St Christopher's School
S6657009	Ysgol Powys
S6664000	Caereinion High School
S6664001	Llanfyllin High School
S6664002	Llanidloes High School
S6664003	Ysgol Bro Ddyfi
S6664011	Newtown High School
S6664013	Welshpool High School
S6664014	John Beddoes School
S6664019	Llandrindod High School
S6664020	Builth Wells High School
S6664021	Ysgol Maes-Y-Dderwen
S6664022	Brecon High School
S6664023	Gwernyfed High School
S6664024	Crickhowell High School
S6666000	Christ College
S6666007	Pentwyn School
S6666008	Macintyre Care - Womaston School
S6666009	Tregynon Hall School
S6667001	Brynllwarch Hall School
S6667002	Ysgol Cedewain
S6667004	Ysgol Penmaes
S6674041	Ysgol Gyfun Llanbedr-Pont-Steffan
S6674042	Ysgol Gyfun Aberaeron
S6674044	Cardigan County Secondary
S6674046	Ysgol Uwchradd Tregaron
S6674047	Penglais Comprehensive School
S6674048	Ysgol Gyfun Penweddig
S6674059	Ysgol Gyfun Dyffryn Teifi
S6676012	St Tygwydd's School
S6684031	Fishguard High / Ysgol Uwchradd Abergwaun
S6684034	Ysgol Dewi Sant

S6684035	The Greenhill School
S6684038	Pembroke School/ Ysgol Penfro
S6684055	Sir Thomas Picton School
S6684063	Milford Haven School
S6684064	Ysgol Gyfun Ddwyieithog Y Preseli
S6684511	Tasker-Milward V.C. School
S6686004	Netherwood School
S6686006	Haylett Grange School
S6686014	St David's Education Unit
S6687001	Portfield Special School
S6694024	Ysgol Gyfun Pantycelyn
S6694028	Ysgol Gyfun Tregib
S6694029	Amman Valley Comprehensive School
S6694050	Coedcae Comprehensive School
S6694052	Ysgol Gyfun Y Strade
S6694053	Glan-Y-Mor Comprehensive School
S6694054	Bryngwyn Comprehensive School
S6694056	Ysgol Gyfun Bro Myrddin
S6694057	Queen Elizabeth Cambria
S6694058	Queen Elizabeth Maridunum
S6694060	Ysgol Gyfun Emlyn
S6694061	Ysgol Gyfun Maes Yr Yrfa
S6694062	Ysgol Y Gwendraeth
S6694512	Ysgol Gyfun Dyffryn Taf
S6694600	St John Lloyd Catholic Comprehensive School
S6696002	Llandoverly College
S6696003	St Michael's School
S6696008	Nant Y Cwm School
S6696009	Towy Valley Steiner School
S6697000	Heol Goffa Special School
S6697010	Ysgol Rhydygors
S6704023	Mynyddbach Comprehensive School for Girls
S6704024	Penlan Comprehensive (Boys School)
S6704031	Cefn Hengoed Community School
S6704032	Olchfa School
S6704033	Morrison Comprehensive School
S6704041	Dynevor School
S6704043	Pentrehafod School
S6704044	Bishop Gore School
S6704062	Penyrheol Comprehensive School
S6704063	Gowerton School
S6704069	Bishopston Comprehensive School
S6704071	Dillwyn Llewelyn Community School
S6704072	Pontarddulais Comprehensive School
S6704074	Ysgol Gyfun Gwyr
S6704075	Birchgrove Comprehensive School
S6704600	Bishop Vaughan R.C. School
S6706001	Oakleigh House School
S6706008	Craig Y Nos School
S6706018	Ffynone House School
S6707000	Penybryn Senior Special School
S6707008	Ysgol Crug Glas
S6714047	Cymer Afan Comprehensive School
S6714052	Glan Afan Comprehensive School
S6714056	Sandfields Comprehensive School
S6714059	Dyffryn School
S6714060	Ysgol Gyfun Ystalyfera
S6714064	Cefn Saeson Comprehensive School
S6714065	Cwmtawe Comprehensive School
S6714066	Llangatwg Comprehensive School
S6714067	Dwr-Y-Felin Comprehensive School
S6714068	Cwrt Sart Comprehensive School
S6714601	St Joseph's R.C. Comprehensive School
S6717005	Ysgol Hendre Special School

S6717006	Briton Ferry Special School
S6724059	Cynffig Comprehensive School
S6724068	Bryntirion Comprehensive School
S6724071	Maesteg Comprehensive School
S6724074	Ynysawdre Comprehensive School
S6724076	Pencoed Comprehensive School
S6724078	Brynteg Comprehensive School
S6724080	Porthcawl Comprehensive School
S6724084	Ogmore Comprehensive School
S6724601	Archbishop Mcgrath Catholic School
S6726073	St Clare's Convent School
S6726083	St John's School
S6726090	Frontline Christian School
S6727003	Heronbridge Special School
S6727012	Ysgol Bryn Castell
S6734060	Llantwit Major School
S6734061	Barry Comprehensive School
S6734062	Bryn Hafren Comprehensive School
S6734065	Cowbridge Comprehensive School
S6734066	Ysgol Bro Morgannwg
S6734612	St Richard Gwyn R.C. High School
S6735400	Stanwell School
S6735401	St Cyres Comprehensive School
S6736021	Westbourne Schools
S6736025	Headlands School
S6737012	Ysgol Erw'r Delyn
S6737015	Ysgol Maes Dyfan
S6737018	Ashgrove School
S6744019	Bryncelynnog Comprehensive School
S6744022	The Coedylan Comprehensive School
S6744027	Hawthorn High School
S6744053	Mountain Ash Comprehensive School
S6744054	Ysgol Gyfun Rhydfelen
S6744056	Blaengwawr Comprehensive School
S6744057	Tonyrefail Comprehensive School
S6744081	Treorchy Comprehensive School
S6744083	Ferndale Comprehensive School
S6744087	Porth County Comprehensive School
S6744088	Ysgol Gyfun Llanhari
S6744095	Tonypandy Comprehensive School
S6744096	Y Pant Comprehensive School
S6744097	Ysgol Gyfun Cymer Rhondda
S6744100	Aberdare Boys' School
S6744101	Aberdare Girls' Comprehensive School
S6744105	Ysgol Gyfun Rhydywaun
S6744602	Cardinal Newman R.C. Comprehensive School
S6744604	St John Baptist C.I.W. High School
S6747006	Maesgwyn Special School
S6747008	Park Lane Special School
S6747011	Rhondda Special School
S6747015	Ysgol Ty Coch
S6754011	Afon Taf High School
S6754012	Pen-Y-Dre High School
S6754013	Cyfarthfa High School
S6754014	Vaynor and Penderyn High School
S6754600	Bishop Hedley High School
S6757013	Greenfield Special School
S6764031	Newbridge Comprehensive School
S6764032	Pontllanfraith Comprehensive School
S6764046	Blackwood Comprehensive School
S6764053	Oakdale Comprehensive School
S6764065	St Cenydd Comprehensive School
S6764067	St Ilan School
S6764068	Risca Community School

S6764070	St Martin Comprehensive School
S6764073	Heolddu Comprehensive School
S6764075	Lewis Boys' Comprehensive School
S6764077	Lewis Girls' Comprehensive School
S6764090	Rhymney Comprehensive School
S6764093	Bedwas Comprehensive School
S6764102	Bedwellty Comprehensive School
S6764103	Ysgol Gyfun Cwm Rhymni
S6765400	Cwmcarn High School
S6766013	Emmanuel Christian School
S6766088	Wyclif Independent Christian School
S6767011	Trinity Fields Special School
S6774045	Glyncoed Comprehensive School
S6774061	Tredegarr Comprehensive School
S6774067	Ebbw Vale Comprehensive School
S6774073	Nantyglo Comprehensive School
S6774074	Abertillery Comprehensive School
S6775401	Brynmawr School
S6777011	Pen-Y-Cwm Special School
S6784050	Llantarnam School
S6784051	Croesyceiliog School
S6784062	Fairwater High School
S6784070	Abersychan Comprehensive School
S6784071	Trevethin Community School
S6784072	West Monmouth Comprehensive School
S6784075	Ysgol Gyfun Gwynllyw
S6784603	St Alban's R.C. High School
S6786014	Mayflower Christian School
S6787012	Crownbridge Special Day School
S6794060	Monmouth Comprehensive School
S6794064	King Henry VIII Comprehensive School
S6794065	Chepstow Comprehensive School
S6794066	Caldicot Comprehensive School
S6796008	Monmouth School
S6796009	Haberdashers Monmouth School For Girls
S6796010	Agincourt School
S6796012	Seddon House School
S6797006	Mounton House Special School
S6804003	St Julian's Comprehensive School
S6804020	Duffryn High School
S6804021	Hartridge High School
S6804025	Bettws High School
S6804026	Lliswerry High School
S6804030	Bassaleg Comprehensive School
S6804059	Caerleon Comprehensive School
S6804602	St Joseph's R.C. High School
S6806003	Rougemont School
S6807002	Maes Ebbw School/Westfield Special School
S6814030	Rumney High School
S6814035	Glyn Derw High School
S6814039	Cardiff High School
S6814040	Glan Ely High School
S6814041	Willows High School
S6814042	Fitzalan High School
S6814047	Llanedeyrn High School
S6814049	Cantonian High School
S6814050	Whitchurch High School
S6814051	Llanishen High School
S6814052	Llanrumney High School
S6814054	Cathays High School
S6814070	Radyr Comprehensive School
S6814071	Ysgol Gyfun Gymraeg Glantaf
S6814072	Ysgol Gyfun Gymraeg Plasmawr
S6814600	St Illtyds R.C. High School

S6814607	Mary Immaculate R.C. High School
S6814608	The Bishop Of Llandaff C.I.W. High School
S6814609	St Teilo's C.I.W. High School
S6814611	Corpus Christi Catholic High School
S6816004	St Johns College
S6816006	Elm Tree House School
S6816012	The Cathedral School
S6816014	Kings Monkton School
S6816023	Ely Presbyterian Church School
S6816024	Howell's School
S6816026	New College\New College School
S6816028	Welsh Centre For Conductive Education
S6816029	Taibach School
S6816087	Scope Craig Y Parc School
S6816088	Tabouk Community School
S6817001	Greenhill Special School
S6817005	The Court Special School
S6817006	Woodlands High School
S6817008	Riverbank Special School
S6817011	Ty Gwyn Special School
S6817019	The Hollies Special School
S6817021	Meadowbank Special School
T0000001	1-SA Assessment & Training Ltd
T0000002	Aberaman ET
T0000003	ACE
T0000004	ACO Training
T0000005	Acom Business Services Ltd
T0000006	Acorn Recruitment
T0000007	ACT
T0000008	Advisory Management Services
T0000009	Age Concern Training
T0000010	Alberto Culver
T0000011	Alcris Business Training Services Limited
T0000012	APM Business Consultancy Limited
T0000013	Arfon Dwyfor Training
T0000014	Arts Factory
T0000015	Atlantic College
T0000016	Barry Training Services
T0000017	BEST
T0000018	Blaenau Gwent CBC (WBL)
T0000019	Brothers Constantinou
T0000020	Bsmart
T0000021	Business Partnership Initiative Limited
T0000022	Cambrian Training
T0000023	Cardiff & the Vale NHS Trust
T0000024	Cardiff Chamber of Commerce
T0000025	Cardiff ITEC
T0000026	Carillion Craft Training
T0000027	Carmarthenshire Training
T0000028	Ceredigion Training
T0000029	CITB
T0000030	City & County of Swansea (WBL)
T0000031	CSV Training Wales
T0000032	DARA
T0000033	Discovery Training
T0000034	E People Serve
T0000035	Environmental Task Force
T0000036	First Impressions
T0000037	Focused Limited T/A Focus On
T0000038	Focal Training Ltd
T0000039	Héronsbridge School
T0000040	Hill Management Criteria
T0000041	Hospitality Plus
T0000042	Hotel & Training Catering Company

T0000043	Hyfforddiant Gwynedd Training
T0000044	Hyfforddiant Mon Training
T0000045	ICON Vocational Training
T0000046	Immtech Training
T0000047	INA Bearing Company Ltd
T0000048	International Rectifiers EMS Ltd
T0000049	ITEC Neath Port Talbot
T0000050	JHP Group Limited
T0000051	Job Force Wales
T0000052	JTL
T0000053	Kelter Training
T0000054	Learnkit Ltd
T0000055	Lexicon (UK) Ltd
T0000056	Llanelli Rural Council (ETMA)
T0000057	Lloyds TSB Insurance
T0000058	Margaret Bardsley Management & Training Ltd
T0000059	Media Skills Wales
T0000060	Memory Lane Cakes
T0000061	Ministry of Defence
T0000062	Myrick Training Services
T0000063	NACRO
T0000064	National Training Partnership
T0000065	Network Training
T0000066	Newport & District GTA
T0000067	Newport & Gwent Enterprise
T0000068	North Wales Training
T0000069	NPTCBC Lifelong Learning Service (WBL)
T0000070	Nustaff Training Limited
T0000071	Olympic Training
T0000072	Pembrokeshire County Council (WBL)
T0000073	People Business
T0000074	Phoenix Training
T0000075	Powys Training
T0000076	Primus Training & Consultancy
T0000077	Princes Trust Wales
T0000078	Principles Training
T0000079	Professional Development
T0000080	Professional Footballers
T0000081	Protocol Skills
T0000082	PRP Training
T0000083	Pulse Service Centre Ltd
T0000084	QinetiQ Aberporth
T0000085	Qualtech Services Limited
T0000086	Rathbone CI
T0000087	RCT County Borough Council
T0000088	Remit
T0000089	Route One
T0000090	Royal Air Force St Athan
T0000091	Royal Mint
T0000092	Rural Pursuits
T0000093	SCT Wales Ltd
T0000094	Shared Apprentice Scheme Wales Ltd
T0000095	Soccer Skills Community Coaching Scheme
T0000096	Solutions for Call Centres (MULTI TRAIN)
T0000097	South Wales Constabulary
T0000098	South Wales Constabulary PTV
T0000099	South Wales Fire Service
T0000100	Sport Train Wales
T0000101	Sports Skills Coaching Scheme
T0000102	STACS Training Ltd
T0000103	Swansea ITEC Ltd
T0000104	Swansea NHS Trust
T0000105	SWATS
T0000106	T2 Skills

T0000107	Telecentre & Business School Ltd
T0000108	The CAD Centre (UK) Ltd
T0000109	The Friary Education & Training Dept
T0000110	The Travel House
T0000111	The Women's Workshop
T0000112	Torfaen CBC
T0000113	Track 2000
T0000114	Training Trust Wales
T0000115	TRW Training Services
T0000116	TTC Training
T0000117	Tydfil Training Consortium
T0000118	Bangor University (WBL)
T0000119	Cardiff University (WBL)
T0000120	The University of Wales, Newport (WBL)
T0000121	Vale of Glamorgan County Council (WBL)
T0000122	Vocational Vision For Training
T0000123	Vision Training & Recruitment Ltd
T0000124	Western Power Training
T0000125	Wrexham Information Technology Centre
T0000126	XR Visteon Training Centre
T0009003	Barry College - VGTA
T0009004	Bridgend College (WBL)
T0009005	Coleg Sir Gâr (WBL)
T0009006	Coleg Ceredigion (WBL)
T0009007	Deeside College (WBL)
T0009008	Coleg Glan Hafren (WBL)
T0009009	Gorseinon College (WBL)
T0009010	Coleg Gwent (WBL)
T0009012	Coleg Llandrillo (WBL)
T0009013	Coleg Llysfasi (WBL)
T0009014	Coleg Meirion Dwyfor (WBL)
T0009015	Merthyr Tydfil College (WBL)
T0009017	Pembrokeshire College (WBL)
T0009020	Pontypridd College (WBL)
T0009021	Coleg Powys (WBL)
T0009023	St David's Sixth Form College (WBL)
T0009024	Swansea College (WBL)
T0009025	Welsh College of Horticulture - SDA
T0009026	Yale College (WBL)
T0009027	Ystrad Mynach College (WBL)
T0009031	YMCA (WBL)
T0009032	Coleg Menai (WBL)
T0009033	Neath Port Talbot College - Pathways
Y0000001	ACE 2000 Training & Development
Y0000002	Accountancy Plus Ltd Training
Y0000003	Agoriad Cyf
Y0000004	Air Products Plc
Y0000005	Andrew Price
Y0000006	Anglo Welsh Bakery
Y0000007	Autopeople (UK) Ltd
Y0000008	Avenue Villa Learning Centre
Y0000009	A-Z School Of Motoring
Y0000010	Bell Innovations
Y0000011	BMF
Y0000012	Bolton College
Y0000013	British Print Industry Federation
Y0000014	Bridgewater College
Y0000015	British Gas Service Ltd
Y0000016	Brown & Jackson Plc
Y0000017	BTCV Cymru
Y0000018	Careers Wales (North East)
Y0000019	Charter Training Services Ltd
Y0000020	Cheynes Training
Y0000021	City Of Bristol

Y0000022	Cross Hands Transport Training
Y0000023	Cymru Care
Y0000024	DM Training
Y0000025	Driver Training Wales
Y0000026	DST
Y0000027	Eliesha Training
Y0000028	EMTEC
Y0000029	FSTD
Y0000030	Global Training
Y0000031	Grampian Foods Ltd
Y0000032	HEA
Y0000033	Hilton Hotels
Y0000034	IDC Training
Y0000035	IETA
Y0000036	In Practice Trainee Services Pilot Clothing
Y0000037	Infotech PSP Ltd
Y0000038	John Watson Training
Y0000039	Kinderquest
Y0000040	Kiss Training
Y0000041	Kwikfit GB Ltd
Y0000042	Lifetime Health And Fitness
Y0000043	Lift Truck Training
Y0000044	Liverpool Community College
Y0000045	Locomotivation Ltd
Y0000046	Lunn Poly
Y0000047	Mental Health Care Group
Y0000048	Microtech Computer Services Ltd
Y0000049	MW International Consultants
Y0000050	NHS Development & Training Unit
Y0000051	North West Training Council
Y0000052	Northern Racing College
Y0000053	Orient Gold Ltd
Y0000054	Pembrokeshire Quality Training
Y0000055	Pilot Clothing Ltd
Y0000056	Polymer Training
Y0000057	Posi Williams Training & Consultancy
Y0000058	Prestige Training
Y0000059	Pro-Action People
Y0000060	Profit From Training Partnership Ltd
Y0000061	Reading College
Y0000062	Savers Toiletries Healthcare
Y0000063	Scottish & Newcastle
Y0000064	Stephenson College
Y0000065	Stoke On Trent College
Y0000066	Sue Price Training
Y0000067	TDS Partnership
Y0000068	The Assessment Company
Y0000069	TM Retail Ltd
Y0000070	Topps Tiles
Y0000071	Touchstone Group
Y0000072	Training & Assessment Solutions
Y0000073	Trident Training Services Ltd
Y0000074	Vidal Sassoon
Y0000075	Watson Training
Y0000076	Plas Lluest Plant Nursery
Y0000077	Swansea Council for Voluntary Action
Y0000078	Community Music Wales
Y0000079	Vision 21
Y0000080	National Language Centre - Nant Gwrtheyrn
Y0000081	Mencap
Y0000082	Arts Factory
Y0000083	DRYW - Arts for Health
Y0000084	National Childminding Association of Wales
Y0000085	RELATE

	Z0009985 School in Wales Z0009987 Place of work in Wales Z0009988 Welsh unitary authority Z0009989 Place of work outside Wales Z0009990 HE institution in UK, but outside Wales Z0009991 HE institution outside UK Z0009992 FE institution in UK, but outside Wales Z0009993 FE institution outside UK Z0009994 State school inside UK, but outside Wales Z0009995 Independent school in UK, but outside Wales Z0009996 School outside UK
Notes	Any learner provider code in valid entry list, or code 00000000 'No arrangement', to be used. Please contact the LLWR Data Collection Team on llwr@wales.gsi.gov.uk if the provider is not listed.
Business rules	2 Error Instance.FRANPART must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland. 3 Error Instance.FRANPART must not exist for institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.
Reason Required	To enable the provider providing learning on behalf of the contracted provider to be identified.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FRANPART Data type: FRANPARTCodeContentType
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Addition of valid entry F0009035 Gower College Swansea.

Franchised out arrangements

Type	field
Short Name	FROUTARR
Description	This field records franchised out arrangements.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>01 Learner is studying for this learning aim on provision delivered by an FE sector provider under franchised out provision</p> <p>02 Learner is studying for this learning aim on provision delivered by an HE institution under franchised out provision</p> <p>03 Learner is studying for this learning aim on provision delivered by a school under franchised out provision</p> <p>21 Learner is studying for this learning aim on provision delivered by a local authority maintained organisation under franchised out provision</p> <p>22 Learner is an employee of a private sector organisation studying for this learning aim on provision delivered by that employer under franchised out provision</p> <p>23 Learner is an employee of a public sector organisation studying for this learning aim on provision delivered by that employer under franchised out provision</p> <p>24 Learner is studying for this learning aim on provision delivered by a private sector training organisation under franchised out provision</p> <p>25 Learner is studying for this learning aim on provision delivered by a voluntary sports organisation under franchised out provision</p> <p>26 Learner is studying for this learning aim on provision delivered by a sports organisation run on a commercial basis under franchised out provision</p> <p>27 Learner is studying for this learning aim on franchised provision which is community based & normally with non-profit-making bodies</p> <p>28 Learner is studying for this learning aim on provision which is community or voluntary based & which is eligible for funding at the discounted rate for franchised provision</p> <p>80 Learner is studying for this learning aim on provision which is delivered by a partner & which is not a franchised out arrangement</p> <p>99 Learner is studying for this learning aim on provision delivered by the institution which is not franchised provision or delivered by a partner</p>
Notes	<p>Information about learners who are studying on provision delivered by the provider on behalf of another provider, that is franchised in to the provider, should be supplied in aggregate using an LSC form.</p> <p>If the learner is studying for this learning aim on provision franchised out for part of the learning aim this should only be recorded in the field where the other provider delivers more than 50% of the guided learning hours for the learning aim.</p> <p>Code 27 should be used where franchised provision is community based and normally with non-profit making bodies and would therefore be eligible to be funded at the full rate without a discount, as described at b in paragraph 18 of FEFC circular 99/09.</p> <p>The SFA/EFA requests additional information on organisations with which providers have franchising arrangements. This information should be returned to the SFA/EFA using the register of franchise and other partners. A sample file can be found on the Information Authority website and should be sent with each ILR return.</p>

	If a student is coded 01 - 80 in this field then Module.TINST must be coded 4001 - 4004.
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.FROUTARR must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.FROUTARR must not exist for institutions not in England.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.FROUTARR must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor the nature of franchised out provision and to support planning.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FROUTARR Data type: FROUTARRCodeContentType
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 01 is now within coverage for FE for institutions in England.

FTE in year A

Type	field
Short Name	LOADYRA
Description	<p>This field together with Instance.LOADYRB describes the split of student FTE (as reported in Instance.STULOAD) between years of instance, in cases where two years of instance are contained within a reporting period.</p> <p>This field contains the amount of FTE in Instance.STULOAD attributable to the year continuing from the previous reporting period. The value can be recorded to one decimal place and must be between 0 and 300.</p>
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland
Coverage	Compulsory where Institution.INSTAPP = 1 and Instance.TYPEYR = 2, 3, 4 or 5 and Course.COURSEAIM does not begin D, L, P, Q, R, S or X and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 03
Notes	<p>This field allows the allocation of student load to years of instance where these span HESA reporting years. Completion of these fields will allow HEFCE to remove the approximations that are currently included in their re-creation of the HESSES returns which counts FTE against years of instance rather than HESA reporting years. This will affect mainly students who are on courses of more than one years duration where any of the following are true:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the intensity of the course varies over time (b) the student drops out or takes a break in study (c) the mix of cost centres in which the student is active varies over the duration of the course (d) activity is not spread evenly throughout the HESA reporting year <p>An example of how years may overlap the HESA reporting year is given below:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p>The FTE in student year A is reported in this field, and the load in student year B in Instance.LOADYRB.</p> <p>The following example illustrates how these fields should be coded.</p> <p>For a student studying an MSc part-time delivered over two years starting on 1 January in Year 1</p>

	Instance.LOADYRA	Instance.LOADYRB	Instance.STULOAD
	Year 1 0	42.5	42.5
	Year 2 7.5	42.5	50.0
	Year 3 7.5	0	7.5
	Thus in Year 2 HEFCE is able to determine that the FTE for the student's year A was Instance.LOADYRB in Year 1 and LOADYRA in Year 2.		
	This field should contain 0 where a student is starting an instance that will have years that span reporting periods.		
Business rules	1 Error	Instance.LOADYRA must exist where Institution.INSTAPP is coded 1 and Instance.TYPEYR = 2, 3, 4 or 5 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 03 and Course.COURSEAIM does not begin D, L, P, Q, R, S, X.	
	2 Error	Instance.LOADYRA must not exist where Institution.INSTAPP is coded 0.	
	3 Error	Instance.LOADYRA must not exist for institutions in Scotland and Wales.	
Reason Required	To allow detailed allocation of FTE to years of instance where an institution has opted to provide this information.		
Part Of	Instance		
Field Length	5		
Minimum Occurrences	0		
Maximum Occurrences	1		
Schema Components	Element: LOADYRA Data type: FTEType		
Related Fields	LOADYRB STULOAD MODYR		
Owner	HESA		
Version	1.1		
Date modified	2013-04-30		
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as LOADYRA not required for the new reduced returns.		

FTE in year B

Type	field
Short Name	LOADYRB
Description	<p>This field together with Instance.LOADYRA describes the split of student FTE (as reported in Instance.STULOAD) between years of instance, in cases where two years of instance are contained within a reporting period.</p> <p>This field contains the amount of FTE in Instance.STULOAD attributable to the year continuing into the next reporting period. The value can be recorded to one decimal place and must be between 0 and 300.</p>
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland
Coverage	Compulsory where Institution.INSTAPP = 1 and Instance.TYPEYR = 2, 3, 4 or 5 and Course.COURSEAIM does not begin D, L, P, Q, R, S or X and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 03
Notes	<p>This field allows the allocation of student load to years of instance where these span HESA reporting years. Completion of these fields will allow HEFCE to remove the approximations that are currently included in their re-creation of the HESSES returns which counts FTE against years of instance rather than HESA reporting years. This will affect mainly students who are on courses of more than one years duration where any of the following are true:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the intensity of the course varies over time (b) the student drops out or takes a break in study (c) the mix of cost centres in which the student is active varies over the duration of the course (d) activity is not spread evenly throughout the HESA reporting year <p>An example of how years may overlap the HESA reporting year is given below:</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p>The FTE in student year A is reported in Instance.LOADYRA, and the load in student year B in this field.</p> <p>The following example illustrates how these fields should be coded.</p> <p>For a student studying an MSc part-time delivered over two years starting on 1 January in Year 1</p>

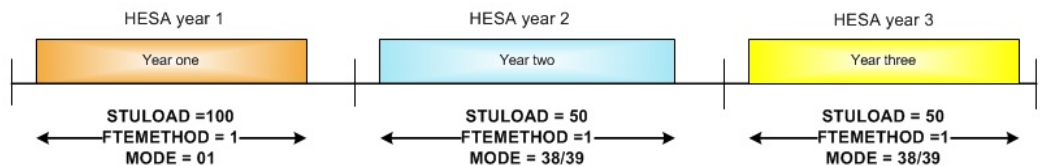
	<table> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Instance.LOADYRA</th> <th>Instance.LOADYRB</th> <th>Instance.STULOAD</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Year 1</td> <td>0</td> <td>42.5</td> <td>42.5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Year 2</td> <td>7.5</td> <td>42.5</td> <td>50.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Year 3</td> <td>7.5</td> <td>0</td> <td>7.5</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Thus in Year 2 HEFCE is able to determine that the FTE for the student's year A was LOADYRB in Year 1 and Instance.LOADYRA in Year 2.</p> <p>This field should contain 0 where a student is finishing an instance that spanned reporting periods.</p>		Instance.LOADYRA	Instance.LOADYRB	Instance.STULOAD	Year 1	0	42.5	42.5	Year 2	7.5	42.5	50.0	Year 3	7.5	0	7.5
	Instance.LOADYRA	Instance.LOADYRB	Instance.STULOAD														
Year 1	0	42.5	42.5														
Year 2	7.5	42.5	50.0														
Year 3	7.5	0	7.5														
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.LOADYRB must exist where Institution.INSTAPP is coded 1 and Instance.TYPEYR = 2, 3, 4 or 5 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 03 and Course.COURSEAIM does not begin D, L, P, Q, R, S, X.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.LOADYRB must not exist where Institution.INSTAPP is coded 0.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.LOADYRB must not exist for institutions in Scotland and Wales.</p>																
Reason Required	To allow detailed allocation of FTE to years of instance where an institution has opted to provide this information.																
Part Of	Instance																
Field Length	5																
Minimum Occurrences	0																
Maximum Occurrences	1																
Schema Components	Element: LOADYRB Data type: FTEType																
Related Fields	LOADYRA STULOAD MODYR																
Owner	HESA																
Version	1.1																
Date modified	2013-04-30																
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as LOADYRB not required for the new reduced returns.																

FTE method

Type	field						
Short Name	FTEMETHOD						
Description	This field indicates the method used to return Student FTE						
Applicable to	Scotland						
Coverage	All instances at institutions in Scotland where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 03						
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="border: none;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">1</td> <td>50:50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>100:0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>0:100</td> </tr> </table>	1	50:50	2	100:0	3	0:100
1	50:50						
2	100:0						
3	0:100						
Notes	<p>Where course academic years span two HESA reporting years, institutions in Scotland have a choice in how they return Student FTE in Instance.STULOAD (see extra guidance for more detail).</p> <p>The choice is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. 50:50 approach, the load is apportioned between the HESA reporting years on a pro-rata basis. • 2. 100:0 approach, all the load is assumed to be in the first HESA reporting year. • 3. 0:100 approach, all the load is assumed to be in the second HESA reporting year. <p>The Instance.FTEMETHOD field indicates the choice made for this student instance.</p> <p>Standard instance years</p> <p>Standard course academic years which fit within the HESA reporting year should be returned as code 1 '50:50' in this field. The 50:50 method requires that the load is apportioned across the HESA reporting years based on the activity undertaken in each reporting period.</p> <p>Example 1</p> <p>A full-time student studying from September to July on a 3 year programme would have an FTE of 100 in each of the HESA reporting periods. As the student is studying on a standard instance year which is contained within the reporting period Instance.FTEMETHOD is returned as '1' (50:50) in each of the years.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>The diagram illustrates three HESA reporting years. Above the timeline, three boxes represent 'Year one' (orange), 'Year two' (light blue), and 'Year three' (yellow). Below the timeline, three double-headed arrows indicate the reporting periods for each year, each labeled 'STULOAD = 100' and 'FTEMETHOD = 1'. The reporting period for HESA year 1 covers the entire duration of Year one. The reporting period for HESA year 2 covers the entire duration of Year two. The reporting period for HESA year 3 covers the entire duration of Year three.</p> </div> <p>Note that the 50:50 method involves a pro-rata split of FTE, not necessarily an even split, across years; this is demonstrated in example 2.</p>						

Example 2

A student commences a HND programme which runs from September to July. In the first year they study full-time before moving on to a part-time mode of study in the second and third years. As the student is studying on a standard instance year which is contained within the reporting period Instance.FTEMETHOD is returned as '1' (50:50) in each of the years. In the first year they are reported with a load of 100, but when the student moves to a part-time mode the FTE values for the second and third years are reduced to reflect the lower intensity of study.

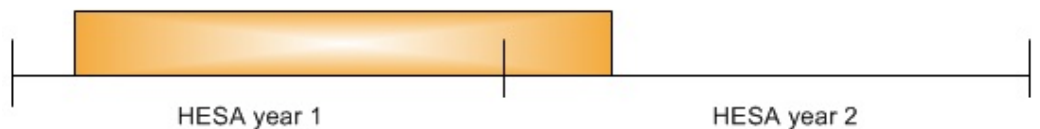


Non-standard instance years

Where course academic years do not fit into the HESA reporting year institutions can choose which of the three Instance.FTEMETHOD approaches to use.

Example 3

A student is studying full-time on a one year non-standard PGT programme. The instance year spans two HESA reporting years.



There are three options for the institution in reporting the FTE for non-standard programmes:

- If the institution uses Instance.FTEMETHOD = 1 (50:50) the load would be split between the two reporting periods based on the activity the student has undertaken:
- If the institution opts to use Instance.FTEMETHOD = 2 (100:0) all of the load would be returned in the first reporting year and there would be 0 FTE in HESA year 2.
- If the institution opts to use Instance.FTEMETHOD = 3 (0:100) all of the load would be returned in the second reporting year and there would be 0 FTE in HESA year 1.

Once assigned the Instance.FTEMETHOD used for an instance should not be updated in subsequent years as this may lead to an over or under reporting of Instance.STULOAD.

Business rules

1 Error Instance.FTEMETHOD must exist for institutions in Scotland where

	2 Error Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 03. Instance.FTEMETHOD must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Wales.
Reason Required	To inform analysis by FTE.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FTEMETHOD Data type: FTEMETHODCodeContentType
Related Fields	STULOAD
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Additional guidance added to Notes concerning activity which spans reporting years.

Fundability code

Type	field
Short Name	FUNDCODE
Description	This field indicates whether the student is counted as 'fundable', ie. 'eligible for funding' for the course by the appropriate funding council/body. The definition therefore may vary between England, Scotland, Northern Ireland and Wales, in line with their funding methods.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Fundable by funding council</p> <p>2 Not fundable by funding council/body</p> <p>3 Not eligible for funding (as defined for the SFC 'Early Statistics') but is a Continuing Professional Development course (as defined by SFC)</p> <p>5 Funded by the Department of Health (institutions in England & NI only)</p> <p>7 Fundable by the NCTL</p>
Notes	<p>This field must be coded at the individual student instance level.</p> <p>Fundable means eligible for funding by the appropriate funding council/body, as defined by that council/body.</p> <p>This field should be consistent with the year's early student statistics returns to the funding councils.</p> <p>Eligible students on courses funded by SFA/EFA or WG-DfES should be coded 1 'Fundable by funding council'.</p> <p>For institutions funded by the HEFCE and DELNI</p> <p>Undergraduate and postgraduate taught students</p> <p>To be consistent with the year's early statistics, this field applies to 'eligible for core funding' in the HESES return. It has been confirmed by the funding councils that it is possible for students coded 01-04 (funding councils) in Course.MSFUND to be returned as 2 'Not fundable by funding council/body'. An example of where this is applicable is courses funded through special funding initiatives.</p> <p>The guidance for coding non-fundable students on funded courses should be to code to the appropriate funding council in Course.MSFUND and code as 2 'Not fundable by funding council/body' in this field.</p> <p>For old regime students (Instance.FEEREGIME = 10) where the major source of funding for the course is HEFCE or DELNI, but there is another EU public source funding a certain number of places then this number of places must be shown as non-fundable in this field. In most cases, it is expected that it will be clear from payment of tuition fees which individual student places are being funded from another source and so are not fundable by HEFCE or DELNI. For the small number of cases where this is not so, institutions shall have the discretion as to which individual students to return as fundable, and which as not fundable, provided that the total student numbers conform to</p>

the split between fundable and non-fundable places.

FUNDCODE = 3 applies to institutions in Scotland only.

From 2012/13 instances fundable by funding council should be returning under code 1 'Fundable by funding council' irrespective of whether funding was taken up or not. Previously a distinction was made between the two circumstances which is no longer required.

For the Open University and all institutions funded by the HEFCE and DELNI

Postgraduate research students

Use of FUNDCODE = 1

All fundable postgraduate research students should be returned as FUNDCODE = 1. Fundable postgraduate research students are Home and EC students registered at the reporting institution for a research-based higher degree and should be actively supervised by an academic member of staff employed by a higher education institution in England (for HEFCE-funded institutions) or Northern Ireland (for DELNI-funded institutions).

Students who spend more than half of their active study time for the whole programme outside the UK should be returned as FUNDCODE = 1 only where:

- 1 there is a clear academic reason for studying abroad rather than in the UK, for example, where the student's research is tied to a specific archaeological site, or
- 2 the student is temporarily and unavoidably abroad and remains liable to UK tax on their earnings, or is a dependant of such a person. This includes members of HM Forces and their dependants.

Students meeting the above criteria should be recorded as FUNDCODE = 1 despite being recorded as non-fundable on the HESES return.

FUNDCODE = 3 applies to institutions in Scotland only.

For institutions funded by the SFC

Use of FUNDCODE = 1

To be consistent with the year's early statistics, this field applies to 'eligible for core funding' in the HESES return. It has been confirmed by the funding councils that it is possible for students coded 01-04 (funding councils) in Course.MSFUND to be returned as 2 'Not fundable by funding council/body'. An example of where this is applicable is courses funded through special funding initiatives.

The guidance for coding non-fundable students on funded courses should be to code to the appropriate funding council in Course.MSFUND and code as 2 'Not fundable by funding council/body' in this field.

Institutions funded by SFC should note that a particular funding cell may have 100

	<p>'fundable' students, but the funding council may provide funding for only 80 student places in that cell. Provided that they satisfy the conditions for being counted in the 'Early Statistics' figures, all 100 students should be identified as eligible for funding: one cannot say which of them were 'fees only' students, as the funding relates to the cell as a whole.</p> <p>FUNDCODE = 3</p> <p>Code 3 'Not eligible for funding (as defined for the SFC 'Early Statistics') but is a Continuing Professional Development course (as defined by SFC)' is for use by institutions in Scotland only. Where code 3 is applicable it should be used in preference to code 2 'Not fundable by funding council/body'.</p> <p>For institutions funded by the HEFCW</p> <p>To be consistent with the year's early statistics, this field applies to 'eligible for core funding' in the HESES return. It has been confirmed by the funding councils that it is possible for students coded 01-04 (funding councils) in Course.MSFUND to be returned as 2 'Not fundable by funding council/body'. An example of where this is applicable is courses funded through special funding initiatives.</p> <p>The guidance for coding non-fundable students on funded courses should be to code to the appropriate funding council in Course.MSFUND and code as 2 'Not fundable by funding council/body' in this field.</p> <p>FUNDCODE = 3 applies to institutions in Scotland only.</p> <p>FUNDCODE = 7 is not available for institutions in Wales.</p>
Examples	<p>A non-EU overseas student is an example of a particular student who is not eligible for funding, even if the course that they are following has funding for student places.</p> <p>Please refer any queries about whether or not students on a particular course or students of a particular type are eligible for funding to the appropriate funding council/body rather than to HESA.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.FUNDCODE must be coded 1 where Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3. 2 Error Instance.FUNDCODE cannot be 1 where Instance.FESTUMK = 4. 3 Error Instance.FUNDCODE must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01. 4 Error Instance.FUNDCODE cannot be coded 1 by institutions in England, Wales or Northern Ireland where Course.MSFUND = 13 or 31 and Course.COURSEAIM = H16, I16, M16, M86, H11, I11, H00, I00, H22, M22, M26, H23, H24 or H62. 5 Error Instance.FUNDCODE cannot be coded 5 by institutions in Scotland or Wales. 6 Error Instance.FUNDCODE cannot be coded 7 by institutions in Scotland, Wales or Northern Ireland. 7 Error Instance.FUNDCODE code 7 must have Course.TTCID = 1, 5, 8, 9, D, F, G or H 8 Error Instance.FUNDCODE code 7 must not have Instance.ITTPHSC = 31. 9 Error For English institutions Instance.FUNDCODE code 1 must not have Course.TTCID = 1, 8, 9, D, F, G or H. 10 Error Instance.FUNDCODE cannot be coded 3 by institutions in England, Wales or Northern Ireland.

	<p>11 Warning Instance.FUNDCODE should not be coded 5 or 7 where Course.MSFUND = 01 or 02.</p> <p>12 Warning Instance.FUNDCODE code 1 should not have Course.MSFUND = 07, 13 or 31.</p> <p>13 Error Instance.FUNDCODE must not be coded 1 where Course.CLSDCRS = 1.</p> <p>14 Warning Instance.FUNDCODE should not be coded 1 by institutions in England, Wales or Northern Ireland where (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is not in (XK, XL, GG, JE, IM, XF, XI, XH, XG, AT, BE, XA, CZ, DK, FI, FR, DE, GI, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MT, NL, PL, PT, ES, SE, ZZ, EE, LV, LT, SI, SK, RO, BG)) .</p> <p>15 Error Instance.FUNDCODE must not be coded 2 or 3 where Instance.LOCSDY = 9.</p> <p>16 Warning Instance.FUNDCODE should not be coded 1 where Instance.FUNDLEV = 20 or 21 and (EntryProfile.QUALENT2 = 01, 02, 05, 14, 15 or EntryProfile.QUALENT3 begins with D or M (excluding M41, M44 and M71)).</p> <p>17 Warning Instance.FUNDCODE should not be coded 1 where Instance.FUNDLEV = 10 or 11 and Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L, M, H or I and (EntryProfile.QUALENT2 is coded 01, 02, 05, 14, 15, 03, 04, 10,11, 12, 13, 16 or EntryProfile.QUALENT3 begins with D, M, H or is equal to JUK)</p> <p>19 Warning Instance.FUNDCODE should not be coded 1 where Instance.FUNDLEV = 10 or 11 and Course.COURSEAIM begins J (excluding J10, J16) C, P, Q, R, S, X and (EntryProfile.QUALENT2 is coded 01, 02, 05, 14, 15, 03, 04, 10,11, 12, 13, 16, 31, 24, 25 or EntryProfile.QUALENT3 begins with D, M, H, J)</p> <p>20 Error Instance.FUNDCODE must not be coded 1 where Instance.QTS = 3 and Course.TTCID = 5.</p> <p>21 Error Instance.FUNDCODE code 7 must not have Instance.ITTPHSC = 49 unless Course.TTCID = F.</p> <p>22 Error Instance.FUNDCODE must not be coded 1 where Instance.EXCHANGE = Z.</p>
Reason Required	To assess accuracy of early returns (Early Statistics), to inform eligibility for HEFCE research funding, and to identify health and social care students and teacher training students.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FUNDCODE Data type: FUNDCODECodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-06-25
Change management notes	Guidance amended in the Notes section, to specify that where there is an EU public source funding a certain number of places, these places should be returned as non-fundable in Instance.FUNDCODE.

Funding model

Type	field
Short Name	FUNDMODEL
Description	This field identifies the funding model to be applied when calculating funding for this learning aim.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>10 Adult Safeguard Learning (ASL)</p> <p>21 16-18 Learner Responsive</p> <p>22 Adult Learner Responsive</p> <p>45 Employer Responsive</p> <p>70 ESF funded (co-financed by the Skills Funding Agency)</p> <p>80 Other LSC funding</p> <p>81 Other Skills Funding Agency funding</p> <p>82 Other EFA funding model</p> <p>99 No Skills Funding Agency or EFA funding for this learning aim</p>
Notes	<p>The provider must indicate in this field the funding model which applies to the funding for the programme or learning aim.</p> <p>This field only identifies the funding model being used to fund the learning aim and does not identify who the funding has been received from. To identify which agency is funding the learning aim, the Sources of funding must be completed in the Instance.LearningDeliveryFAM entity.</p> <p>For further details of learner eligibility for funding, please refer to the provider support manual. Once a provider has identified the Funding model, including 'No Skills Funding Agency or Education Funding Agency (EFA) funding for this learning aim', it must not be changed other than to correct a mistake.</p> <p>Adult Safeguarded Learning (ASL) funding</p> <p>If code 10 is used then the type of ASL activity being undertaken must be identified in the Instance.LearningDeliveryFAM entity.</p> <p>Adult Safeguarded Learning is now known as Community Learning, however it will continue to be recorded under the ASL type code for 12/13.</p> <p>Other Skills Funding Agency/EFA funding models</p> <p>Code 80 is only for use by students starting their learning aim prior to 1st August 2010.</p> <p>Code 82 should be used for OLASS provision where the learner is aged 15 - 17.</p> <p>Formal First Steps (FFS) provision</p> <p>For FFS provision which is regulated provision and starts after 1 August 2012, all providers will be able to claim on a formula basis. This should be recorded using Instance.FUNDMODEL = 22 or 45. Institutions delivering classroom learning should use code 22 and private training providers should use code 45 plus the LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFFAMTYPE of LDM and LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFFAMCODE of 125. Non-regulated FFS steps</p>

	<p>provision should be recorded using Funding model 81.</p> <p>Funding claims for non regulated FFS provision for providers paid on actual must be made by the Training Provider Statement (TPS). Please refer to the information authority website for further information.</p> <p>All FFS learning (both regulated and non-regulated) must be identified by recording a LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELTYPE of First Steps Indicator (FSI) and a LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELTYPECODE of 1.</p> <p>Non funded learning aims</p> <p>Code 99 should be used when the learning aim is not funded by the Skills Funding Agency or EFA. This includes learning aims where the full cost is paid for by the learner or their employer. It also includes learning aims delivered on behalf of another provider (which may be directly in receipt of Skills Funding Agency or EFA funding for them), that is learning aims that are sub-contracted in to the provider.</p> <p>Records for other types of non-funded provision are not required from HEI providers.</p> <p>For 2012/13 the Skills Funding Agency will continue to fund adult learners using either the Adult Learner Responsive (ALR) or Employer Responsive (ER) funding models. These funding models broadly match to either classroom or workplace learning delivered under the single adult skills budget. The definition of classroom and workplace learning can be found in the Skills Funding Agency's funding guidance, and there is further information in the ILR provider support manual.</p> <p>From 2012/13, EFA will be replacing YPLA. More information about EFA replacing YPLA can be found on the Department for Education website.</p> <p>For more information on Field status, please see ILR specification.</p> <p>A matrix has been produced that explains some common coding combinations of Instance.PROGTYPE, Instance.AIMTYPE, and Instance.FUNDMODEL.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.FUNDMODEL must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01. 2 Error Instance.FUNDMODEL must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales. 3 Error Instance.FUNDMODEL must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.
Reason Required	To calculate funding for this learning aim.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FUNDMODEL Data type: FUNDMODELCodeContentType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2

Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Good standing marker

Type	field
Short Name	PROGRESS
Description	This field is used to indicate whether the student achieved the qualification aim, achieved partial success in the qualification aim, or no success.
Applicable to	Wales
Coverage	All instances at institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00
Valid Entries and Labels	6 FE - Learning aim achieved 7 FE - Partial success 8 FE - No success 9 FE - Study continuing W FE - The student has transferred to a new learning aim. That is the student has withdrawn from this learning aim & as a direct result has at the same time started studying for another learning aim
Notes	For FE instances in England, institutions should use the Instance.FEOUTCOME field.
Business rules	1 Error Instance.PROGRESS must exist for institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 1,3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00. 4 Error Instance.PROGRESS must be coded 9 for institutions in Wales where Instance.CSTAT = 1. 5 Error Instance.PROGRESS must not be coded 9 where Instance.CSTAT is coded 2, 3 or 4. 6 Error Instance.PROGRESS must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland. 7 Error Instance.PROGRESS must not exist for institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 2. 9 Error Instance.PROGRESS must be coded 6 or 7 for institutions in Wales where Instance.RSNEND is coded 01. 10 Error Instance.PROGRESS must be coded W for institutions in Wales where Instance.CSTAT = 4.
Reason Required	To monitor progression.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: PROGRESS Data type: PROGRESSCodeContentType
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid and PROGRESS is now only applicable to institutions in Wales. Business rule 4 amended to restrict the rule to institutions in Wales. Business rule 5 wording has been updated. Business rule 6

	amended to stop field being returned by institutions in England. Business rule 7 amended to remove reference in England. Business rule 10 amended to restrict the rule to institutions in Wales. Business rule 2 deleted as values have been removed from the coding frame. Business rules 3 and 8 deleted as institutions in England can no longer return this field.
--	--

Gross fee

Type	field
Short Name	GROSSFEE
Description	This field will capture the gross fee charged, that is before any financial support from the institution such as waivers are taken into account.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	<p>Institutions in England: All instances where Instance.FEEREGIME = 20 and Instance.SSN does not exist.</p> <p>Institutions in Wales: All instances where Instance.FEEREGIME = 20.</p> <p>Institutions in Scotland: All instances where Instance.FEEREGIME = 20.</p> <p>Institutions in Northern Ireland: All instances where Instance.FEEREGIME = 20.</p>
Notes	<p>The SLC will have this information for students domiciled in England, Wales and Northern Ireland who apply for student finance and for whom a Student Support Number (Instance.SSN) is returned. HEIs have the option to either not return the fee fields and allow the data to be matched to SLC or optionally report this and Instance.NETFEE. For institutions in Scotland, the SLC will have this information for students who are paying de-regulated tuition and so this field is optional if the Student Support Number (Instance.SSN) is returned.</p> <p>This field is required to be returned for all students not applying for student finance.</p> <p>If the institution provides a waiver in the form of a lower fee charged to post-2012 fee regime students then the SLC data on maximum fee for the course can be used to provide the gross fee charged.</p> <p>For Welsh domiciled students in the UK, and EU domiciled students in institutions in Wales, the Instance.GROSSFEE should be the fee charged before the fee grant is applied.</p> <p>The Instance.GROSSFEE returned should be the exact fee, e.g. £6,551 and not rounded.</p> <p>If a student leaves the HEI part the way through the instance year, the annualised amount for the course should be returned in Instance.GROSSFEE.</p> <p>For non-standard years where it is not known which or how many modules the student will elect to take in HESA year two of the year of instance, HEIs should return the fee based on modules started in the reporting year.</p> <p>For non-standard years (where Instance.TYPEYR = 2, 3, 4 or 5) the full fee for the year of instance should be returned in the reporting year within which the year of instance commences.</p> <p>Example: a one year full time MPhil course runs from October to October; the total cost</p>

	<p>of the course is £10,000.</p> <p>For courses that run for more the one year and charge the fees up front, the fees should be divided between the course years.</p> <p>Example: a two year part time postgraduate diploma course runs from October to October; the total cost of the course £12,000, which is charged up front.</p> <p>Writing-up students who are charged an additional fee on top of the agreed fee for the course by the HEI, should include the additional fee in Instance.GROSSFEE.</p> <p>Example: a student studying a one year MPhil course running from October to October overshoots the dissertation phase and continues in writing-up mode until December. The HEI charges a fee of £200 for this writing-up phase.</p> <p>For outgoing exchange students the Instance.GROSSFEE should be the fee that the student is being charged for that year.</p> <p>For full year ERASMUS outgoing students the Instance.GROSSFEE should have no fees reported and no fees will be returned from the SLC. For part year ERASMUS students the Instance.GROSSFEE should be returned with the fee that the student is being charged for that year.</p> <p>If a student with an SSN leaves the HEI part the way through the instance year, the SLC will provide the annualised amount for the course in Instance.GROSSFEE.</p> <p>Where a student repeats a term or semester in an additional year to the agreed structure of the course, HEI should report the additional fee in Instance.GROSSFEE.</p> <p>Students coded 1 'Sandwich placement', 2 'Language year abroad & not full-year outgoing ERASMUS' or 4 'Final year of full-time course lasting less than 15 weeks' in Instance.SPECFEE returned as less than 50% of the agree OFFA amount for the course.</p> <p>Instance.GROSSFEE is not required for incoming exchange students or dormant students.</p> <p>Instances where the NHS (or another body) pays a per-capita charge equivalent to a fee should be recorded in Instance.GROSSFEE. However, where the NHS (or another body) pays a single fee that is not linked to an individual student then zero should be returned.</p>
Examples	<p>A fee of £9,000 would be returned as 9000.</p> <p>A fee of £7,545 would be returned as 7545.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.GROSSFEE must exist where Instance.FEEREGIME = 20 and Instance.SSN does not exist. 2 Error Instance.GROSSFEE must not exist where Instance.FEEREGIME = 10 or Instance.FEEREGIME does not exist. 3 Error Instance.GROSSFEE must be greater than or equal to Instance.NETFEE 4 Error Instance.GROSSFEE must exist where Instance.NETFEE exists.

	<p>5 Error For institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 9000.</p> <p>6 Error For institutions in England, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 9000 where Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J or C (excluding H50, H60, H61, H62, H78, H81, I60 and I61) or is M22, M26, M71 or M88 and Instance.FUNDCODE = 1 or 7.</p> <p>7 Error For institutions in England, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 4500 where Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J or C (excluding H50, H60, H61, H62, H78, H81, I60 and I61) or is M22, M26, M71 or M88 and Instance.FUNDCODE = 1 or 7 and Instance.SPECFEE = 1, 2 or 4.</p> <p>8 Error For institutions in England, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 40000 where (Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J or C or is M22 or M26) and (any associated CourseSubject.SBJCA = A100, A200, A300, A400, D100, D190, D200, D210, D220 or D290) and (Instance.FUNDCODE not equal to 1).</p> <p>9 Error For institutions in England, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 30000 where (Course.COURSEAIM begins H (excluding H71 and H88), I, J or C or is M22 or M26) and (no associated CourseSubject.SBJCA = A100, A200, A300, A400, D100, D190, D200, D210, D220 or D290) and (Instance.FUNDCODE not equal to 1 or 7).</p> <p>10 Error For institutions in England, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 24000 where Course.COURSEAIM = H71 or M71 and Instance.FUNDCODE is not equal to 1 or 7.</p> <p>11 Error For institutions in England, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 34000 where Course.COURSEAIM = H88 or M88 and Instance.FUNDCODE is not equal to 1.</p> <p>12 Error For institutions in England, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 50000 where Course.COURSEAIM = M11 and Instance.FUNDCODE = 1.</p> <p>13 Error For institutions in England, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 60000 where Course.COURSEAIM = M11 and Instance.FUNDCODE not equal to 1.</p> <p>14 Error For institutions in England, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 25000 where (Course.COURSEAIM begins E or M (excluding M11, M22, M26, M71 and M88) or is H50, H60, H61, H62, H78, H81, I60 or I61) and Instance.FUNDCODE = 1, 5 or 7</p> <p>15 Error For institutions in England, Instance.GROSSFEE must be less than or equal to 30000 where (Course.COURSEAIM begins E or M (excluding M11, M22, M26, M71 and M88) or is H50, H60, H61, H62, H78, H81, I60 or I61) and Instance.FUNDCODE not equal to 1, 5 or 7.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor the various fee levels and their spread across the UK.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: GROSSFEE
Owner	HESA
Version	1.5
Date modified	2013-06-25
Change management notes	Additional guidance added to the Notes section, clarifying that instances where the NHS (or another body) pays a per-capita charge equivalent to a fee should be recorded in Instance.GROSSFEE; how to return non-standard instance years; and how students who leave part-way through their year should be treated. Business rules 6, 7, 8, 9, 14 and 15 updated for institutions in England for H and I level courses which are defined as PGT level for HESSES to validate fees as PGT. Also to exclude Department of Health funded instances from OFFA threshold checks.

Guided learning hours

Type	field
Short Name	GLHRS
Description	The actual number of guided learning hours for the whole qualification aim to the nearest whole hour
Applicable to	England Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Notes	<p>Guided learning hours are defined as all times when a member of staff is present to give specific guidance towards the qualification aim being studied. This includes lectures, tutorials and supervised study in, for example, libraries, open learning centres and learning workshops. It also includes time spent by staff assessing students' achievements, for example in the assessment of competence for NVQs. It does not include hours where supervision or assistance is of a general nature and is not specific to the study of the students.</p> <p>The length of this field is 5 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros, e.g. 00005 or 5</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.GLHRS must exist for institutions in England or Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.GLHRS must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.GLHRS must not exist for institutions in England or Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p> <p>4 Error Where Instance.GLHRS = 0, Course.COURSEAIM must be coded X41 - X46 (Welsh for Adults)</p>
Reason Required	To determine use of guided learning hours.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: GLHRS
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid and reduced return 01 now extends to FE.

Initiatives

Type	field
Short Name	INITIATIVES
Description	This field identifies students who are part of a specific scheme that is to be monitored independently. Valid entries will change from year to year to reflect current schemes.
Applicable to	England Wales
Coverage	Instances at institutions in England or Wales that are part of a named scheme
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>2 Employer engagement co-funded students</p> <p>7 Universities Heads of the Valleys Institute (UHOVI)</p> <p>8 One Wales Scheme - foundation degree</p> <p>9 European Social Fund (ESF) - foundation degree</p> <p>A National Scholarship Programme (NSP)</p> <p>B Access to HE diploma marker</p>
Notes	<p>This field may be returned twice if a student falls under two schemes.</p> <p>This field collects information with respect to student instances that are part of a scheme. Where a student transfers course within the same instance, Instance.INITIATIVES should continue to identify the scheme.</p> <p>The field should not be used for students who might previously have undertaken an initiative as part of a different instance or at another institution.</p> <p>Employer Engagement Co-funded Students</p> <p>Co-funded ASNs are additional student numbers (ASNs) allocated at a lower rate of funding than 'full funded' ASNs, normally at between 50-75 per cent of a full-time equivalent (FTE) student. HEFCE would expect the HEI or FEC to secure from an employer the remaining percentage. For example, an HEI wishing to deliver an HE Certificate (120 credits) to 30 learners may be allocated 15 FTEs by HEFCE and be expected to secure the equivalent of 15 FTEs of funding from employers. Further information is available from HEFCE.</p> <p>HEFCE has ceased to fund this scheme from 2012/13, however, transitional funding will be awarded to new entrants in 2012/13 to establish sustainable employer co-funded activity beyond the life of the ASN scheme. Students funded with these transitional funds should be identified using code 2 'Employer engagement co-funded students'. This code must not be used for continuing instances, and validation will prevent this.</p> <p>Universities Heads of the Valleys Institute (UHOVI)</p> <p>Code 7 'Universities Heads of the Valleys Institute (UHOVI)' is used to identify instances at institutions in Wales participating in the UHOVI initiative.</p> <p>One Wales Scheme - foundation degree</p> <p>Code 8 'One Wales Scheme - foundation degree' is used to identify instances in Wales taking foundation degrees funded through the One Wales Scheme via HEFCW. More information can be found in HEFCW circular W10/29 HE Foundation Degrees.</p>

	<p>European Social Fund (ESF) - foundation degree</p> <p>Code 9 'European Social Fund (ESF) - foundation degree' is used to identify instances in Wales taking foundation degrees funded through the European Social Fund's Higher Skills Wales programme led by the University of Glamorgan in partnership with the HE and FE sector across the whole of Wales. More information can be found on the Higher Skills Wales website http://www.higherskillswales.co.uk/fdp.</p> <p>The European Social Fund (ESF) was set up to improve employment opportunities in the European Union and so help raise standards of living. It aims to help people fulfil their potential by giving them better skills and better job prospects.</p> <p>National Scholarship Programme</p> <p>Code A 'National Scholarship Programme (NSP)' is used to identify students in England who have received an NSP award for this instance.</p> <p>Access to HE diploma marker</p> <p>At the request of HEFCE code B 'Access to HE diploma marker' has been added to identify instances at institutions in England where an Access to HE diploma (QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPEs Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4, Y5, Y6, Y7, Y8, Y9, YA, YB, YC, YD, YF, LD) has been awarded and an appropriate grade has been achieved for ABB+ equivalency. The appropriate grade to meet ABB+ equivalency is defined as an overall pass which includes 45 credits at Level 3, of which 30 credits must be at Distinction and the other 15 at Merit or higher, as identified in the HEFCE publication documentation 'Students outside the Student Number Control in 2013-14 ABB+ population'.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.INITIATIVES must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>5 Error Where there are two occurrences of Instance.INITIATIVES they must not be identical.</p> <p>6 Error For institutions in England Instance.INITIATIVES must be coded 2, A or B.</p> <p>7 Error For institutions in Wales Instance.INITIATIVES must be coded 7, 8 or 9.</p> <p>8 Error Where Instance.INITIATIVES is coded 7 Institution.UKPRN must be 10007793 or 10007853.</p> <p>9 Error Where Instance.INITIATIVES is coded B, Instance.COMDATE must be later than 2011-07-31 and Course.COURSEAIM must begin with H, I, J or C or equal M22 or M26.</p> <p>10 Error Where Instance.INITIATIVES is coded A, Instance.FEEREGIME must equal 20 and Course.COURSEAIM must begin with H, I, J or C or equal M22 or M26.</p> <p>11 Error Where Instance.INITIATIVES is coded 8 Institution.UKPRN must not be 10007814 or 10007855.</p> <p>12 Error Where Instance.INITIATIVES is coded 2, Institution.UKPRN must be 10000291, 10000571, 10000886, 10001143, 10001282, 10001726, 10004351, 10004930, 10005790, 10006299, 10006566, 10007144, 10007145, 10007147, 10007161, 10007759, 10007785, 10007823, 10007848, 10007851 or 10040812.</p>
Reason Required	<p>From time to time funders introduce initiatives (for example Lifelong Learning Networks (LLNs) and Employer Engagement Co-funded Students) where, for a limited period, there is a requirement to track students who are recruited under the particular initiative.</p> <p>In order to achieve this monitoring potential, a general purpose field will be added to the record, to which valid entries will be added to identify individual schemes as required.</p>

Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	2
Schema Components	Element: INITIATIVES Data type: INITIATIVESCodeContentType
Owner	HEFCE/HEFCW
Version	1.3
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 6 updated for institutions in England for codes 1, 3, 4 and 5 being removed from the coding frame and code A being added. Business rule 7 updated for institutions in Wales for codes 8 and 9 being added to the coding frame. Business rule 9 updated to allow code B (Access to HE diploma marker) to be returned for continuing students. Business rule 10 added for institutions in England to validate that code A (NSP) is only returned for eligible students. Business rule 11 added for institutions in Wales to validate that code 8 (One Wales Scheme) is only returned by institutions in receipt of funding. Business rule 12 added for institutions in England to validate that code 2 (Employer engagement co-funded students) is only returned by institutions in receipt of funding. Business rule 2 deleted as codes 3, 4 and 5 have been removed from the coding frame.

Institutions own campus identifier

Type	field
Short Name	INSTCAMP
Description	This field contains the institution's own campus identifier.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Compulsory for institutions in Wales where Course.COURSEAIM is coded X41 to X46. Optional for all other instances
Notes	<p>This field will collect the institution's own campus identifier to enable institutions to identify groups of students, such as nurses or continuing education students, for their own purposes, since these may not be mutually exclusive to the strengthened requirement for Instance.CAMPID to show distinct physical site only.</p> <p>For instances linked to Welsh For Adults courses, this field must contain the postcode of the venue the course is being studied at. Where the venue changes within the duration of the course, then use the postcode of where the majority of the course takes place. There is further guidance on valid postcode formats at: http://www.govtalk.gov.uk/gdsc/html/frames/PostCode-2-1-Release.htm. The business rule structure validation is slightly less strict than that described in UK Government Data Standards Catalogue, as not all parsers will support the full GDSC definition. All postcodes are validated against valid postcodes at exception.</p>
Business rules	1 Error Instance.INSTCAMP must exist and contain a valid full postcode structure or a valid outward postcode structure for institutions in Wales where Course.COURSEAIM is coded X41 to X46.
Reason Required	For institutional use, to prevent inappropriate use of CAMPID. Also used to record location of venue for Welsh for Adults instances
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: INSTCAMP Data type: INSTCAMPTYPE
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Institution's own instance identifier

Type	field
Short Name	OWNINST
Description	This field records the institution's own internal identifier for the instance.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances (optional)
Notes	<p>Valid characters</p> <p>The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+IE00 to U+IEFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p> <p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <code><?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?></code>) and to ensure that their files are actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.</p>
Reason Required	To facilitate HESA checking data with institutions, for example, validation reports, etc.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	30
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: OWNINST Data type: OWNINSTType

Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

ITT phase/scope

Type	field
Short Name	ITTPHSC
Description	This field describes in more detail the student's initial teacher training aim.
Applicable to	England Wales
Coverage	All courses at institutions in England and Wales where Course.TTCID = 1, 2, 8, F, G, H, J or K and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04 or 07
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>15 Ages 3-8</p> <p>16 Ages 3 or 5-11, emphasis 7-11</p> <p>17 Ages 3 or 5-11, emphasis 3-8</p> <p>18 Ages 3 or 5-11, emphasis 5-8</p> <p>19 Ages 7-11</p> <p>24 Ages 11-16 or 18</p> <p>25 Ages 14-19</p> <p>26 Ages 7-14</p> <p>31 Further education</p> <p>49 Other</p> <p>51 Foundation Stage and KS1 (age ranges 3-8)</p> <p>52 Foundation Stage, KS1 and KS2 (age ranges 3-11)</p> <p>53 KS1 and KS2 (age ranges 5-11)</p> <p>54 KS2 and KS3 (age ranges 7-14)</p> <p>55 KS3 and KS4 (age ranges 11-16)</p> <p>56 KS3, KS4 and post-16 (age ranges 11-18)</p> <p>57 KS4 and post-16 (age ranges 14-19)</p> <p>61 Early years and KS1 (age ranges 3-8)</p> <p>62 Foundation phase (age ranges 3-8)</p> <p>63 Early years, KS1 and KS2 (age ranges 3-11)</p> <p>64 Foundation phase and KS2 (age ranges 3-11)</p> <p>65 KS2 (age ranges 7-11)</p> <p>71 Ages 3-7</p> <p>72 Ages 3-8</p> <p>73 Ages 3-9</p> <p>74 Ages 3-11</p> <p>75 Ages 5-9</p> <p>76 Ages 5-11</p> <p>77 Ages 7-11</p> <p>78 Ages 7-14</p> <p>79 Ages 9-14</p> <p>80 Ages 11-16</p> <p>81 Ages 11-19</p>
Notes	<p>Codes 15 to 26 can only be used where Instance.COMDATE is before 01 August 2002.</p> <p>Codes 53 to 57 can be used by institutions in Wales.</p> <p>Institutions in England can only use codes 51 to 57 where the Instance.COMDATE is after 31 July 2002 and before 1 August 2007.</p> <p>Codes 61 to 65 can only be used by institutions in Wales.</p> <p>Codes 71 to 81 can only be used by institutions in England where Instance.COMDATE is after 31 July 2007.</p>

	<p>Code 72 Ages 3 - 8 Primary can only be used by students with a Instance.COMDATE between 31 July 2007 and 1 August 2010.</p> <p>Codes 82 and 83 are no longer valid entries for this field. Students previously returned with ITTPHSC 82 should be recoded to 81 'Ages 11-19 Secondary'.</p> <p>For students studying on SKE programmes a code in the range of 71-81 should be returned.</p> <p>For other initial teacher training courses not leading to Qualified Teacher Status, codes 31 and 49 should be used.</p> <p>For institutions in England code 31 'Further education' should be used only for:</p> <p>any initial teacher training qualification (Stage 1, 2 or 3) for the learning and skills sector in England with current endorsement from Standards Verification UK or FENTO</p> <p>and/or</p> <p>any integrated subject based qualification for Skills for Life teachers in the learning and skills sector in England with current approval and endorsement from Standards Verification UK or FENTO.</p> <p>Since January 2004, Lifelong Learning UK (LLUK) has taken over the work of the former national training organisation, Further Education National Training Organisation (FENTO). Standards Verification UK (SVUK), a wholly owned subsidiary of LLUK will continue the verification of initial teacher training, formerly undertaken by FENTO.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.ITTPHSC must exist for institutions in England or Wales where Course.TTCID = 1, 2, 8, F, G or H and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04 or 07.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.ITTPHSC codes 15 - 26 must have Course.TTCID = 1 or 8 and Instance.COMDATE (where exists) before 2002-08-01.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.ITTPHSC codes 61 to 65 must be for an institution in Wales and have Instance.COMDATE > 2002-07-31.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.ITTPHSC codes 71 - 81 must be for an institution in England where Instance.COMDATE (where exists) is after 2007-07-31.</p> <p>5 Error Where Instance.ITTPHSC codes 53-57 are used and institution in Wales and Course.TTCID = 1 or 8, Instance.COMDATE (where it exists) must be after 2002-07-31.</p> <p>6 Error Instance.ITTPHSC code 31 must have Course.TTCID = 2, G or H.</p> <p>7 Error Instance.ITTPHSC must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>8 Error Instance.ITTPHSC must not exist for institutions in England or Wales where Course.TTCID = 0.</p> <p>9 Error Where Instance.ITTPHSC codes 51-57 are used and institution in England and Course.TTCID = 1 or 8, Instance.COMDATE (where it exists) must be between 2002-08-01 and 2007-07-31.</p> <p>10 Error Instance.ITTPHSC codes 51 and 52 must not be used by institutions in Wales.</p> <p>12 Error Where Instance.ITTPHSC is coded 72 Instance.COMDATE must be before 2010-08-01.</p> <p>13 Error Instance.ITTPHSC code 49 must have Course.TTCID = 2.</p> <p>17 Error Instance.ITTPHSC must be coded in the range 71 - 81 where Course.TTCID = F</p>

Reason Required	To provide details of training, distinguishing primary and secondary levels, etc.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ITTPHSC Data type: ITTPHSCCodeContentType
Related Fields	TTCID SBJCA ITTSUBJECT
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2012-04-30
Change management notes	Coverage statement corrected to reference Instance.REDUCEDI rather than Course.REDUCEDC. Business rule 1 updated for the introduction of TTCID codes G and H (School Direct initiatives) and to validate coverage against instance rather than course for reduced returns. Business rule 6 updated for the introduction of TTCID codes G and H (School Direct initiatives).

ITT schemes

Type	field
Short Name	ITTSCHMS
Description	This field identifies those students who have participated in an ITT scheme
Applicable to	England Wales
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England and Wales where Course.TTCID is 1, 2, 8, G, H, J or K and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 04
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Fast-track</p> <p>2 Student Associates Scheme</p> <p>3 Fast-track & previously completed a Student Associate Scheme</p> <p>4 Extended PGCE (Supplementary training bursary)</p> <p>5 Two-year full-time top up undergraduate degree (NCTL funded)</p> <p>6 Primary modern languages programme (NCTL funded)</p> <p>7 Previously completed a subject enhancement course</p> <p>9 Not undertaken any NCTL pre-ITT scheme</p>
Notes	<p>Code 2 in this field will identify instances where the student has previously completed a SAS scheme.</p> <p>For code 6 to apply, students must be on a primary programme (Instance.ITTPHSC 71, 73, 74, 75, 76 or 77) with CourseSubject.SBJCA of French (R100), German (R200), Italian (R300) or Spanish (R400).</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.ITTSCHMS must exist where the institution is in England or Wales and Course.TTCID = 1, 2, G or H and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 04</p> <p>2 Error Instance.ITTSCHMS must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.ITTSCHMS must not exist where the institution is in England or Wales and Course.TTCID = 0.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.ITTSCHMS codes 1 or 3 must have an Instance.COMDATE earlier than 2007-08-01.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.ITTSCHMS code 6 must have Instance.ITTPHSC coded 72 - 77, and CourseSubject.SBJCA = R100, R200, R300 or R400.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor success of ITT Schemes
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ITTSCHMS Data type: ITTSCHMSCodeContentType
Related Fields	TTCID
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30

Change management notes

Business rule 1 updated for the introduction of TTCID codes G and H (School Direct initiatives).

Learning difficulty

Type	field																				
Short Name	LEARNDIF																				
Description	This field records whether the learner considers themselves to have a learning difficulty.																				
Applicable to	England																				
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1,3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01																				
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="border: none;"> <tr><td>01</td><td>Moderate learning difficulty</td></tr> <tr><td>02</td><td>Severe learning difficulty</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>Dyslexia</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>Dyscalculia</td></tr> <tr><td>19</td><td>Other specific learning difficulty</td></tr> <tr><td>20</td><td>Autism spectrum disorder</td></tr> <tr><td>90</td><td>Multiple learning difficulties</td></tr> <tr><td>97</td><td>Other</td></tr> <tr><td>98</td><td>No learning difficulty</td></tr> <tr><td>99</td><td>Not known / information not provided</td></tr> </table>	01	Moderate learning difficulty	02	Severe learning difficulty	10	Dyslexia	11	Dyscalculia	19	Other specific learning difficulty	20	Autism spectrum disorder	90	Multiple learning difficulties	97	Other	98	No learning difficulty	99	Not known / information not provided
01	Moderate learning difficulty																				
02	Severe learning difficulty																				
10	Dyslexia																				
11	Dyscalculia																				
19	Other specific learning difficulty																				
20	Autism spectrum disorder																				
90	Multiple learning difficulties																				
97	Other																				
98	No learning difficulty																				
99	Not known / information not provided																				
Notes	<p>If the learner considers himself or herself to have a learning difficulty, this should be used to record the learners main learning difficulty.</p> <p>Where a learner has more than one learning difficulty, the main one should be recorded.</p> <p>Where there are two or more of equal severity, code 90 'Multiple learning difficulties' should be used.</p> <p>Where the learner has no learning difficulty, code 98 'No learning difficulty' should be used.</p>																				
Business rules	<table style="border: none;"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Error</td><td>Instance.LEARNDIF must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>Error</td><td>Instance.LEARNDIF must not exist for institutions not in England.</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>Error</td><td>Instance.LEARNDIF must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</td></tr> </table>	1	Error	Instance.LEARNDIF must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.	2	Error	Instance.LEARNDIF must not exist for institutions not in England.	3	Error	Instance.LEARNDIF must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.											
1	Error	Instance.LEARNDIF must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.																			
2	Error	Instance.LEARNDIF must not exist for institutions not in England.																			
3	Error	Instance.LEARNDIF must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.																			
Reason Required	To monitor the extent and effect of learning difficulties. The SFA/EFA needs to be aware of all their funded learners with learning difficulties, not just those for whom additional funding is being claimed.																				
Part Of	Instance																				
Field Length	2																				
Minimum Occurrences	0																				
Maximum Occurrences	1																				
Schema Components	Element: LEARNDIF Data type: LEARNDIFCodeContentType																				
Related Fields	FESTUMK																				
Owner	SFA/EFA																				

Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 01 is now within coverage for FE for institutions in England.

Learning Planned end date

Type	field
Short Name	LEARNPLANENDDATE
Description	This field indicates the date by which the provider and learner plan to complete the learning related to this learning aim.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Notes	<p>The planned end date must remain the same between academic years as it is used by the success rates to match data from one year to the next.</p> <p>It is sufficient for the date held in this field to be accurate to within a week, providing that any approximation does not result in a learner being wrongly included or excluded in the funding calculations.</p> <p>If a learner continues their study beyond the date planned at the start of the learning aim, this should be reflected in the learning actual end date field (Instance.ENDDATE) and the learning planned end date must remain unchanged.</p> <p>It is important that this date is set realistically based on historic performance, published average lengths of stay and a thorough assessment of the learner at initial assessment. For more funding guidance, please visit the Skills Funding Agency website or the EFA website.</p> <p>From 2012/13, EFA will be replacing YPLA. More information about EFA replacing YPLA can be found on the Department for Education website.</p> <p>All date fields in the Student Record must be completed using the ISO8601 format of YYYY-MM-DD. The specification of this field falls within the scope of the Aligned Data Definitions and follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.LEARNPLANENDDATE must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.LEARNPLANENDDATE must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.LEARNPLANENDDATE must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.LEARNPLANENDDATE must be greater than or equal to Instance.COMDATE.</p>
Reason Required	To calculate expected learning delivery periods and to calculate funding.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	10
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: LEARNPLANENDDATE

Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Additional guidance on the format of dates added to Notes. Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field. Business rule 4 added to prevent planned end date being before the start of the instance.

Length of current year of instance

Type	field
Short Name	YEARLGTH
Description	This field is used to indicate the normal number of weeks (excluding holidays and placements) from the commencement of study, the first teaching week, to the completion within the current year of the course. It does not purport to indicate the amount of study time or contact time. The field should reflect the length of the whole of the current year of the course and not just the part which is in the current reporting period 1 August - 31 July.
Applicable to	Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances at institutions in Wales and Scotland where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.
Notes	<p>The value should exclude holidays and placements.</p> <p>Years of course out on placement should have an empty element returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 9 (not applicable), i.e:</p> <pre><YEARLGTH ReasonForNull="9"></YEARLGTH></pre> <p>This approach can also be followed by institutions in Scotland, in cases where there is not a defined normal length for the year of the course.</p> <p>The length of this field is 2 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros, e.g. 03 or 3.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.YEARLGTH must exist for institutions in Wales and Scotland where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.YEARLGTH must be NULL and ReasonForNull = 9 where Instance.LOCSDY = D or F.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.YEARLGTH must not exist for institutions in England or Northern Ireland.</p>
Reason Required	To assist Statutory Customers to monitor programme patterns.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: YEARLGTH Data type: PositiveIntegerWithNullStructure2
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Level applicable to funding council HESES

Type	field																																	
Short Name	FUNDLEV																																	
Description	This field is an indicator of the level of the instance, expressed in terms of HEFCE HESES definitions.																																	
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland																																	
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England and Northern Ireland where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01																																	
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="width: 10%;">10</td><td>Undergraduate</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>Long undergraduate</td></tr> <tr><td>20</td><td>Postgraduate taught</td></tr> <tr><td>21</td><td>Long postgraduate taught</td></tr> <tr><td>30</td><td>Postgraduate research</td></tr> <tr><td>31</td><td>Long postgraduate research</td></tr> <tr><td>99</td><td>Not in HESES population</td></tr> </table>	10	Undergraduate	11	Long undergraduate	20	Postgraduate taught	21	Long postgraduate taught	30	Postgraduate research	31	Long postgraduate research	99	Not in HESES population																			
10	Undergraduate																																	
11	Long undergraduate																																	
20	Postgraduate taught																																	
21	Long postgraduate taught																																	
30	Postgraduate research																																	
31	Long postgraduate research																																	
99	Not in HESES population																																	
Notes	<p>Coding should be consistent with the allocation of the student in the HEFCE HESES return. Refer to HEFCE for full definitions.</p> <p>Long refers to any course with instance year of over 45 weeks.</p> <p>Code 99 'Not in the HESES population' can be used if the HESA reporting year does not contain, in part or in whole, a year of instance which has previously, is, or will be, included in the HESES population. However, use of code 99 is an option. Institutions can, if they so wish, use the other codes for all records.</p>																																	
Business rules	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%;">1</td> <td style="width: 10%;">Error</td> <td>Instance.FUNDLEV must exist for institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Warning</td> <td>Instance.FUNDLEV should be coded 30, 31 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins D or L.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Warning</td> <td>Instance.FUNDLEV should be coded 20, 21 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins E or M (excluding M22, M26) or equals H50, H60, H61, H62, H71, H78, H81, H88, I60, I61 and I81.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Warning</td> <td>Instance.FUNDLEV should be coded 10, 11 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins H or I or equals M22 or M26. This rule is not applied when the Course.COURSEAIM is one of the following H50, H60, H61, H62, H71, H78, H81, H88, I60, I61 and I81.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Instance.FUNDLEV must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Wales.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Instance.FUNDLEV must not be coded 10 or 11 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM = D00, D01, E00.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Instance.FUNDLEV must not be coded 30 or 31 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM = E00, E90 or begins M, H, I.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Instance.FUNDLEV must be coded 10, 11 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins J, C.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Instance.FUNDLEV must be coded 20, 21 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM = H61, H62, I61 and Instance.FUNDCODE =1.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td>Warning</td> <td>Instance.FUNDLEV should not be coded 10 or 11 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins M and is not M22 or M26.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11</td> <td>Error</td> <td>For institutions in England, Instance.FUNDLEV must not be coded 11, 21</td> </tr> </table>	1	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must exist for institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.	2	Warning	Instance.FUNDLEV should be coded 30, 31 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins D or L.	3	Warning	Instance.FUNDLEV should be coded 20, 21 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins E or M (excluding M22, M26) or equals H50, H60, H61, H62, H71, H78, H81, H88, I60, I61 and I81.	4	Warning	Instance.FUNDLEV should be coded 10, 11 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins H or I or equals M22 or M26. This rule is not applied when the Course.COURSEAIM is one of the following H50, H60, H61, H62, H71, H78, H81, H88, I60, I61 and I81.	5	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Wales.	6	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must not be coded 10 or 11 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM = D00, D01, E00.	7	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must not be coded 30 or 31 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM = E00, E90 or begins M, H, I.	8	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must be coded 10, 11 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins J, C.	9	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must be coded 20, 21 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM = H61, H62, I61 and Instance.FUNDCODE =1.	10	Warning	Instance.FUNDLEV should not be coded 10 or 11 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins M and is not M22 or M26.	11	Error	For institutions in England, Instance.FUNDLEV must not be coded 11, 21
1	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must exist for institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.																																
2	Warning	Instance.FUNDLEV should be coded 30, 31 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins D or L.																																
3	Warning	Instance.FUNDLEV should be coded 20, 21 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins E or M (excluding M22, M26) or equals H50, H60, H61, H62, H71, H78, H81, H88, I60, I61 and I81.																																
4	Warning	Instance.FUNDLEV should be coded 10, 11 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins H or I or equals M22 or M26. This rule is not applied when the Course.COURSEAIM is one of the following H50, H60, H61, H62, H71, H78, H81, H88, I60, I61 and I81.																																
5	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Wales.																																
6	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must not be coded 10 or 11 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM = D00, D01, E00.																																
7	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must not be coded 30 or 31 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM = E00, E90 or begins M, H, I.																																
8	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must be coded 10, 11 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins J, C.																																
9	Error	Instance.FUNDLEV must be coded 20, 21 or 99 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM = H61, H62, I61 and Instance.FUNDCODE =1.																																
10	Warning	Instance.FUNDLEV should not be coded 10 or 11 by institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.COURSEAIM begins M and is not M22 or M26.																																
11	Error	For institutions in England, Instance.FUNDLEV must not be coded 11, 21																																

	or 31 where Instance.MODE = 23 or 24 and Instance.LOCSY = D or E.
Reason Required	To support reconciliation of Early Statistics and HESA.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FUNDLEV Data type: FUNDLEVCCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 3, 4 and 9 updated for the addition of course aim H62 to the coding frame.

Location of study

Type	field
Short Name	LOCSDY
Description	This field describes the location at which the student is studying.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>6 Distance learning - UK based student</p> <p>9 Distance learning - Non-UK based student (funded)</p> <p>A NVQ delivered fully by an institution outside the workplace</p> <p>B NVQ delivered jointly by an institution & an employer</p> <p>C NVQ delivered entirely in the workplace</p> <p>D On industrial (or other) placement for the year as a whole</p> <p>E On industrial (or other) placement for a proportion of the year</p> <p>F On study year abroad for the year as a whole</p> <p>G On study year abroad for a proportion of the year</p> <p>H Classroom</p> <p>J Workshop</p> <p>K Workplace</p> <p>M e-Learning</p> <p>N Drop in/open learning centre</p> <p>P APL</p> <p>Q WBL provider-centre based</p> <p>R Other</p> <p>S Studying abroad and included in the Student record as student has spent or will spend more than 8 weeks in the UK</p> <p>X At returning and/or franchised institution for whole year</p>
Notes	<p>Location of study - The studies described should relate to the FTE reported in field Instance.STULOAD which in turn are described in detail in fields ModuleSubject.COSTCN, ModuleSubject.MODSBJ and ModuleSubject.MODSBJP.</p> <p>Guidance for specific codes</p> <p>Codes 6 and 9: Distance learning students are those that are students of the reporting institution, where staff employed by the reporting institution are responsible for providing all teaching or supervision, but where the majority of the learning occurs away from the institution and/or formal learning environments. It specifically excludes placements, work-based learning, franchise provision and collaborative provision where students are learning at another institution.</p> <p>Codes A - C and H - R can be used only for FE students at institutions in England and Wales.</p> <p>Code E, 'On industrial (or other) placement for a proportion of the year' should be used where the student undertakes a full-time placement lasting for at least 10 weeks. Where a student undertakes a placement on a part-time basis this should only be included if, when summed, it is equivalent to 10 weeks full-time work.</p> <p>Students undertaking a placement as part of a sandwich course, whether industrial or other, should be returned with LOCSDY D or E as appropriate.</p>

	<p>Where both code E 'On industrial (or other) placement for a proportion of the year' and code G 'On study year abroad for a proportion of the year' apply in the same academic year, code E 'On industrial (or other) placement for a proportion of the year' should be used in preference to code G 'On study year abroad for a proportion of the year'.</p> <p>Link between coverage of the Student record and the Aggregate offshore record</p> <p>Certain students are primarily studying overseas but are returned in the Student record because the student has spent or will spend more than a block of 8 consecutive weeks studying in the UK. See Coverage of the record for further details. For years where the student spends the whole year at the reporting institution, use code 'X'. For years where the student spends part or all of the year abroad, use code 'S'. If it is known at the beginning of the course that a student will spend eight weeks or more in the UK as part of their programme then they should be included on the Student record throughout.</p> <p>Information about students studying for the whole of their programme of study outside of the UK, and those not funded for study by distance learning overseas should be returned on the Aggregate offshore record and not included in the Student record.</p> <p>There is no requirement to send an individualised student record for any student studying for the whole of their programme of study outside of the UK and those not funded for study by distance learning overseas.</p> <p>However, there are a small number of distance learning students studying outside the UK who are funded - e.g. Crown servants overseas and the Services. For these students a full record is needed, and is collected through the individualised Student record. Such students should be coded 9 'Distance Learning - Non-UK based student (funded only)' in this field.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.LOCSDY must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09. 2 Error Instance.LOCSDY codes A - C, H - R must have Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and the institution must be in England or Wales. 3 Warning Instance.LOCSDY should be coded D or F where Instance.SPECFEE = 2 or 3. 4 Error Instance.LOCSDY must not be coded D, E, or F where Instance.MODE is coded 01 and the institution is in England or Wales. 5 Error Instance.LOCSDY must be coded F where Instance.MODE 52 or 53 and the institution is in England. 6 Warning Instance.LOCSDY should not be coded D, E, F or G where Instance.MODE is coded 63 or 64. 7 Error Instance.LOCSDY must be coded D, E, F or G where Instance.EXCHANGE is coded 7, B, C, D or E. 8 Error Instance.LOCSDY must be coded D, E, F or G where Instance.SPECFEE = 1. 9 Error Instance.LOCSDY must be coded D, E, F, G or X where Instance.EXCHANGE = Y. 10 Error Instance.LOCSDY must be coded S or X where Instance.EXCHANGE = Z. 11 Error Instance.LOCSDY must be coded S where both Instance.COMDATE and Instance.ENDDATE are in the current reporting year and Instance.RSNEND = 01 or 98 and Instance.EXCHANGE = Z. 12 Error Instance.LOCSDY must be coded D, E or X where Instance.MODE = 23, 24 or 25.
Reason Required	To track student migration, placements, etc., and to support population definitions.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1

Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: LOCSDY Data type: LOCSDYCodeContentType
Related Fields	STULOAD CAMPID ModuleSubject
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Guidance on the definition of 'distance learning' has been added to Notes. Business rule 1 updated to extend coverage to include the Unistats (09) reduced return.

Major source of tuition fees

Type	field
Short Name	MSTUFEE
Description	This field indicates the major source of tuition fees for the student where this is known. The predominant source should be selected where there is more than one source of award or financial backing. The field relates to the current year of study.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>01 No award or financial backing</p> <p>02 Award assessed by English or Welsh LEA & paid in full by LA or by the SLC (includes EU students assessed by SLC)</p> <p>03 Paid in full by Student Awards Agency for Scotland/Student Loans Company (SAAS/SLC); includes where fee is paid directly to institution</p> <p>04 Paid in full by DELNI/Northern Ireland Education & Library Boards (via Student Loans Company) (includes EU students in NI)</p> <p>05 Institutional waiver of support costs</p> <p>06 Local Government - Channel Islands & Isle of Man/Scottish FE Bursaries</p> <p>07 Fee waiver under government unemployed students scheme</p> <p>08 British Academy</p> <p>09 Fees paid under part-time graduate apprentice study programme</p> <p>11 Biotechnology & Biological Sciences Research Council (BBSRC)</p> <p>12 Medical Research Council (MRC)</p> <p>13 Natural Environment Research Council (NERC)</p> <p>14 Engineering & Physical Sciences Research Council (EPSRC)</p> <p>15 Economic & Social Research Council (ESRC)</p> <p>17 Arts & Humanities Research Council (AHRC)</p> <p>18 Science & Technology Facilities Council (STFC)</p> <p>19 Research council - not specified</p> <p>22 International agency</p> <p>23 Cancer Research UK</p> <p>24 Wellcome Trust</p> <p>25 Other Association of Medical Research Charities (AMRC) charity</p> <p>26 Other charitable foundation</p> <p>31 Departments of Health/NHS/Social Care</p> <p>32 Departments of Social Services</p> <p>33 BIS</p> <p>34 Other HM government departments/public bodies</p> <p>35 Scholarship of HM forces</p> <p>36 Scottish Enterprise Network/Highlands & Islands Enterprise/Local Enterprise Companies (LECs)</p> <p>37 LEA training grants scheme</p> <p>38 Department of Agriculture & Rural Development for Northern Ireland (DARDNI)</p> <p>39 Scottish Local Authority - discretionary award</p> <p>41 EU Commission (EC)</p> <p>42 Overseas student award from HM government/British Council</p> <p>43 Overseas government</p> <p>44 Department for International Development</p> <p>45 Overseas institution</p> <p>46 Overseas industry or commerce</p> <p>47 Other overseas funding</p> <p>48 Other overseas - repayable loan</p> <p>49 ORSAS</p> <p>52 Mix of student & SLC (following assessment by English or Welsh LA, or SLC for EU students studying in England and Wales)</p> <p>53 Mix of student & Student Awards Agency for Scotland/Student Loans</p>

	<p>54 Company(SAAS/SLC) Mix of student & DELNI/Northern Ireland Education & Library Boards (via Student Loans Company)</p> <p>61 UK industry/commerce</p> <p>71 Absent for year</p> <p>81 Student's employer</p> <p>96 FE student - New Deal</p> <p>97 Other</p> <p>98 No fees</p> <p>99 Not known</p>
Notes	<p>Code 01 should be used for cases where the student pays the full fees upfront with no SLC/SAAS funding.</p> <p>Codes 02, 03 or 04 cover cases where the SLC/SAAS fund full fees through a grant, or SLC/SAAS fund full fees through a fee loan, or SLC/SAAS fund full fees through a mixture of SLC/SAAS grant and SLC/SAAS fee loan.</p> <p>Codes 52, 53 or 54 cover cases with a mixture of SLC/SAAS funding and student contribution (including cases where (i) the SLC/SAAS pays part fees and the student pays part fees, (ii) where the SLC/SAAS pays nil fees and the student pays part fees upfront and receives a fee loan for the remainder or (iii) the SLC/SAAS pays part fees, the student pays part fees and receives a part fee loan for the remainder.)</p> <p>Code 01: No award or financial backing, pay own fees. Students who are financially assessed by an LA/SAAS/DELNI/NI Education and Library Boards/SLC to pay the full fee themselves (i.e. no public support for fees) should be included here. This code should only be used where there is no award, fee loan or financial backing at all. Where there is some award, fee loan or financial backing, even if this is the minor source compared with the contribution of the student, then the coding should reflect the source of the award, fee loan or financial backing.</p> <p>Codes 02-04 includes those students whose fee is met in full by the body shown - through a grant and/or through a fee loan. In the case of payments by the SLC, students should be recorded against the body which made the financial assessment: code 02 for students from England and Wales and for EU students studying in England and Wales, code 03 for students from Scotland and for EU students studying in Scotland or code 04 for students from Northern Ireland and EU students studying in Northern Ireland. Where the financial assessment has resulted in the fee being partly paid by the public body shown in codes 02-04 and partly by the student or their families, the student should be included in either codes 52, 53 or 54 regardless of which contribution is the greater.</p> <p>Code 02 includes students aged under 19 who pay registration fees only. Code 02 excludes LA acting as employer.</p> <p>Students in exempt years from liability to pay fees should be coded 02, 03 or 04 as appropriate.</p> <p>Code 05 'Institutional waiver of support costs' includes University Scholarships or awards of current institution.</p> <p>Code 07 'Fee waiver under government unemployment students scheme' is to cover the proposal that part-time students who are in employment at the start of a course but who become unemployed during it may have their fees waived - possibly subject to means testing. Institutions will be able to reclaim from funding councils.</p> <p>Code 09 covers cases where fee remission is granted to employees of small and</p>

	<p>medium sized businesses who are studying part-time towards an HE qualification as part of a recognised Graduate Apprenticeship.</p> <p>Code 25 should be used when the charity paying the fees is listed as a member of Association of Medical Research Charities</p> <p>Code 31 'Departments of Health/NHS/Social Care'. Any student whose fees are directly paid by NAW should be included in code 34 'Other HM government departments/public bodies'.</p> <p>Code 41 'EU Commission (EC)' applies specifically to the EU Commission. In codes 42-48 'overseas' means 'non-UK'.</p> <p>Code 42 'Overseas student award from HM government/British Council' includes the Association of Commonwealth Universities.</p> <p>Code 49 identifies Overseas Research Student Award Scheme, and these awards are not included in Code 42.</p> <p>Code 81, 'Student's Employer' should be used in preference to other codes if it is known that the major source of tuition fees is the student's employer. Codes such as 61, 'UK industry/commerce' and 34, 'Other HM government departments/public bodies' therefore apply where these are the sponsor of the student rather than their employer.</p> <p>Incoming Erasmus, Tempus and other exchange students should be coded 98 'No fees'.</p> <p>The code closest to 05 should be returned if there is a 50/50 split on the source of tuition fees, with the exception of students funded 50/50 by a Research Council and another body, in which case the Research Council code should be returned.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.MSTUFEE must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01. 2 Error Instance.MSTUFEE cannot be coded 07 where Instance.MODE = 01, 12, 23, 24 or > 39, 3 Error Instance.MSTUFEE code 96 must have Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 4. 4 Error Instance.MSTUFEE cannot be coded 07 where Instance.MODE = 02, 13 or 25, Instance.UNITLGTH = 3 and Instance.SPLENGTH > 23. 5 Error Instance.MSTUFEE cannot be coded 07 where Instance.MODE = 02, 13 or 25, Instance.UNITLGTH = 2 and Instance.SPLENGTH > 05. 6 Error Instance.MSTUFEE must be coded 98 where Instance.EXCHANGE is coded 2, 8, 9 or A. 7 Error Instance.MSTUFEE must not be 71 where Instance.MODE is less than 40. 8 Warning Instance.MSTUFEE should not be coded 02, 03, 52 or 53 where (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XG). 9 Warning Instance.MSTUFEE should not be coded 02, 04, 52 or 54 where EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XH. 10 Warning Instance.MSTUFEE should not be coded 03, 04, 53 or 54 where (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XF or XI). 11 Warning For institutions in Northern Ireland Instance.MSTUFEE should not be coded 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, or 18.
Reason Required	To allow financial calculations to be made and for the monitoring of numbers of students receiving awards.
Part Of	Instance

Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MSTUFEE Data type: MSTUFEECodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid.

Mode of study

Type	field
Short Name	MODE
Description	This field indicates the method by which a student is being taught their course.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>01 Full-time according to funding council definitions</p> <p>02 Other full-time</p> <p>12 FE students, full-time 30 weeks or more</p> <p>13 FE students, full-time 4-29 weeks</p> <p>14 FE students, full-time less than 4 weeks</p> <p>23 Sandwich (thick) according to funding council definitions</p> <p>24 Sandwich (thin) according to funding council definitions</p> <p>25 Other sandwich course/programme</p> <p>31 Part-time</p> <p>32 FE students, block release</p> <p>33 FE students, part-time, released from employment</p> <p>34 FE students, part-time, not released from employment</p> <p>35 FE students, evening only</p> <p>36 FE students - open or distance learning</p> <p>37 FE students- accredited by prior experience & learning, APL/APEL</p> <p>38 Structured part-time (institutions in Scotland)</p> <p>39 Other part-time (institutions in Scotland)</p> <p>43 Writing-up - previously full-time</p> <p>44 Writing-up - previously part-time</p> <p>51 Sabbatical</p> <p>52 Optional year out - study related</p> <p>53 Compulsory year out - study related</p> <p>63 Dormant - previously full-time</p> <p>64 Dormant - previously part-time</p> <p>65 FE students continuous delivery, day/daytime</p> <p>66 FE students continuous delivery, evening only</p> <p>67 FE students continuous delivery in the workplace</p> <p>68 FE students continuous delivery undefined</p> <p>69 FE students sandwich</p> <p>73 Change to dormant status - previously full-time</p> <p>74 Change to dormant status - previously part-time</p>
Notes	<p>Where a student has changed their mode of study within the reporting period, the record should show the current or latest position.</p> <p>With reference to code 01, the funding councils have agreed that a common definition of full-time is that course years must involve a minimum of 24 weeks study (note that this definition does not apply to full-time final year students in institutions in Wales). Each funding council may also have further additional conditions. HESA will apply the 24 week rule to its definition of full-time in publications i.e. full-time will be all those students coded 01 in this field, together with all those students coded 02 and whose expected length of study (fields Instance.SPLENGTH and Instance.UNITLGTH) is over 24 weeks.</p> <p>With reference to codes 23 and 24, these programmes are covered by the definition of sandwich under the award regulations as set out by the funding council. Years of instance must involve a minimum of 24 weeks study/placement. HESA's definition of sandwich students will be all those students coded 23 or 24 in this field, together with all those students coded 25 and whose expected length of study (fields</p>

Instance.SPLENGTH and Instance.UNITLGTH) is over 24 weeks.

Code 23, Thick sandwich students are those for which an industrial (or other) placement causes a continuous absence from full-time study of at least one academic year. A record must be returned for every student enrolled on a sandwich course irrespective of whether they are in attendance at the institution or engaged in industrial (or other) training. Students should be coded as sandwich for every year of the course and not just those in which industrial (or other) experience takes place. The students who are actually out on placement can be identified via Instance.LOCSDY.

LOCSDY valid entries:

- D On industrial (or other) placement for the year as a whole
- E On industrial (or other) placement for a proportion of the year

Code 24, A thin sandwich must involve the student in an average of more than 21 hours study a week for a minimum of 24 weeks study/placement.

Students who meet the definition of sandwich should be coded as either 23 or 24 (and not codes 52 or 53) irrespective of whether the year is spent abroad or whether it is optional/compulsory.

Students who are actively writing-up are not considered to be dormant by HESA. A record is required for such students, with this field coded as 43 or 44 'Writing-up'. 'Writing-up' is generally associated with research students. Students on taught masters courses should not typically have their mode of study changed to 'writing-up', at least within the registration period, for example students on a one year taught masters course should be shown as full-time mode for both the taught and the dissertation phases of the course. Any change to show mode as writing-up would be expected only after the completion of the 12 month registration period.

Code 31 Part-time, can only be used by institutions in England, Wales and Northern Ireland.

Codes 38 and 39 can only be used by institutions in Scotland

Code 51 should be used for students on sabbatical years e.g. holding Student Union office.

Codes 52 and 53 should only be used for study related years out which count towards the course aim. Language years out that are not classed as thick sandwich programmes should be coded 53 in the year the student is abroad.

Years out for any other reason should be coded 63 or 64, Dormant.

Dormant codes 63 and 64 can be used only if the student was not actively studying at any time during the reporting period.

Any students with a mode of study 63 or 64 will be excluded from the HESA standard registration population used for analysis purposes. A record is not required for such students other than:

- a) In the first year of dormancy when a record must be returned in order to maintain the HIN link.
- b) Where awards have been made to students from a dormant status.

Dormant instances may either be returned via a full record or through a reduced record for students - see dormant students reduced record.

Codes 73 and 74 are available to postgraduate students (i.e. Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L or M (excluding M22)) at institutions in England only. Postgraduate students who become dormant part way through the reporting year will need a full HESA record reflecting their current status as code 73 or 74. Instance.MCDATE will record the date when the postgraduate student formally moves from an active study mode to 'dormant'. Instance.STULOAD should be reduced to reflect the fact that the student was not active for a proportion of the reporting period.

Where a postgraduate student moves from a 'writing-up' or 'sabbatical' mode (codes 43, 44 or 51) to dormant, within the reporting period, Instance.MODE should not be updated, nor should Instance.MCDATE be completed. For the purpose of Instance.MCDATE the modes 'writing-up' and 'sabbatical' are classed as non-active.

All other students who become dormant part way through the reporting year (that is, all students at institutions in Wales, Northern Ireland and Scotland and Undergraduate and FE students at institutions in England) will need a full HESA record in the data collection reflecting their status whilst active (i.e. the position that applied just before they became dormant). This field should record their mode of study whilst active (and not code 63 or 64 'Dormant' which should only be used for students who are dormant for the whole reporting period). Instance.STULOAD should be reduced to reflect the fact that the student was not active for the whole reporting period. A student who was actively studying at sometime during the reporting period but who has now suspended studies, will have an active mode of study and will be identified through Instance.NOTACT.

However students involved in re-sits after the completion of the taught or structured part of their course should not have their mode of study up-dated. For example a full-time student who finishes the courses in June but has to take resits in September should not be re-coded.

Further Education Codes (12-14, 32-37 and 65-69).

These FE codes are for use by institutions in England and Wales only.

The use of the specific FE full-time codes 12 to 14 is compulsory for all students at institutions in England or Wales who are following programmes of study at FE level or funded by SFA/EFA or WG-DfES.

The use of the specific FE part-time codes 32 to 37 is for students who are following programmes of study at FE level or funded by SFA/EFA or WG-DfES. Other part-time FE instances can use either the generic part-time code 31 or one of the specific part-time codes 32 to 37.

Code 32, Block release students are those who attend full-time for a period less than 24 weeks per academic/financial year and where study,

- is broken by a period of industrial training or employment and
- may be additional to study on one or two days a week during another part of the session.

When using the specific FE part-time codes, if there is uncertainty about whether a student is released from employment, code 34, 'Part-time, not-released from employment' should be used.

	<p>Code 36 is only applicable for open or distance learning FE students at institutions in England and Wales. All other distance learning students should be coded according to their individual mode/pattern of study, e.g. full-time or part-time.</p> <p>Part-time FE courses/programmes of study which involve a mixture of day and evening attendance should be recorded under whichever code is most appropriate, e.g. a day release course which also involves evening attendance should be coded 33. 'Twilight only' courses should be counted as 'evening only'.</p> <p>FE mode codes 65, 66, 68 and 69 are available to institutions in England and Wales, code 67 is available for institutions in Wales only.</p> <p>Where Y0/Y1/Y2 appear in business rules, these refer to the reporting period Y1-Y2 (e.g. for the 2007-08 reporting period, Y0 is 2006, Y1 is 2007 and Y2 is 2008).</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.MODE codes 12 - 14 and 32 - 37 must not be used by institutions in Scotland and Northern Ireland 2 Error Instance.MODE cannot be coded 63 or 64 where Instance.COMDATE is in the current reporting period (i.e. on/after 01-Aug-Y1). 3 Error Instance.MODE must be coded 01, 02, 31, 63, 64, 73 or 74 by institutions in England or Wales where Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H. 4 Error Instance.MODE must be coded 12, 13, 14, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 63, 64, 65, 67, 66, 68 or 69 by institutions in England or Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 4. 5 Error Instance.MODE must not be coded 01 or 02 where Instance.FESTUMK is coded 1 or 4. 6 Error Instance.MODE cannot be coded 01 where Instance.REDUCEDI = 01. 7 Error Instance.MODE cannot be coded 01 by institutions in Scotland where Instance.YEARLGTH is completed but less than 24. 8 Error Instance.MODE cannot be coded 01 by institutions in England, Scotland or Northern Ireland where Instance.UNITLGTH = 3 and Instance.SPLENGTH = 01 to 23. 9 Error Instance.MODE cannot be coded 01 by institutions in England, Scotland or Northern Ireland where Instance.UNITLGTH = 2 and Instance.SPLENGTH = 01 to 05. 10 Error Instance.MODE cannot be coded 12, 13, 14, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 65, 66, 67, 68 or 69 where Instance.FESTUMK = 2. 11 Error Institutions in Scotland cannot use code 31. 12 Error Institutions in England, Scotland and Northern Ireland cannot use code 67. 13 Error Institutions in Scotland and Northern Ireland cannot use codes 65, 66, 68 and 69. 14 Error When Instance.MODE codes 73 and 74 are used the institution must be in England and Course.COURSEAIM must begin with D, E, L or M (excluding M22, M26). 15 Error Instance.MODE must be coded 52 or 53 where Instance.LOCSDY is coded F and the institution is in England or Scotland. 16 Warning If Instance.SPECFEE = 1, then Instance.MODE should be coded 23 or 24 or 25. 17 Warning If Instance.SPECFEE = 2 or 3, then Instance.MODE should be coded 23, 52 or 53. 18 Error Instance.MODE must be coded 01, 02 or 25 for institutions in Wales where Instance.SPECFEE is coded 4 or 5. 19 Error Instance.MODE must be coded 02 or 25 for institutions in England, Scotland and Northern Ireland where Instance.SPECFEE is coded 4 or 5. 20 Error Instance.MODE must not be coded 23, 24 or 25 where Course.COURSEAIM is H16, H62, I16, M16, M26 or M86 and the first character of CourseSubject.SBJCA is 'A'. 21 Error For institutions in England, Instance.MODE must be coded 31, 64 or 74 where Instance.SPECFEE = 6.

	<p>22 Error Instance.MODE must not be coded 01, 23 or 24 where Course.TTCID = F.</p> <p>23 Error Instance.MODE must be coded 63 or 64 where all corresponding StudentOnModule.MODSTAT for that instance are coded 4.</p> <p>24 Error Instance.MODE must not be coded 01, 23 or 24 where Instance.COMDATE > Y2-02-13 and Instance.ENDDATE is null and Instance.TYPEYR = 1.</p> <p>25 Error Instance.MODE must not be coded 38 or 39 where the institution is in England, Northern Ireland or Wales.</p>
Reason Required	To allow standard populations to be defined and financial calculations to be made
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MODE Data type: MODECodeContentType
Related Fields	MCDATE LOCSDY STULOAD NOTACT SLENGTH UNITLGTH
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 3 updated for the introduction of TTCID codes G and H (School Direct initiatives). Business rule 20 updated for the addition of course aim H62 to the coding frame.

Net fee

Type	field
Short Name	NETFEE
Description	This field will capture the net fee charged, that is after any financial support from the institution such as waivers are taken into account.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	<p>Institutions in England: All instances where Instance.FEEREGIME = 20 and Instance.SSN does not exist.</p> <p>Institutions in Wales: All instances where Instance.FEEREGIME = 20.</p> <p>Institutions in Scotland: All instances where Instance.FEEREGIME = 20.</p> <p>Institutions in Northern Ireland: All instances where Instance.FEEREGIME = 20.</p>
Notes	<p>The SLC will have this information for students domiciled in England, Wales and Northern Ireland who apply for student finance and the Student Support Number (Instance.SSN) is returned. HEIs have the option to either not return the fee fields and allow the data to be matched to SLC or optionally to report this and Instance.GROSSFEE. For institutions in Scotland, the SLC will have this information for students who are paying de-regulated tuition fees and so this field is optional if the Student Support Number (Instance.SSN) is returned.</p> <p>This field is required to be returned for all students not applying for student finance.</p> <p>This field captures the net fee; that is the fee charged after any financial support from the institution such as waivers are taken into account. For example; a student with an Instance.GROSSFEE of £9,000 who has had a fee waiver of £1,000 should be returned as 8000 in this field.</p> <p>The Instance.NETFEE returned should be the exact fee, e.g. £6,551 and not rounded.</p> <p>If a student leaves the HEI part the way through the instance year, the annualised amount the student would have been charged should be returned Instance.NETFEE.</p> <p>For non-standard years where it is not known which or how many modules the student will elect to take in HESA year two of the year of instance, HEIs should return the fee based on modules started in the reporting year.</p> <p>For non-standard years (where Instance.TYPEYR = 2, 3, 4 or 5) the full fee for the year of instance should be returned.</p> <p>Students who do not have any financial support will have the same value returned in both Instance.GROSSFEE and Instance.NETFEE.</p> <p>Where Instance.GROSSFEE exists Instance.NETFEE must also exist and be less than or equal to the value of Instance.GROSSFEE.</p>

	<p>The National Scholarship Programme can be implemented as a fee waiver, and where this occurs, it should be deducted when calculating Instance.NETFEE. However, National Scholarship Programme funding paid through in-kind contributions, such as accommodation or computers, should not be considered at all in calculating either Instance.GROSSFEE or Instance.NETFEE. Bursaries which offer non-cash support, such as free laptops, discounts on accommodation etc, should also not be used to reduce the value of Instance.NETFEE. If the bursary is given in cash directly to the student on the expectation that they hand it back to the institution to cover the fees, Instance.NETFEE should be reduced to account for this.</p> <p>Where the NHS or other body pays a per-capita charge equivalent to a fee this should be recorded in this field. However where the NHS pays a single fee that is not linked to individual students then zero should be returned.</p> <p>Money paid under the Additional Fee Support Scheme (AFSS) should not be counted as a fee waiver and therefore should not be deducted in Instance.NETFEE.</p> <p>For Welsh domiciled students in the UK and EU domiciled students in Welsh institutions the Instance.NETFEE should be the fee charged before the fee grant is applied.</p> <p>Instance.NETFEE is not required for incoming exchange students or dormant students.</p>
Examples	<p>A student with a Instance.GROSSFEE of £9,000 who has had a fee waiver of £1,000 should be returned as 8000 in this field.</p> <p>Students who do not have any financial support will have the same value returned in both Instance.GROSSFEE and Instance.NETFEE.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.NETFEE must exist where Instance.FEEREGIME = 20 and Instance.SSN does not exist. 2 Error Instance.NETFEE must not exist where Instance.FEEREGIME = 10 or Instance.FEEREGIME does not exist. 3 Error Instance.NETFEE must exist where Instance.GROSSFEE exists. 4 Error For institutions in England and Northern Ireland, Instance.NETFEE must equal 0 where Instance.SPECFEE = 3.
Reason Required	To monitor the various fee levels and their spread across the UK.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: NETFEE
Owner	HESA
Version	1.6
Date modified	2013-09-12
Change management notes	Additional guidance added to the Notes section, clarifying how money paid under the Additional Fee Support Scheme (AFFS) should be treated.

NHS employer

Type	field
Short Name	NHSEMP
Description	This field identifies a student's NHS employer.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Course.COURSEAIM = M76, H76, I76 or J76 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Valid Entries and Labels	001 Not an NHS Employee 00C NHS Darlington CCG 00D NHS Durham Dales, Easington and Sedgefield CCG 00F NHS Gateshead CCG 00G NHS Newcastle North and East CCG 00H NHS Newcastle West CCG 00J NHS North Durham CCG 00K NHS Hartlepool and Stockton-On-Tees CCG 00L NHS Northumberland CCG 00M NHS South Tees CCG 00N NHS South Tyneside CCG 00P NHS Sunderland CCG 00Q NHS Blackburn With Darwen CCG 00R NHS Blackpool CCG 00T NHS Bolton CCG 00V NHS Bury CCG 00W NHS Central Manchester CCG 00X NHS Chorley and South Ribble CCG 00Y NHS Oldham CCG 01A NHS East Lancashire CCG 01C NHS Eastern Cheshire CCG 01D NHS Heywood, Middleton and Rochdale CCG 01E NHS Greater Preston CCG 01F NHS Halton CCG 01G NHS Salford CCG 01H NHS Cumbria CCG 01J NHS Knowsley CCG 01K NHS Lancashire North CCG 01M NHS North Manchester CCG 01N NHS South Manchester CCG 01R NHS South Cheshire CCG 01T NHS South Sefton CCG 01V NHS Southport and Formby CCG 01W NHS Stockport CCG 01X NHS St Helens CCG 01Y NHS Tameside and Glossop CCG 02A NHS Trafford CCG 02D NHS Vale Royal CCG 02E NHS Warrington CCG 02F NHS West Cheshire CCG 02G NHS West Lancashire CCG 02H NHS Wigan Borough CCG 02M NHS Fylde & Wyre CCG 02N NHS Airedale, Wharfedale and Craven CCG 02P NHS Barnsley CCG 02Q NHS Bassetlaw CCG 02R NHS Bradford Districts CCG 02T NHS Calderdale CCG 02V NHS Leeds North CCG

02W	NHS Bradford City CCG
02X	NHS Doncaster CCG
02Y	NHS East Riding of Yorkshire CCG
03A	NHS Greater Huddersfield CCG
03C	NHS Leeds West CCG
03D	NHS Hambleton, Richmondshire and Whitby CCG
03E	NHS Harrogate and Rural District CCG
03F	NHS Hull CCG
03G	NHS Leeds South and East CCG
03H	NHS North East Lincolnshire CCG
03J	NHS North Kirklees CCG
03K	NHS North Lincolnshire CCG
03L	NHS Rotherham CCG
03M	NHS Scarborough and Ryedale CCG
03N	NHS Sheffield CCG
03Q	NHS Vale of York CCG
03R	NHS Wakefield CCG
03T	NHS Lincolnshire East CCG
03V	NHS Corby CCG
03W	NHS East Leicestershire and Rutland CCG
03X	NHS Erewash CCG
03Y	NHS Hardwick CCG
04C	NHS Leicester City CCG
04D	NHS Lincolnshire West CCG
04E	NHS Mansfield and Ashfield CCG
04F	NHS Milton Keynes CCG
04G	NHS Nene CCG
04H	NHS Newark & Sherwood CCG
04J	NHS North Derbyshire CCG
04K	NHS Nottingham City CCG
04L	NHS Nottingham North and East CCG
04M	NHS Nottingham West CCG
04N	NHS Rushcliffe CCG
04Q	NHS South West Lincolnshire CCG
04R	NHS Southern Derbyshire CCG
04V	NHS West Leicestershire CCG
04X	NHS Birmingham South and Central CCG
04Y	NHS Cannock Chase CCG
05A	NHS Coventry and Rugby CCG
05C	NHS Dudley CCG
05D	NHS East Staffordshire CCG
05F	NHS Herefordshire CCG
05G	NHS North Staffordshire CCG
05H	NHS Warwickshire North CCG
05J	NHS Redditch and Bromsgrove CCG
05L	NHS Sandwell and West Birmingham CCG
05N	NHS Shropshire CCG
05P	NHS Solihull CCG
05Q	NHS South East Staffs and Seisdon Peninsular CCG
05R	NHS South Warwickshire CCG
05T	NHS South Worcestershire CCG
05V	NHS Stafford and Surrounds CCG
05W	NHS Stoke On Trent CCG
05X	NHS Telford and Wrekin CCG
05Y	NHS Walsall CCG
06A	NHS Wolverhampton CCG
06D	NHS Wyre Forest CCG
06F	NHS Bedfordshire CCG
06H	NHS Cambridgeshire and Peterborough CCG
06K	NHS East and North Hertfordshire CCG
06L	NHS Ipswich and East Suffolk CCG
06M	NHS Great Yarmouth and Waveney CCG
06N	NHS Herts Valleys CCG
06P	NHS Luton CCG

06Q	NHS Mid Essex CCG
06T	NHS North East Essex CCG
06V	NHS North Norfolk CCG
06W	NHS Norwich CCG
06Y	NHS South Norfolk CCG
07G	NHS Thurrock CCG
07H	NHS West Essex CCG
07J	NHS West Norfolk CCG
07K	NHS West Suffolk CCG
07L	NHS Barking and Dagenham CCG
07M	NHS Barnet CCG
07N	NHS Bexley CCG
07P	NHS Brent CCG
07Q	NHS Bromley CCG
07R	NHS Camden CCG
07T	NHS City and Hackney CCG
07V	NHS Croydon CCG
07W	NHS Ealing CCG
07X	NHS Enfield CCG
07Y	NHS Hounslow CCG
08A	NHS Greenwich CCG
08C	NHS Hammersmith and Fulham CCG
08D	NHS Haringey CCG
08E	NHS Harrow CCG
08F	NHS Havering CCG
08G	NHS Hillingdon CCG
08H	NHS Islington CCG
08J	NHS Kingston CCG
08K	NHS Lambeth CCG
08L	NHS Lewisham CCG
08M	NHS Newham CCG
08N	NHS Redbridge CCG
08P	NHS Richmond CCG
08Q	NHS Southwark CCG
08R	NHS Merton CCG
08T	NHS Sutton CCG
08V	NHS Tower Hamlets CCG
08W	NHS Waltham Forest CCG
08X	NHS Wandsworth CCG
08Y	NHS West London (K&C & QPP) CCG
09A	NHS Central London (Westminster) CCG
09C	NHS Ashford CCG
09D	NHS Brighton and Hove CCG
09E	NHS Canterbury and Coastal CCG
09F	NHS Eastbourne, Hailsham and Seaford CCG
09G	NHS Coastal West Sussex CCG
09H	NHS Crawley CCG
09J	NHS Dartford, Gravesham and Swanley CCG
09L	NHS East Surrey CCG
09N	NHS Guildford and Waverley CCG
09P	NHS Hastings and Rother CCG
09W	NHS Medway CCG
09X	NHS Horsham and Mid Sussex CCG
09Y	NHS North West Surrey CCG
0AA	NHS Arden Commissioning Support Unit
0AC	NHS South West Commissioning Support Unit
0AD	NHS Birmingham, Black Country and Solihull Commissioning Support Unit
0AE	NHS Central Southern Commissioning Support Unit
0AF	NHS Cheshire Warrington and Wirral Commissioning Support Unit
0AG	NHS Lancashire Commissioning Support Unit
0AH	NHS Essex Commissioning Support Unit
0AJ	NHS Greater Manchester Commissioning Support Unit
0AK	NHS Greater East Midlands Commissioning Support Unit
0AL	NHS Hertfordshire Integrated Commissioning Support Unit

0AM	NHS Kent and Medway Commissioning Support Unit
0AN	NHS Merseyside Commissioning Support Unit
0AP	NHS Norfolk and Waveney Commissioning Support Unit
0AQ	NHS North and East London Commissioning Support Unit
0AR	NHS North of England Commissioning Support Unit
0AT	NHS North West London Commissioning Support Unit
0AV	NHS North Yorkshire and Humber Commissioning Support Unit
0AW	NHS South Commissioning Support Unit
0AX	NHS South London Commissioning Support Unit
0AY	NHS South Yorkshire and Bassetlaw Commissioning Support Unit
0CA	NHS Staffordshire Commissioning Support Unit
0CC	NHS Surrey and Sussex Commissioning Support Unit
0CD	NHS West Yorkshire Commissioning Support Unit
0CE	NHS Cheshire and Merseyside Commissioning Support Unit
0CF	NHS West and South Yorkshire and Bassetlaw Commissioning Support Unit
0CG	NHS Hertfordshire and Essex Commissioning Support Unit
0CH	NHS Staffordshire and Lancashire Commissioning Support Unit
10A	NHS South Kent Coast CCG
10C	NHS Surrey Heath CCG
10D	NHS Swale CCG
10E	NHS Thanet CCG
10G	NHS Bracknell and Ascot CCG
10H	NHS Chiltern CCG
10J	NHS North Hampshire CCG
10K	NHS Fareham and Gosport CCG
10L	NHS Isle of Wight CCG
10M	NHS Newbury and District CCG
10N	NHS North & West Reading CCG
10Q	NHS Oxfordshire CCG
10R	NHS Portsmouth CCG
10T	NHS Slough CCG
10V	NHS South Eastern Hampshire CCG
10W	NHS South Reading CCG
10X	NHS Southampton CCG
10Y	NHS Aylesbury Vale CCG
11A	NHS West Hampshire CCG
11C	NHS Windsor, Ascot and Maidenhead CCG
11D	NHS Wokingham CCG
11E	NHS Bath and North East Somerset CCG
11H	NHS Bristol CCG
11J	NHS Dorset CCG
11M	NHS Gloucestershire CCG
11N	NHS Kernow CCG
11T	NHS North Somerset CCG
11X	NHS Somerset CCG
12A	NHS South Gloucestershire CCG
12D	NHS Swindon CCG
12F	NHS Wirral CCG
12G	Cheshire, Warrington and Wirral Commissioning Hub
12H	Durham, Darlington and Tees Commissioning Hub
12J	Greater Manchester Commissioning Hub
12K	Lancashire Commissioning Hub
12L	Merseyside Commissioning Hub
12M	Cumbria, Northumberland, Tyne and Wear Commissioning Hub
12N	North Yorkshire and Humber Commissioning Hub
12P	South Yorkshire and Bassetlaw Commissioning Hub
12Q	West Yorkshire Commissioning Hub
12R	Arden, Herefordshire and Worcestershire Commissioning Hub
12T	Birmingham and The Black Country Commissioning Hub
12V	Derbyshire and Nottinghamshire Commissioning Hub
12W	East Anglia Commissioning Hub
12X	Essex Commissioning Hub
12Y	Hertfordshire and The South Midlands Commissioning Hub

13A	Leicestershire and Lincolnshire Commissioning Hub
13C	Shropshire and Staffordshire Commissioning Hub
13D	North East London Commissioning Hub
13E	North West London Commissioning Hub
13F	South London Commissioning Hub
13G	Bath, Gloucestershire, Swindon and Wiltshire Commissioning Hub
13H	Bristol, North Somerset, Somerset and South Gloucestershire Commissioning Hub
13J	Devon, Cornwall and Isles of Scilly Commissioning Hub
13K	Kent and Medway Commissioning Hub
13L	Surrey and Sussex Commissioning Hub
13M	Thames Valley Commissioning Hub
13N	Wessex Commissioning Hub
13P	NHS Birmingham Crosscity CCG
13Q	National Commissioning Hub 1
13R	London Commissioning Hub
5A1	New Forest PCT
5A2	Norwich PCT
5A3	South Gloucestershire PCT
5A4	Havering PCT
5A5	Kingston PCT
5A7	Bromley PCT
5A8	Greenwich Teaching PCT
5A9	Barnet PCT
5AA	South Manchester PCT
5AC	Daventry and South Northamptonshire PCT
5AF	North Peterborough PCT
5AG	South Peterborough PCT
5AH	Tendring PCT
5AJ	Epping Forest PCT
5AK	Southend On Sea PCT
5AL	Central Derby PCT
5AM	Mansfield District PCT
5AN	North East Lincolnshire PCT
5AP	Newark and Sherwood PCT
5AT	Hillingdon PCT
5AW	Airedale PCT
5C1	Enfield PCT
5C2	Barking and Dagenham PCT
5C3	City and Hackney Teaching PCT
5C4	Tower Hamlets PCT
5C5	Newham PCT
5C9	Haringey Teaching PCT
5CC	Blackburn With Darwen PCT
5CD	North Dorset PCT
5CE	Bournemouth Teaching PCT
5CF	Bradford City Teaching PCT
5CG	Bradford South and West PCT
5CH	North Bradford PCT
5CK	Doncaster Central PCT
5CL	Central Manchester PCT
5CM	Dartford, Gravesham and Swanley PCT
5CN	Herefordshire PCT
5CP	Hertsmere PCT
5CQ	Milton Keynes PCT
5CR	North Manchester PCT
5CV	South Hams and West Devon PCT
5CX	Trafford South PCT
5CY	West Norfolk PCT
5D1	Solihull PCT
5D2	West Lincolnshire PCT
5D3	Lincolnshire South West Teaching PCT
5D4	Carlisle and District PCT
5D5	Eden Valley PCT

5D6	West Cumbria PCT
5D7	Newcastle PCT
5D8	North Tyneside PCT
5D9	Hartlepool PCT
5DC	Harlow PCT
5DD	Morecambe Bay PCT
5DF	North Hampshire PCT
5DG	Isle Of Wight PCT
5DH	West Wiltshire PCT
5DJ	South Wiltshire PCT
5DK	Newbury and Community PCT
5DL	Reading PCT
5DM	Slough PCT
5DN	Wokingham PCT
5DP	Vale Of Aylesbury PCT
5DQ	Burntwood, Lichfield and Tamworth PCT
5DR	Wyre Forest PCT
5DT	North East Oxfordshire PCT
5DV	Cherwell Vale PCT
5DW	Oxford City PCT
5DX	South East Oxfordshire PCT
5DY	South West Oxfordshire PCT
5E1	Stockton-On-Tees Teaching PCT
5E2	Selby and York PCT
5E3	East Yorkshire PCT
5E4	Yorkshire Wolds and Coast PCT
5E5	Eastern Hull PCT
5E6	West Hull PCT
5E7	Eastern Wakefield PCT
5E8	Wakefield West PCT
5E9	Mid-Hampshire PCT
5EA	Chesterfield PCT
5EC	Gedling PCT
5ED	Amber Valley PCT
5EE	North Sheffield PCT
5EF	North Lincolnshire PCT
5EG	North Eastern Derbyshire PCT
5EH	Melton, Rutland and Harborough PCT
5EJ	Leicester City West PCT
5EK	Doncaster East PCT
5EL	Doncaster West PCT
5EM	Nottingham City PCT
5EN	Sheffield West PCT
5EP	Sheffield South West PCT
5EQ	South East Sheffield PCT
5ER	Erewash PCT
5ET	Bassetlaw PCT
5EV	Broxtowe and Hucknall PCT
5EX	Greater Derby PCT
5EY	Eastern Leicester PCT
5F1	Plymouth Teaching PCT
5F2	Chorley and South Ribble PCT
5F3	West Lancashire PCT
5F4	Heywood and Middleton PCT
5F5	Salford PCT
5F6	Trafford North PCT
5F7	Stockport PCT
5F8	Bebington and West Wirral PCT
5F9	Southport and Formby PCT
5FA	Ashfield PCT
5FC	Rushcliffe PCT
5FD	East Hampshire PCT
5FE	Portsmouth City Teaching PCT
5FF	South West Kent PCT

5FH	Bexhill and Rother PCT
5FJ	Hastings and St Leonards PCT
5FK	Mid-Sussex PCT
5FL	Bath and North East Somerset PCT
5FM	West Of Cornwall PCT
5FN	South and East Dorset PCT
5FP	South West Dorset PCT
5FQ	North Devon PCT
5FR	Exeter PCT
5FT	East Devon PCT
5FV	Mid Devon PCT
5FW	Somerset Coast PCT
5FX	Mendip PCT
5FY	Teignbridge PCT
5G1	Southern Norfolk PCT
5G2	Bracknell Forest PCT
5G3	Windsor, Ascot and Maidenhead PCT
5G4	Chiltern and South Bucks PCT
5G5	Wycombe PCT
5G6	Blackwater Valley and Hart PCT
5G7	Hyndburn and Ribble Valley PCT
5G8	Burnley, Pendle and Rossendale PCT
5G9	North Liverpool PCT
5GC	Luton PCT
5GD	Bedford PCT
5GE	Bedfordshire Heartlands PCT
5GF	Huntingdonshire PCT
5GG	Welwyn Hatfield PCT
5GH	North Hertfordshire and Stevenage PCT
5GJ	South East Hertfordshire PCT
5GK	Royston, Buntingford and Bishop's Stortford PCT
5GL	Maldon and South Chelmsford PCT
5GM	Colchester PCT
5GN	Uttlesford PCT
5GP	Billericay, Brentwood and Wickford PCT
5GQ	Thurrock PCT
5GR	Basildon PCT
5GT	Great Yarmouth PCT
5GV	Watford and Three Rivers PCT
5GW	Dacorum PCT
5GX	St Albans and Harpenden PCT
5H1	Hammersmith and Fulham PCT
5H2	Birkenhead and Wallasey PCT
5H3	Cheshire West PCT
5H4	Central Cheshire PCT
5H5	Eastern Cheshire PCT
5H6	Ellesmere Port and Neston PCT
5H7	Derbyshire Dales and South Derbyshire PCT
5H8	Rotherham PCT
5H9	East Lincolnshire PCT
5HA	Central Liverpool PCT
5HC	South Liverpool PCT
5HD	Preston PCT
5HE	Fylde PCT
5HF	Wyre PCT
5HG	Ashton, Leigh and Wigan PCT
5HH	Leeds West PCT
5HJ	Leeds North East PCT
5HK	East Leeds PCT
5HL	South Leeds PCT
5HM	Leeds North West PCT
5HN	High Peak and Dales PCT
5HP	Blackpool PCT
5HQ	Bolton PCT

5HR	Staffordshire Moorlands PCT
5HT	Dudley South PCT
5HV	Dudley Beacon and Castle PCT
5HW	Newcastle-Under-Lyme PCT
5HX	Ealing PCT
5HY	Hounslow PCT
5J1	Halton PCT
5J2	Warrington PCT
5J3	St Helens PCT
5J4	Knowsley PCT
5J5	Oldham PCT
5J6	Calderdale PCT
5J7	North Kirklees PCT
5J8	Durham Dales PCT
5J9	Darlington PCT
5JA	Hinckley and Bosworth PCT
5JC	Charnwood and North West Leicestershire PCT
5JD	South Leicestershire PCT
5JE	Barnsley PCT
5JF	Bristol North PCT
5JG	Bristol South and West PCT
5JH	Cambridge City PCT
5JJ	South Cambridgeshire PCT
5JK	East Cambridgeshire and Fenland PCT
5JL	Broadland PCT
5JM	North Norfolk PCT
5JN	Chelmsford PCT
5JP	Castle Point and Rochford PCT
5JQ	Ipswich PCT
5JR	Suffolk Coastal PCT
5JT	Central Suffolk PCT
5JV	Waveney PCT
5JW	Suffolk West PCT
5JX	Bury PCT
5JY	Rochdale PCT
5K1	South Somerset PCT
5K2	Taunton Deane PCT
5K3	Swindon PCT
5K4	Kennet and North Wiltshire PCT
5K5	Brent Teaching PCT
5K6	Harrow PCT
5K7	Camden PCT
5K8	Islington PCT
5K9	Croydon PCT
5KA	Derwentside PCT
5KC	Durham and Chester-Le-Street PCT
5KD	Easington PCT
5KE	Sedgefield PCT
5KF	Gateshead PCT
5KG	South Tyneside PCT
5KH	Hambleton and Richmondshire PCT
5KJ	Craven Harrogate and Rural District PCT
5KK	Scarborough, Whitby and Ryedale PCT
5KL	Sunderland Teaching PCT
5KM	Middlesbrough PCT
5KN	Langbaugh PCT
5KP	East Elmbridge and Mid Surrey PCT
5KQ	East Surrey PCT
5KR	North and East Cornwall PCT
5KT	Central Cornwall PCT
5KV	Poole PCT
5KW	Cheltenham and Tewkesbury PCT
5KX	West Gloucestershire PCT
5KY	Cotswold and Vale PCT

5L1	Southampton City PCT
5L2	Maidstone Weald PCT
5L3	Medway PCT
5L4	Swale PCT
5L5	Guildford and Waverley PCT
5L6	North Surrey PCT
5L7	Surrey Heath and Woking PCT
5L8	Adur, Arun and Worthing PCT
5L9	Western Sussex PCT
5LA	Kensington and Chelsea PCT
5LC	Westminster PCT
5LD	Lambeth PCT
5LE	Southwark PCT
5LF	Lewisham PCT
5LG	Wandsworth PCT
5LH	Tameside and Glossop PCT
5LJ	Huddersfield Central PCT
5LK	South Huddersfield PCT
5LL	Ashford PCT
5LM	Canterbury and Coastal PCT
5LN	East Kent Coastal PCT
5LP	Shepway PCT
5LQ	Brighton and Hove City PCT
5LR	Eastbourne Downs PCT
5LT	Sussex Downs and Weald PCT
5LV	Northamptonshire Heartlands PCT
5LW	Northampton PCT
5LX	Fareham and Gosport PCT
5LY	Eastleigh and Test Valley South PCT
5M1	South Birmingham PCT
5M2	Shropshire County PCT
5M3	Walsall Teaching PCT
5M5	South Sefton PCT
5M6	Richmond and Twickenham PCT
5M7	Sutton and Merton PCT
5M8	North Somerset PCT
5M9	Rugby PCT
5MA	Crawley PCT
5MC	Horsham and Chanctonbury PCT
5MD	Coventry Teaching PCT
5ME	North Stoke PCT
5MF	South Stoke PCT
5MG	Oldbury and Smethwick PCT
5MH	Rowley Regis and Tipton PCT
5MJ	Wednesbury and West Bromwich PCT
5MK	Telford and Wrekin PCT
5ML	East Staffordshire PCT
5MM	Cannock Chase PCT
5MN	South Western Staffordshire PCT
5MP	North Warwickshire PCT
5MQ	South Warwickshire PCT
5MR	Redditch and Bromsgrove PCT
5MT	South Worcestershire PCT
5MV	Wolverhampton City PCT
5MW	North Birmingham PCT
5MX	Heart Of Birmingham Teaching PCT
5MY	Eastern Birmingham PCT
5N1	Leeds PCT
5N2	Kirklees PCT
5N3	Wakefield District PCT
5N4	Sheffield PCT
5N5	Doncaster PCT
5N6	Derbyshire County PCT
5N7	Derby City PCT

5N8	Nottinghamshire County Teaching PCT
5N9	Lincolnshire Teaching PCT
5NA	Redbridge PCT
5NC	Waltham Forest PCT
5ND	County Durham PCT
5NE	Cumbria Teaching PCT
5NF	North Lancashire Teaching PCT
5NG	Central Lancashire PCT
5NH	East Lancashire Teaching PCT
5NJ	Sefton PCT
5NK	Wirral PCT
5NL	Liverpool PCT
5NM	Halton and St Helens PCT
5NN	Western Cheshire PCT
5NP	Central and Eastern Cheshire PCT
5NQ	Heywood, Middleton and Rochdale PCT
5NR	Trafford PCT
5NT	Manchester PCT
5NV	North Yorkshire and York PCT
5NW	East Riding Of Yorkshire PCT
5NX	Hull Teaching PCT
5NY	Bradford and Airedale Teaching PCT
5P1	South East Essex PCT
5P2	Bedfordshire PCT
5P3	East and North Hertfordshire PCT
5P4	West Hertfordshire PCT
5P5	Surrey PCT
5P6	West Sussex PCT
5P7	East Sussex Downs and Weald PCT
5P8	Hastings and Rother PCT
5P9	West Kent PCT
5PA	Leicestershire County and Rutland PCT
5PC	Leicester City PCT
5PD	Northamptonshire Teaching PCT
5PE	Dudley PCT
5PF	Sandwell PCT
5PG	Birmingham East and North PCT
5PH	North Staffordshire PCT
5PJ	Stoke On Trent PCT
5PK	South Staffordshire PCT
5PL	Worcestershire PCT
5PM	Warwickshire PCT
5PN	Peterborough PCT
5PP	Cambridgeshire PCT
5PQ	Norfolk PCT
5PR	Great Yarmouth and Waveney PCT
5PT	Suffolk PCT
5PV	West Essex PCT
5PW	North East Essex PCT
5PX	Mid Essex PCT
5PY	South West Essex PCT
5QA	Eastern and Coastal Kent PCT
5QC	Hampshire PCT
5QD	Buckinghamshire PCT
5QE	Oxfordshire PCT
5QF	Berkshire West PCT
5QG	Berkshire East PCT
5QH	Gloucestershire PCT
5QJ	Bristol PCT
5QK	Wiltshire PCT
5QL	Somerset PCT
5QM	Dorset PCT
5QN	Bournemouth and Poole Teaching PCT
5QP	Cornwall and Isles Of Scilly PCT

5QQ	Devon PCT
5QR	Redcar and Cleveland PCT
5QT	Isle Of Wight NHS PCT
5QV	Hertfordshire PCT
5QW	Solihull PCT
7A1	Betsi Cadwaladr University LHB
7A2	Hywel Dda LHB
7A3	Abertawe Bro Morgannwg University LHB
7A4	Cardiff and Vale LHB
7A5	Cwn Taf LHB
7A6	Aneurin Bevan LHB
7A7	Powys Teaching LHB
99A	NHS Liverpool CCG
99C	NHS North Tyneside CCG
99D	NHS South Lincolnshire CCG
99E	NHS Basildon and Brentwood CCG
99F	NHS Castle Point and Rochford CCG
99G	NHS Southend CCG
99H	NHS Surrey Downs CCG
99J	NHS West Kent CCG
99K	NHS High Weald Lewes Havens CCG
99M	NHS North East Hampshire and Farnham CCG
99N	NHS Wiltshire CCG
99P	NHS North, East, West Devon CCG
99Q	NHS South Devon and Torbay CCG
Q30	North East Strategic Health Authority
Q31	North West Strategic Health Authority
Q32	Yorkshire And The Humber Strategic Health Authority
Q33	East Midlands Strategic Health Authority
Q34	West Midlands Strategic Health Authority
Q35	East Of England Strategic Health Authority
Q36	London Strategic Health Authority
Q37	South East Coast Strategic Health Authority
Q38	South Central Strategic Health Authority
Q39	South West Strategic Health Authority
R1A	Worcestershire Health and Care NHS Trust
R1C	Solent NHS Trust
R1D	Shropshire Community Health NHS Trust
R1E	Staffordshire and Stoke On Trent Partnership NHS Trust
R1F	Isle Of Wight NHS Trust
R1G	Torbay and Southern Devon Health and Care NHS Trust
R1H	Barts Health NHS Trust
RA2	Royal Surrey County Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RA3	Weston Area Health NHS Trust
RA4	Yeovil District Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RA7	University Hospitals Bristol NHS Foundation Trust
RA9	South Devon Healthcare NHS Foundation Trust
RAE	Bradford Teaching Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RAJ	Southend University Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RAL	Royal Free London NHS Foundation Trust
RAN	Royal National Orthopaedic Hospital NHS Trust
RAP	North Middlesex University Hospital NHS Trust
RAS	The Hillingdon Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RAT	North East London NHS Foundation Trust
RAX	Kingston Hospital NHS Trust
RBA	Taunton and Somerset NHS Foundation Trust
RBB	Royal National Hospital For Rheumatic Diseases NHS Foundation Trust
RBD	Dorset County Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RBF	Nuffield Orthopaedic Centre NHS Trust
RBK	Walsall Healthcare NHS Trust
RBL	Wirral University Teaching Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RBN	St Helens and Knowsley Hospitals NHS Trust
RBQ	Liverpool Heart and Chest NHS Foundation Trust
RBS	Alder Hey Children's NHS Foundation Trust

RBT	Mid Cheshire Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RBV	The Christie NHS Foundation Trust
RBZ	Northern Devon Healthcare NHS Trust
RC1	Bedford Hospital NHS Trust
RC3	Ealing Hospital NHS Trust
RC9	Luton and Dunstable Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RCB	York Teaching Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RCC	Scarborough and North East Yorkshire Health Care NHS Trust
RCD	Harrogate and District NHS Foundation Trust
RCF	Airedale NHS Foundation Trust
RCS	Nottingham City Hospital NHS Trust
RCU	Sheffield Children's NHS Foundation Trust
RCX	The Queen Elizabeth Hospital, King's Lynn, NHS Foundation Trust
RD1	Royal United Hospital Bath NHS Trust
RD3	Poole Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RD7	Heatherwood and Wexham Park Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RD8	Milton Keynes Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RDD	Basildon and Thurrock University Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RDE	Colchester Hospital University NHS Foundation Trust
RDR	Sussex Community NHS Trust
RDU	Frimley Park Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RDY	Dorset Healthcare University NHS Foundation Trust
RDZ	The Royal Bournemouth and Christchurch Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RE9	South Tyneside NHS Foundation Trust
REF	Royal Cornwall Hospitals NHS Trust
REM	Aintree University Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
REN	The Clatterbridge Cancer Centre NHS Foundation Trust
REP	Liverpool Women's NHS Foundation Trust
RET	The Walton Centre NHS Foundation Trust
RF4	Barking, Havering and Redbridge University Hospitals NHS Trust
RFF	Barnsley Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RFK	Queen's Medical Centre, Nottingham University Hospital NHS Trust
RFR	The Rotherham NHS Foundation Trust
RFS	Chesterfield Royal Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RFW	West Middlesex University Hospital NHS Trust
RG2	Queen Elizabeth Hospital NHS Trust
RG3	Bromley Hospitals NHS Trust
RGC	Whipps Cross University Hospital NHS Trust
RGD	Leeds And York Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RGM	Papworth Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RGN	Peterborough and Stamford Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RGP	James Paget University Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RGQ	Ipswich Hospital NHS Trust
RGR	West Suffolk NHS Foundation Trust
RGT	Cambridge University Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RGZ	Queen Mary's Sidcup NHS Trust
RH5	Somerset Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RH8	Royal Devon and Exeter NHS Foundation Trust
RHA	Nottinghamshire Healthcare NHS Trust
RHM	University Hospital Southampton NHS Foundation Trust
RHQ	Sheffield Teaching Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RHU	Portsmouth Hospitals NHS Trust
RHW	Royal Berkshire NHS Foundation Trust
RHX	Oxfordshire Learning Disability NHS Trust
RJ1	Guy's and St Thomas' NHS Foundation Trust
RJ2	Lewisham Healthcare NHS Trust
RJ5	St Mary's NHS Trust
RJ6	Croydon Health Services NHS Trust
RJ7	St George's Healthcare NHS Trust
RJ8	Cornwall Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RJC	South Warwickshire NHS Foundation Trust
RJD	Mid Staffordshire NHS Foundation Trust
RJE	University Hospital Of North Staffordshire NHS Trust
RJF	Burton Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust

RJH	Good Hope Hospital NHS Trust
RJL	Northern Lincolnshire and Goole Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RJN	East Cheshire NHS Trust
RJR	Countess Of Chester Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RJX	Calderstones Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RJZ	King's College Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RK5	Sherwood Forest Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RK9	Plymouth Hospitals NHS Trust
RKB	University Hospitals Coventry and Warwickshire NHS Trust
RKE	The Whittington Hospital NHS Trust
RKL	West London Mental Health NHS Trust
RL1	The Robert Jones and Agnes Hunt Orthopaedic Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RL4	The Royal Wolverhampton Hospitals NHS Trust
RLN	City Hospitals Sunderland NHS Foundation Trust
RLQ	Wye Valley NHS Trust
RLT	George Eliot Hospital NHS Trust
RLU	Birmingham Women's NHS Foundation Trust
RLY	North Staffordshire Combined Healthcare NHS Trust
RM1	Norfolk and Norwich University Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RM2	University Hospital Of South Manchester NHS Foundation Trust
RM3	Salford Royal NHS Foundation Trust
RM4	Trafford Healthcare NHS Trust
RM6	Northgate and Prudhoe NHS Trust
RMC	Bolton NHS Foundation Trust
RMP	Tameside Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RMY	Norfolk And Suffolk NHS Foundation Trust
RN1	Winchester and Eastleigh Healthcare NHS Trust
RN3	Great Western Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RN5	Hampshire Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RN7	Dartford and Gravesham NHS Trust
RNA	The Dudley Group NHS Foundation Trust
RNH	Newham University Hospital NHS Trust
RNJ	Barts and The London NHS Trust
RNK	Tavistock and Portman NHS Foundation Trust
RNL	North Cumbria University Hospitals NHS Trust
RNN	Cumbria Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RNP	Newcastle, North Tyneside and Northumberland Mental Health NHS Trust
RNQ	Kettering General Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RNS	Northampton General Hospital NHS Trust
RNU	Oxford Health NHS Foundation Trust
RNZ	Salisbury NHS Foundation Trust
RP1	Northamptonshire Healthcare NHS Foundation Trust
RP4	Great Ormond Street Hospital For Children NHS Foundation Trust
RP5	Doncaster and Bassetlaw Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RP6	Moorfields Eye Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RP7	Lincolnshire Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RPA	Medway NHS Foundation Trust
RPC	Queen Victoria Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RPG	Oxleas NHS Foundation Trust
RPL	Worthing and Southlands Hospitals NHS Trust
RPR	Royal West Sussex NHS Trust
RPY	The Royal Marsden NHS Foundation Trust
RQ3	Birmingham Children's Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RQ6	Royal Liverpool and Broadgreen University Hospitals NHS Trust
RQ8	Mid Essex Hospital Services NHS Trust
RQF	Velindre NHS Trust
RQM	Chelsea and Westminster Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RQN	Hammersmith Hospitals NHS Trust
RQQ	Hinchingbrooke Health Care NHS Trust
RQW	The Princess Alexandra Hospital NHS Trust
RQX	Homerton University Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RQY	South West London and St George's Mental Health NHS Trust
RR1	Heart Of England NHS Foundation Trust

RR7	Gateshead Health NHS Foundation Trust
RR8	Leeds Teaching Hospitals NHS Trust
RRD	North Essex Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RRE	South Staffordshire and Shropshire Healthcare NHS Foundation Trust
RRF	Wrightington, Wigan and Leigh NHS Foundation Trust
RRJ	The Royal Orthopaedic Hospital NHS Foundation Trust
RRK	University Hospitals Birmingham NHS Foundation Trust
RRP	Barnet, Enfield and Haringey Mental Health NHS Trust
RRU	London Ambulance Service NHS Trust
RRV	University College London Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RT1	Cambridgeshire and Peterborough NHS Foundation Trust
RT2	Pennine Care NHS Foundation Trust
RT3	Royal Brompton and Harefield NHS Foundation Trust
RT4	Welsh Ambulance Services NHS Trust
RT5	Leicestershire Partnership NHS Trust
RT6	Suffolk Mental Health Partnership NHS Trust
RTC	County Durham and Darlington Priority Services NHS Trust
RTD	The Newcastle Upon Tyne Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RTE	Gloucestershire Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RTF	Northumbria Healthcare NHS Foundation Trust
RTG	Derby Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RTH	Oxford University Hospitals NHS Trust
RTK	Ashford and St Peter's Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RTM	East Kent NHS and Social Care Partnership Trust
RTP	Surrey and Sussex Healthcare NHS Trust
RTQ	2Gether NHS Foundation Trust
RTR	South Tees Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RTV	5 Boroughs Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RTX	University Hospitals Of Morecambe Bay NHS Foundation Trust
RV3	Central and North West London NHS Foundation Trust
RV5	South London and Maudsley NHS Foundation Trust
RV7	Bedfordshire and Luton Community NHS Trust
RV8	North West London Hospitals NHS Trust
RV9	Humber NHS Foundation Trust
RVJ	North Bristol NHS Trust
RVL	Barnet and Chase Farm Hospitals NHS Trust
RVN	Avon and Wiltshire Mental Health Partnership NHS Trust
RVR	Epsom and St Helier University Hospitals NHS Trust
RVV	East Kent Hospitals University NHS Foundation Trust
RVW	North Tees and Hartlepool NHS Foundation Trust
RVX	Tees and North East Yorkshire NHS Trust
RVY	Southport and Ormskirk Hospital NHS Trust
RW1	Southern Health NHS Foundation Trust
RW3	Central Manchester University Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RW4	Mersey Care NHS Trust
RW5	Lancashire Care NHS Foundation Trust
RW6	Pennine Acute Hospitals NHS Trust
RW8	West Sussex Health and Social Care NHS Trust
RW9	South Of Tyne and Wearside Mental Health NHS Trust
RWA	Hull and East Yorkshire Hospitals NHS Trust
RWD	United Lincolnshire Hospitals NHS Trust
RWE	University Hospitals Of Leicester NHS Trust
RWF	Maidstone and Tunbridge Wells NHS Trust
RWG	West Hertfordshire Hospitals NHS Trust
RWH	East and North Hertfordshire NHS Trust
RWJ	Stockport NHS Foundation Trust
RWK	East London NHS Foundation Trust
RWN	South Essex Partnership University NHS Foundation Trust
RWP	Worcestershire Acute Hospitals NHS Trust
RWQ	Worcestershire Mental Health Partnership NHS Trust
RWR	Hertfordshire Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RWT	Buckinghamshire Mental Health NHS Trust
RWV	Devon Partnership NHS Trust
RWW	Warrington and Halton Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust

RWX	Berkshire Healthcare NHS Foundation Trust
RWY	Calderdale and Huddersfield NHS Foundation Trust
RX1	Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust
RX2	Sussex Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RX3	Tees, Esk and Wear Valleys NHS Foundation Trust
RX4	Northumberland, Tyne and Wear NHS Foundation Trust
RX5	Great Western Ambulance Service NHS Trust
RX6	North East Ambulance Service NHS Foundation Trust
RX7	North West Ambulance Service NHS Trust
RX8	Yorkshire Ambulance Service NHS Trust
RX9	East Midlands Ambulance Service NHS Trust
RXA	Cheshire and Wirral Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RXC	East Sussex Healthcare NHS Trust
RXD	East Sussex County NHS Trust
RXE	Rotherham, Doncaster and South Humber NHS Foundation Trust
RXF	Mid Yorkshire Hospitals NHS Trust
RXG	South West Yorkshire Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RXH	Brighton and Sussex University Hospitals NHS Trust
RXJ	West Kent NHS and Social Care Trust
RXK	Sandwell and West Birmingham Hospitals NHS Trust
RXL	Blackpool Teaching Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RXM	Derbyshire Healthcare NHS Foundation Trust
RXN	Lancashire Teaching Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
RXP	County Durham and Darlington NHS Foundation Trust
RXQ	Buckinghamshire Healthcare NHS Trust
RXR	East Lancashire Hospitals NHS Trust
RXT	Birmingham and Solihull Mental Health NHS Foundation Trust
RXV	Greater Manchester West Mental Health NHS Foundation Trust
RXW	Shrewsbury and Telford Hospital NHS Trust
RXX	Surrey and Borders Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
RXY	Kent And Medway NHS And Social Care Partnership Trust
RY1	Liverpool Community Health NHS Trust
RY2	Bridgewater Community Healthcare NHS Trust
RY3	Norfolk Community Health and Care NHS Trust
RY4	Hertfordshire Community NHS Trust
RY5	Lincolnshire Community Health Services NHS Trust
RY6	Leeds Community Healthcare NHS Trust
RY7	Wirral Community NHS Trust
RY8	Derbyshire Community Health Services NHS Trust
RY9	Hounslow and Richmond Community Healthcare NHS Trust
RYA	West Midlands Ambulance Service NHS Trust
RYC	East Of England Ambulance Service NHS Trust
RYD	South East Coast Ambulance Service NHS Foundation Trust
RYE	South Central Ambulance Service NHS Foundation Trust
RYF	South Western Ambulance Service NHS Foundation Trust
RYG	Coventry And Warwickshire Partnership NHS Trust
RYH	NHS Direct NHS Trust
RYJ	Imperial College Healthcare NHS Trust
RYK	Dudley And Walsall Mental Health Partnership NHS Trust
RYQ	South London Healthcare NHS Trust
RYR	Western Sussex Hospitals NHS Trust
RYT	Public Health Wales NHS Trust
RYV	Cambridgeshire Community Services NHS Trust
RYW	Birmingham Community Healthcare NHS Trust
RYX	Central London Community Healthcare NHS Trust
RYY	Kent Community Health NHS Trust
SA9	Ayrshire and Arran
SB9	Borders
SF9	Fife
SJ9	Greater Glasgow and Clyde
SK9	Highland
SL9	Lanarkshire
SN9	Grampian
SR9	Orkney

	SS9 Lothian ST9 Tayside SV9 Forth Valley SW9 Western Isles SY9 Dumfries and Galloway SZ9 Shetland T1150 NHS Litigation Authority T1160 National Institute For Health and Clinical Excellence T1190 National Treatment Agency T1240 National Patient Safety Agency T1310 Health Protection Agency (Hpa) T1430 Health and Social Care Information Centre T1440 The NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement T1450 NHS Business Services Authority (NHSBSA) T1460 National Blood Service T1470 NHS Commissioning Board Authority T1480 Health Research Authority T1490 NHS Trust Development Authority T1510 Health Education England TAC Northumberland Care Trust TAD Bradford District Care Trust TAE Manchester Mental Health and Social Care Trust TAF Camden and Islington NHS Foundation Trust TAG Witham Braintree and Halstead Care Trust TAH Sheffield Health and Social Care NHS Foundation Trust TAJ Black Country Partnership NHS Foundation Trust TAK Bexley Care Trust TAL Torbay Care Trust TAM Solihull Care Trust TAN North East Lincolnshire Care Trust Plus TAP Blackburn With Darwen Teaching Care Trust Plus X09 Connecting For Health X25 Public Health England Y51 The North Midlands and East Programme For It (NMEPFIT) Y52 The Southern Programme For It (SPFIT) Y53 The London Programme For It (LPFIT) YDA NHS Direct YDA01 NHS Direct Anglia YDA02 NHS Direct Avon, Gloucester and Wiltshire YDA03 NHS Direct Bedfordshire and Hertfordshire YDA04 NHS Direct North Central London YDA05 NHS Direct Kent, Surrey and Sussex YDA06 NHS Direct Manchester YDA07 NHS Direct Mid Staffordshire YDA08 NHS Direct North East London YDA09 NHS Direct Thames Valley and Northants YDA10 NHS Direct West Midlands YDA11 NHS Direct West Yorkshire YDA12 NHS Direct South East London Z1110 The Ulster Community and Hospitals HSS Trust
Notes	<p>This field uses the codes issued by the Health and Social Care Information Centre (HSCIC) to describe the following NHS bodies:</p> <p>In England:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NHS primary care trusts (PCTs) • NHS acute/hospital trusts and NHS foundation trusts • NHS care trusts, providing both health and social care services • NHS mental health services trusts • NHS ambulance services trusts • NHS strategic health authorities (SHAs) • NHS special health authorities • NHS commissioning support units

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NHS clinical commissioning groups <p>In Wales:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Local health boards <p>In Scotland:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Health boards <p>Nationally:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pan Strategic Health Authorities • Miscellaneous organisation types <p>Whilst the employer code list may appear rather long, it is expected that for any single institution, only a small subset of codes will need to be used.</p> <p>As the list of NHS organisations is updated frequently, we recommend institutions use the HSCIC website to access codes not included in the valid entry list.</p> <p>NHS primary care trusts (PCTs) and strategic health authorities (SHAs) were abolished on 31 March 2013 as a consequence of the Health and Social Care Act 2012, with their work taken over by clinical commissioning groups. These trusts and authorities will be removed from the 2013/14 record.</p> <p>Code 001 should be used when the student is not an NHS employee.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.NHSEMP must exist for institutions in England where Course.COURSEAIM = M76, H76, I76 or J76 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.NHSEMP must not exist for institutions not in England.</p>
Reason Required	To identify NHS employer.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: NHSEMP Data type: NHSEMPCodeContentType
Owner	Department of Health
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-08-29
Change management notes	Valid entry 'X25 Public Health England' added.

Number of units completed

Type	field
Short Name	NUMUNITS
Description	This field records the number of units completed and achieved from a full qualification or learning aim.
Applicable to	Wales
Coverage	All instances at institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00
Notes	<p>This field and Instance.NOUNTACH will be used to identify the proportion of units achieved by the learner when partially achieving.</p> <p>The length of this field is 2 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros, e.g. 03 or 3.</p> <p>For learning aims at institutions in Wales consisting of credits (eg. OCN) or unitisation (eg NVQs):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • enter number of credits/units achieved • if instance is continuing (Instance.CSTAT • if instance has completed (Instance.CSTAT • For learning aims not consisting of credits/units enter default value 99
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.NUMUNITS must exist for institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.NUMUNITS must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.NUMUNITS must not exist for institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.NUMUNITS must be greater than or equal to the value in Instance.NOUNTACH where Instance.PROGRESS is coded 6 and Instance.NUMUNITS is not coded 98 or 99.</p> <p>5 Error For institutions in Wales Instance.NUMUNITS must be greater than zero and less than the value in Instance.NOUNTACH where Instance.PROGRESS is coded 7 and Instance.NUMUNITS is not coded 98 or 99.</p> <p>6 Error For institutions in Wales Instance.NUMUNITS must be coded 0, 98 or 99 where Instance.PROGRESS is coded 8.</p> <p>7 Error For institutions in Wales Instance.NUMUNITS must be coded 99 where Instance.NOUNTACH = 99.</p>
Reason Required	To calculate SFA/EFA/DfES funding for partially completed learning aims.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: NUMUNITS
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	SFA/EFA

Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1 and 3 updated to remove reference to institutions England. Business rule 2 updated to prevent data being returned by institutions England.

Number of units to achieve full qualification

Type	field
Short Name	NOUNTACH
Description	This field records the number of units or modules that are to be completed to achieve the full qualification or learning aim.
Applicable to	Wales
Coverage	All instances at institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00
Notes	<p>This field and Number of units completed will be used to identify the proportion of units achieved by the learner when partially achieving.</p> <p>The length of this field is 2 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros, e.g. 03 or 3.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • for learning aims consisting of units (eg OCN) or unitisation (eg NVQs) enter number of credits/units to achieve full learning aim • for learning aims not consisting of credits/units enter default value 99
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.NOUNTACH must exist for institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.NOUNTACH must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.NOUNTACH must not exist for institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p> <p>4 Error For institutions in Wales Instance.NOUNTACH must be coded 99 where Instance.NUMUNITS = 99.</p>
Reason Required	To calculate SFA/EFA/DfES funding for partially completed learning aims.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: NOUNTACH
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	SFA/EFA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1 and 3 updated to remove reference to institutions England. Business rule 2 updated to prevent data being returned by institutions England.

Outcome

Type	field
Short Name	FEOUTCOME
Description	This field indicates whether the learner achieved the learning aim, achieved partially or had no success.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	Instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Achieved (non AS-level aims)</p> <p>2 Partial achievement</p> <p>3 No achievement</p> <p>4 Exam taken/assessment completed but result not yet known</p> <p>5 Learning activities are complete but the exam has not yet been taken and there is an intention to take the exam/assessment</p> <p>6 Achieved but uncashed (AS-levels only)</p> <p>7 Achieved and cashed (AS-levels only)</p>
Notes	<p>For programme aims (Instance.AIMTYPE = 1), the outcome of the entire programme must be recorded in this field.</p> <p>For all other learning aims this field should be used to record the learning outcome of the learning aim.</p> <p>Code 2 'Partial achievement' should be used for key skills qualifications where the learner does not achieve the qualification but passes either the end test or the portfolio.</p> <p>If the learner has not claimed a certificate from the awarding body for an AS level qualification, this should be recorded as code 6 'Achieved but uncashed (AS-levels only)'.</p> <p>If the learner has claimed a certificate from the awarding body for an AS level qualification, this should be recorded as code 7 'Achieved and cashed (AS-levels only)'.</p> <p>Further guidance on recording completion can be found in the provider support manual.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error For institutions in England, Instance.FEOUTCOME must not exist where Instance.CSTAT = 1.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.FEOUTCOME must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.FEOUTCOME must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p> <p>4 Error Where it exists Instance.FEOUTCOME must be coded 1, 2, 6 or 7 for institutions in England where Instance.RSNEND is coded 01 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.FEOUTCOME must not be coded 1, 6 or 7 for institutions in England where Instance.CSTAT is coded 3 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p>
Reason Required	For the purpose of performance indicators and management information. This field does not affect achievement funding.

Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FEOUTCOME Data type: FEOUTCOMECODECONTENTTYPE
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 added to prevent field being returned for continuing instances. Business rules 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field. Business rule 4 added to restrict FEOUTCOME value returned for successfully completed instances. Business rule 5 added to restrict FEOUTCOME value returned for withdrawn instances.

PhD submission date

Type	field
Short Name	PHDSUB
Description	This field holds the date of first submission of thesis.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.RCSTDNT is not 99 and Course.COURSEAIM = D00, D01 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04. Optional for all other instances where Course.COURSEAIM = D00, D01 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04
Notes	<p>All date fields in the Student Record must be completed using the ISO8601 format of YYYY-MM-DD. The specification of this field falls within the scope of the Aligned Data Definitions and follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <p>If the thesis has not been submitted an empty element should be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 9 (not applicable), i.e:</p> <pre><PHDSUB ReasonForNull="9"></PHDSUB></pre> <p>This date should not be updated if a thesis is resubmitted.</p> <p>Where an award is made without submission due to death or serious illness the award should be returned in QualificationsAwarded.QUAL but the submission date should be returned with <PHDSUB ReasonForNull="9"></PHDSUB></p> <p>Where Y0/Y1/Y2 appear in business rules, these refer to the reporting period Y1-Y2 (e.g. for the 2007-08 reporting period, Y0 is 2006, Y1 is 2007 and Y2 is 2008).</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.PHDSUB must exist where Instance.RCSTDNT is not 99 and Course.COURSEAIM = D00 or D01 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04. 2 Error Where Instance.PHDSUB exists then Course.COURSEAIM must = D00 or D01. 3 Error Instance.PHDSUB must not be null except when ReasonForNull = 9. 4 Error Instance.PHDSUB must be null when ReasonForNull = 9. 5 Error Instance.PHDSUB must not be greater than Y2-07-31. 6 Warning Where Instance.PHDSUB exists it should not be earlier than (Y1-2)-08-01 when Instance.MODE is not 63 or 64. 7 Warning Where Instance.PHDSUB exists it should not be earlier than (Instance.COMDATE + 24 months) 8 Error Instance.PHDSUB must not be earlier than Instance.COMDATE. 9 Error Instance.PHDSUB must not be null with ReasonForNull = 9 when Instance.RCSTDNT is not 99 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04 and Instance.RSNEND not equal to 04 or 05 and at least one corresponding QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = D00 or D01. 10 Warning Instance.PHDSUB is null where Instance.RCSTDNT is not equal to 99 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04 and Course.COURSEAIM = D00 or D01 and Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 43, 63 or 73 and QualificationsAwarded does not exist and Instance.COMDATE is earlier than (Y2-5)-08-01. The Research Councils expect a full-time PhD student to submit their thesis within 5 years. 11 Warning Instance.PHDSUB is null where Instance.RCSTDNT is not equal to 99 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04 and Course.COURSEAIM = D00 or D01 and Instance.MODE = 31, 38, 39, 44, 64 or 74 and QualificationsAwarded

	<p>does not exist and Instance.COMDATE is earlier than (Y2-10)-08-01. The Research Councils expect a part-time PhD student to submit their thesis within 10 years.</p> <p>12 Error Where Instance.PHDSUB exists and is not null it must be earlier than Instance.ENDDATE where Instance.RSNEND = 01.</p> <p>13 Warning Instance.PHDSUB should not be null with ReasonForNull = 9 where Instance.RCSTDNT is not equal to 99 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04 and Instance.RSNEND = 04 or 05 and at least one corresponding QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = D00 or D01.</p>
Reason Required	To assess time taken by students to submit.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	10
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: PHDSUB Data type: DateWithNullStructure9
Related Fields	RCSTDNT RCSTDID
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 9 updated and business rule 13 added for the change in guidance when PhDs not submitted for health reasons.

Programme type

Type	field
Short Name	PROGTYPE
Description	This field identifies the type of programme which the learner is undertaking.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	Compulsory for instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01 and Instance.FUNDMODEL = 21, 22 or 45. Optional where Instance.FUNDMODEL = 70, 80, 81, 82 or 99.
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>02 Advanced Level Apprenticeship</p> <p>03 Intermediate Level Apprenticeship</p> <p>10 Higher Apprenticeship</p> <p>11 Progression Pathway to skilled work or an Apprenticeship</p> <p>12 Progression Pathway to a first full level 2 (in the QCF)</p> <p>13 Progression Pathway to independent living or supported employment</p> <p>14 Progression Pathway to a Foundation (Level 1) Diploma or GCSEs</p> <p>15 Diploma - level 1 (foundation)</p> <p>16 Diploma - level 2 (higher)</p> <p>17 Diploma - level 3 (progression)</p> <p>18 Diploma - level 3 (advanced)</p> <p>19 Foundation Learning Programme</p> <p>20 Higher Apprenticeship - level 4</p> <p>21 Higher Apprenticeship - level 5</p> <p>99 None of the above</p>
Notes	<p>Foundation Learning Programmes</p> <p>Code 19 'Foundation Learning Programme' must be only be used for young people aged 16-18 and learners aged 19-24 with learning difficulties and disabilities (LLDD) funded by the Education Funding Agency (EFA).</p> <p>Adult learners aged 19+ and funded by the Skills Funding Agency must not use code 19 or record a programme aim. Foundation learning aims for adults are recorded as individual learning aims that are not part of a programme (Instance.AIMTYPE = 4). Code 99 'None of the above' must be used for these learners in this field.</p> <p>Learners who are undertaking Foundation learning programmes must record the learner's intended destination as agreed at the start of their programme. This is recorded for the programme aim (Instance.AIMTYPE = 1) only in the Instance.LearningDeliveryFAM entity fields using codes LDM 112-115.</p> <p>Code 10 is only for use by students starting their programme of study prior to 1st August 2011. Codes 11 to 14 are only for use by students starting their programme of study prior to 1st August 2010.</p> <p>From 2012/13, EFA will be replacing YPLA. More information about EFA replacing YPLA can be found on the Department for Education website.</p> <p>For more information on Field status, please see ILR specification.</p> <p>A matrix has been produced that explains some common coding combinations of Instance.PROGTYPE, Instance.AIMTYPE, and Instance.FUNDMODEL.</p>

Business rules	<p>1 Error For institutions in England Instance.PROGTYPE must exist where Instance.FUNDMODEL = 21, 22 or 45 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.PROGTYPE must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.PROGTYPE must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor types of programme being undertaken.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: PROGTYPE Data type: PROGTYPECodeContentType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Proportion of funding remaining

Type	field
Short Name	PROPFUNDREMAIN
Description	This field identifies the proportion of on-programme funding to which the learner is entitled for this aim.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01 and Instance.AIMTYPE = 2, 3 or 4 and Instance.FUNDMODEL = 21, 22 or 45
Notes	<p>For 2012/13, this field must be completed for OLASS funded learning aims for adults which are funded by the Skills Funding Agency.</p> <p>Full on-programme funding</p> <p>Where full on-programme funding is being claimed the value of 100 must be recorded.</p> <p>No on-programme funding</p> <p>Where no on-programme funding is being claimed for the aim a value of 0 must be recorded.</p> <p>Reduced on-programme funding</p> <p>Providers should refer to the funding guidance documentation for detailed guidance on when reduced on-programme funding should be claimed. In all cases this is because only part of the aim is being delivered. Examples include, learners who restart their learning aims after a break in learning, who have transferred from another provider or contract or who have significant prior learning and are not entitled to the full funding for the aim.</p> <p>Where reduced funding is being claimed, the proportion of funding being claimed for this aim as a percentage of the total funding for the aim should be entered in this field.</p> <p>Note that entries in this field will only reduce the on programme element of funding, achievement funding is unaffected by this field.</p> <p>This field is not to be used to vary the funding rate claimed. It is not designed for this purpose and consequently its use for this purpose would result in unexpected funding results.</p> <p>Further guidance on recording restarts and transfers is given in the provider support manuals.</p> <p>A three digit number in range 0 to 100 is allowed for this field.</p>
Examples	<p>A learner starts a learning aim for the first time. The entry in this field will be 100 and 100% of the on programme funding will be generated.</p> <p>A main aim qualification as part of an Apprenticeship funded at £1200 would be paid £900 in on-programme payments and £300 on achievement. If the funding received for</p>

	<p>the learner when they went on a break in learning was £600 then they would have received 67% of the on-programme funding. Therefore when the learner returns the provider must enter the value 33 in this field to ensure that only the remaining 33% of the monthly instalments are paid. This is because this field only affects the on-programme payments and not the achievement payment.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error For institutions in England Instance.PROPFUNDREMAIN must exist where Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3 and Instance.AIMTYPE = 2, 3, or 4 and Instance.FUNDMODEL = 21, 22 or 45 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.PROPFUNDREMAIN must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.PROPFUNDREMAIN must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or 4 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p>
Reason Required	To allow correct calculation of funding for learners who are not entitled to full on-programme funding for the learning aim.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: PROPFUNDREMAIN Data type: PROPFUNDREMAINType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Qualified teacher status

Type	field
Short Name	QTS
Description	This field indicates whether a student on an INSET teacher training course holds Qualified teacher status (QTS) or not.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 5 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 04
Valid Entries and Labels	3 Student holding QTS on an in-service/education of teachers (INSET) course 4 Student not holding QTS on an in-service/education of teachers (INSET) course
Notes	NCTL and HEFCE have given a working definition of an INSET course as: An INSET/In-service course is one for which the primary (but not necessarily the only) purpose is to improve the effectiveness of teachers, lecturers or trainers. In considering whether this is the purpose of particular course, institutions may wish to consider the content of the course and course literature, including prospectuses and any other marketing material.
Business rules	1 Error Instance.QTS must exist for institutions in England and Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 5 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 04. 2 Error Instance.QTS cannot be coded 4 where (EntryProfile.QUALENT2 is coded 03 or 10) or EntryProfile.QUALENT3 is coded H11. 3 Error Instance.QTS cannot be coded 3 where (EntryProfile.QUALENT2 is coded 04, 37 - 98) or EntryProfile.QUALENT3 begins with P, Q, R or X (excluding X06). 4 Error Instance.QTS must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Wales. 5 Error Instance.QTS must not exist for institutions in England and Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID not = 5. 6 Warning Instance.QTS should not be coded 4 where EntryProfile.QUALENT3 is coded M71 or H71.
Reason Required	To distinguish INSET provision that HEFCE is responsible for (students not holding QTA) and provision that NCTL are responsible for (students holding QTS).
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: QTS Data type: QTSCodeContentType
Related Fields	TTCID
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Reason for ending instance

Type	field																										
Short Name	RSNEND																										
Description	This field is used to indicate for what reason the student left the student instance detailed in this return.																										
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales																										
Coverage	All instances where Instance.ENDDATE is completed and where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04, 07, 08 or 09																										
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="width: 5%;">01</td><td>Successful completion of course</td></tr> <tr><td>02</td><td>Academic failure/left in bad standing/not permitted to progress</td></tr> <tr><td>03</td><td>Transferred to another institution</td></tr> <tr><td>04</td><td>Health reasons</td></tr> <tr><td>05</td><td>Death</td></tr> <tr><td>06</td><td>Financial reasons</td></tr> <tr><td>07</td><td>Other personal reasons & dropped out</td></tr> <tr><td>08</td><td>Written off after lapse of time</td></tr> <tr><td>09</td><td>Exclusion</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>Gone into employment</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>Other</td></tr> <tr><td>98</td><td>Completion of course - result unknown</td></tr> <tr><td>99</td><td>Unknown</td></tr> </table>	01	Successful completion of course	02	Academic failure/left in bad standing/not permitted to progress	03	Transferred to another institution	04	Health reasons	05	Death	06	Financial reasons	07	Other personal reasons & dropped out	08	Written off after lapse of time	09	Exclusion	10	Gone into employment	11	Other	98	Completion of course - result unknown	99	Unknown
01	Successful completion of course																										
02	Academic failure/left in bad standing/not permitted to progress																										
03	Transferred to another institution																										
04	Health reasons																										
05	Death																										
06	Financial reasons																										
07	Other personal reasons & dropped out																										
08	Written off after lapse of time																										
09	Exclusion																										
10	Gone into employment																										
11	Other																										
98	Completion of course - result unknown																										
99	Unknown																										
Notes	<p>Institutions should only complete this field where they are completing a student instance, guidance on when a new student instance is required is given in Instance.NUMHUS. Normally where a student progresses from one course directly onto another at the same level (e.g. HND to Degree, MPhil to PhD) a new student instance is not required and hence this field would not be completed although the QualificationsAwarded fields may be.</p> <p>If a student gains a qualification after completing a course, but not the qualification they were aiming for, then they should be coded 01 'Successful completion of course'.</p> <p>Code 02 'Academic failure/left in bad standing/not permitted to progress' is considered to be different from simply dropping out, code 07, which may be more closely related to personal reasons. Code 02 is intended to be for a fail at any stage. It is the code to be used for those students who fail assessment at, for example, the end of the first or second year of a three-year course and therefore leave the course, as well as for those students who have unsuccessfully completed their qualification aim.</p> <p>Code 08 'Written off after lapse of time': it is at the institutions discretion whether to write-off an inactive student after a period of time.</p> <p>Code 09 'Exclusion' is the breaking of institutional rules, either behavioural or financial.</p> <p>Code 98 'Completion of course - result unknown' implies that there will be further returns for the student - through a dormant record for example - to report results and reason for leaving.</p> <p>In onwards analysis Statutory Customers and HESA may group codes 03, 04, 06, 07, 08, 09, 10 and 11 into a single category of 'Other'.</p>																										

	An entry in this field means that an entry in Instance.ENDDATE will also be expected.
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.RSNEND must exist where Instance.ENDDATE is not null and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04, 07, 08 or 09.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.RSNEND must not exist where Instance.FUNDCOMP = 3.</p> <p>3 Warning Instance.RSNEND should exist where QualificationsAwarded.QUAL exists.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.RSNEND must be coded 01 where Instance.PROGRESS is coded A or B.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.RSNEND must be coded 01 where Instance.PROGRESS is coded 6.</p> <p>6 Error Instance.RSNEND must not be coded 01 or 98 where Instance.REDUCEDI = 08.</p> <p>7 Error Instance.RSNEND must not be coded 04 where Institution.UKPRN = 10000163, 10003331, 10005415, 10005470, 10007937, 10008289, 10020416, 10023454, 10031982, 10035638 or 10039956</p>
Reason Required	To monitor transfer/progression/completion.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: RSNEND Data type: RSNENDCodeContentType
Related Fields	ENDDATE
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-06-25
Change management notes	Business rule 7 updated to reflect the alternative providers who will be submitting data to HESA.

Reduced instance return indicator

Type	field
Short Name	REDUCEDI
Description	This field indicates whether a reduced return is being sent for this instance and if so which type.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances
Valid Entries and Labels	00 Not a reduced return 01 Low credit bearing 03 Incoming visiting & exchange 04 Dormant 07 Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE) 08 Instances present on the Student Loans Company (SLC) attendance confirmation date who do not progress beyond two weeks of their course 09 Unistats only
Notes	All information relating to reduced returns is available here. Code 01 can only be used by institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Scotland.
Business rules	2 Error Instance.REDUCEDI code 01 must be for an institution in England, Scotland or Northern Ireland. 3 Error Instance.REDUCEDI code 01 must have Instance.STULOAD less than or equal to 010.0. 7 Error Instance.REDUCEDI code 03 must have Instance.EXCHANGE = 2, 4, 8, 9 or A. 8 Error Instance.REDUCEDI code 04 must have Instance.MODE = 63 or 64. 10 Error Instance.REDUCEDI must be coded 00, 04 or 07 where Course.TTCID = F 11 Error Instance.REDUCEDI must be not be coded 07 at institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland or Wales. 12 Error Where Instance.REDUCEDI = 09, Institution.UKPRN must be 10000163, 10003331, 10005415, 10005470, 10007937, 10008289, 10020416, 10023454, 10031982, 10035638 or 10039956.
Reason Required	To identify and validate reduced returns
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: REDUCEDI Data type: REDUCEDICodeContentType
Related Fields	REDUCEDC
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-06-25
Change management notes	Business rule 12 updated to reflect the alternative providers who will be submitting data to HESA.

Regulatory body reference number

Type	field
Short Name	DHREGREF
Description	This field holds the regulatory body reference number allocated to a student.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Course.COURSEAIM = M16, M26, M76, M86, H16, H62, H76, I16, I76, J26, J76 and Course.REGBODY = 06 or 07 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Notes	<p>If the student already has a registration number awarded by a regulatory body, then the number should be recorded.</p> <p>This field should record the regulatory body registration numbers issued to new students entering courses leading to eligibility to register for the first time where available. All other new students will require the default code '99999999'.</p> <p>This field will be used to collect any registration number awarded by a regulatory body. The field is compulsory if Course.COURSEAIM is coded M16, M26, M76, M86, H16, H76, I16, I76, J26 or J76 and Course.REGBODY is coded 06 'The Nursing and Midwifery Council (NMC)'.</p> <p>The default code of 99999999 should be used where Course.COURSEAIM is coded M16, M86, H16, I16, or J26 and a number does not already exist for the student.</p>
Business rules	1 Error Instance.DHREGREF must exist where Course.COURSEAIM = M16, M26, M76, M86, H16, H62, H76, I16, I76, J26 or J76 and Course.REGBODY = 06 or 07 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.
Reason Required	To identify members of professional regulatory bodies on medical, dental, health and social care, and veterinary courses.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: DHREGREF
Related Fields	REGBODY
Owner	The regulatory bodies for medical/dental, health and social care, and veterinary sciences
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Reason required amended to remove the word 'existing', as this field collects information for both existing and new members. Business rule 1 updated for the addition of course aim H62 to the coding frame.

Research council student

Type	field
Short Name	RCSTDNT
Description	This field indicates whether a student has at any point during this instance been funded in whole or part by a Research Council.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L or M (except M22, M26) and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>01 Biotechnology & Biological Sciences Research Council (BBSRC)</p> <p>02 Medical Research Council (MRC)</p> <p>03 Natural Environmental Research Council (NERC)</p> <p>04 Engineering & Physical Sciences Research Council (EPSRC)</p> <p>05 Economic & Social Research Council (ESRC)</p> <p>07 Arts & Humanities Research Council (AHRC)</p> <p>08 Science & Technology Facilities Council (STFC)</p> <p>09 Research Council - not specified</p> <p>99 Not a Research Council student</p>
Notes	<p>Once this field has been recorded as anything other than 99, it should not be changed to 99 for this instance. This field covers all RC studentship schemes.</p> <p>All Research Council funded students must be coded to the appropriate Research Council irrespective of whether they are named in the award or are allocated a studentship from Research Council funding made available to the institution.</p> <p>Although a student may not be in receipt of a full award via a Research Council funding mechanism or scheme, the appropriate Research Council coding 01-08 below is required in all cases.</p> <p>EPSRC/MRC students can receive funding via a Doctoral Training Account, on a variety of funding patterns. See below for funding patterns as at October 2006.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fees only basis • Full award (stipend and fees @ UK rate) • 50/50 (stipend and fees) e.g. RC/ industrial partner or split between two RCs. <p>Students holding Dorothy Hodgkin postgraduate awards should be coded according to the Research Council providing the funding, 01-08 below and Student.NATION must be completed.</p> <p>Research students at institutions in Northern Ireland who are funded by DELNI should be coded 99, Not a Research Council student in this field.</p> <p>Where a student is jointly funded by more than one Research Council, the lead council should be recorded in this field.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.RCSTDNT must exist where Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L or M (excluding M22, M26) and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.RCSTDNT must not be coded 09.</p>

Reason Required	To allow identification of Research Council funded students for linking to RC data.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: RCSTDNT Data type: RCSTDNTCodeContentType
Related Fields	RCSTDID
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Research council student identifier

Type	field
Short Name	RCSTDID
Description	This field contains the Personal identifier (PID) generated by the Research Councils for students whom they fund.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Optional for all instances where Instance.RCSTDNT does not equal 99 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04
Notes	<p>This field records the Personal identifier issued by the Je-S (Joint electronic System) used since December 2004 to capture student and researcher details by EPSRC (for all student schemes) and MRC (for DTG students). Identifiers can be obtained from the Je-S Student\Researcher details screens on the Je-S Portal.</p> <p>Two formats are in use. Only personal identifiers in either the 7 character format XnnnnnC or the 8 character format XnnnnnC where X is an alpha character, n is numeric and C is an alpha check digit, should be returned.</p> <p>There is a joint Research Council project that is due to complete during 2007 (on current plans) on a phased implementation basis for the remaining Research Councils. PIDs will therefore become available for new Research Council (RC) PhD students as the project progresses – NERC will implementing the project initially with the capture of MSc students. The provision of PIDS for former RC students will be dependant on the migration of data into a common data source.</p>
Reason Required	To allow linking of HESA data to that held by the Research Councils.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: RCSTDID Data type: RCSTDIDType
Related Fields	RCSTDNT
Owner	The Research Councils
Version	1.0

SLDD-discrete provision

Type	field
Short Name	ST13
Description	This field indicates eligibility for increased programme area weights for SLDD
Applicable to	Wales
Coverage	All instances where the institution is in Wales and Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3 where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>0 Not SLDD (LLDD)</p> <p>1 Learner with moderate learning difficulties/disabilities pursuing a discrete learning activity</p> <p>2 Learner with profound learning difficulties/disabilities pursuing a discrete learning activity</p> <p>4 Learner with moderate learning difficulties/disabilities pursuing a mainstream learning activity</p> <p>5 Learner with profound learning difficulties/disabilities pursuing a mainstream learning activity</p>
Notes	None.
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.ST13 must exist where the institution is in Wales and Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.ST13 must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.ST13 must not exist for institutions in Wales where Instance.FESTUMK = 2.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor special funding allocations.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ST13 Data type: ST13CodeContentType
Related Fields	FESTUMK
Owner	WG-DfES
Version	1.0

Special fee indicator

Type	field																
Short Name	SPECFEE																
Description	This field records where a special or 'non-standard' fee is due - in line with the student support regulations.																
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales																
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.																
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: right;">0</td> <td>Standard/Prescribed fee</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td>Sandwich placement</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> <td>Language year abroad & not full-year outgoing ERASMUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">3</td> <td>Full-year outgoing ERASMUS</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">4</td> <td>Final year of full-time course lasting less than 15 weeks</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">5</td> <td>Final year of a full-time course lasting more than 14 weeks but less than 24 weeks</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">6</td> <td>Part-time Initial Teacher Training</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">9</td> <td>Other fee</td> </tr> </table>	0	Standard/Prescribed fee	1	Sandwich placement	2	Language year abroad & not full-year outgoing ERASMUS	3	Full-year outgoing ERASMUS	4	Final year of full-time course lasting less than 15 weeks	5	Final year of a full-time course lasting more than 14 weeks but less than 24 weeks	6	Part-time Initial Teacher Training	9	Other fee
0	Standard/Prescribed fee																
1	Sandwich placement																
2	Language year abroad & not full-year outgoing ERASMUS																
3	Full-year outgoing ERASMUS																
4	Final year of full-time course lasting less than 15 weeks																
5	Final year of a full-time course lasting more than 14 weeks but less than 24 weeks																
6	Part-time Initial Teacher Training																
9	Other fee																
Notes	<p>Students following the same pattern of study on the same course will have the same SPECFEE.</p> <p>Code 0 'Standard/prescribed fee' refers to the prescribed fee for students who entered before 2006/07 or the standard variable fee charged by the institution for those who entered in or after 2006/07. This code must be used for students subject to the regulated full fee.</p> <p>Special or 'non-standard' fees - in line with the student support regulations, the codes for use with regulated half fees are</p> <p>Code 1 'Sandwich placement'. For sandwich placements these are an academic year: (i) during which any periods of full-time study are in aggregate less than 10 weeks; or (ii) if in respect of that academic year and any previous academic years of the course the aggregate of any one or more periods of attendance which are not periods of full-time study at the institution (disregarding intervening vacations) exceeds 30 weeks.</p> <p>Code 2 'Language Year abroad and not full-year outgoing ERASMUS'. For language year abroad these are an academic year: (i) during which any periods of full-time study at the institution in the United Kingdom are in aggregate less than 10 weeks; or (ii) if in respect of that academic year and any previous academic years of the course the aggregate of any one or more periods of attendance which are not periods of full-time study at the institution in the United Kingdom (disregarding intervening vacations) exceeds 30 weeks.</p> <p>Code 2 should be used for students studying a year abroad in any subject who pay regulated half fees.</p> <p>Code 4 'Final year of full-time course lasting less than 15 weeks' and Code 5 'Final year of a full-time lasting more than 14 weeks but less than 24 weeks' apply to final year students only and should only be used where Instance.MODE is coded 02.</p>																

	<p>Code 6 'Part-time Initial Teacher Training' includes first degrees leading to QTS, PGCEs, CertEds and DTLLS.</p> <p>Code 3 'Full year outgoing ERASMUS' is for regulated zero fees.</p> <p>Postgraduate students who are subject to regulated fees should be coded as 0-6 depending on the fees. The only postgraduate students to be recorded as subject to regulated fees are those:</p> <p>a. On a full-time or part-time (provided they started their course prior to 01/09/2010) PGCE. Such students should be recorded as subject to the regulated full or regulated half fees, respectively.</p> <p>b. On a full-time course in preparation for a professional examination at postgraduate level, for which a first degree is not a normal requirement for entry. This applies to students on a course leading successively to Parts 1 and 2 of the Royal Institute of British Architects examination, for whom undergraduate-level fees are payable. Such students should be recorded as subject to regulated full fees.</p> <p>All other postgraduate students should be coded 09 Other fee.</p> <p>Part-time students where the institution has discretion over the fee charged should be coded 09 Other fee.</p> <p>Institutions are not required to adjust this field to account for individual waived fees.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.SPECFEE must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>9 Error For institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales if Instance.SPECFEE = 4 or 5 then Instance.ENDDATE must not be blank.</p> <p>10 Error Instance.SPECFEE must be coded 9 where Course.COURSEAIM = D00, D01 or D90.</p> <p>11 Warning For institutions in Scotland if Instance.SPECFEE = 4 or 5 then Instance.ENDDATE should not be blank.</p> <p>12 Error For institutions in England, Instance.SPECFEE must be coded 6 or 9 where Instance.MODE = 31 and Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H.</p> <p>13 Error For institutions in England, Instance.SPECFEE cannot be coded 6 when Instance.COMDATE > 2010-08-31.</p> <p>14 Warning Instance.SPECFEE should be coded 9 when Instance.FUNDLEV = 30 or 31.</p> <p>15 Error For institutions in England, where Instance.SPECFEE = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, Course.COURSEAIM must be coded M71, M88, M22, M26 or begin with H, I, J or C (excluding codes ending with 90, 91 or 99).</p>
Reason Required	To allow financial calculations to take account of fee offsets.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SPECFEE Data type: SPECFEECodeContentType
Owner	HESA

Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-06-25
Change management notes	Business rule 15 updated to replace course aim M78 with M88 as the PGT architects course eligible for regulated fees.

Start date of instance

Type	field
Short Name	COMDATE
Description	This field indicates the date of the student's initial commencement of studies for this student instance and may relate to a date prior to the current academic/financial year. Exchange-in students should have the date they commenced their studies at the reporting institution.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances
Notes	<p>If a student transfers from one HEI to another, the date they entered the current HEI for this qualification aim should be returned in this field.</p> <p>All date fields in the Student Record must be completed using the ISO8601 format of YYYY-MM-DD. The specification of this field falls within the scope of the Aligned Data Definitions and follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <p>Relationship with Instance.NUMHUS and Instance.YEARSTU:</p> <p>For a single student instance, the same Student instance number is kept. Instance.YEARSTU would be expected to increment each year. However there would be no updating of Instance.COMDATE nor of other fields in the Entry profile - an exception being, if, for example, an error had been found in the information provided in the previous year).</p> <p>With the commencement of a new student instance, a new Instance.NUMHUS would be allocated. Instance.YEARSTU would be expected to be 01. Instance.COMDATE should all be updated and a new Entry profile should be submitted.</p> <p>Where a student transfers from one course to another, the date should not be updated if the same Instance.NUMHUS is kept. For example, changes of subject without change of general qualification aim will not usually reset date of commencement of instance.</p> <p>Neither should the field be re-set where a student registers for an 'intermediate' qualification aim with the clear intention (acknowledged by both student and institution) that, subject to satisfactory performance, s/he will progress seamlessly (and usually without being awarded the intermediate qualification) onto a 'higher' qualification aim. For example, if a student registers first for an MPhil then switches to a PhD, and this is regarded as normal progression in the institution, such that the same Student instance number is kept, the Instance.COMDATE should not be reset.</p> <p>Where Y0/Y1/Y2 appear in business rules, these refer to the reporting period Y1-Y2 (e.g. for the 2007-08 reporting period, Y0 is 2006, Y1 is 2007 and Y2 is 2008).</p>
Examples	<p>1. A student obtains a first degree and then enrolls for a one year Masters course. These are two distinct courses at different levels (undergraduate/postgraduate) and therefore would have two Student instance numbers. In this case a new instance is created:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • is the commencement date of the MastersInstance.COMDATE

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • = 1 Instance.YEARPRG • = 1Instance.YEARSTU • refers to degreeEntryProfile.QUALENT3 • has a new number allocated.Instance.NUMHUS <p>2. A student transfers after two years from an HND course to the second year of a degree course (with or without being awarded the HND). This may be represented in two different ways, depending on how it is viewed by the institution.</p> <p>If within the institution this is regarded as a seamless continuation of studies, then it is the same student instance and the same Instance.NUMHUS is kept and Instance.YEARSTU increments by one year. In this case:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • is not updatedInstance.COMDATE • = 2 Instance.YEARPRG • = 3Instance.YEARSTU • /EntryProfile.QUALENT2 • is not updated.Instance.NUMHUS <p>However, if within the institution this is regarded as two student instances, then a new Instance.NUMHUS is allocated and Instance.YEARSTU re-sets to 01. In this case a new instance is created:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • is the commencement date of the degreeInstance.COMDATE • = 2 Instance.YEARPRG • = 1Instance.YEARSTU • is updated to HND if appropriateEntryProfile.QUALENT3 • has a new number allocated.Instance.NUMHUS <p>When an institution does not have a clear preference between the two methods of reporting the progression to degree via study for an HND, it is recommended that the first method, using a single student instance, is used. This general guidance would also apply to other similar cases.</p>
Business rules	<p>2 Error Instance.COMDATE must not be less than 1971-02-01.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.COMDATE must be less than Y2-08-01.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.COMDATE must be later than Y1-07-31 where Instance.REDUCEDI = 08.</p>
Reason Required	To determine whether to include a student in any particular population definition; to calculate the duration of a student's education
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	10
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: COMDATE
Owner	Information Standards Board - Aligned Data Definitions
Version	1.0
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 5 added for new SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return.

Student instance FTE

Type	field
Short Name	STULOAD
Description	This field holds the student FTE, representing the institution's best academic judgement of the full-time equivalence of the student (for this instance) during the reporting year 1 August - 31 July. The value can be recorded to one decimal place and must be between 0 and 300.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 03 or 09
Notes	<p>Full-time, full year students would normally be returned as 100 and part-time students returned as a proportion of an equivalent full-time course. Comparisons and weightings of different full-time, full year courses are not expected. The proportion of part-time study can be estimated on either a 'time' or a 'credit' basis. The FTE should not be weighted to take account of any resourcing implications of different courses.</p> <p>All students following a course would initially be assumed to have the same FTE. An adjustment may need to be made at individual student level if a student did not actually follow the whole course academic year, e.g. because they left half way through. This individual student adjustment need only be at a very broad-brush level.</p> <p>The calculation of FTE therefore becomes a function of proportion (that the course represents of a full-time benchmark course) x time (amount of the course that the student followed in the HESA reporting year).</p> <p>It is recognised that this cannot be exact in all cases and a strict pro-rata model is not expected. The aim is to give a better approximation than the use of arbitrary conversion factors.</p> <p>In the case of years of programme which span two HESA reporting years (for example an MSc student with a 01 October - 30 September year) institutions in Scotland can return the FTE using either the pro-rata (50:50), 100:0 or 0:100 method as indicated in Instance.FTEMETHOD. However for institutions in England, Wales and Northern Ireland the Student FTE should be split across the two HESA reporting years. This does not have to be an exact pro-rata split: a reasonable approximation is sufficient (for example the institution might assume that 85% of the FTE related to the period October - July and 15% to the period August - September).</p> <p>Institutions in England, Wales or Northern Ireland who before 2007/08 did not return student load using the pro-rata (50:50) method should return the record as if they had always used this method. HEFCE have indicated that the same guidance will apply to HESES return.</p> <p>Further detailed notes are available in the supporting documents.</p> <p>For students coded 'S - Studying abroad and included in the Student record as student has spent or will spend more than 8 weeks in the UK' in Instance.LOCSDY, Instance.STULOAD must reflect only that part of the course undertaken in the UK.</p> <p>This field must be completed for writing-up students. From 2010/11 institutions are</p>

	<p>advised that the FTE allocated to writing-up students should be 10% for both full and part-time students. The 10% applies where the student has been writing-up for a full year. Where a student has only been writing up for part of the year the FTE should be adjusted accordingly.</p> <p>The length of this field is 5 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros or the decimal place, e.g. 005.0 or 5.0 or 5</p>
Examples	<p>Example A student studying the equivalent of a three year course over five years would be returned as 60.</p> <p>A student studying 30 credits in the current year, in the case where 120 credits is the norm for a full-time student, would be returned as 25.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.STULOAD must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 03 or 09 2 Error Instance.STULOAD must be 0 where Instance.MODE = 63 or 64. 3 Error For institutions in Scotland, Instance.STULOAD must not be 0 where Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 31, 52 or 53 and Instance.TYPEYR = 1, unless Instance.LOCSYD = S. 4 Warning Instance.STULOAD should not be 0 where Course.COURSEAIM begins D or L and Instance.MODE = 01 or 02 and Instance.YEARSTU = 01, 02 or 03. 5 Warning Where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01 and Instance.MODE not equal to 63 or 64 and Course.COURSEAIM does not begin with D or L, Instance.STULOAD + 100.0 is less than sum of Module.FTE for the student instance where StudentOnModule.MODSTAT not equal to 4 and StudentOnModule.APEL not equal to 1 or 2: check modules linked to this instance. 6 Error Where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01, Instance.STULOAD must not be greater than 0 where sum of Module.FTE for the student instance is 0. 7 Error For institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales, Instance.STULOAD must not be 0 where Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24, 25, 31, 43, 44, 52, 53, 73 or 74, unless Instance.LOCSYD = S or Instance.EXCHANGE is coded 2, 4, 8, 9 or A or Instance.REDUCEDI = 08. 8 Error For institutions in England, Instance.STULOAD must not be greater than 10.0 where Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L or M (excluding M22, M26) and Instance.MODE = 43 or 44 and (Instance.MCDATE is null or is equal to Y1-08-01) 9 Error For institutions in Scotland, Instance.STULOAD must not be 0 where Instance.FTEMETHOD = 1 and Instance.MODE not equal to 51, 63, 64 and Instance.EXCHANGE not equal to 2, 4, 8, 9, A and Instance.LOCSYD not equal to S 10 Error For institutions in Scotland, Instance.STULOAD must not be 0 where Instance.FTEMETHOD = 2 and Instance.COMDATE > Y1-07-31 and Instance.MODE not equal to 51, 63, 64 and Instance.EXCHANGE not equal to 2, 4, 8, 9, A and Instance.LOCSYD not equal to S 11 Error For institutions in England and Northern Ireland Instance.STULOAD must equal the sum of Instance.LOADYRA + Instance.LOADYRB 12 Warning For institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales, Instance.STULOAD should be less than 100 where Instance.TYPEYR is not equal to 1 and Instance.COMDATE > Y1-07-31 13 Warning For institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales, Instance.STULOAD should be less than 100 where Instance.TYPEYR is not equal to 1 and Instance.ENDDATE > Y1-07-31
Reason Required	To allow analysis by FTE, representing student load, rather than by headcount or apportioned numbers; particularly significant for analysing PT load.

Part Of	Instance
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: STULOAD Data type: FTEType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-06-25
Change management notes	Business rule 7 updated to allow an Instance.STULOAD of zero for 08 reduced returns.

Student instance identifier

Type	field
Short Name	NUMHUS
Description	This field complements the HUSID field to identify the separate courses that individuals take. HUSID + Institution identifier + NUMHUS together form a unique identifier known as HIN. An identification of the basic unit of 'a coherent engagement with the institution aiming towards the award of a qualification(s) or credit' which is described in the Understanding HIN document.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances
Notes	<p>Field length 20 is to allow institutions to use an instance identifier already held internally. Where a instance identifier held internally is used, institutions must continue to use this number even when transfers or natural progressions occur. As a consequence of this institutions may find it easier to number student instances sequentially starting from 1 or A etc. A new instance number format can only be introduced for instances that have not been returned to HESA. This will be the case for new entrants and for continuing students commencing courses that have not previously been returned to HESA.</p> <p>Further guidance on the importance of maintaining the HIN link across years can be found in the Understanding HIN document.</p> <p>Valid characters</p> <p>The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+IE00 to U+IEFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p> <p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>) and to ensure that their files are</p>

	<p>actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.</p> <p>Further guidance</p> <p>Further guidance is available from HEFCE on the reporting of multiple instances for students studying for credit.</p>
Examples	Detailed examples of HIN linking can be found in the Understanding HIN document.
Business rules	1 Error All Instance.NUMHUS for a Student.HUSID must be unique.
Reason Required	To distinguish - and between years, link - episodes of study by the same student at the same institution; a vital tool (through the generation of HIN) to support year-on-year linkage, for example to link entities in the HESA record and for Teaching Quality Information (TQI); used in the Higher Education Initial Participation Rate (HEIPR) calculation by BIS.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	20
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: NUMHUS Data type: NUMHUSType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Student Support Number

Type	field
Short Name	SSN
Description	This field holds the Student Support Number assigned by Student Support Award Authorities (Northern Ireland Library Boards, Welsh Local Authorities, Student Awards Agency for Scotland (SAAS) and Student Loans Company (SLC)). It is the student identifier that is used in student finance communications between the Student Support Award Authorities, institutions and SLC. The SSN is unique to each funded instance of engagement.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All institutions, all students in receipt of statutory student finance except where Course.COURSEAIM ends in 90 or 99.
Notes	<p>The SSN is 13 characters long. The first four characters are alpha. The next 8 characters are numeric. The last character, which is a check character, is alpha.</p> <p>Where a student may be in possession of multiple SSNs from different loan providers, the SSN returned in this field should be the one relating to the loan made for the payment of tuition fees.</p> <p>It is not expected that the same SSN will appear in multiple instances unless it is held by a student who has changed course.</p> <p>Calculation of Checksum</p> <p>The algorithm for calculating the checksum is as follows:</p> <p>For positions 1 to 4 of the SSN:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Convert each character to a number using the following values: • Multiply each number by the weighting factor, which is 14 minus the position (i.e. 13 for position 1, 12 for position 2 etc) <p>For positions 5 to 12 of the SSN:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Multiply each value for positions 5 to 12 by the weighting factor, which is 14 minus the position (i.e. 9 for position 5, 8 for position 6 etc) <p>Calculate the check character:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Divide the sum of the calculated values for positions 1 to 12 by 23 to get a remainder (i.e. if summed value was 475 then the remainder would be 15) • Subtract this remainder from 23 and convert this value to a character using the following values: • This is the check character, so if validating a captured SSN this should match position 13 of the SSN. <p>Note: characters I, O, Q are not valid characters in the SSN. Z is only valid in position 13.</p> <p>Worked example</p>

	<p>When the Student Support Number = WADM46891352A</p> <p>1. Convert the characters to numbers using the values, so W=19, A=0, D=3, M=11.</p> <p>2. Multiply each number by the weighting factor.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Positions</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> <td>4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Weighting factor:</td> <td>13</td> <td>12</td> <td>11</td> <td>10</td> </tr> </table> <p>(W=19*13=247), (A=0*12=0), (D=3*11=33), (M=11*10=110)</p> <p>3. For positions 5 to 12 (46891352) multiply the number by the weighting factor.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Positions</td> <td>5</td> <td>6</td> <td>7</td> <td>8</td> <td>9</td> <td>10</td> <td>11</td> <td>12</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Weighting factor:</td> <td>9</td> <td>8</td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> </tr> </table> <p>(W=19*13=247), (A=0*12=0), (D=3*11=33), (M=11*10=110)</p> <p>4. Sum the calculated values for positions 1 to 12</p> <p>(247+0+33+110+36+48+56+54+5+12+15+4=620)</p> <p>5. Divide this number by 23 to get a remainder.</p> <p>(620/23=26 with a remainder of 22)</p> <p>6. Subtract the remainder from 23 and convert this value to a character.</p> <p>(23-22=1=A)</p> <p>This is the check character and this matches position 13 of the SSN.</p>	Positions	1	2	3	4	Weighting factor:	13	12	11	10	Positions	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	Weighting factor:	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2
Positions	1	2	3	4																									
Weighting factor:	13	12	11	10																									
Positions	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12																					
Weighting factor:	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2																					
Examples	<p>For example</p> <p>Student Support Number = WADM46891352A</p>																												
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.SSN must not exist where (Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L, M (excluding M22, M26, M71, M88), P, Q, R, S or X) or where (Course.COURSEAIM ends with 90 or 99).</p> <p>2 Error Where the institution is in England, Northern Ireland or Wales, Instance.SSN must not exist where Instance.FEEELIG = 2 or 3.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.SSN must pass the checksum test given in the coding manual.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.SSN must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 08.</p>																												
Reason Required	To enable robust linking between HESA data and the student finance data held by SLC.																												
Part Of	Instance																												
Field Length	13																												
Minimum Occurrences	0																												

Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SSN Data type: SSNType
Owner	SLC
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Guidance amended in Notes to more explicitly state the structure of the SSN. Business rule 1 added to stop SSN being returned for courses not eligible for student support. Business rule 2 added for institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales to stop SSN being returned for students who are not eligible to pay home fees. Business rule 3 added to ensure that the SSN is in a valid format. Business rule 4 added to ensure SSN returned for the SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return.

Subject Knowledge Enhancement institution

Type	field
Short Name	SKEITT
Description	This field records the institution at which a Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE) student will be undertaking their ITT. (Students are only eligible for SKE courses if they are holding an offer of an ITT Place). Note: This field does not apply to qualified teachers undertaking an SKEPlus course.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	Instances at institutions in England where Instance.REDUCEDI = 07 or Course.TTCID = F Subject Knowledge Enhancement (SKE)
Notes	<p>The UKPRNs for ITT providers are available from the UK Register of Learning Providers.</p> <p>Where an student is holding offers of an ITT place with more than one institution, this field should record their "first choice" institution.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.SKEITT must exist for institutions in England where (Course.REDUCEDC=07 or Course.TTCID = F) and Course.CTITLE does not begin SKEPLUS</p> <p>2 Error Instance.SKEITT must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland or Wales.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.SKEITT must not exist for institutions in England where Course.TTCID not equal to F.</p> <p>5 Error Instance.SKEITT must not be coded 99999999</p>
Reason Required	NCTL requirement to monitor students registered on SKE courses
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SKEITT Data type: UKPRNType
Owner	UK Register of Learning Providers
Version	1.0

Suspension of active studies

Type	field
Short Name	NOTACT
Description	This field indicates whether a student has suspended study and is no longer actively studying on this student instance. In these cases Instance.RSNEND and Instance.ENDDATE would not be completed.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Compulsory where the student has suspended studies on this student instance and fields Instance.RSNEND and Instance.ENDDATE are not completed
Valid Entries and Labels	1 Student has suspended studies 2 DH/NHS student temporarily stepping-off HIN
Notes	<p>This field is used to indicate a student was active during the reporting period but has now suspended studies. A student who was not active at any time during the reporting year should be returned as code 63 or 64 'dormant' in Instance.MODE.</p> <p>An entry in this field is not required if the student has completed/left the student instance (Instance.RSNEND and Instance.ENDDATE completed). Similarly an entry in this field is not required if the student has been dormant for the whole year (Instance.MODE codes 63 or 64). However, students with Instance.MODE of 73 and 74 should be coded 1 Student has suspended studies.</p> <p>Once a record has been returned with an entry in this field, a record with the same HIN will not be required in subsequent years unless the student returns to resume the instance or a record is being returned to end the instance (by completing (Instance.RSNEND, Instance.ENDDATE and QualificationsAwarded.QUAL (where relevant))).</p> <p>Code 2 DH/NHS student temporarily stepping-off HIN</p> <p>The reasons for stepping-on and off are many and varied. The DH core definition of such stepping-off points would be: 'a student who takes a break in study, at an agreed appropriate time, and who plans to return to join a later cohort from the one with which they originally started'.</p> <p>This provides individuals with the ability to enter or leave a programme of education at a given point, providing maximum flexibility, thereby enabling an individual to consider alternative options of employment and education.</p> <p>For example, the new nursing programme allows for stepping-off points at the end of Year 1 (following successful completion of the Common Foundation Programme) and throughout the course.</p>
Business rules	2 Error Instance.NOTACT must be 1 where Instance.MODE is 73 or 74
Reason Required	<p>To allow institutions to temporarily complete a record where Reason for leaving and Date left are not completed.</p> <p>For progression monitoring and linkage, and for supporting population definitions.</p>

Part Of	Instance
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: NOTACT Data type: NOTACTCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Teacher Reference Number

Type	field
Short Name	TREFNO
Description	This field holds the reference number allocated to each student prior to course completion for the training of teachers.
Applicable to	England Scotland Wales
Coverage	Compulsory for instances at institutions in England, Wales or Scotland where Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G, H, J or K and QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME = 1 and QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = H11 or I11 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04
Notes	<p>This number will stay with the teacher throughout their career within the teaching profession.</p> <p>For institutions in Scotland, the reference number required is the six digit number allocated to each student prior to course completion of pre-service courses for the training of teachers. The first 2 digits denote the expected year of qualification (the last 2 digits of the year).</p> <p>For institutions in England and Wales the reference number required is the Teacher Reference Number (formerly known as a DfES number). The number is allocated by the NCTL when details of a trainee are entered onto their system and the trainee's record created. The number allocated is a seven digit number.</p> <p>Overseas students not allocated a teacher reference number should be coded 99999999.</p> <p>A relevant qualification in QualificationsAwarded.QUAL would be code H11 'First degree with honours leading to QTS/registration with a GTC', I11 'Ordinary (non-honours) first degree leading to QTS/registration with a GTC', M71 'Post-Graduate Certificate in Education or Professional Graduate Diploma in Education' or H71 'Professional Graduate Certificate in Education'.</p> <p>A code H11 or I11 in QualificationsAwarded.QUAL would generate an error if Instance.TREFNO is blank; codes M71 or H71 in QualificationsAwarded.QUAL would generate a warning if Instance.TREFNO is blank.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.TREFNO must exist for institutions in England or Wales where the corresponding (QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME = 1 and QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = H11 or I11) and Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.TREFNO must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland.</p> <p>3 Warning Instance.TREFNO should exist for institutions in England or Wales where the corresponding (QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME = 1 and QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = M71 or H71) and Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.</p> <p>4 Error Instance.TREFNO must exist for institutions in Scotland where QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = H11 or I11 and Course.TTCID = 1 or 8 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.</p> <p>5 Warning Instance.TREFNO should exist for institutions in Scotland where QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = M71 or H71 and Course.TTCID = 1 or 8 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 04.</p>

Reason Required	To link with teaching career information; used by the NCTL, and GTCW in Wales.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	9
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: TREFNO
Related Fields	TTCID OUTCOME
Owner	The Teaching Councils
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1 and 3 updated for the introduction of TTCID codes G and H (School Direct initiatives).

The type of aim recorded

Type	field									
Short Name	AIMTYPE									
Description	This field details the type of aim recorded.									
Applicable to	England									
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.									
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">1</td> <td>Programme Aim</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td>Main learning aim within an Apprenticeship programme</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> <td>Component learning aim within a programme</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">4</td> <td>Learning aim that is not part of a programme</td> </tr> </table>	1	Programme Aim	2	Main learning aim within an Apprenticeship programme	3	Component learning aim within a programme	4	Learning aim that is not part of a programme	
1	Programme Aim									
2	Main learning aim within an Apprenticeship programme									
3	Component learning aim within a programme									
4	Learning aim that is not part of a programme									
Notes	<p>Apprenticeship programmes</p> <p>Code 2 should be used to identify the main aim of an Apprenticeship programme. This is the competency based element of an Apprenticeship programme, such as the NVQ or equivalent learning aim and needs to be identified separately in order to calculate achievement funding for Apprenticeships correctly.</p> <p>Code 2 must not be used where Instance.FUNDMODEL = 21 or 22.</p> <p>There should only be one main aim at any one time in an Apprenticeship programme.</p> <p>If the learner has already completed and achieved the competency based learning aim in a previous episode of learning, then it does not need to be recorded as part of the current programme. In this case there will be no learning aim recorded using code 2 in this field.</p> <p>Code 3 should be used for all other learning aims within an Apprenticeship programme such as the knowledge based and functional skills/key skills learning aims.</p> <p>A matrix has been produced that explains some common coding combinations of Instance.PROGTYPE, Instance.AIMTYPE and Instance.FUNDMODEL.</p>									
Business rules	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="width: 10%;">Error</td> <td>Instance.AIMTYPE must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Instance.AIMTYPE must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Instance.AIMTYPE must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</td> </tr> </table>	1	Error	Instance.AIMTYPE must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.	2	Error	Instance.AIMTYPE must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.	3	Error	Instance.AIMTYPE must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.
1	Error	Instance.AIMTYPE must exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.								
2	Error	Instance.AIMTYPE must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.								
3	Error	Instance.AIMTYPE must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.								
Reason Required	To differentiate between programme aims, component learning aims within a programme and learning aims that are not part of a designated programme (as defined in the Programme type (Instance.PROGTYPE) field). To calculate Apprenticeship achievement funding.									
Part Of	Instance									
Field Length	1									
Minimum Occurrences	0									

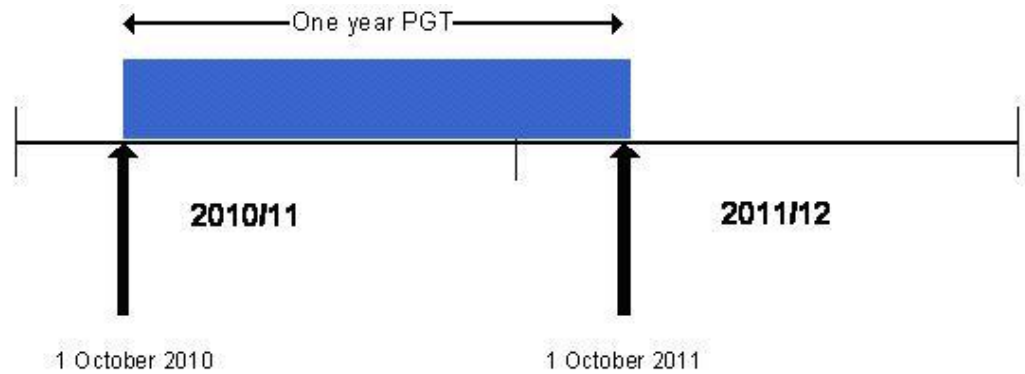
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: AIMTYPE Data type: AIMTYPECodeContentType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Type of instance year

Type	field
Short Name	TYPEYR
Description	This field identifies which of the basic types academic year is applicable to the instance.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Course academic year contained within the HESA reporting year 1 August - 31 July</p> <p>2 Course academic year not contained within the HESA reporting year 1 August - 31 July</p> <p>3 Student commencing a course running across HESA reporting years</p> <p>4 Student mid-way through a course running across HESA reporting years</p> <p>5 Student finishing a course running across HESA reporting years</p>
Notes	<p>Information is required at instance level.</p> <p>A year of instance runs from the Instance.COMDATE to the anniversary of the Instance.COMDATE.</p> <p>Where the activity relating to a given instance year is contained within the HESA reporting year Instance.TYPEYR should be coded 1.</p> <p>Students whose normal pattern of study is standard years of instance (Instance.TYPEYR=1) but who in one year undertake a placement and the placement spans HESA reporting years should continue to be recorded as on standard years of instance. If, however, they undertake other taught activity that spans reporting years they should be recorded as on a non-standard year of instance (Instance.TYPEYR=2 or 4).</p> <p>Institutions in Scotland and Wales can only use codes 1 or 2.</p> <p>Foundation degrees</p> <p>Where a student's studies include, within the same instance, a foundation degree to degree bridging course this bridging course element will be shown by code 1 'Foundation degree to degree bridging course' in Instance.BRIDGE and an increased FTE in Instance.STULOAD. Where the bridging course spans HESA reporting years the FTE should all be returned in the second HESA reporting year, this may differ from the method used for other non-standard instance academic years. Institutions should also indicate in Instance.BRIDGE that the student has studied a foundation degree to degree bridging course only in the year in which the FTE is increased. It may be that the inclusion of a foundation degree to degree bridging course means that the year of instance becomes non-standard i.e. no longer contained within the HESA reporting year. However, where the year would otherwise have been recorded as a standard academic year the year should still be recorded as such in this field.</p> <p>Non-standard instance years</p> <p>Instance academic years which overlap HESA reporting years should be coded 2, or</p>

may be sequentially coded 3, (4), 5 in consecutive HESA returns.

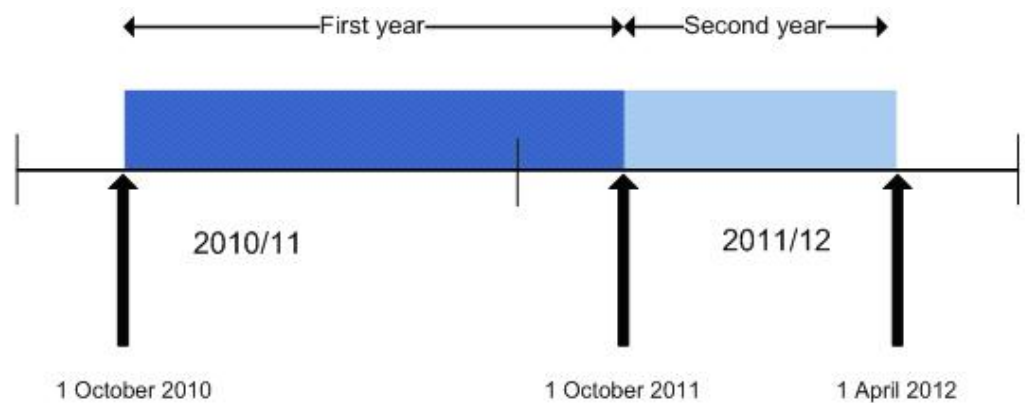
Large numbers of students have Instance.TYPEYR recorded incorrectly, or are changing from non-standard to standard academic years between HESA reporting periods. Institutions are reminded that any student on a full-year course will be on a non-standard academic year, and therefore it is expected that most masters and doctoral students will be returned with a Instance.TYPEYR other than 1.



Reporting year	TYPEYR
2010/11	2 (or 3)
2011/12	2 (or 5)

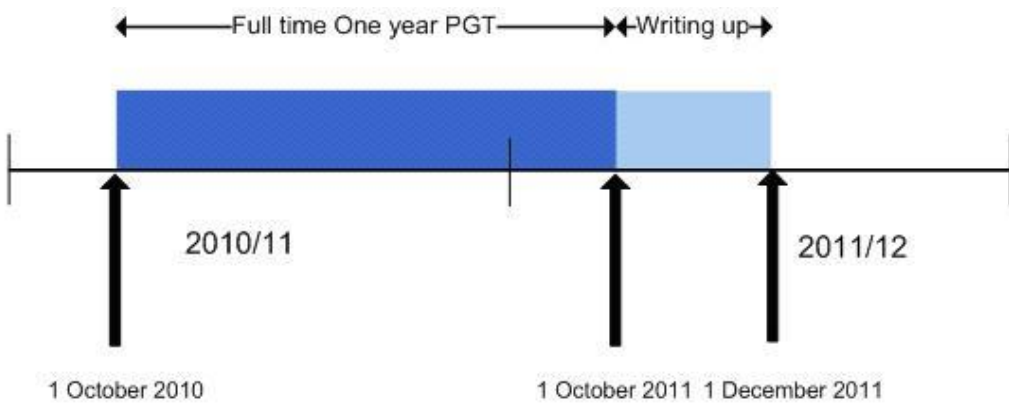
Non-standard to standard instance years

In general, students should not change between non-standard and standard academic years; the exception being where the course includes a partial year that starts and completes within one HESA reporting period. For example a student on an 18 month masters programme starting in October 2010 and running to April 2012, would be recorded as Instance.TYPEYR = 2 in the first HESA return and Instance.TYPEYR = 1 in the second.



Reporting year	TYPEYR
2010/11	2
2011/12	1

Where a postgraduate course changes from an active Instance.MODE to a writing-up Instance.MODE following the anniversary of the Instance.COMDATE in order to complete dissertation work there would also be a change from non-standard to standard. For example, a student studies a one year PGT course running from October 2010 to October 2011 and then moves into writing-up in order to complete their dissertation. For 2010/11 Instance.TYPEYR = 2 and then moves to Instance.TYPEYR = 1 in 2011/12.

	 <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Reporting year</th> <th>TYPEYR</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2010/11</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2011/12</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Reporting year	TYPEYR	2010/11	2	2011/12	1									
Reporting year	TYPEYR															
2010/11	2															
2011/12	1															
Examples	<p>A student completes a foundation degree in June 2008 and then undertakes a bridging course from July to September and then joins the final year of a degree which they complete in June 2009.</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>2007/08</th> <th>2008/09</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COURSEAIM</td> <td>J10</td> <td>H100</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STULOAD</td> <td>100.0</td> <td>130.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TYPEYR</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BRIDGE</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Field	2007/08	2008/09	COURSEAIM	J10	H100	STULOAD	100.0	130.0	TYPEYR	1	1	BRIDGE	0	1
Field	2007/08	2008/09														
COURSEAIM	J10	H100														
STULOAD	100.0	130.0														
TYPEYR	1	1														
BRIDGE	0	1														
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.TYPEYR must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X. 2 Error Instance.TYPEYR must be coded 1 or 2 by institutions in Scotland or Wales. 3 Warning Instance.TYPEYR should not be coded 1 where Instance.FUNDCOMP = 3 unless the student is on a sandwich placement spanning a reporting year, but the normal programme of study is a standard year. 4 Error Instance.TYPEYR must be coded 1 where Instance.COMDATE is greater than or equal to 1 August of the reporting period and Instance.ENDDATE (if not null) is less than or equal to 31 July of the reporting period and Instance.FUNDCOMP = 1 and Instance.RSNEND = 01 or 98. 5 Error Instance.TYPEYR must be coded 1 where Instance.COMDATE in range 01 August - 31 December (regardless of year) and Instance.ENDDATE in range 01 January - 31 July (regardless of year) and Instance.RSNEND is coded 01 or 98. 6 Warning Instance.TYPEYR should not be coded 1 where Instance.FUNDCOMP = 11, 21 or 31 and anniversary of Instance.COMDATE in academic year > 20 September and Instance.MODE = 01. 7 Warning Instance.TYPEYR should not normally be coded 1 where Course.COURSEAIM begins D or L. 8 Error Instance.TYPEYR must not be coded 3 where Instance.COMDATE < Y1-08-01. 9 Error Instance.TYPEYR must not be coded 4 or 5 where Instance.COMDATE > Y1-07-31. 															
Reason Required	To show the relationship between the instance academic year and the HESA reporting year, to support population definitions and to ensure single-counting.															
Part Of	Instance															
Field Length	1															
Minimum Occurrences	0															

Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: TYPEYR Data type: TYPEYRCodeContentType
Related Fields	STULOAD
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated to extend coverage to include the Unistats (09) reduced return. Business rules 8 and 9 added for institutions in England and Northern Ireland to validate that codes 3, 4 and 5 are used correctly.

Units of length

Type	field												
Short Name	UNITLGTH												
Description	This field denotes the units of length associated with Instance.SPLENGTH.												
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales												
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09												
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="border: none;"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Years</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>Months</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>Weeks</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>Days</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>Hours</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>Not applicable</td></tr> </table>	1	Years	2	Months	3	Weeks	4	Days	5	Hours	9	Not applicable
1	Years												
2	Months												
3	Weeks												
4	Days												
5	Hours												
9	Not applicable												
Notes	<p>Only in cases where Instance.SPLENGTH is null, unknown length, may this field be coded 9.</p> <p>Semesters, trimesters and terms are not of uniform length throughout the sector and should be converted into years/months/weeks.</p> <p>The lowest appropriate value of UNITLGTH should be used e.g. length should be expressed in terms of years, if appropriate, rather than months.</p> <p>Foundation and sandwich years</p> <p>It is not expected that the length of study be adjusted for individual students. However, where there are different options that students can take, for example, foundation years and sandwich placements, it is expected that the length reflects the options taken. For example, where a student undertakes an integrated foundation year it is normally expected that the length be recorded as one year longer than if the student had just taken a stand-alone degree.</p>												
Business rules	<table style="border: none;"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Error</td><td>Instance.UNITLGTH must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09.</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>Error</td><td>Instance.UNITLGTH cannot be coded 5 by institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3.</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>Error</td><td>Instance.UNITLGTH code 9 must have Instance.SPLENGTH ReasonForNull = 9</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>Error</td><td>Instance.UNITLGTH must be coded 9 where Instance.SPLENGTH ReasonForNull = 9</td></tr> </table>	1	Error	Instance.UNITLGTH must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09.	2	Error	Instance.UNITLGTH cannot be coded 5 by institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3.	3	Error	Instance.UNITLGTH code 9 must have Instance.SPLENGTH ReasonForNull = 9	4	Error	Instance.UNITLGTH must be coded 9 where Instance.SPLENGTH ReasonForNull = 9
1	Error	Instance.UNITLGTH must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09.											
2	Error	Instance.UNITLGTH cannot be coded 5 by institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3.											
3	Error	Instance.UNITLGTH code 9 must have Instance.SPLENGTH ReasonForNull = 9											
4	Error	Instance.UNITLGTH must be coded 9 where Instance.SPLENGTH ReasonForNull = 9											
Reason Required	To monitor patterns of study.												
Part Of	Instance												
Field Length	1												
Minimum Occurrences	0												
Maximum Occurrences	1												
Schema Components	Element: UNITLGTH Data type: UNITLGTHCodeContentType												
Related Fields	SPLENGTH!												

Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid, and to enforce coverage for the Unistats (09) reduced return.

Withdrawal Reason

Type	field
Short Name	WITHDRAWREASON
Description	This field identifies the reason why the learner has withdrawn from the learning aim
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where (Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4) and (Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01) and (Instance.PROGTYPE = (02, 03, 10, 20 or 21) or (Instance.FUNDMODEL is between 21 and 82 inclusive) and Instance.CSTAT = 3.
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>01 Learner ALSN (Additional learning or social needs) status changed, so a new aim has been created</p> <p>02 Learner transferred to another provider</p> <p>03 Learner injury / illness</p> <p>07 Learner transferred between providers due to intervention by the Skills Funding Agency or EPA</p> <p>29 Learner has been made redundant</p> <p>40 The learner has transferred to a new learning aim with the same provider</p> <p>41 The learner has transferred to another provider to undertake learning that meets a specific government strategy</p> <p>97 Other</p> <p>98 Reason not known</p>
Notes	<p>This field must be completed for all learning aims that have a completion status of withdrawn, apart from ASL (Instance.FUNDMODEL = 10) and non-Apprenticeship non-funded learning aims where it is optional.</p> <p>This field has been made available for non-funded Apprenticeship learners. It does not need to be recorded for any other type of non-funded learning.</p> <p>Code 41 'The learner has transferred to another provider to undertake learning that meets a specific government strategy' has been added for 2012/13 at the request of the Skills Funding Agency, to identify where a learner has transferred to another provider into learning that aligns with a specific government strategy. For 2012/13, this should only be used to identify learners who have transferred onto Apprenticeship provision as inferred in "Investing in Skills for Sustainable Growth (BIS, Nov 2010)".</p> <p>The use of code 41 will not be audited, however it will be closely monitored to ensure it is being used appropriately. The Skills Funding Agency intends to exclude this type of transfer from their success rate calculations but the Education Funding Agency (EFA) will not be making any changes to their current methodology.</p> <p>Code 40 'The learner has transferred to a new learning aim with the same provider' should be used if the learner has withdrawn from this learning aim and as a direct result has at the same time started studying for another learning aim within the same provider.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error For institutions in England Instance.WITHDRAWREASON must exist where (Instance.FUNDMODEL is equal to 21, 22, 45, 70, 80, 81 or 82 or Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 20, or 21) and Instance.CSTAT = 3 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.WITHDRAWREASON must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.WITHDRAWREASON must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p>

Reason Required	For use in performance management.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: WITHDRAWREASON Data type: WITHDRAWREASONCodeContentType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Coverage statement revised to remove code 99 from FUNDMODEL clause. Statement reordered for clarity. Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Year of course

Type	field															
Short Name	YEARPRG															
Description	This field indicates the year number of the course that the student is currently studying. This could be different from the year of student if the student has changed course or re-taken a year.															
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales															
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.															
Notes	<p>Courses of less than one year should be coded 1 in this field.</p> <p>Institutions may return code 99 if the course structure does not enable Year of course to be derived.</p> <p>In cases where foundation years are integral to degree programmes, the foundation year should be shown as Year 0 in this field and 'degree' in Course.COURSEAIM. This will allow a clear distinction to be made between stand-alone Foundation courses and those which are integral to degree programmes. The relationship between this field and Instance.YEARSTU in these circumstances is shown in the table below.</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Year</th> <th>YEARSTU</th> <th>YEARPRG</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Foundation year</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>First year</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Second year</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Third year</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>This field should not increment for students who are writing-up, but Instance.YEARSTU would increment on the anniversary of their starting date.</p> <p>This field should be incremented for each year of a course a student studies. Therefore, where students do not repeat any studies, year of course will increment each reporting year. In particular, where students study full-time courses on a part-time basis the year of course should still increment every year. For example, if a student is studying a degree normally taken full-time over 3 years, over 6 years part-time, the year of course should start at 1 and increase each reporting year to 6.</p> <p>The length of this field is 2 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros, e.g. 03 or 3.</p>	Year	YEARSTU	YEARPRG	Foundation year	1	0	First year	2	1	Second year	3	2	Third year	4	3
Year	YEARSTU	YEARPRG														
Foundation year	1	0														
First year	2	1														
Second year	3	2														
Third year	4	3														
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Instance.YEARPRG must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 09 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X. 2 Warning Instance.YEARPRG code 0 should have Course.COURSEAIM beginning with H or I. 3 Warning Instance.YEARPRG should be less than or equal to Instance.SPLENGTH where Instance.UNITLGTH = 1 and Instance.YEARPRG is not coded 99. 4 Error Instance.YEARPRG must not equal 0 if (Instance.UNITLGTH = 1 and Instance.SPLENGTH = 1) or (Instance.UNITLGTH = 2 and Instance.SPLENGTH < 13) or (Instance.UNITLGTH = 3 and Instance.SPLENGTH < 53). 5 Warning Where Instance.YEARPRG is not equal to 99 and Instance.UNITLGTH = 															

	<p>2, Instance.YEARPRG should be less than or equal to Instance.SPLENGTH divided by 12.</p> <p>6 Error For institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Wales, Instance.YEARPRG must not equal 99 where Instance.UNITLGTH = 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 and Instance.MODE not equal to 63 or 64.</p> <p>7 Error For institutions in Scotland, Instance.YEARPRG must not equal 99 where Instance.UNITLGTH = 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 and Instance.MODE not equal to 39, 63 or 64.</p>
Reason Required	To track student progression; used in conjunction with YEARSTU, for example, for the identification of direct entrants to later years of programmes, and to identify courses with a foundation year, to support entry qualification calculations, and to identify students for inclusion in the National Students Survey.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: YEARPRG
Related Fields	YEARSTU
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated to extend coverage to include the Unistats (09) reduced return. Business rule 3 updated and rule 5 added to validate that YEARPRG is not greater than the expected length of the course regardless of mode of study. Business rule 4 added to validate that where a course includes a foundation year, the expected length of the course is longer than one year. Business rule 6 added for institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales to validate that year of course is returned where there is a defined normal length for the programme of study. Business rule 7 added for institutions in Scotland to validate that year of course is returned for structured taught courses where there is a defined normal length for the programme of study.

Year of student on this instance

Type	field
Short Name	YEARSTU
Description	This field indicates the year number that the student is in since enrolling for a course leading to the student's qualification aim (whether or not the intended subject or class has changed) i.e. number of years on this student instance. This could be different from the year of course if the student has changed course or retaken a year.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.
Notes	<p>The year of postgraduate research students should increment on the anniversary of their starting date.</p> <p>Students whose first term is waived should be deemed to have started when that first term would have started.</p> <p>This field should not be incremented for periods of dormancy, i.e. codes 63 or 64 in instance.MODE. For example, if a student becomes dormant after their first year of study, and remains out of the system for one year, on resuming their studies this field would be returned as 02.</p> <p>This field should be incremented for a sandwich placement year and both compulsory and optional years out.</p> <p>In cases where a student has to repeat a year, this field should be incremented.</p> <p>It is not expected that there would be many students where this field is greater than 10 years.</p> <p>Further guidance on the role of this field in HIN linking can be found in the HIN guidance document.</p> <p>For further details of the inter-relationship between YEARPRG and YEARSTU please see notes in Instance.YEARPRG.</p> <p>The length of this field is 2 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros, e.g. 03 or 3.</p>
Examples	Examples of the way in which this updated over time can be found in the HIN guidance document.
Business rules	<p>1 Error Instance.YEARSTU must exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>2 Error Instance.YEARSTU value cannot be greater than the difference in years between 31 July of the reporting period and the 01 August before Instance.COMDATE.</p> <p>3 Error Instance.YEARSTU must not equal 1 where Instance.TYPEYR = 1 and</p>

	Instance.COMDATE < Y1-08-01 and Instance.MODE is not equal to 63, 64, 73 or 74
Reason Required	To track student progression; used in conjunction with instance.YEARPRG.
Part Of	Instance
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: YEARSTU Data type: YEARSTUType
Related Fields	YEARPRG
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 3 updated to exclude modes 73 and 74 from the coverage of the rule.

Institution

Type	entity
Short Name	Institution
Description	This describes the reporting institution
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Every submission must include a single Institution element
Notes	
Reason Required	The institution entity contains the student elements and provides a home for any institution-wide attributes.
Part Of	
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Has Parts	Course Module UK Provider Reference Number (UKPRN) Record type indicator (RECID) Indicator for HEFCE funding approximations (INSTAPP) Student
Owner	HESA
Version	

Indicator for HEFCE funding approximations

Type	field
Short Name	INSTAPP
Description	This field describes whether an institution is opting to complete the fields Instance.LOADYRA, Instance.LOADYRB and StudentOnModule.MODYR that will allow HEFCE to remove the approximations that are currently included in their re-creation of the HESES return which counts FTE against years of instance rather than HESA reporting years.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland
Coverage	Institutions in England and Northern Ireland
Valid Entries and Labels	0 Institution relying on HEFCE algorithms for HESES recreation 1 Institution choosing to provide additional information in records to reduce the reliance on HEFCE approximations for HESES recreation
Notes	<p>Institutions can opt to provide additional information in the Student record which HEFCE will then use to count FTE against years of instance in place of the approximations used in the HESES recreation algorithms.</p> <p>If institutions do opt to provide this information, then the fields Instance.LOADYRA, Instance.LOADYRB and StudentOnModule.MODYR must be completed for all student instances in the record. Institutions would indicate this by completing this field with code 1 'Institution choosing to provide additional information in records to reduce the reliance on HEFCE approximations for HESES recreation'.</p> <p>If institutions are content to continue using the HEFCE algorithms, then this field will be completed with Code 0 'Institution relying on HEFCE algorithms for HESES recreation'</p> <p>HEFCE advises that provision of the additional information is only likely to make a significant difference for institutions with high numbers of student instances with non-standard academic years and where these numbers are changing substantially year on year or the intensity of study or cost centre mix changes over the duration of the programme. The change to counting method for HESES11 means that even where these fields are completed HEFCE will continue to have to make some approximations.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Institution.INSTAPP must exist for institutions in England.</p> <p>2 Error Institution.INSTAPP must not exist for institutions in Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error Institution.INSTAPP must exist for institutions in Northern Ireland where Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 03, 08 or 09.</p>
Reason Required	To allow institutions to provide information to be used in HEFCE HESES recreation algorithms.
Part Of	Institution
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: INSTAPP Data type: INSTAPPCodeContentType

Related Fields	LOADYRA LOADYRB MODYR STULOAD
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 3 amended to enforce coverage for the SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return and the Unistats (09) reduced return. The reference to 04 reduced return has been removed in line with the change in coverage for LOADYRA/B for C11051.

Record type indicator

Type	field
Short Name	RECID
Description	The standard HESA record type identifier.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All institutions
Valid Entries and Labels	12051 2012/13 Student Record
Notes	A single record type covers all of the entities in the XML file.
Reason Required	To identify the type of data being submitted and to aid the processing and quality assurance of data.
Part Of	Institution
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: RECID Data type: RECIDCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

UK Provider Reference Number

Type	field
Short Name	UKPRN
Description	This field records the UK Provider Reference Number which is the unique identifier allocated to institutions by the UK Register of Learning Providers (UKRLP).
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All institutions
Notes	<p>A single register of learning providers is being developed, and the specification of this field falls within the scope of the Aligned Data Definitions and follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record. In the long-term it is anticipated that the UKPRN will replace the plethora of institution identifiers used by different organisations in the education sector.</p> <p>A software developers toolkit - to support the development of UKRLP web services - can be found on the Data Service website.</p>
Reason Required	To identify source of record; used by HESA and all Statutory Customers to identify institution of student.
Part Of	Institution
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: UKPRN Data type: UKPRNType
Owner	UK Register of Learning Providers
Version	1.0

Learner Employment Status

Type	entity
Short Name	LearnerEmploymentStatus
Description	This entity collects employment status at different times for different types of learner dependent upon the type of learning provision being undertaken.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	Instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01 and Instance.FUNDMODEL is between 22 and 99 inclusive.
Notes	<p>Which learners and learning aims is employment status data collected for?</p> <p>An Employment status record is required for all instances associated with adult learners apart from OLASS funded learners (LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFFAMTYPE of LDM and a LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFFAMCODE of 086) and those with only ASL funded (Instance.FUNDMODEL = 10) learning aims. Adult learners are learners over 19 on 31 August of the teaching year in which the learning started. Employment status records are required for all Apprenticeship and ESF funded learners of all ages.</p> <p>The Employment status (LearnerEmploymentStatus.EMPSTAT) and Date employment status applies (LearnerEmploymentStatus.DATEEMPSTATAPP) must be completed on all employment status records. Date the employment status applies indicates the date the employment status was confirmed to apply. It is not necessarily the date on which the employment status changed.</p> <p>The Employer identifier (LearnerEmploymentStatus.EMPID) and Workplace location postcode (LearnerEmploymentStatus.WORKLOCPOSTCODE) are required only for learners undertaking Apprenticeship programmes (both funded and funded, Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 20 or 21) and other workplace learning aims (Instance.FUNDMODEL = 45).</p> <p>When to collect employment status data from learners</p> <p>A learner employment status entity must be created with LearnerEmployStatus.DATEEMPSTATAPP on or before the start of the learning agreement or plan. A learner may undertake several learning aims within a single learning agreement or plan, and a learner employment status entity must be created for each appropriate instance.</p> <p>Learner Eligibility</p> <p>Providers must ensure that the learner meets any employment related eligibility criteria for the learning aims being undertaken. For example for ESF, where a learner's funding eligibility is determined by employment status on the day before learning, it is the provider's responsibility to make sure the learner meets the criteria.</p> <p>Updating employment status records</p> <p>Classroom Learning</p> <p>There is no need to add new Learner Employment Status records if the learner's employment status changes during the learning agreement or plan. If a new learning</p>

	<p>agreement or plan is started then the learner's employment status should be reviewed and an up-to-date record created for the new instance(s).</p> <p>Workplace Learning</p> <p>The employment status of learners undertaking workplace learning should also be reviewed and updated as detailed above if the learner progresses to subsequent learning after completing all of the activities on their original learning agreement or plan, for example, if a learner progresses from an Intermediate to Advanced Level Apprenticeship.</p> <p>In addition, a new employment status record for learners undertaking workplace training must also be added in the following circumstances:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the learner was unemployed prior to starting their workplace learning • If the learner was employed with a different employer prior to starting their workplace learning. <p>In these circumstances a new employment status record should be added with a date of the first day of learning to indicate the learner is employed and to record the Employer ID of the employer with whom they are doing the workplace training.</p> <p>If a learner is employed with a different employer prior to starting their workplace training then only the Employer ID of the employer that the learner is undertaking the workplace training with needs to be recorded.</p> <p>There is no requirement to add a new Employment status record if a learner's employer changes during their workplace training. However as this is not validated, additional records can be included and will not cause validation errors. The Employer Responsive funding calculation uses the Employer ID of the employer at the start of learning.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error For institutions in England LearnerEmploymentStatus entity must exist where (Instance.FUNDMODEL = 22, 45 or 70 or Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 20 or 21) and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error LearnerEmploymentStatus entity must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error LearnerEmploymentStatus entity must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p>
Reason Required	This entity is defined to hold information about learner employment status. Data about a learner's employment status is collected to demonstrate how the FE sector is contributing to improving the employability of the learners.
Part Of	Instance
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	unbounded
Has Parts	<p>Employment status (EMPSTAT)</p> <p>Date employment status applies to (DATEEMPSTATAPP)</p> <p>Employer identifier (EMPID)</p> <p>Workplace location postcode (WORKLOCPOSTCODE)</p> <p>Employment status monitoring</p>
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management	Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new entity.

notes	
-------	--

Date employment status applies to

Type	field
Short Name	DATEEMPSTATAPP
Description	The field identifies the date on which the employment status (LearnerEmploymentStatus.EMPSTAT) applies.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All LearnerEmploymentStatus records that are returned
Notes	<p>The date of one of the employment status records must be before the start date of the earliest recorded learning aim or programme aim.</p> <p>The 'Date the employment status applies' indicates the date the employment status was confirmed to apply. It is not necessarily the date on which the employment status changed.</p> <p>This field must contain a valid date in the format YYYY-MM-DD.</p>
Reason Required	To identify the time period which the employment status applies to and enable matching of employment status records to episodes of learning.
Part Of	Learner Employment Status
Field Length	10
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: DATEEMPSTATAPP
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.1
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Coverage statement and guidance revised to align more closely with the Individual Learner Record (ILR).

Employer identifier

Type	field
Short Name	EMPID
Description	This field identifies the employer that the learner is employed by for the workplace learning.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	LearnerEmploymentStatus records where (Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 20 or 21, or Instance.FUNDMODEL = 45).
Notes	<p>This field must be recorded for all learners undertaking Employer Responsive funded learning (Instance.FUNDMODEL = 45). This includes learners who are volunteers and undertaking workplace training as a volunteer with an employer. The employment status of a learner who is a volunteer should not be recorded as "in paid employment" unless they are in paid employment with another employer.</p> <p>This field has been made available for non-funded Apprenticeship learners. It does not need to be recorded for any other type of non-funded learning.</p> <p>This field must contain a valid employer number from the Employer Data Service (EDS) for all employer responsive provision.</p> <p>Where a learner is placed with more than one employer at the start of the learning aim, the identifier of the employer that provides the main or most relevant placement should be returned. Where this is not clear return the identifier of one of the employers.</p> <p>Self-employed learners will require an employer number from the EDS.</p> <p>The EDS can be found at: http://EDRS.lsc.gov.uk.</p> <p>To obtain a new employer number, contact Blue Sheep on either 01242 545 346 or by emailing eds@bluesheep.com.</p> <p>If the learner is unemployed or is not placed with an employer at the start of their learning aim or apprenticeship programme, this field does not need to be returned. Once the learner becomes employed, a new employment status record should be returned with the employer number returned.</p> <p>Please view the Provider Support Manual 2012/13 from The Information Authority for more details.</p>
Business rules	1 Error LearnerEmploymentStatus.EMPID must exist where (Instance.FUNDMODEL = 45 or Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 20 or 21) and LearnerEmploymentStatus.EMPSTAT = 10.
Reason Required	Enables identification of employer for funding and assists with labour market intelligence.
Part Of	Learner Employment Status

Field Length	9
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: EMPID Data type: EMPIDType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Employment status

Type	field
Short Name	EMPSTAT
Description	This field indicates the learner's employment status.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All LearnerEmploymentStatus records that are returned.
Valid Entries and Labels	10 In paid employment 11 Not in paid employment and looking for work 12 Not in paid employment and not looking for work 98 Not known / not provided
Notes	<p>Employment status definitions:</p> <p>In paid employment: Learners who have not been in paid work prior to starting the learning aim or programme or who are temporarily away from a job (for example, on holiday). Also counted as in paid employment are people on government-supported training schemes and people who do unpaid work for their family's business.</p> <p>Not in paid employment and looking for work: Learners who have not have not been in paid work prior to starting the learning aim or programme, who are without a job, want a job, have actively sought work in the last 4 weeks and are available to start work in the next 2 weeks, or have found a job and are waiting to start it.</p> <p>Further guidance about the collection of Employment status for learners can be found in the Provider support manual for 2012/13</p> <p>Please view The Individualised Learner Record (ILR) specification from The Information Authority for more details.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor economic activity of learners, support delivery of programmes for the unemployed and establish eligibility for ESF funded programmes.
Part Of	Learner Employment Status
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: EMPSTAT Data type: EMPSTATCodeContentType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.1
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Coverage statement and guidance revised to align more closely with the Individual Learner Record (ILR).

Workplace location postcode

Type	field
Short Name	WORKLOCPOSTCODE
Description	This field indicates the postcode of the location of the workplace at start of learning.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	LearnerEmploymentStatus records where (Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 20 or 21, or Instance.FUNDMODEL = 45).
Notes	<p>This field must be recorded for all learners undertaking employer responsive funded learning and non-funded Apprenticeships. It does not need to be recorded for any other type of non-funded learning.</p> <p>This field should hold the postcode of the location where the learner is employed or undertaking a work placement and not that of the employer's head office.</p> <p>If the workplace location postcode is not available, for example where a learner is on placement at a building site, providers should record either the postcode of the employer's main premises or the provider's postcode. If the postcode is unknown, an empty element should be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 1 (not known), i.e:</p> <pre><WORKLOCPOSTCODE ReasonForNull="1"></WORKLOCPOSTCODE></pre>
Business rules	1 Error LearnerEmploymentStatus.WORKLOCPOSTCODE must exist where (Instance.FUNDMODEL = 45 or Instance.PROGTYPE = 02, 03, 10, 20 or 21) and LearnerEmploymentStatus.EMPSTAT = 10.
Reason Required	Labour market information.
Part Of	Learner Employment Status
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: WORKLOCPOSTCODE Data type: PostCodeWithNullStructure
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 added to enforce coverage of new field.

Learner funding and monitoring

Type	entity																																																																															
Short Name	LearnerFAM																																																																															
Description	Data collected in the learner funding and monitoring (FAM) entity is used to identify additional attributes of the learner that will either inform funding of the learner or additional monitoring.																																																																															
Applicable to	England																																																																															
Coverage	All instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01																																																																															
Notes	<p>The LearnerFAM.LEARNFAMTYPE identifies the type of data to be collected and is recorded with an associated FAM Identifier. Both a LearnerFAM.LEARNFAMTYPE and LearnerFAM.LEARNFAMCODE are required for this data to be unique.</p> <p>A maximum of fifteen LearnerFAM records can be returned for each learner.</p> <p>If the LearnerFAM entity is returned then both the LearnerFAM.LEARNFAMTYPE and LearnerFAM.LEARNFAMCODE must be recorded.</p> <p>This field should only be returned where a FAM type applies to the learner.</p> <p>The following table shows the requirement for this field:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>16-18 LR</th> <th>ALR</th> <th>Apps</th> <th>Other ER</th> <th>ESF</th> <th>ASL</th> <th>Other funding</th> <th>No funding</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Eligibility for 16-18 funding entitlement (EFE)</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Learning difficulty assessment (LDA)</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Additional learning support (ALS)</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Disadvantage uplift eligibility (DUE)</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Learner support reason (LSR)</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Discretionary support funds (DSF)</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> </tr> <tr> <td>National learner monitoring (NLM)</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Where: o means this field is optional and this field is completed in some circumstances for aims funded by the funding model.</p>									16-18 LR	ALR	Apps	Other ER	ESF	ASL	Other funding	No funding	Eligibility for 16-18 funding entitlement (EFE)	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	nc	Learning difficulty assessment (LDA)	o	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	nc	Additional learning support (ALS)	o	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	nc	Disadvantage uplift eligibility (DUE)	o	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	nc	Learner support reason (LSR)	o	o	o	o	nc	nc	o	nc	Discretionary support funds (DSF)	o	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	o	National learner monitoring (NLM)	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o
	16-18 LR	ALR	Apps	Other ER	ESF	ASL	Other funding	No funding																																																																								
Eligibility for 16-18 funding entitlement (EFE)	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	nc																																																																								
Learning difficulty assessment (LDA)	o	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	nc																																																																								
Additional learning support (ALS)	o	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	nc																																																																								
Disadvantage uplift eligibility (DUE)	o	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	nc																																																																								
Learner support reason (LSR)	o	o	o	o	nc	nc	o	nc																																																																								
Discretionary support funds (DSF)	o	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	o																																																																								
National learner monitoring (NLM)	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o																																																																								

nc means this field is not collected and this data is not collected or returned for aims funded by the funding model.

LEARNFAMTYPE	LEARNFAMTYPE Description	Definition	Reason required
EFE	Eligibility for 16 - 18 funding entitlement	To indicate eligibility for 16 - 18 funding entitlement	To calculate funding and monitor eligibility for enhanced learner responsive funding
LDA	Learning difficulty assessment	To indicate if a learner has a Section 139A Learning Difficulty Assessment	To monitor learners assessed as requiring additional learning support
ALS	Additional learning support	The type of additional learning support applicable to the learner	To monitor learners assessed as requiring additional learning support
DUE	Disadvantage uplift eligibility	Indicates the reason for disadvantage uplift for learners for whom uplift is claimed	To monitor disadvantage and calculate funding
LSR	Learner support reason	Identifies categories of other learner support for the learner	To identify the demand for, and participation in, learner support and to assist in the evaluation of its effectiveness and to calculate an element of the provider factor
DSF	Discretionary support funds	Identifies categories of discretionary support funds for the learner	To identify the demand for, and allocation of discretionary support funds and to assist in the evaluation of its effectiveness
NLM	National learner monitoring	Identifies participation in programmes or initiatives	To monitor participation in programmes and initiatives. Can be used tactically in year to identify new programmes and initiatives by using codes described as unassigned at the start of the year.

Eligibility for 16-18 funding entitlement (EFE) Max no. of occurrences: 1

This code should be used if the learner started their programme aged 16-18, is studying full-time (420 glh (guided learning hours) or more) across any 12 month period, and has access to tutorials and enrichment studies. If these conditions are not met in any given year then the learner is not eligible for 16-18 entitlement funding. Please see the Provider Support Manual for further information.

Learning difficulty assessment (LDA) Max no. of occurrences: 1

Additional Learning Support (ALS) Max no. of occurrences: 1

Additional learning support is: "any activity that provides direct support for learning to individual learners, over and above that which is provided normally in a standard learning programme which leads to their primary learning goal. The additional support is required to help learners gain access to, progress towards and successfully achieve their learning goals. The need for additional support may arise from a learning difficulty and disability, or from literacy, numeracy or language support requirements."

It is important to distinguish between additional learning support and learner support. The purpose of learner support funds is to provide financial help to learners whose access to, or completion of, education might be inhibited by financial considerations. These funds can assist learners with the costs of childcare, residential accommodation or general access needs.

Providers are expected to keep specific audit evidence for data recorded in this field. The learner's agreement should give a summary of the additional support to be provided and a copy of an additional learner support costs form should be retained with the learning agreement. The information contained on the form should be supported by further detailed costs analysis. This is intended as auditable evidence in support of a claim for additional support funds.

This field should be completed based on the projected ALS cost from the initial assessment and must not be updated once the actual ALS cost is known.

The projected cost of additional learning support (ALS) at the initial assessment determines which Agency will fund a learner aged 19-24 at the start of learning. The ALS projected cost threshold is currently £5,500 or more but this is subject to change.

If the learner is aged 19-24 at the start of learning and the projected cost of additional learning support is £5,500 or more then the learning will be funded by the EFA and code 107 should be recorded in the LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAMCODE for Sources of funding (LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAMTYPE = SOF).

If the learner is aged 19-24 at the start of learning and the projected cost of additional learning support is less than £5,500 then the learning will be funded by the Skills Funding Agency and code 105 should be recorded in the LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAMCODE for Sources of funding (LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAMTYPE = SOF).

If a learner funded by the EFA reaches the age of 25 before completing the learning aim, then any learning that continues into the following academic year will be funded by the Skills Funding Agency from the start of the next academic year. The value of LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAMCODE field for Sources of funding (LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAMTYPE = SOF), should be amended from code 107 to code 105 from the start of the next HESA reporting year.

	<p>Disadvantage Uplift Eligibility (DUE) Max no. of occurrences: 1</p> <p>Some learners will qualify for a disadvantage uplift for two or even three reasons. Nearly half of the basic skills learners are already eligible for an uplift. In these circumstances, the provider may claim the highest uplift factor.</p> <p>For further details on when to use code 96 refer to the funding guidance.</p> <p>Learner Support Reason (LSR) Max no. of occurrences: 4</p> <p>Where more than one category of learner support applies to a learner, the entity should be repeated up to four times to return each applicable LearnerFAM.LEARNFAMTYPE code.</p> <p>Time off for study (code 41) is the government guarantee that any young person who has not reached level 2 and who has become employed in a job without training has the right (by law) to seek time off from their employer to receive training at level 2 or higher.</p> <p>Discretionary Support Funds (DSF) Max no. of occurrences: 5</p> <p>These codes are used to monitor the distribution of the enhanced discretionary support fund from the Skills Funding Agency.</p> <p>Code 1 (19+ Hardship - fees) should only be used with prior agreement from the Skills Funding Agency. Refer to the Learner Support Programme Discretionary Funding Guidance and Requirements.</p> <p>National Learner Monitoring (NLM) Max no. of occurrences: 2</p> <p>Use of LearnerFAM.LEARNFAMCODEs:</p> <p>Codes 12 - 14 are to monitor the ICT Pathfinder Project, and which aims to develop and pilot approaches to delivering the ICT Skills for Life curriculum.</p> <p>Code 17 is used to identify learner records which are being migrated between providers as part of a merger. This code should be recorded on the learner record being migrated from the original provider and on the learner record at the new provider to allow the records to be matched.</p> <p>Code 18 is used to identify learners moved to a different provider as a result of the Minimum Contract Level.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error LearnerFAM entity must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>2 Error LearnerFAM entity must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p>
Reason Required	
Part Of	Instance
Minimum Occurrences	0

Maximum Occurrences	15
Has Parts	Learner funding and monitoring type (LEARNFAMTYPE) Learner funding and monitoring code (LEARNFAMCODE)
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1 and 2 added to enforce coverage of new entity.

Learner funding and monitoring code

Type	field																																	
Short Name	LEARNFAMCODE																																	
Description	This field identifies the funding or monitoring code being recorded																																	
Applicable to	England																																	
Coverage	All LearnerFAM records that are returned.																																	
Notes	<p>For additional guidance on this field please refer to the LearnerFAM entity notes.</p> <p>The following table shows the valid codes for LearnerFAM.LEARNFAMCODE depending on the codes in LearnerFAM.LEARNFAMTYPE. The use of unassigned codes is only to be authorised by the Information Authority, and should not be used by providers unless such authorisation has been published.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">FAM Type</th> <th style="text-align: left;">FAM Code</th> <th style="text-align: left;">FAM Code Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>EFE</td> <td>12</td> <td>Learner is eligible for 16-18 funding entitlement</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LDA</td> <td>1</td> <td>Learner has a Section 139A Learning Difficulty Assessment</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ALS</td> <td>2</td> <td>Learner has been assessed as requiring a high level of additional learning support (projected costs)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ALS</td> <td>3</td> <td>Learner has been assessed as requiring a low level of additional learning support (projected costs)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUE</td> <td>1</td> <td>Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift - from deprived area postcode on file</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUE</td> <td>2</td> <td>Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift - from deprived area postcode not on file</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUE</td> <td>71</td> <td>Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift - studying basic skills programme</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUE</td> <td>96</td> <td>Learner is in a group eligible for disadvantage uplift as described in the funding guidance</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUE</td> <td>98</td> <td>Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift – other reason</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LSR</td> <td>32</td> <td>Professional and Career Development Loan</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	FAM Type	FAM Code	FAM Code Description	EFE	12	Learner is eligible for 16-18 funding entitlement	LDA	1	Learner has a Section 139A Learning Difficulty Assessment	ALS	2	Learner has been assessed as requiring a high level of additional learning support (projected costs)	ALS	3	Learner has been assessed as requiring a low level of additional learning support (projected costs)	DUE	1	Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift - from deprived area postcode on file	DUE	2	Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift - from deprived area postcode not on file	DUE	71	Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift - studying basic skills programme	DUE	96	Learner is in a group eligible for disadvantage uplift as described in the funding guidance	DUE	98	Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift – other reason	LSR	32	Professional and Career Development Loan
FAM Type	FAM Code	FAM Code Description																																
EFE	12	Learner is eligible for 16-18 funding entitlement																																
LDA	1	Learner has a Section 139A Learning Difficulty Assessment																																
ALS	2	Learner has been assessed as requiring a high level of additional learning support (projected costs)																																
ALS	3	Learner has been assessed as requiring a low level of additional learning support (projected costs)																																
DUE	1	Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift - from deprived area postcode on file																																
DUE	2	Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift - from deprived area postcode not on file																																
DUE	71	Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift - studying basic skills programme																																
DUE	96	Learner is in a group eligible for disadvantage uplift as described in the funding guidance																																
DUE	98	Learner is eligible for disadvantage uplift – other reason																																
LSR	32	Professional and Career Development Loan																																

		(Skills Funding Agency funded learners only)
LSR	36	Care to Learn (C2L) (EFA funded learners only)
LSR	37	Residential Support Scheme (RSS)
LSR	41	Time off for study
LSR	54	Adult Education Bursary (AEB) (Skills Funding Agency funded learners only)
LSR	55	16 - 19 Bursary Fund - learner is a member of a vulnerable group and has been awarded a full or pro-rata bursary (EFA funded learners only)
LSR	56	16 - 19 Bursary Fund - learner has been awarded a discretionary bursary (EFA funded learners only)
LSR	57	Residential support (EFA funded learners only)
LSR	58-60	Unassigned
DSF	1	19+ Hardship - fees
DSF	3	19+ Hardship - general (books, equipment, emergency accommodation, etc)
DSF	5	19+ Hardship - transport
DSF	7	20+ Childcare
DSF	11	Residential Bursary Fund
DSF	12-15	Unassigned
NLM	12	Learner following an ICT Skill for Life qualification
NLM	13	Learner following an ICT qualification at level 2 or below that is not mapped to the ICT Skill for Life Standard
NLM	14	Tutors following an ICT qualification as a Skill for Life Professional Development Course
NLM	15	Ex-Carter and Carter learners
NLM	17	Learner migrated as part of provider merger
NLM	18	Learner moved as a result of Minimum Contract Level
NLM	19-25	Unassigned

Reason Required	To identify additional funding and/or monitoring characteristics of the learner
Part Of	Learner funding and monitoring
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: LEARNFAMCODE
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.1
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Coverage statement and guidance revised to align more closely with the Individual Learner Record (ILR). Label for DSF code 07 '19+ Childcare' changed to '20+ Childcare' to align with the Individual Learner Record. Datatype changed from 'xs:nonNegativeInteger' to 'xs:positiveInteger' to prevent '0' from being returned in this field.

Learner funding and monitoring type

Type	field														
Short Name	LEARNFAMTYPE														
Description	This field identifies the funding or monitoring type being recorded														
Applicable to	England														
Coverage	All LearnerFAM records that are returned.														
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="border: none; width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 100px;">EFE</td> <td>Eligibility for 16 - 18 funding entitlement</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LDA</td> <td>Learning difficulty assessment</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ALS</td> <td>Additional learning support</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUE</td> <td>Disadvantage uplift eligibility</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LSR</td> <td>Learner support reason</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DSF</td> <td>Discretionary support funds</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NLM</td> <td>National learner monitoring</td> </tr> </table>	EFE	Eligibility for 16 - 18 funding entitlement	LDA	Learning difficulty assessment	ALS	Additional learning support	DUE	Disadvantage uplift eligibility	LSR	Learner support reason	DSF	Discretionary support funds	NLM	National learner monitoring
EFE	Eligibility for 16 - 18 funding entitlement														
LDA	Learning difficulty assessment														
ALS	Additional learning support														
DUE	Disadvantage uplift eligibility														
LSR	Learner support reason														
DSF	Discretionary support funds														
NLM	National learner monitoring														
Notes	<p>For additional guidance on this field please refer to the LearnerFAM entity notes.</p> <p>For more information on Field status, please see ILR specification.</p> <p>From 2012/13, EFA will be replacing YPLA. More information about EFA replacing YPLA can be found on the Department for Education website.</p>														
Reason Required	To identify additional funding and/ or monitoring characteristics of the learner														
Part Of	Learner funding and monitoring														
Field Length	3														
Minimum Occurrences	1														
Maximum Occurrences	1														
Schema Components	Element: LEARNFAMTYPE Data type: LEARNFAMTYPECodeContentType														
Owner	The Data Service														
Version	1.1														
Date modified	2012-09-27														
Change management notes	Coverage statement and guidance revised to align more closely with the Individual Learner Record (ILR).														

Learning delivery funding and monitoring

Type	entity																																																																																									
Short Name	LearningDeliveryFAM																																																																																									
Description	Data collected in the learning event funding and monitoring entity is used to identify additional attributes of the learning event that will either inform funding of the learner or additional monitoring.																																																																																									
Applicable to	England																																																																																									
Coverage	Instances at institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 1, 3 or 4 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.																																																																																									
Notes	<p>The LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAAMTYPE identifies the type of data to be collected and is recorded with an associated FAM code. Both a LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAAMTYPE and LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAAMCODE are required for this data to be unique.</p> <p>A maximum of fifteen LearningDeliveryFAM records can be returned for each instance.</p> <p>If the LearningDeliveryFAM entity is returned then both the LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAAMTYPE and LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAAMCODE must be recorded.</p> <p>The following table shows the requirement for this field:</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>LR Prog. Aim</th> <th>16-18 LR</th> <th>ALR</th> <th>Apps</th> <th>Other ER</th> <th>ESF</th> <th>ASL</th> <th>Other funding</th> <th>No funding</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Source of funding (SOF)</td> <td>Yes</td> <td>m</td> <td>m</td> <td>m (prog aim only)</td> <td>m</td> <td>m</td> <td>m</td> <td>m</td> <td>o</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Full or co-funding indicator (FFI)</td> <td>Yes for ALR</td> <td>nc</td> <td>m</td> <td>m (prog aim only)</td> <td>m</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Additional learning needs indicator (ALN)</td> <td>No</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o (not prog aim)</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Additional social needs indicator (ASN)</td> <td>No</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o (not prog aim)</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ASL provision type</td> <td>No</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>m</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> </tr> <tr> <td>First steps indicator (FSI)</td> <td>No</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Re-take indicator</td> <td>No</td> <td>o</td> <td>o</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> <td>nc</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>											LR Prog. Aim	16-18 LR	ALR	Apps	Other ER	ESF	ASL	Other funding	No funding	Source of funding (SOF)	Yes	m	m	m (prog aim only)	m	m	m	m	o	Full or co-funding indicator (FFI)	Yes for ALR	nc	m	m (prog aim only)	m	nc	nc	o	nc	Additional learning needs indicator (ALN)	No	nc	nc	o (not prog aim)	o	nc	nc	o	nc	Additional social needs indicator (ASN)	No	nc	nc	o (not prog aim)	o	nc	nc	o	nc	ASL provision type	No	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc	m	nc	o	First steps indicator (FSI)	No	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	o	Re-take indicator	No	o	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc
	LR Prog. Aim	16-18 LR	ALR	Apps	Other ER	ESF	ASL	Other funding	No funding																																																																																	
Source of funding (SOF)	Yes	m	m	m (prog aim only)	m	m	m	m	o																																																																																	
Full or co-funding indicator (FFI)	Yes for ALR	nc	m	m (prog aim only)	m	nc	nc	o	nc																																																																																	
Additional learning needs indicator (ALN)	No	nc	nc	o (not prog aim)	o	nc	nc	o	nc																																																																																	
Additional social needs indicator (ASN)	No	nc	nc	o (not prog aim)	o	nc	nc	o	nc																																																																																	
ASL provision type	No	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc	m	nc	o																																																																																	
First steps indicator (FSI)	No	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc	o	o																																																																																	
Re-take indicator	No	o	o	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc																																																																																	

(RET)									
National Skills Academy indicator (NSA)	No	o	o	o (prog aim only)	o	o	o	o	o
Eligibility for enhanced funding (EEF)	No	nc	nc	o (prog aim only)	nc	nc	nc	nc	nc
Learning delivery monitoring (LDM)	Yes for FL	o	o	o (prog aim only)	o	o	o	o	o
Restart indicator (RES)	Yes	o	o	o	o	o	o	o	o

Where:

FAM Type	FAM Type Description	Definition	Reason required
SOF	Source of funding	The organisation or source from which funding has been received directly for this learning aim in this teaching year	To identify the organisation or source from which funds have been received and to determine the extent of different sources of funding in the sector.
FFI	Full or co-funding indicator	Indicates whether the learning aim is fully funded or co-funded by the Skills Funding Agency or the EFA	To calculate the funding for the learning aim
ALN	Additional learning needs indicator	The type of additional learning need applicable to the learner.	To monitor learners assessed as requiring additional learning needs. To calculate Employer Responsive funding.
ASN	Additional social needs indicator	The type of additional social needs applicable to the learner.	To monitor learners assessed as requiring additional social. To calculate Employer Responsive funding.
ASL	ASL provision type	Identifies the type of Adult	To monitor the provision type for

		Safeguarded Learning (ASL) activity being undertaken	learning aims within this sector.
FSI	First steps indicator	Identifies formal first steps activity	To monitor the provision type for learning aims within this sector.
RET	Re-take indicator	Whether the learning aim is a re-take of a qualification	To allow the calculation of the correct funds
NSA	National Skills Academy indicator	To identify delivery of learning by a National Skills Academy.	To monitor learner numbers and performance of each National Skills Academy.
EEF	Eligibility for enhanced ER funding	To indicate eligibility for enhanced funding	To calculate funding and monitor eligibility for enhanced funding for Employer Responsive provision.
LDM	Learning delivery monitoring	Indicates participation in programmes or initiatives	Learning aim monitoring
SPP	Special projects and pilots	Indicates participation in pilots or special projects	Learning aim monitoring
RES	Restart indicator	To identify whether the learner has restarted the learning aim	Learning aim monitoring

Source of funding Max no. of occurrences: 2

The source of funding identifies the organisation which has directly funded the learning aim and that passes funds directly to the institution. No attempt should be made to use this field to indicate sources beyond the one directly providing the funds.

The provider can record up to two organisations/sources from which funding is received. Where there are more than two organisations/sources, the two providing the largest proportion of funding should be returned by repeating the entity.

If only one organisation has provided the funding then only one code needs to be recorded.

The source of funding is closely linked to the funding model recorded for an aim. The following table gives an indication of the most likely code combination between the Funding model and Source of funding codes.

FUNDMODEL	Source of funding
10	Always 105

21	Usually 107 (see notes below about learners aged 19+)
22	Usually 105 (see notes below about LLDD)
70	Always 105
80	105 or 107
81	Always 105
82	Always 107
99	Any code except 105 or 107

**Learners with Learning Difficulties and/or Disabilities (LLDD) aged 19-24
(Instance.FUNDMODEL = 22)**

LLDD aged 19-24 who have been assessed as requiring a high level of additional learning support (as recorded in the Learner FAM field using code ALS2) are funded by the EFA and so must use Source of Funding code 107. The funding model for these learners is code 22.

Once a learner with high cost ALS needs becomes 25 years old the funding transfers to the Skills Funding Agency and code 105 should be recorded from the start of the next HESA reporting year. The funding model (Instance.FUNDMODEL) for these learners is unchanged - code 22.

Learners who become 19 during the course of their programme
(Instance.FUNDMODEL = 21)

Learners who are aged 19+ but who started their programme aged 16-18 will be funded by the Skills Funding Agency (LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELIFAMCODE = 105) from the start of the next HESA reporting year. The Funding model will remain unchanged (Instance.FUNDMODEL = 21). This does not apply to learners at a Sixth Form College who will remain funded by the EFA for the duration of their learning.

Other sources of funding

If the Funding model field (Instance.FUNDMODEL) is completed with code 99 (No Skills Funding Agency or EFA funding for this learning aim) then this field must not contain codes 105 (Skills Funding Agency) or 107 (EFA).

Code 15 or 104 should be used where an FE college delivers the learning aim on behalf of another provider (which receives Skills Funding Agency or EFA funding for it), that is, the learning aim is sub-contracted into this provider from another provider.

Codes 590 - 594 must only be used for ESF funded programmes that are co-financed by other organisations, not by the Skills Funding Agency.

The Source of funding entries cannot be a combination of 'supported by HEFCE funding' or 'Eligible for HEFCE funding but not claimed' and 'Department of Health/Regional Health Authority/NHS/Social care' or 'National College for Teaching and Leadership'.

Full or Co-funding indicator (FFI) Max no. of occurrences: 1

LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFCODE = 01 should be used where the learning aim is fully funded by either the Skills Funding Agency or EFA directly unless the learning aim is funded using the 16-18 funding model. All 16-18 LR funded learning aims are fully funded.

Code 02 should be used where the learning aim is co-funded by the Skills Funding Agency or EFA.

If the learning aim does not attract any funding from the Skills Funding Agency or the EFA, this would not be returned.

Additional learning needs indicator (ALN) Max no. of occurrences: 1
and **Additional social needs indicator (ASN)** Max no. of occurrences: 1

Additional learning needs (ALN) relate to the learner's intrinsic ability and additional social needs (ASN) relate to emotional, behavioural or motivational difficulties.

Providers are expected to keep the necessary evidence to support additional learning support claims. The assessment form provided by the Skills Funding Agency records a summary of the learners ALN/ASN. Providers should be able to prove how they are supporting learners with their identified needs. Regular progress reviews with the learner are also expected. This is intended as auditable evidence in support of a claim for additional support funds.

Additional learning or social needs should not be claimed for Skills for Life learning aims delivered for non-apprenticeship employer responsive funded provision.

ASL provision type (ASL) Max no. of occurrences: 1

The ASL provision type must be recorded for all learning aims with Instance.FUNDMODEL= 10 "Adult Safeguarded learning".

The description used for ASL code 3 "Family Literacy, Language and Numeracy (FLLN)" will be updated to "Family English Maths and Language (FEML)" for 2013/14.

First steps indicator (FSI) Max no. of occurrences: 1

Formal First Step (FFS) provision is a short episode of learning, designed to build a learner's confidence and support their planned progression into longer (often pre- Level 2) formal learning. See the Funding model (Instance.FUNDMODEL) field for details of how FFS will be funded and recorded for funding in 2012/13.

Re-take indicator (RET) Max no. of occurrences: 1

For a re-take to generate funding, there must be a value in the Guided learning hours field (Instance.GLHRS). If a learner is only re-sitting the assessment, without any guided learning hours being delivered, then providers would not return a HESA record for these learners.

National Skills Academy indicator (NSA) Max no. of occurrences: 1

Eligibility for enhanced ER funding (EEF) Max no. of occurrences: 1

LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFCODE 1 should be used where the learner is starting a programme on or after their 19th birthday and has eligibility for enhanced funding. To be eligible a learner must have not been available to enter learning prior to their 19th birthday due to a reason beyond their control, e.g. disability, ill-health, pregnancy etc. The learner will be funded at 19-24 rates as long as they start an Apprenticeship before their 25th birthday. See the funding guidance for more information.

Code 2 should be used where the learner is re-starting a programme on or after their 19th birthday but is entitled to 16 – 18 funding due to a break in learning or because of a change to the learner's Additional Learning Support status in the Additional learning needs field. (LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFCODE = ALN)

If code 1 or 2 is recorded in this field, then code 1 'Fully funded' must be recorded in the Full/co-funding indicator field. (LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFCODE = FFI)

If the learner started an Apprenticeship programme aged 18 and then started one of the learning aims within that programme aged 19+, this field is not required. Code 3 should be used where the learner is re-starting a programme on or after their 25th birthday but is entitled to 19-24 funding due to a break in learning or because of a change to the learner's Additional Learning Support status in the Additional learning needs field. (LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFCODE = ALN)

If code 3 is recorded in this field, then code 2 'Co-funded' must be recorded in the Full/co-funding indicator field. (LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFCODE = FFI)

Learning delivery monitoring (LDM) Max no. of occurrences: 3

The Learning delivery monitoring codes document is available at <http://www.theia.org.uk/ilr/ilrdocuments/> and contains all of the valid codes available for this field. It is not teaching year specific. The 'Date valid from' column should be used to determine whether the code is valid for use.

The use of the unassigned codes is only to be authorised by the information authority, and should not be used by providers unless such authorisation has been published.

If the learner is undertaking a Foundation Learning programme (Instance.PROGTYPE = 19), the programme aim (Instance.AIMTYPE = 1) must be completed with one of codes 112 – 115 in this field to indicate the learner's intended destination as agreed at the start of the programme. This does not need to be updated if the learner's destination changes during the course of the programme. These codes do not need to be used for the other learning aims in a Foundation Learning programme.

Special projects and pilots (SPP) Max no. of occurrences: 1

The Special projects and pilots codes are included on the Learning Delivery Monitoring Codes document available at <http://www.theia.org.uk/ilr/ilrdocuments/>. This contains all of the valid codes available for this field, but is not teaching year specific. The 'Date valid from' column should be used to determine whether the code is valid for use.

The use of the unassigned codes is only to be authorised by the information authority, and should not be used by providers unless such authorisation has been published.

The Skills Funding Agency or EFA directorate responsible for running the project or pilot

	<p>will inform providers involved of the code that should be used.</p> <p>Restart indicator (RES) Max no. of occurrences: 1</p> <p>This should be used to indicate that the learner has re-started a learning aim or Apprenticeship programme. It should only be used if the learner has transferred from another provider, has had a break in learning (ER funded learning only) or has had to stop and re-start a learning aim due to a change in their ALS/ASN status (as recorded using LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAAMTYPEs ALN or ASN in this field).</p> <p>If the learner has re-started the entire Apprenticeship programme then the re-start indicator should be recorded against the programme aim and all the learning aims within the programme. If only one of the aims within the programme has been re-started then the Restart indicator is only recorded against that aim.</p> <p>Where a learner has already undertaken some of the learning towards an aim and is restarting it then the Proportion of funding remaining field should be used to reduce the amount of funding claimed as applicable.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error LearningDeliveryFAM entity must exist where Instance.FUNDMODEL exists and is not equal to 99 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error LearningDeliveryFAM entity must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.</p> <p>3 Error LearningDeliveryFAM entity must not exist for institutions in England where Instance.FESTUMK = 2 or Instance.FESTUMK does not exist.</p>
Reason Required	
Part Of	Instance
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	15
Has Parts	Learning delivery funding and monitoring type (LEARNDELFAAMTYPE) Learning delivery funding and monitoring code (LEARNDELFAAMCODE)
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1, 2 and 3 added to enforce coverage of new entity.

Learning delivery funding and monitoring code

Type	field																																													
Short Name	LEARNDELIFAMCODE																																													
Description	This field identifies the funding or monitoring attribute being recorded.																																													
Applicable to	England																																													
Coverage	All LearningDeliveryFAM records that are returned.																																													
Notes	<p>The following table shows the valid codes for LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELIFAMCODE depending on the codes in LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELIFAMTYPE. The use of unassigned codes is only to be authorised by the information authority, and should not be used by providers unless such authorisation has been published.</p> <p>For additional guidance on this field please refer to the LearningDeliveryFAM entity notes.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">LEARNDELIFAMTYPE</th> <th style="text-align: left;">LEARNDELIFAMCODE</th> <th style="text-align: left;">LEARNDELIFAMCODE Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>105</td> <td>Skills Funding Agency</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>107</td> <td>Education Funding Agency (EFA)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>104</td> <td>Further education college / other further education institution</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>108</td> <td>Local authority (ASL funds)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>109</td> <td>Local authority (Other - not ASL funds)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>15</td> <td>Private Training Organisation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>1</td> <td>Supported by HEFCE Funding</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>2</td> <td>Eligible For HEFCE Funding But Funding Not Being Claimed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>7</td> <td>Research Council</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>9</td> <td>Department Of Health / Regional Health Authority / NHS / Social Care</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>10</td> <td>Other HM Government Departments And Public Bodies Including EC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>11</td> <td>Overseas Learner Award From HM Government/ British Council</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>12</td> <td>Overseas Funding</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SOF</td> <td>13</td> <td>UK Industry And Commerce</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	LEARNDELIFAMTYPE	LEARNDELIFAMCODE	LEARNDELIFAMCODE Description	SOF	105	Skills Funding Agency	SOF	107	Education Funding Agency (EFA)	SOF	104	Further education college / other further education institution	SOF	108	Local authority (ASL funds)	SOF	109	Local authority (Other - not ASL funds)	SOF	15	Private Training Organisation	SOF	1	Supported by HEFCE Funding	SOF	2	Eligible For HEFCE Funding But Funding Not Being Claimed	SOF	7	Research Council	SOF	9	Department Of Health / Regional Health Authority / NHS / Social Care	SOF	10	Other HM Government Departments And Public Bodies Including EC	SOF	11	Overseas Learner Award From HM Government/ British Council	SOF	12	Overseas Funding	SOF	13	UK Industry And Commerce
LEARNDELIFAMTYPE	LEARNDELIFAMCODE	LEARNDELIFAMCODE Description																																												
SOF	105	Skills Funding Agency																																												
SOF	107	Education Funding Agency (EFA)																																												
SOF	104	Further education college / other further education institution																																												
SOF	108	Local authority (ASL funds)																																												
SOF	109	Local authority (Other - not ASL funds)																																												
SOF	15	Private Training Organisation																																												
SOF	1	Supported by HEFCE Funding																																												
SOF	2	Eligible For HEFCE Funding But Funding Not Being Claimed																																												
SOF	7	Research Council																																												
SOF	9	Department Of Health / Regional Health Authority / NHS / Social Care																																												
SOF	10	Other HM Government Departments And Public Bodies Including EC																																												
SOF	11	Overseas Learner Award From HM Government/ British Council																																												
SOF	12	Overseas Funding																																												
SOF	13	UK Industry And Commerce																																												

SOF	14	Multinational Organisation (Non UK Based)
SOF	16	Voluntary Organisation
SOF	17	European Research Action Scheme For The Mobility Of University Students (ERASMUS)
SOF	20	Other European Sources, e.g.. the Lifelong Learning Programme including Leonardo, Comenius, Grundtvig, Transversal (including languages and ICT)
SOF	25	Teacher Training Agency
SOF	101	New Deal For Young People (Aged 18 to 24)
SOF	102	New Deal For Long Term Unemployed (Aged 25+)
SOF	998	Other - Further Details May Be Requested
SOF	110-120	Unassigned
European Social Fund for 2007/13 programme (not co-financed by the Skills Funding Agency)		
SOF	590	Priority 1 - Extending employment opportunities
SOF	591	Priority 2 - Developing a skilled and adaptable workforce
SOF	592	Priority 4 - Tackling barriers to employment
SOF	593	Priority 5 - Improving the skills of the local workforce
SOF	594	Community grants
FFI	1	Fully funded learning aim
FFI	2	Co funded learning aim
ALN	1	Additional Learning Needs
ASN	1	Additional Social Needs
ASL	1	Personal and community development learning (PCDL)
ASL	2	Neighbour learning in deprived communities (NLDC)
ASL	3	Family literacy language and numeracy (FLLN)
ASL	4	Wider family learning (WFL)

FSI	1	Formal First Step
RET	1	Learning aim re-take – qualification previously taken at this provider and not achieved
RET	2	Learning aim re-take – to improve the grade for a qualification previously achieved at this provider
NSA	1	Fashion Retail
NSA	2	Manufacturing
NSA	3	Financial Services
NSA	4	Construction
NSA	5	Food and Drink Manufacturing
NSA	6	Nuclear
NSA	7	Process Industries
NSA	8	Creative and Cultural
NSA	9	Hospitality
NSA	10	Sport and Active Leisure
NSA	11	Retail
NSA	12	Materials, Production and Supply
NSA	13	National Enterprise Academy
NSA	14	Social Care
NSA	15	Information Technology
NSA	16	Power
NSA	17	Rail Engineering
NSA	18	Environmental Technologies
NSA	19	Logistics
NSA	20-30	Unassigned
EEF	1	Eligible for enhanced funding for 19+ Apprenticeships
EEF	2	Entitlement to 16 – 18 employer responsive funding, where the learner is 19 or over
EEF	3	Entitlement to 19-24 employer responsive funding, where the learner is 25 or over
LDM	001-400	Learning Delivery Monitoring codes Please refer to the list of LDM codes for 2012/13 in the Learning Delivery Monitoring Codes document available on <i>the information authority</i> website http://www.theia.org.uk/ilrdocuments/201213

	SPP	SP001-SP299	Special projects and pilots Please refer to the list of SPP codes for 2012/13 in the Learning Delivery Monitoring Codes document available on <i>the information authority</i> http://www.theia.org.uk/ilr/ilrdocuments
	RES	1	Learning aim restarted
Reason Required	To identify additional funding and/or funding characteristics of the learning delivery.		
Part Of	Learning delivery funding and monitoring		
Field Length	5		
Minimum Occurrences	1		
Maximum Occurrences	1		
Schema Components	Element: LEARNDELFAMCODE Data type: LEARNDELFAMCODEType		
Owner	The Data Service		
Version	1.2		
Date modified	2012-09-27		
Change management notes	Coverage statement and guidance revised to align more closely with the Individual Learner Record (ILR).		

Learning delivery funding and monitoring type

Type	field
Short Name	LEARNDELFAAMTYPE
Description	This field identifies the learning delivery funding or monitoring attribute being recorded.
Applicable to	England
Coverage	All LearningDeliveryFAM records that are returned.
Valid Entries and Labels	SOF Source of funding FFI Full or co- funding indicator ALN Additional learning needs indicator ASN Additional social needs indicator ASL ASL provision type FSI First steps indicator RET Re-take indicator NSA National Skills Academy indicator EEF Eligibility for enhanced ER funding LDM Learning delivery monitoring SPP Special projects and pilots RES Restart indicator
Notes	For additional guidance on this field please refer to the LearningDeliveryFAM entity notes. This field should be completed where a LearningDeliveryFAM.LEARNDELFAAMTYPE applies to the learner.
Reason Required	To identify additional funding and/or funding characteristics of the learning delivery.
Part Of	Learning delivery funding and monitoring
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: LEARNDELFAAMTYPE Data type: LEARNDELFAAMTYPECodeContentType
Owner	The Data Service
Version	1.2
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Coverage statement and guidance revised to align more closely with the Individual Learner Record (ILR).

Module

Type	entity
Short Name	Module
Description	A discrete unit of learning and/or research
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Compulsory for all returns
Notes	<p>Although the term 'Module' is used to describe this entity, the definition covers any discrete unit of learning and/or research. The aim of collecting this information is to provide a greater level of detail about the student's activity than can be ascertained from the course-level information. Specifically, this includes the detail of subjects studied during the year, credit scheme information and cost centre information that is used in conjunction with the FTE value shown in Instance.STULOAD.</p> <p>In cases where students are studying within academic structures that are not 'modular', the module could be defined as a single unit to cover a year's worth of activity on a course.</p> <p>It is recommended that in cases where a module is used in both HE and FE instances, institutions return two separate module records because different validation needs to be applied.</p>
Reason Required	This entity exists to hold information about modules/units of activity that students undertake.
Part Of	Institution
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	unbounded
Has Parts	Module identifier (MODID) Module title (MTITLE) Module taught in a Celtic language (MODLANG) Module FTE (FTE) Percentage not taught by this institution (PCOLAB) Credit transfer scheme (CRDTSCM) Credit value of module (CRDTPTS) Level of credit points (LEVLPTS) Other institution providing teaching (TINST) Module franchise indicator (FRANIND) Module subject
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Credit transfer scheme

Type	field
Short Name	CRDTSCM
Description	This field denotes the credit point transfer scheme that Module.CRDTPTS, and Module.LEVPTS, apply to.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All modules
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 England & Northern Ireland (CATS)</p> <p>2 Scotland (SCOTCAT)</p> <p>3 CQFW credit framework</p> <p>6 LSDA credit framework</p> <p>7 Other scheme</p> <p>8 Own scheme</p> <p>9 No scheme</p> <p>A GNVQ units/OCN credits</p>
Notes	<p>Credit accumulation and transfer schemes allow students to collect credit for work already completed, if they decide to terminate their study before achieving a complete award. If and when they resume their studies, not necessarily at the previous institution, they may be able to carry forward the credits from their previous study.</p> <p>HESA may seek extra information about schemes coded 7 or 8.</p> <p>Modules which do not have a credit transfer scheme should be coded 9.</p> <p>Institutions in Wales cannot use code 9 No scheme unless this module links (via StudentOnModule and Instance) to a course where Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>For institutions in Scotland this field must be coded 2 Scotland (SCOTCAT). The only exception to this rule is students for whom Course.COURSEAIM begins D or L, who can be coded 9 in this field.</p>
Business rules	2 Error Module.CRDTSCM cannot be coded 2 for institutions in England, Wales or Northern Ireland.
Reason Required	To identify and monitor the use of credit transfer schemes and to monitor the actual flow of credits.
Part Of	Module
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: CRDTSCM Data type: CRDTSCMCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Credit value of module

Type	field
Short Name	CRDTPTS
Description	This field indicates the number of credit points a student gains on successful completion of the module.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All modules
Notes	<p>Institutions in England and Northern Ireland may use code 999 as a default for all programmes of study, and it is suggested that this default is used for schemes coded 7 or 8 in Module.CRDTSCM.</p> <p>Institutions in Wales cannot use code 999, unless module is linked only to FE instances in which case 999 is an acceptable default.</p> <p>Fractional credit points should be rounded to the nearest whole number.</p> <p>The length of this field is 3 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros, e.g. 003 or 3.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Module.CRDTPTS must be coded 999 where Module.CRDTSCM = 9.</p> <p>3 Warning Module.CRDTPTS should be coded 999 where English or Northern Irish institution and Module.CRDTSCM = 7 or 8.</p> <p>4 Warning Module.CRDTPTS should contain a value greater than 0.</p>
Reason Required	To identify and monitor the use of credit transfer schemes and to monitor the actual flow of credits.
Part Of	Module
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: CRDTPTS
Related Fields	LEVLPTS
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Level of credit points

Type	field																										
Short Name	LEVLPTS																										
Description	This is used to record the level of the credit points given in Module.CRDTPTS.																										
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales																										
Coverage	All modules where Module.CRDTPTS does not equal 999																										
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="width: 5%;">0</td><td>Entry level</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>HE Certificate/NVQ Level 4 or equivalent</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>HE Intermediate</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>HE Honours</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>Undergraduate unspecified</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>HE Masters</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>HE Doctorate</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>Not applicable</td></tr> <tr><td>A</td><td>NVQ level 1 or equivalent</td></tr> <tr><td>B</td><td>NVQ level 2 or equivalent</td></tr> <tr><td>C</td><td>NVQ level 3 or equivalent</td></tr> <tr><td>D</td><td>HND/Diploma HE</td></tr> <tr><td>E</td><td>Ordinary degrees</td></tr> </table>	0	Entry level	1	HE Certificate/NVQ Level 4 or equivalent	2	HE Intermediate	3	HE Honours	5	Undergraduate unspecified	6	HE Masters	7	HE Doctorate	9	Not applicable	A	NVQ level 1 or equivalent	B	NVQ level 2 or equivalent	C	NVQ level 3 or equivalent	D	HND/Diploma HE	E	Ordinary degrees
0	Entry level																										
1	HE Certificate/NVQ Level 4 or equivalent																										
2	HE Intermediate																										
3	HE Honours																										
5	Undergraduate unspecified																										
6	HE Masters																										
7	HE Doctorate																										
9	Not applicable																										
A	NVQ level 1 or equivalent																										
B	NVQ level 2 or equivalent																										
C	NVQ level 3 or equivalent																										
D	HND/Diploma HE																										
E	Ordinary degrees																										
Notes	<p>If the points relate to more than one level, please enter the code for the level which accounts for the largest number of points (or if they are equal, enter the code for the higher level).</p> <p>Codes D and E can only be used by institutions in Scotland.</p> <p>For institutions in Scotland, graduate diplomas or certificates should be coded either 3 HE Honours or E Ordinary Degrees depending on the SCQF level of provision for the course.</p> <p>For institutions in Wales, please note that Codes A, B, C, 1, 2, 3, 6 and 7 in this field correspond to the Credit and Qualifications Framework for Wales (CQFW) credit levels 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 respectively.</p>																										
Business rules	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="width: 5%;">1</td><td>Error</td><td>Module.LEVLPTS must exist where Module.CRDTPTS does not = 999.</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>Error</td><td>Module.LEVLPTS codes D or E must be for an institution in Scotland.</td></tr> </table>	1	Error	Module.LEVLPTS must exist where Module.CRDTPTS does not = 999.	2	Error	Module.LEVLPTS codes D or E must be for an institution in Scotland.																				
1	Error	Module.LEVLPTS must exist where Module.CRDTPTS does not = 999.																									
2	Error	Module.LEVLPTS codes D or E must be for an institution in Scotland.																									
Reason Required	To identify and monitor the use of credit transfer schemes and to monitor the actual flow of credits.																										
Part Of	Module																										
Field Length	1																										
Minimum Occurrences	0																										
Maximum Occurrences	1																										
Schema Components	Element: LEVLPTS Data type: LEVLPTSCodeContentType																										
Related Fields	CRDTPTS																										

Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Module franchise indicator

Type	field
Short Name	FRANIND
Description	This field indicates if a module is part of a franchised or other collaborative arrangement (in addition to Module.PCOLAB and Module.TINST)
Applicable to	Wales
Coverage	All modules at institutions in Wales where Course.COURSEAIM begins D, E, L, M, H, I, J or C
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Taken as part of franchise arrangement (in whole or part)</p> <p>2 Taken as part of a collaborative arrangement (in whole or part) other than a franchise</p> <p>3 Not taken as part of franchise or other collaborative arrangement</p>
Notes	If the module is part of a franchise arrangement then code 1 should be used regardless of whether the module is also part of another collaborative arrangement. Other collaborative arrangements could be joint courses or arrangements with private colleges that are not franchises. Further information can be found in HEFCW's HESES 2011/12 circular (W11/43HE).
Business rules	<p>1 Error Module.FRANIND must not exist where the institution is in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland</p> <p>2 Error Module.FRANIND must be coded 1 or 2 where Module.PCOLAB > 0.</p> <p>3 Error Module.FRANIND must be coded 3 where Module.PCOLAB = 0.</p>
Reason Required	Collected in order to distinguish between modules that are part of a franchise arrangement or other collaborative arrangement and in order to monitor franchised out provision and fees charged to students who are franchised out.
Part Of	Module
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FRANIND Data type: FRANINDCodeContentType
Owner	HEFCW
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 added to stop this field being returned by institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Scotland. Business rules 2 and 3 added for institutions in Wales to validate that the data is consistent with Module.PCOLAB.

Module FTE

Type	field
Short Name	FTE
Description	<p>This field indicates the proportion of a full-time equivalent year attributed to the module. It shows the proportion of an instance year's full-time study for this qualification aim that the module would represent.</p> <p>A year's full-time study for this qualification aim is a programme of study year (instance year), regardless of how this fits with institution's academic sessions or HESA reporting periods.</p> <p>Students on instance years which overlap HESA reporting years (e.g. many PGT students) should be attached to the same module in both HESA reporting years, with a full Module.FTE in both reporting years. This is not overcounting, as Module.FTE applies to the instance year of study. Instance.STULOAD will show the proportion taken in each reporting year.</p> <p>The value in Module.FTE can be recorded to one decimal place and must be between 0 and 300.</p>
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All modules
Notes	<p>This field, together with Instance.STULOAD endeavours to capture more sensitive information than has previously been available about students whose study pattern cannot be categorised as typically full-time, i.e. equivalent in total to 1 FTE per year. It provides a numerical measure of the contents of Instance.MODE. It does not seek to record the teaching load, nor the contact time associated with a student or the course, nor the learning hours, since each of these quantities is subject to variation between institutions, and cannot be related to a national norm. No weighting should be given, therefore, to take account of the resourcing requirements of different modules.</p> <p>For institutions operating a credit points system, the proportion of FTE can be calculated from the number of credit points that may be obtained from the module compared with the number of credit points obtainable for that year of the course. Proportion of FTE can also be calculated by reference to a conventional full-time student following the qualification aim. For example, if it is the institution's normal requirement that a student should complete 12 (equally-weighted) modules for a degree which would typically take 3 years for a normal full-time student, then each module would have proportion of FTE calculated as 25% (25). For degrees requiring 12 (equally-weighted) modules over 4 full-time years, each module would have an FTE calculated as 33% (33). This could serve as a benchmark for calculating the FTE of non-standard modules, or modules falling within other programmes of study. For professional courses, the advice of the professional awarding body can be sought. Otherwise institutions are asked to make an academic judgement in relating the module to another module of a similar level, and similar academic subject category, which can be related to a 'standard' full-time course.</p> <p>HESA accepts that the full-time equivalence will not be exact in all cases, but the aim is to give a better approximation than the use of arbitrary conversion factors. It is recognised that the actual student FTE associated with a course may not simply be the aggregation of all modules followed by that student, and it is not expected that there will always be a precise correspondence between the aggregate proportion of FTE fields and Instance.STULOAD. Further guidance on FTE reporting is available here.</p>

	<p>In cases where a module is available in two or more qualification aims, with different course requirements, separate module entities are required to be returned.</p> <p>For example:</p> <p>Module: Introduction to biogenetics (40 credits)</p> <p>MODID: PGMIntrobiogenetics Masters degree course module worth 40 credits of a 180 credit course MODFTE: 22 In this instance the module's weighting accounts for 22% of the course year.</p> <p>MODID: PGCIntrobiogenetics Post Graduate Certificate course module worth 40 credits of a 120 credit course MODFTE: 33 In this instance the module's weighting accounts for 33% of the course year.</p> <p>Although the students on these courses may be attending the same lectures, because the outcome weighting of the module differs between qualification aims, separate module entities are required.</p> <p>The length of this field is 5 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros or the decimal place, e.g. 005.0 or 5.0 or 5</p>
Business rules	1 Warning Module.FTE should contain a value greater than 0.
Reason Required	To support student load calculations; used in splitting student load across cost centres and hence in England and NI allocating FTE to price groups for funding purposes.
Part Of	Module
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FTE Data type: FTEType
Related Fields	STULOAD
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Module identifier

Type	field
Short Name	MODID
Description	This field is the primary key for the Module entity and exists as a foreign key on StudentOnModule.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All modules
Notes	<p>Any MODID returned on the StudentOnModule element must exist on the Module entity. Modules that have not been taken up in the reporting year can be included on the Module entity if this is easier.</p> <p>Valid characters</p> <p>The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+IE00 to U+IEFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p> <p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>) and to ensure that their files are actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.</p>
Reason Required	To facilitate linkage with the Instance entity.
Part Of	Module Student on module

Field Length	30
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MODID Data type: MODIDType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Module taught in a Celtic language

Type	field
Short Name	MODLANG
Description	This field is used to indicate that the module that is taught, at least in part, through the medium of a Celtic language.
Applicable to	Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All module records at institutions in Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland
Valid Entries and Labels	1 Welsh 2 Gaidhlig 3 Irish 9 Not available through the medium of Welsh, Gaidhlig or Irish
Notes	<p>Modules taught partly in English (or another language) and partly in a Celtic language should be coded 1 Welsh, 2 Gaidhlig or 3 Irish appropriately. Field StudentOnModule.LANGPCNT will show the proportion of the module that is taught in the Celtic language.</p> <p>Code 9 'Not available through the medium of Welsh, Gaidhlig or Irish' indicates that no part of the module is taught through the medium of a Celtic language</p> <p>For institutions in Wales, when using code 1, this field should indicate where the module is delivered wholly or partly through the medium of Welsh.</p> <p>For further guidance on the completion of this field, and in particular with reference to activities which constitute learning through the medium of a Celtic language, please refer to the institution's funding council.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Module.MODLANG must exist for institutions in Wales, Scotland or Northern Ireland.</p> <p>2 Error Module.MODLANG must be 1 ,2 or 3 where any StudentOnModule.LANGPCNT is greater than 0.</p> <p>3 Error Module.MODLANG must not exist for institutions in England.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor pattern of provision in a Celtic language.
Part Of	Module
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MODLANG Data type: MODLANGCodeContentType
Related Fields	LANGPCNT
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Module title

Type	field
Short Name	MTITLE
Description	This field is determined by the institution and, in this context, relates to the specific module which in turn can be a component in many courses.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All modules
Notes	<p>Although a compulsory field, this field will not be subject to specific checks regarding its validity. The only validation checks will be that the field contains at least one character.</p> <p>Users of HESA data will occasionally consult this field in order to gain a better understanding of the subjects/activity contained in the module. Therefore institutions are encouraged to make these data meaningful where this does not significantly add to the burden of collection</p> <p>Valid characters</p> <p>The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+IE00 to U+IEFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p> <p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>) and to ensure that their files are actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.</p>
Reason Required	To facilitate HESA cross-checking with institutions.

Part Of	Module
Field Length	80
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MTITLE Data type: MTitleType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Other institution providing teaching

Type	field
Short Name	TINST
Description	This field identifies collaborating institutions with a UK Provider Reference Number (UKPRN) from the UK Register of Learning Providers or a generic code.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All module where Module.PCOLAB is greater than zero
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>4001 Other UK institution</p> <p>4002 Other Non-UK institution</p> <p>4003 Other public body in the UK</p> <p>4004 Other private body in the UK</p> <p>10009159 Aberdeen College</p> <p>10000055 Abingdon and Witney College</p> <p>10010093 Academy of Circus Arts and Physical Theatre t/a Circomedia</p> <p>10000093 Accrington and Rossendale College</p> <p>10000080 Access to Music Ltd</p> <p>10021141 Adam Smith College, Fife</p> <p>10008074 Aes Tring Park School Trust (The) t/a The Arts Educational School</p> <p>10000248 ALRA (Academy of Live and Recorded Arts)</p> <p>10000256 Alton College</p> <p>10000275 Amersham and Wycombe College</p> <p>10009165 Angus College</p> <p>10032037 Animal Health Trust</p> <p>10009166 Anniesland College</p> <p>10000330 Aquinas College</p> <p>10008073 Armagh College of Further Education</p> <p>10000381 Arts Educational Schools</p> <p>10000409 Ashton-Under-Lyne Sixth Form College</p> <p>10000415 Askham Bryan College</p> <p>10000422 Assa T and D Limited</p> <p>10000047 Association of British Dispensing Opticians(The) (t/a ABDO College of Education)</p> <p>10000473 Aylesbury College</p> <p>10009170 Ayr College</p> <p>10000517 Banff and Buchan College of Further Education</p> <p>10000143 Barking and Dagenham London Borough Council</p> <p>10000528 Barking College</p> <p>10000533 Barnet College</p> <p>10003986 Barnet London Borough Council</p> <p>10000534 Barnfield College</p> <p>10000536 Barnsley College</p> <p>10000538 Barnsley Metropolitan Borough Council</p> <p>10009286 Barony College (The)</p> <p>10000546 Barrow-In-Furness Sixth Form College</p> <p>10010418 Barry College</p> <p>10000552 Barton Peveril College</p> <p>10000560 Basingstoke College of Technology</p> <p>10000568 Bath and North East Somerset Council</p> <p>10000587 Beacon Community College</p> <p>10000596 Beauchamp College (The)</p> <p>10000609 BEC Limited</p> <p>10000610 Bedford College</p> <p>10000613 Bedfordshire County Council</p> <p>10020680 Belfast Metropolitan College</p> <p>10032300 Belfast Health and Social Services Trust</p> <p>10000635 Belvoir High School and Community Centre</p>

10000654	Berkshire College of Agriculture
10000670	Bexhill College
10000671	Bexley College
10000146	Bexley London Borough Council
10000683	Bicton College
10000695	Bilborough College
10000702	Birkenhead Sixth Form College
10000706	Birmingham Centre for Arts Therapies
10000703	Birmingham City Council
10000720	Bishop Auckland College
10000721	Bishop Burton College
10030342	Black Country Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
10000747	Blackburn College
10000749	Blackburne House (WTEC)
10000752	Blackfriars Settlement
10000754	Blackpool and The Fylde College
10000756	Blackpool Sixth Form College
10000760	Blake College Limited
10008110	Blake Hall College Limited
10009780	Blaenau Gwent County Borough Council
10000794	Bolton Community College
10000796	Bolton Sixth Form College
10009177	Borders College
10000812	Boston College
10000820	Bournemouth and Poole College (The)
10000821	Bournemouth Council t/a Bournemouth Adult Education Service
10000825	Bournville College of Further Education
10009975	Bowling College
10000833	Bracknell and Wokingham College
10028666	Bradford and Airedale Teaching Primary Care Trust
10000840	Bradford College
10000853	Braintree College
10000856	Branston Community College
10000863	Brent London Borough Council
10000875	Bridgery Community Sports College
10008119	Bridgend College
10009371	Bridgend County Borough Council
10000878	Bridgwater College
10000887	Brighton Hove and Sussex Sixth Form College
10010720	Brighton Institute of Modern Music
10000896	Bristol City Council
10033440	British Army
10000913	British Film Institute
10000920	British Institute of Technology and E-Commerce Ltd
10000936	British School of Osteopathy. The
10000944	Brockenhurst College
10008696	Bromley Adult Education College
10000948	Bromley College of Further and Higher Education
10000950	Brooklands College
10000952	Brooksby Melton College
10000976	Buckinghamshire County Council
10009063	Building Crafts College
10000995	Burleigh Community College
10001000	Burnley College
10001004	Burton College
10001005	Bury College
10001008	Bury Metropolitan Borough Council
10001011	Bushfield Community College
10032070	Cabair College of Air Training Limited
10001082	Cadbury Sixth Form College
10010449	Caerphilly County Borough Council
10001093	Calderdale College
10001099	Callington Community College
10026751	Cambridge Education Group Limited t/a Cambridge School of Visual and

	Performing Arts
10001116	Cambridge Regional College
10001121	Cambridge Women's Resources Centre Limited
10001123	Cambridgeshire County Council
10001139	Cannock Chase Technical College
10001144	Canterbury College
10018007	Canterbury Steiner School Ltd
10001148	Capel Manor College
10014157	Capita Business Services Ltd t/a Capita Learning and Development
10034450	Cardiff and Vale College
10009376	Cardiff City and County Council
10001165	Cardinal Newman College
10009186	Cardonald College
10001196	Carlisle College
10010357	Carmarthenshire County Council
10001201	Carmel College
10001207	Carshalton College
10001214	Casterton Business and Enterprise College
10007813	Castle College, Nottingham
10008627	Causeway Institute of Further and Higher Education
10008628	Cecos London Limited
10009187	Central College t/a Central College of Commerce
10001264	Central School of Ballet
10001744	Central Sussex College
10018361	Centre for Advanced Studies Limited t/a City of London College
10021550	Centre for Alternative Technology Charity Limited
10001271	Centre for Alternative Technology Public Limited Company
10010267	Centre for Enterprise Limited, Leicester
10001288	Centre for Youth Ministry
10010461	Ceredigion County Council
10001100	Challenge College (The)
10001305	Challney High School for Boys and Community College
10001346	Cheadle and Marple Sixth Form College
10001353	Chelmsford College
10001378	Chesterfield College
10007817	Chichester College
10001416	Christ the King Sixth Form College
10010800	Church Army (The) t/a Hartley Centre (Church Army)
10001446	Cirencester Tertiary College t/a Cirencester College
10001452	City and Islington College
10023441	City Banking College Limited
10001460	City College, Birmingham
10001457	City College, Brighton and Hove
10001458	City College, Coventry
10001461	City College, Manchester
10004772	City College, Norwich t/a Norwich City College of Further and Higher Education
10005128	City College, Plymouth
10001463	City Literary Institute (The) t/a City Lit
10001465	City of Bath College
10001467	City of Bristol College
10001471	City of London College
10001474	City of Stoke on Trent Sixth Form College
10001475	City of Sunderland College
10001476	City of Westminster College
10001477	City of York Council
10007578	City of Wolverhampton College
10001492	Claverham Community College
10001503	Cleveland College of Art and Design
10009193	Clydebank College
10009194	Coatbridge College
10001535	Colchester Institute
10008911	Coleg Ceredigion
10009658	Coleg Glan Hafren

10008912	Coleg Gwent
10010252	Coleg Harlech Workers' Educational Association (North Wales)
10007820	Llandrillo College (known as Coleg Llandrillo) t/a Gr#p Llandrillo Menai
10009635	Coleg Llysfasi
10008914	Coleg Morgannwg
10009628	Coleg Powys
10008634	Coleg Sir Gar, Carmarthenshire College
10001548	College of North East London
10001549	College of North West London
10001550	College of Richard Collyer (The)
10007916	College of West Anglia
10001590	Community Links Trust Limited
10001512	Community Music Limited
10001651	Connexions West of England
10012974	Conwy County Borough Council
10009886	Co-Operative College (The)
10001696	Cornwall College
10001695	Cornwall County Council
10001705	Coulsdon College
10034324	Court Theatre Training Company Ltd
10001309	Coventry and Warwickshire Chambers of Commerce Training Limited
10001723	Coventry City Council
10001743	Craven College
10001778	Croydon College
10003989	Croydon London Borough Council
10009199	Cumbernauld College
10001800	Cumbria County Council
10001838	Dance Voice
10001850	Darlington College
10026767	Dartington Trust (The) (t/a Schumacher College)
10001881	De La Salle Humanities College, Liverpool
10001897	Dearne Valley College
10009678	Deeside College
10013017	Denbighshire County Council
10001919	Derby College
10001928	Derbyshire County Council
10001934	Derwentside College
10001951	Devon County Council
10001959	Dewsbury College
10002005	Doncaster College
10002011	Doreen Bird College of Performing Arts Ltd
10002013	Dorset County Council t/a Dorset Adult Education Service
10007924	Dudley College of Technology
10002055	Dukeries College (The)
10009204	Dumfries and Galloway College
10009205	Dundee College
10002061	Dunstable College
10002064	Durham County Council
10002094	Ealing, Hammersmith and West London College
10008958	Early Years: The Organisation for Young Children (T/A: NIPPA)
10002107	East Berkshire College
10002108	East Devon College
10010639	East Down Institute of Further and Higher Education
10002111	East Durham College
10008211	East London College Limited
10002118	East London Advanced Technology t/a ELATT
10002122	East Norfolk Sixth Form College
10002126	East Riding College
10008919	East Riding of Yorkshire Council
10002130	East Surrey College
10008213	East Tyrone College of Further and Higher Education
10031645	Eastern Leadership Centre
10002143	Eastleigh College
10037344	Easton and Otley College

10020883	Eastwood Park Limited
10007925	Eccles College
10010606	Edinburgh's Telford College
10002215	Elfrida Society (The)
10026843	Eliesha Training Limited
10008637	Elmhurst Ballet School t/a Elmhurst School for Dance
10009211	Elmwood College
10002280	Employment Needs Training Agency C.I.C. t/a ENTA
10002255	Enfield College
10002260	Enfield London Borough Council
10002269	English National Ballet School Limited
10002297	Epping Forest College
10002314	Esher College
10002327	Essex County Council t/a Essex Adult Community Learning Service
10002329	Estover Community College
10008229	Ethames Graduate School Limited
10002340	European College of Business and Management
10002344	European School Of Osteopathy
10002370	Exeter College
10002397	Fairham Community College
10007928	Fareham College
10002412	Farnborough College of Technology
10002417	Farnham College
10008233	Fermanagh College of Further Education
10002454	Filton College
10008641	Fircroft College of Adult Education
10012984	Fire Service College
10013028	Flintshire County Council
10001230	Forster Community College Limited t/a Cathedral Centre - Bradford
10009217	Forth Valley College of Further and Higher Education t/a Forth Valley College
10032094	Franciscan International Study Centre
10002570	Franklin College
10002578	Friends Centre
10002599	Furness College
10022087	Futureworks Training Limited (t/a Futureworks)
10002638	Gateshead College
10002642	Gateway Sixth Form College
10002655	Genii Engineering & Technology Training Limited (t/a Gen II Engineering & Technology Training)
10032287	Genome Research Limited t/a Wellcome Trust Sanger Institute
10009218	Glasgow College of Nautical Science t/a Glasgow College of Nautical Studies
10013192	Glasgow Metropolitan College
10002696	Gloucestershire College of Arts and Technology
10002710	Godalming College
10009651	Gorseinon College
10030408	Gower College Swansea
10002743	Grantham College
10002755	Great Yarmouth College
10002767	Greenbank Project (The) t/a Greenbank College
10002770	Greenhead College
10002780	Greenwich Community College
10007938	Grimsby Institute of Further and Higher Education
10002815	Guildford College of Further and Higher Education
10002805	Guildford School of Acting Conservatoire
10011082	Guildhall College Limited
10013374	Gwynedd County Council
10002835	Hackney Community College
10002843	Hadlow College
10002852	Halesowen College
10002868	Hammersmith and Fulham London Borough Council
10002869	Hammond School Limited (The) t/a Hammond School
10002872	Hampshire County Council

10002874	Hampstead Garden Suburb Institute
10002899	Harlow College
10009028	Harrogate College of Arts and Technology
10002907	Harrow College
10002913	Hartcliffe and Withywood Ventures
10002917	Hartlepool College of Further Education
10002918	Hartlepool Sixth Form College
10002919	Hartpury College
10002923	Hastings College of Arts and Technology
10002929	Havant College
10002935	Havering College of Further and Higher Education
10003993	Havering London Borough Council
10002937	Havering Sixth Form College
10010172	Hawkwood College Ltd
10002988	Heeley City Farm Limited
10003011	Henley College (The)
10003010	Henley College, Coventry
10003014	Henry Cort Community College (The)
10003022	Hereford College of Arts
10003021	Hereford Sixth Form College
10003023	Herefordshire College of Technology
10003029	Hereward College of Further Education
10003035	Hertford Regional College
10007945	Highbury College of Technology
10009074	Hilderstone College
10003088	Hillcroft College
10003089	Hillingdon Adult Education Service
10003094	Hills Road Sixth Form College
10003101	Hind Leys Community College
10003128	Holy Cross College
10003146	Hopwood Hall College
10003165	Hounslow London Borough Council t/a Hounslow Adult and Community Education
10003167	Hounslow Manor School
10003188	Huddersfield New College
10003189	Huddersfield Technical College
10003193	Hugh Baird College
10007949	Huntingdonshire Regional College
10009075	Hyde Clarendon College
10019245	Informa UK Ltd
10010213	Inter-Ed UK Limited t/a The City College
10006709	International School and Community College (The), East Birmingham
10002820	ICMP (UK) Ltd (t/a The Institute of Contemporary Music Performance)
10022687	Institute of Legal Executives (The)
10012807	Integrated Arts in Therapy and Education Limited (t/a The Institution for Arts in Therapy and Education)
10023445	International College of Oriental Medicine (U.K.) Limited (The) (t/a ICOM)
10009843	International Correspondence Schools Limited
10020676	Into Newcastle University LLP
10025471	INTO UEA LLP (t/a Into University of East Anglia)
10009230	Inverness College
10010610	Irish Baptist College
10029682	Irshad Trust (t/a The Islamic College)
10012539	Isle of Anglesey County Council
10003406	Isle of Wight College
10003425	Italia Conti Academy of Theatre Arts Limited (The)
10003427	Itchen College
10003436	Ivanhoe College
10008298	James Watt College of Further and Higher Education
10009232	Jewel and Esk Valley College
10006715	John Kitto Community College
10003491	John Leggott Sixth Form College
10003500	John Ruskin College
10003503	John Spence Community High School

10009233	John Wheatley College
10003511	Joseph Chamberlain Sixth Form College
10003513	Joseph Priestley College
10011194	Julie Anne Hewson trading as The Iron Mill Institute
10021682	Kaplan Open Learning (Essex) Limited t/a Kaplan Open Learning
10003558	Kendal College
10003564	Kensington and Chelsea College
10003566	Kensington Education Foundation Ltd (t/a Kensington College of Business)
10037968	Kent Association for the Blind
10003570	Kent County Council
10012766	Kent Police Authority (t/a Kent Police College)
10003602	Kidderminster College
10010115	Kilmarnock College
10003624	King Edward VI College, Nuneaton
10003625	King Edward VI College, Stourbridge
10003635	King Edward VII Science and Sport College
10003640	King George V College
10003674	Kingston College
10003676	Kingston Maurward College
10005549	Kingston Upon Thames Royal Borough Council
10028607	KLM UK Engineering Limited
10003708	Knowsley Community College
10003709	Knowsley Metropolitan Borough Council
10009477	KYRA Education and Training
10003746	Laine Theatre Arts Limited
10003753	Lakes College, West Cumbria
10003755	Lambeth College
10003758	LAMDA Limited t/a London Academy of Music and Dramatic Arts
10003765	Lancashire County Council
10003768	Lancaster and Morecambe College
10009237	Langside College
10009238	Lauder College
10003856	Leeds College of Music
10003855	Leeds College of Building
10003857	Leeds College of Technology
10006889	Leeds Thomas Danby
10003866	Leicester City Council t/a Remit - Leicester City Council
10003867	Leicester College
10003872	Leicestershire County Council
10003884	Leo Baeck College
10003894	Lewisham College
10003895	Lewisham London Borough Council
10003896	Lews Castle College
10003899	Leyton Sixth Form College
10003925	Lincoln Academy Limited
10003928	Lincoln College
10003932	Lincolnshire County Council
10030943	Lindisfarne Regional Training Partnership
10008352	Lisburn Institute of Further and Higher Education
10003954	Liverpool City Council
10003955	Liverpool Community College
10003959	Liverpool Theatre School and College Limited
10010565	London Academy of Management Sciences Ltd
10004007	London City College Ltd t/a London City College
10004012	London College of Advanced Studies Limited
10004025	London College of Management and IT
10023451	London College of Professional Studies UK Limited
10004032	London Electronics College Limited
10007815	London International Education Foundation Limited
10004036	London International Film School Limited (The) t/a The London Film School
10004060	London School of Business & Finance (UK) Limited
10004061	London School of Business and Management Limited
10008653	London School of Commerce
10026852	London School of Management & Science Limited

10008362	London School of Science and Technology Limited
10004075	London School of Theology
10004079	London Studio Centre Limited
10004088	Long Road Sixth Form College
10004089	Longbenton Community College
10004097	Longslade Community College
10007959	Loreto College
10004112	Loughborough College
10004116	Lowestoft College
10004121	Ludlow College
10004124	Luton Borough Council
10004125	Luton Sixth Form College
10004144	Macclesfield College
10004175	Manchester City Council
10004176	Manchester College of Arts and Technology (Mancat)
10007960	Manor Community College (The)
10004192	Manor Training and Resource Centre Limited
10004204	Marine Society and Sea Cadets (The) t/a The Marine Society College of the Sea
10004222	Marshall of Cambridge Aerospace Limited t/a Marshall Aerospace
10011252	Mary Breen t/a Stella Mann College
10013987	Mary Hare School
10007875	Mary Ward Settlement t/a Mary Ward Centre
10042093	Matrix Training Consultancy Limited (t/a Matrix Training Consultancy Ltd)
10004243	Matthew Boulton College of Further and Higher Education
10004285	Medway District Council
10004313	Merseyside Dance and Drama Centre Limited
10009619	Merthyr Tydfil College
10009410	Merthyr Tydfil County Borough Council
10003996	Merton Borough Council
10004317	Merton College
10004339	Mid-Cheshire College of Further Education
10004344	Middlesbrough College
10004340	Mid-Kent College of Higher and Further Education
10010822	Midlands Academy of Dance and Drama Limited
10011264	Mike Stephens t/a Performers College, Essex
10004365	Millennium Dance 2000 Limited
10004375	Milton Keynes College
10010327	Monmouthshire County Council
10009249	Moray College
10004432	Morley College Limited t/a Morley College
10009251	Motherwell College
10004442	Moulton College
10034687	Mount Grace School
10004478	Myerscough College
10004481	Myrrh Limited t/a Myrrh Education and Training
10009968	N.D.A. (Nottingham) Limited t/a National Design Academy
10004497	National Autistic Society(The)
10004511	National Film and Television School (The)
10009614	Neath Port Talbot College
10009415	Neath Port Talbot County Borough Council
10004552	Nelson and Colne College
10004576	New College, Durham
10004577	New College, Nottingham
10004578	New College, Pontefract
10006303	New College, Stamford
10004579	New College, Swindon
10004580	New College, Telford
10004594	Newbattle Abbey College
10004596	Newbury College
10004599	Newcastle College
10004601	Newcastle Upon Tyne City Council
10004603	Newcastle-Under-Lyme College
10004607	Newham College of Further Education

10009732	Newham Community Renewal Programme Limited t/a The Learning Centre Woodgrange
10003997	Newham London Borough Council
10004608	Newham Sixth Form College
10004609	Newham Training and Education Centre
10010325	Newport City Council
10004626	NEWTEC Services Ltd
10004657	Norfolk County Council t/a Norfolk Adult Education Service (NCAT)
10008397	Norland College
10004676	North Devon College
10004686	North East Surrey College of Technology (Nescot)
10007977	North East Worcestershire College
10009256	North Glasgow College
10004690	North Hertfordshire College
10009291	North Highland College (The)
10004695	North Lindsey College
10004694	North Lincolnshire Council
10004705	North Nottinghamshire College
10004713	North Trafford College of Further Education
10004714	North Tyneside Metropolitan Borough Council
10004718	North Warwickshire and Hinckley College
10004721	North West Kent College of Technology
10020634	North West Regional College
10004727	North Yorkshire County Council
10007011	Northampton College
10004733	Northamptonshire County Council
10004736	Northbrook College, Sussex
10004738	Northern Ballet School
10004739	Northern College For Residential Adult Education Limited (The)
10020372	Northern Regional College, Antrim
10004760	Northumberland College
10004762	Northumberland County Council
10004771	Norton Radstock College
10004785	Notre Dame Catholic Sixth Form College
10020858	Nova Centric Limited t/a Confetti Institute of Creative Technologies
10034810	Nunnery Wood High School
10004835	Oaklands College
10021373	Oasis Charitable Trust (t/a Oasis College)
10008817	Oatridge College
10006770	Oldham College (The)
10004858	Oldham Metropolitan Borough Council
10004861	Oldham Sixth Form College
10004871	One Love
10004879	Open College of the Arts
10004881	Open Door Adult Learning Centre
10011130	Orkney College
10004901	Orpington College of Further Education
10004927	Oxford and Cherwell Valley College
10004932	Oxford Centre for Mission Studies
10004943	Oxford School of Drama Limited (The)
10004926	Oxfordshire County Council
10004969	Palmers College
10007983	Park Lane College, Leeds
10005001	Paston College
10007834	Pembrokeshire College
10009765	Pembrokeshire County Council
10034200	Pen Green Children and Families and Research Centre
10005043	Penwith College
10008702	Perth College
10005072	Peter Symonds College
10005074	Peterborough City Council t/a Peterborough Adult Learning Service
10005077	Peterborough Regional College
10042478	Pilgrims Hospices in East Kent
10008430	Platform One (IOW) Limited

10005124	Plumpton College
10005127	Plymouth College of Art and Design
10019178	Point Blank Limited (t/a Point Blank Music College)
10005143	Poole Borough Council t/a Poole Adult Learning
10021984	Popeth Cymraeg Cyfyngedig t/a Welsh Unlimited
10007986	Portchester Community School
10005154	Portslade Community College
10005158	Portsmouth College
10009776	Powys County Council
10000239	Pre-school Learning Alliance
10005200	Preston College
10005206	Priestley College
10005220	Prior Pursglove College
10020810	Psychosynthesis and Education Trust
10009883	Purton House Homeopathic Centre Limited
10017276	Putteridge High School and Community College
10003375	QA Limited
10005325	Queen Elizabeth Sixth Form College
10005339	Queen Mary's College
10005390	Rawlins Community College
10005398	Reading Borough Council
10005404	Reaseheath College
10005410	Redbridge College
10005412	Redbridge London Borough Council t/a Redbridge Institute of Adult Education
10005413	Redcar and Cleveland Borough Council
10005414	Redcar and Cleveland College
10005433	Reid Kerr College
10005435	Reigate College
10032284	Respiratory Education UK
10005436	Relate
10005451	Resource Development International Limited
10009423	Rhondda Cynon Taff County Borough Council
10005465	Richard Huish College, Taunton
10005466	Richmond Adult Community College
10005469	Richmond Upon Thames College
10002863	Riverside College Halton
10005502	Robert Pattinson School
10005508	Rochdale Borough Council
10005517	Rodbaston College
10005534	Rotherham College of Arts and Technology
10005538	Roundhill Community College
10005544	Royal Academy of Dancing
10033441	Royal Air Force
10005455	Royal Engineers Vocational Education and Training Trust t/a REVETT
10005551	Royal Forest of Dean College
10005558	Royal National College for the Blind at Hereford
10033438	Royal Navy
10037922	Royal School of Church Music (The) (t/a RSCM)
10005575	Runshaw College
10005583	Ruskin College t/a Ruskin College Oxford
10005607	Sabhal Mor Ostaig
10005032	Salford City College
10005649	Salford College
10005652	Salisbury College
10017484	Saltley School and Specialist Science College
10005669	Sandwell College
10005671	Sandwell Metropolitan Borough Council
10005687	Scarborough Sixth Form College
10021029	School of Technology and Management (STM)
10023457	The Scottish Police College
10005736	Seevic College, Essex
10005741	Selby College
10002247	Semta International Ltd. t/a Emta

10005772	Shalom Employment Action Centre
10005780	Sharnbrook Upper School and Community College
10002244	Sheffield City Council
10005788	Sheffield College (The)
10005789	Sheffield Environmental Training Limited
10010390	Shetland College
10005810	Shipley College
10005821	Shrewsbury College of Arts and Technology
10005822	Shrewsbury Sixth Form College
10005847	Simon Balle School
10005859	Sir George Monoux Sixth Form College
10005864	Sir John Deane's College
10006815	Sixth Form College (The), Solihull
10005881	Sixth Form College, Colchester
10006814	Sixth Form College, Farnborough
10022061	Skills Solution Limited
10005916	Slough Borough Council
10005946	Solihull College
10005956	Somerset College of Arts and Technology
10005959	Somerset County Council t/a Somerset Skills and Learning
10020502	Somerset SCITT Consortium
10005967	South Birmingham College
10009433	South Birmingham Primary Care Trust
10005972	South Cheshire College
10005977	South Devon College
10005979	South Downs College
10005980	South East Derbyshire College
10005981	South East Essex College of Arts and Technology
10020699	South Eastern Regional College
10005982	South Gloucestershire Council
10005985	South Kent College
10008741	South Lanarkshire College
10005989	South Leicestershire College
10005991	South Nottingham College
10023526	South Staffordshire College
10005997	South Thames College
10005999	South Tyneside College
10006000	South Tyneside Council
10020685	South West College
10002356	South Worcestershire College
10006020	Southampton City College
10006029	Southend-on-Sea Borough Council
10020633	Southern Regional College
10006035	Southgate College
10006038	Southport College
10006040	Southwark College
10006042	Southwark London Borough Council
10006050	Sparsholt College, Hampshire
10006093	Spurgeon's College
10006130	St Brendan's Sixth Form College
10006135	St Charles Catholic Sixth Form College
10006146	St David's College, Llandudno
10016359	St David's Roman Catholic Sixth Form College t/a St David's Catholic College
10006148	St Dominic's Sixth Form College
10008007	St Francis Xavier Sixth Form College
10006164	St George's College of Technology (The)
10006174	St Helens College
10006195	St John Rigby Roman Catholic Sixth Form College t/a St John Rigby College
10038990	St John's College, Durham
10009925	St John's College Nottingham Limited t/a St John's College Nottingham
10006220	St Mary's Catholic College, Wallasey
10006226	St Mary's College, Blackburn

10006224	St Mary's College, Hull
10016736	St Mary's College, Liverpool
10006225	St Mary's College, Middlesbrough
10017790	St Mary's College, Southampton
10030776	St Mellitus College Trust (t/a St Mellitus College)
10009947	St Nicholas Preparatory School Limited t/a Montessori Centre International
10006243	St. Patrick's International College Limited
10006268	St Vincent College
10006270	St Wilfrid's Catholic High School and Sixth Form College
10006293	Stafford College
10009439	Stanmore College
10006322	Stephenson College, Coalville
10009281	Stevenson College, Edinburgh
10006331	Stockport College of Further and Higher Education
10006335	Stockport Metropolitan Borough Council
10006341	Stockton Riverside College
10006337	Stockton-on-Tees Borough Council
10006342	Stockton Sixth Form College
10001473	Stoke-on-Trent City Council
10006349	Stoke on Trent College
10006355	Stourbridge College
10009282	Stow College
10006002	Stratford-Upon-Avon College
10006378	Strode College, Street
10006379	Strode's College, Egham
10006380	Stroud College of Further Education t/a Stroud College in Gloucestershire
10006399	Suffolk County Council
10006398	Suffolk New College
10017637	Sunfield School
10006426	Surrey County Council
10001372	Surrey Hills Onward Learning
10006432	Sussex Downs College
10006439	Sutton Centre Community College t/a Sutton Centre
10006442	Sutton Coldfield College
10006444	Sutton College of Learning for Adults
10007845	Swansea College
10009878	Swansea City and County Council
10006458	Swarthmore Education Centre
10006463	Swindon College
10006494	Tameside College
10006495	Tameside Metropolitan Borough Council
10006497	Tamworth and Lichfield College
10009554	Taunton's College, Southampton
10020381	Tavistock and Portman NHS Foundation Trust
10032299	Tech Music Schools Limited t/a Tech Music Schools
10006549	Telford College of Arts and Technology
10006570	Thanet College
10013357	The Academy for Contemporary Music Limited
10008899	The Ashridge (Bonar Law Memorial) Trust t/a Ashridge Management College
10032038	The Babraham Institute
10023230	The Benenden Hospital Trust (t/a Benenden Hospital)
10017718	The Bridge School
10000947	The Bromley by Bow Centre
10032043	The Bulmer Foundation
10032071	The Cambridge Crystallographic Data Centre
10013266	The Centre for Literacy in Primary Education
10001386	The Chicken Shed Theatre Trust
10023442	The College of Osteopaths
10001539	The College of Animal Welfare Limited (t/a College of Animal Welfare)
10001552	The College of Traditional Accupuncture
10020571	The Gestalt Centre t/a Gestalt Centre London
10006389	The Interactive Design Institute Limited t/a Studio Art School-The Interactive Design Institute

10010227	The Kingham Hill Trust t/a Oak Hill College
10012516	The Learning Institute, Callington
10024962	The Leeds City College
10004027	The London College of Traditional Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine
10023139	The Manchester College
10031696	The Methodist Church in Great Britain (t/a Wesley Study Centre)
10004320	The Metanoia Institute
10004740	The Northern College of Acupuncture
10032280	The Organisation for Professionals in Regulatory Affairs Limited (t/a TOPRA)
10004938	The Oxford House in Bethnal Green Ltd
10013036	The Workers' Educational Association South Wales t/a WEA South
10006892	Thomas Rotherham College
10006905	Thurrock and Basildon College
10006907	Thurrock Borough Council t/a Thurrock Adult Community College
10009880	Torfaen County Borough Council
10006958	Totton College
10006963	Tower Hamlets College
10006964	Tower Hamlets London Borough Council t/a Tower Hamlets Lifelong Learning Service
10005998	Trafford College
10007035	Tresham Institute
10007037	Treviglas Community College
10007042	Tribal Hubs Limited
10007063	Truro College
10007079	Turnford School
10008569	Tyne Metropolitan College
10007111	Uckfield Community Technology College
10003816	Ufi Limited (online learning partnership with learndirect)
10008575	Upper Bann Institute of Further and Higher Education
10007180	Uppingham Community College
10009639	Urchfont Manor College
10009099	Urdang Schools Limited t/a The Urdang Academy
10007193	Uxbridge College
10007199	Vale of Catmose College
10009449	Vale of Glamorgan County Council
10007212	Varndean College
10014199	Veolia Environnement Development Centre Limited
10012511	Vital Training and Communications UK Limited t/a Impact International College
10007291	Wakefield City Council
10007289	Wakefield College
10024766	Wales Evangelical School of Theology Ltd t/a WEST
10007299	Walford and North Shropshire College
10007315	Walsall College
10007318	Walsall Metropolitan Borough Council
10007321	Waltham Forest College
10007322	Waltham Forest London Borough Council t/a Waltham Forest Community Learning and Skills Service
10007339	Warrington Collegiate
10007859	Warwickshire College
10007365	Weald and Downland Open Air Museum Limited
10007374	Webber Douglas Academy of Dramatic Art Limited
10007381	Welland Park Community College
10009613	Welsh College of Horticulture
10007407	West Cheshire College
10008589	West of England Ministerial Training Course
10007417	West Herts College
10007419	West Kent College
10009295	West Lothian College
10007427	West Nottinghamshire College
10007431	West Suffolk College
10007432	West Sussex County Council
10007434	West Thames College

10007447	Westfield Community Technology College
10001464	Westminster City Council
10007455	Westminster Kingsway College
10030973	Westminster Theological Centre
10007459	Weston College
10007469	Weymouth College
10015623	Whitefields School and Centre
10007500	Wigan and Leigh College
10007503	Wilberforce College
10026090	Williams College UK Ltd
10007527	Wiltshire College
10007543	Wine and Spirit Education Trust
10007546	Winstanley College
10007553	Wirral Metropolitan College
10007566	Woking College
10007576	Wolverhampton City Council
10007609	Woodhouse College
10007621	Worcester College of Technology
10008025	Worcester Sixth Form College
10007364	Workers' Educational Association
10007636	Working Men's College Corporation t/a The Working Men's College
10007643	Worthing College
10007647	Wreake Valley Community College
10009834	Wrexham County Borough Council
10007671	Wyggeston and Queen Elizabeth I College
10007673	Wyke Sixth Form College
10007682	Xaverian College
10009659	XL Training (Scotland) Limited
10009685	Yale Sixth Form College t/a Yale College of Wrexham
10007696	Yeovil College
10007700	YMCA George Williams Company (t/a YMCA George Williams College)
10007405	YMCA Training
10007701	YMCA Wales Community College Limited
10007709	York College
10007718	Yorkshire Coast College of Further and Higher Education
10008953	Ymddiriedolaeth Nant Gwrtheyrn t/a Nant Gwrtheyrn
10007862	Ystrad Mynach College
10007783	The University of Aberdeen
10007849	University of Abertay Dundee
10007856	Aberystwyth University
10000291	Anglia Ruskin University
10007759	Aston University
10007857	Bangor University
10000571	Bath Spa University
10007850	The University of Bath
10007152	University of Bedfordshire
10005343	The Queen's University of Belfast
10007760	Birkbeck College
10007140	Birmingham City University
10006840	The University of Birmingham
10000712	University College Birmingham
10007811	Bishop Grosseteste University
10006841	The University of Bolton
10000385	The Arts University Bournemouth
10000824	Bournemouth University
10007785	The University of Bradford
10000886	The University of Brighton
10007786	The University of Bristol
10000961	Brunel University
10000975	Buckinghamshire New University
10007787	The University of Buckingham
10007788	The University of Cambridge
10003324	The Institute of Cancer Research
10001143	Canterbury Christ Church University

10007814	Cardiff University
10007854	Cardiff Metropolitan University
10007141	The University of Central Lancashire
10007816	Central School of Speech and Drama
10007848	University of Chester
10007137	The University of Chichester
10001478	The City University
10001653	Conservatoire for Dance and Drama
10007761	Courtauld Institute of Art
10001726	Coventry University
10007822	Cranfield University
10006427	University for the Creative Arts
10007842	University of Cumbria
10001856	Dartington College of Arts
10001883	De Montfort University
10007851	University of Derby
10007852	The University of Dundee
10007143	University of Durham
10007789	The University of East Anglia
10007144	The University of East London
10007823	Edge Hill University
10007772	Edinburgh Napier University
10007790	The University of Edinburgh
10007791	The University of Essex
10007792	The University of Exeter
10008640	Falmouth University
10007793	University of Glamorgan
10007762	Glasgow Caledonian University
10002681	Glasgow School of Art
10007794	The University of Glasgow
10007145	University of Gloucestershire
10007833	Glynd#r University
10002718	Goldsmiths College
10007146	The University of Greenwich
10007825	Guildhall School of Music and Drama
10040812	Harper Adams University
10007764	Heriot-Watt University
10007147	University of Hertfordshire
10007765	Heythrop College
10007148	The University of Huddersfield
10007149	The University of Hull
10003270	Imperial College of Science, Technology and Medicine
10007766	Institute of Education
10007767	The University of Keele
10007150	The University of Kent
10003645	King's College London
10003678	Kingston University
10007858	University of Wales Trinity Saint David
10007768	The University of Lancaster
10003854	Leeds College of Art
10003861	Leeds Metropolitan University
10007795	The University of Leeds
10003863	Leeds Trinity University
10007796	The University of Leicester
10007151	The University of Lincoln
10003956	Liverpool Hope University
10003957	Liverpool John Moores University
10003945	The Liverpool Institute for Performing Arts
10006842	The University of Liverpool
10007162	University of the Arts, London
10007769	London Business School
10007797	University of London (Institutes and activities)
10007812	University of London Institute in Paris
10004048	London Metropolitan University

10004078	London South Bank University
10004063	London School of Economics and Political Science
10007771	London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine
10004113	Loughborough University
10004180	The Manchester Metropolitan University
10007798	The University of Manchester
10004351	Middlesex University
10007799	The University of Newcastle-upon-Tyne
10007832	Newman University
10007853	The University of Wales, Newport
10007138	The University of Northampton
10001282	The University of Northumbria at Newcastle
10004775	Norwich University of the Arts
10007154	The University of Nottingham
10004797	The Nottingham Trent University
10007773	The Open University
10004930	Oxford Brookes University
10007774	The University of Oxford
10037449	University of St Mark and St John
10007801	The University of Plymouth
10007155	The University of Portsmouth
10005337	Queen Margaret University, Edinburgh
10007775	Queen Mary and Westfield College
10005389	Ravensbourne
10007802	The University of Reading
10005500	The Robert Gordon University
10007776	Roehampton University
10005523	Rose Bruford College
10007835	Royal Academy of Music
10005545	Royal Agricultural University
10007777	Royal College of Art
10007778	Royal College of Music
10005553	Royal Holloway and Bedford New College
10007837	Royal Northern College of Music
10005561	Royal Conservatoire of Scotland
10007779	The Royal Veterinary College
10007838	Royal Welsh College of Music and Drama
10007803	The University of St Andrews
10007782	St George's Hospital Medical School
10008026	St Mary's University College
10007843	St Mary's University College, Twickenham
10007156	The University of Salford
10007780	The School of Oriental and African Studies
10005700	SRUC
10005790	Sheffield Hallam University
10007157	The University of Sheffield
10006022	Southampton Solent University
10007158	The University of Southampton
10006299	Staffordshire University
10007804	The University of Stirling
10008010	Stranmillis University College
10007805	The University of Strathclyde
10014001	University Campus Suffolk
10007159	The University of Sunderland
10007160	The University of Surrey
10007806	The University of Sussex
10007846	Swansea Metropolitan University
10007855	Swansea University
10007161	Teesside University
10006566	The University of West London
10007048	Trinity University College
10008017	Trinity Laban Conservatoire of Music and Dance
10007114	University of the Highlands and Islands
10007807	University of Ulster

	<p>10007784 University College London 10008574 The University of Wales (central functions) 10007163 The University of Warwick 10007164 University of the West of England, Bristol 10007800 The University of the West of Scotland 10007165 The University of Westminster 10003614 The University of Winchester 10007166 The University of Wolverhampton 10007139 The University of Worcester 10007657 Writtle College 10007713 York St John University 10007167 The University of York 10000163 AECC Chiropractic College 10005470 Richmond, The American International University in London 10031982 BPP University 10039956 The University of Law 10007937 GSM London 10035638 Institute of Contemporary Music Performance 10008289 IFS University College 10003331 Regent's College 10023454 Moorlands College 10005415 Redcliffe College 10003200 Hull College 10020416 Mattersey Hall 10000911 British Council of Osteopathic Medicine</p>
Notes	<p>In cases where there is more than one other institution providing teaching, the institution with the most input should be reported.</p> <p>The Valid entry codes have been created for HEIs and certain FECs using the UK Register of Learning Providers. Where Other institution providing teaching does not appear in the Valid entries list please code:</p> <p>Generic codes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4001 Other UK institution • 4002 Other Non-UK institution • 4003 Other public body in the UK • 4004 Other private body in the UK <p>Code 4001 should be used only exceptionally for a UK HEI or FEC that has not been included under the valid entries, but which would be expected to be included in such a list in future years.</p> <p>Code 4002 should be used for any body (educational or other) based outside the UK.</p> <p>If the institution is providing teaching at the workplace then no entry is required in this field. Where the institution is buying in teaching from another body, which could be the students employer, these cases will be identified by the codes 4003 and 4004.</p> <p>If a student is coded 01 - 80 in Instance.FROUTARR then this field must be coded 4001 - 4004.</p> <p>University of London (Institutes and activities):</p> <p>The institutes within the umbrella of University of London (Institutes and activities) are:</p>

	<p>University of London Institute in Paris University Marine Biological Station, Millport School of Advanced Study comprises:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Institute of Advanced Legal Studies Institute of Classical Studies Institute of Commonwealth Studies Institute of English Studies Institute of Germanic Studies and Romance Studies Institute of Historical Research Institute of Musical Research Institute of Philosophy Institute for the Study of the Americas Warburg Institute.</p> <p>Collaboration agreements with any of the institutes and activities of the University of London should be returned under valid entry 10007797 'University of London (Institutes and activities)' in this field. The exception to this is the University of London Institute in Paris. This should be returned using the valid entry 10007812 'University of London Institute in Paris'.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Module.TINST must exist where Module.PCOLAB is greater than 0. 3 Error Module.TINST must not exist where Module.PCOLAB is 0. 4 Error Module.TINST must not be coded 4001 for institutions in England. 5 Warning Module.TINST should not be coded 4003 or 4004 for institutions in England. 6 Error Module.TINST must not equal Institution.UKPRN</p>
Reason Required	To monitor patterns of collaborative study.
Part Of	Module
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: TINST Data type: TINSTCodeContentType
Related Fields	PCOLAB
Owner	UKRLP/HESA
Version	1.8
Date modified	2013-11-06
Change management notes	Valid entry label change of 10005545 'Royal Agricultural College' to 10005545 'Royal Agricultural University' to reflect the current legal name of that institution.

Percentage not taught by this institution

Type	field
Short Name	PCOLAB
Description	This field indicates the percentage of the module in this reporting period for which other arrangements for teaching have been made, e.g. taught collaboratively between two institutions. The percentage represented by this field denotes the proportion not taught by the returning institution.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All modules
Notes	<p>Proportion not taught by this institution should relate to the FTE reported in Module.FTE.</p> <p>If this field is anything but zero, indicating that some part of the course is taught elsewhere then Module.TINST must be completed.</p> <p>This field relates to the proportion not taught by the reporting institution's staff, and not the location at which the teaching takes place.</p> <p>It is expected that students out on placement or exchange will be shown as zero in this field.</p> <p>Zero is an acceptable default value for institutions in Wales for modules that are linked only to FE instances.</p> <p>The length of this field is 5 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros or the decimal place, e.g. 005.0 or 5.0 or 5</p>
Business rules	1 Error Module.PCOLAB must be greater than 0 where Module.TINST exists.
Reason Required	To monitor patterns of collaborative study.
Part Of	Module
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: PCOLAB Data type: PercentType
Related Fields	TINST
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0
Date modified	2012-09-27

Module subject

Type	entity
Short Name	ModuleSubject
Description	Subject descriptor for the Module
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All modules
Notes	<p>Institutions may code up to 16 occurrences of module subject. It is up to institutions to decide whether or not to return details of cost centres which are contributing teaching/learning amounting to less than 5% of the proportion of the module.</p> <p>An entry is required for each subject area of study of the module regardless of whether this subject area of study is taught by the reporting institution or not.</p> <p>Where 2 different subjects are taught in the same cost centre, there should be separate entries for each.</p> <p>A breakdown at instance level will be acceptable for students out on placement or exchange out.</p> <p>Where the sum of percentages does not equal 100% (e.g. because of the exclusion of cost centres contributing less than 5% of the teaching/learning) then the percentage of the subjects returned should be pro-rated so that the total becomes 100%. However, there will be a tolerance of totals between 98% and 102%.</p>
Reason Required	This repeating element exists to allow a module to hold up to sixteen sets of cost centre and subject information.
Part Of	Module
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	16
Has Parts	Subject of module (MODSBJ) Cost centre (COSTCN) Subject / cost centre percentage (MODSBJP)
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Cost centre

Type	field
Short Name	COSTCN
Description	This field describes the academic cost centre in which the module is being taught. It is up to institutions to decide whether or not to return details of cost centres which are contributing teaching/learning amounting to less than 5% of the proportion of the module.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All module subject records
Valid Entries and Labels	101 Clinical medicine 102 Clinical dentistry 103 Nursing & allied health professions 104 Psychology & behavioural sciences 105 Health & community studies 106 Anatomy & physiology 107 Pharmacy & pharmacology 108 Sports science & leisure studies 109 Veterinary science 110 Agriculture, forestry & food science 111 Earth, marine & environmental sciences 112 Biosciences 113 Chemistry 114 Physics 115 General engineering 116 Chemical engineering 117 Mineral, metallurgy & materials engineering 118 Civil engineering 119 Electrical, electronic & computer engineering 120 Mechanical, aero & production engineering 121 IT, systems sciences & computer software engineering 122 Mathematics 123 Architecture, built environment & planning 124 Geography & environmental studies 125 Area studies 126 Archaeology 127 Anthropology & development studies 128 Politics & international studies 129 Economics & econometrics 130 Law 131 Social work & social policy 132 Sociology 133 Business & management studies 134 Catering & hospitality management 135 Education 136 Continuing education 137 Modern languages 138 English language & literature 139 History 140 Classics 141 Philosophy 142 Theology & religious studies 143 Art & design 144 Music, dance, drama & performing arts 145 Media studies 999 Cost centre not assignable

Notes	<p>This field forms one third of a triplet of fields with ModuleSubject.MODSBJ and ModuleSubject.MODSBJP</p> <p>Where two different subjects are taught in the same cost centre, there should be separate occurrences of Module.ModuleSubject for each.</p> <p>For English institutions, these cost centres should have been agreed with HEFCE as outlined in the Circular Letter 32/2005.</p> <p>The cost centre should relate to where resources deployed to teach the student are located. Effectively the cost centre follows the money and will be reconcilable with the institutions finance statistics return. For example, if a member of staff based in the General Engineering cost centre takes a group of engineering students for a mathematics lecture, the cost centre should be General Engineering (115). However, if a member of staff based in the mathematics cost centre takes a group of engineering students for a mathematics lecture, the cost centre should be Mathematics (122).</p> <p>Where a department buys in the services of a member of staff based in a department in a non-academic cost centre, the cost centre to be returned would be that of the buying in department. For example, a member of staff based in the computing service takes a group of engineering students for a lecture and is paid for under a servicing agreement by the engineering department, then the cost centre returned should be General Engineering (115).</p> <p>The most important consideration in taking decisions about the attribution of students to cost centres should be the correspondence with the HESA Finance record.</p> <p>Where a part of the module is taught by another reporting institution, expenditure related to this provision must be included against academic cost centres under Head 1 of Table 6 of the Finance Record. It has been agreed that the cost centre on the Student Record should match this allocation, i.e. institutions should code cost centre according to the organising department at their institution. Cost centre 999 is 'not assignable' and should only be used in cases where it is not possible to allocate the activity to an academic cost centre, e.g. where the appropriate cost centre is a non-academic cost centre. For institutions in England, HEFCE make use of cost centres in their funding allocations. HEFCE have stated that provision returned under cost centre 999 will be allocated to the lowest price group for funding.</p> <p>A mapping of old HESA Cost Centres to new HESA cost centres can be found here .</p>
Reason Required	To calculate the student load split out across the academic cost centres, and split across JACS3 codes.
Part Of	Module subject
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: COSTCN Data type: COSTCNCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2012-06-29

Change management
notes

Cost centres 201 - 206 have been removed as they were not academic cost centres.
Code 999 'Cost centre not assignable' added to the list of valid entries.

Subject / cost centre percentage

Type	field
Short Name	MODSBJP
Description	This field indicates the percentage of the module that the associated subject and cost centre combination make up. It should be a value between 0 and 100 and can be recorded up to one decimal place.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All module subject records
Notes	This should add to 100% across all occurrences of a module. The length of this field is 5 characters, however the move to XML enables data to be returned with or without leading zeros or the decimal place, e.g. 005.0 or 5.0 or 5
Business rules	1 Error Sum across all occurrences of ModuleSubject.MODSBJP for a module must be between 99 and 101.
Reason Required	To calculate the student load split out across up to sixteen academic cost centres, and split across JACS3 codes.
Part Of	Module subject
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MODSBJP Data type: PercentType
Related Fields	MODSBJ
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Subject of module

Type	field
Short Name	MODSBJ
Description	This field records the subject descriptors for the module, and is a four character JACS3 code.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All module subject records
Valid Entries and Labels	A100 Pre-clinical medicine A200 Pre-clinical dentistry A300 Clinical medicine A400 Clinical dentistry A900 Others in medicine & dentistry A990 Medicine & dentistry not elsewhere classified B100 Anatomy, physiology & pathology B110 Anatomy B120 Physiology B121 Clinical physiology B130 Pathology B131 Cellular pathology B132 Pathobiology B140 Neuroscience B160 Physiotherapy B170 Podiatry B190 Anatomy, physiology & pathology not elsewhere classified B200 Pharmacology, toxicology & pharmacy B210 Pharmacology B220 Toxicology B230 Pharmacy B290 Pharmacology, toxicology & pharmacy not elsewhere classified B300 Complementary medicines, therapies & well-being B310 Osteopathy B320 Chiropractic B340 Alternative medicine & therapies B341 Chinese B342 Herbalism B343 Acupuncture B344 Aromatherapy B345 Hypnotherapy B346 Reflexology B350 Hair & beauty science B351 Hair services B352 Beauty therapies B353 Make-up B360 Spa & water-based therapies B390 Complementary medicines, therapies & well-being not elsewhere classified B400 Nutrition B410 Dietetics B490 Nutrition not elsewhere classified B500 Ophthalmics B510 Optometry B520 Orthoptics B590 Ophthalmics not elsewhere classified B600 Aural & oral sciences B610 Audiology B620 Speech science B630 Language pathology

B690	Aural & oral sciences not elsewhere classified
B700	Nursing
B701	Palliative care nursing
B702	Clinical practice nursing
B710	Community nursing
B712	Health visiting
B713	School nursing
B714	Practice nursing
B720	Midwifery
B730	Children's nursing
B731	Neonatal care
B740	Adult nursing
B741	Older people nursing
B750	Dental nursing
B760	Mental health nursing
B761	Learning disability nursing
B770	Medical nursing
B771	Critical care nursing
B772	Surgical nursing
B773	Emergency nursing
B790	Nursing not elsewhere classified
B800	Medical technology
B810	Cardiography
B820	Radiology
B821	Radiography, diagnostic
B822	Radiography, therapeutic
B830	Biomechanics & prosthetics (non-clinical)
B840	Dental technology
B850	Mortuary technology
B890	Medical technology not elsewhere classified
B900	Others in subjects allied to medicine
B910	Environmental health
B920	Occupational health
B930	Occupational therapy
B940	Counselling
B950	Paramedical science
B960	Physician assistant studies
B990	Subjects allied to medicine not elsewhere classified
C100	Biology
C110	Applied biology
C111	Parasitology
C120	Behavioural biology
C130	Cell biology
C131	Applied cell biology
C140	Developmental/Reproductive biology
C141	Developmental biology
C142	Reproductive biology
C150	Environmental biology
C160	Marine/Freshwater biology
C161	Marine biology
C162	Freshwater biology
C170	Population biology
C180	Ecology
C181	Biodiversity
C182	Evolution
C183	Community ecology
C184	Conservation ecology
C185	Ecosystem ecology & land use
C186	Population ecology
C187	Ecotoxicology
C190	Biology not elsewhere classified
C191	Biometry
C200	Botany
C210	Applied botany

C220	Mycology
C230	Plant biotechnology
C240	Plant cell science
C250	Plant pathology
C260	Plant physiology
C270	Developmental & reproductive plant biology
C280	Systematic botany
C290	Botany not elsewhere classified
C300	Zoology
C310	Applied zoology
C320	Cell zoology
C330	Developmental & reproductive zoology
C340	Entomology
C350	Marine zoology
C360	Pest science
C380	Systematic zoology
C390	Zoology not elsewhere classified
C400	Genetics
C410	Applied genetics
C420	Human genetics
C430	Medical & veterinary genetics
C431	Medical genetics
C432	Veterinary genetics
C440	Molecular genetics
C441	Transcriptomics
C450	Genomics
C451	Functional genomics
C452	Genome organisation
C460	Genetic engineering
C470	Population genetics & evolution
C490	Genetics not elsewhere classified
C500	Microbiology
C510	Applied microbiology
C520	Medical & veterinary microbiology
C521	Medical microbiology
C522	Veterinary microbiology
C530	Bacteriology
C540	Virology
C550	Immunology
C570	Serology
C590	Microbiology not elsewhere classified
C600	Sport & exercise science
C610	Sport coaching
C620	Sport development
C630	Sport conditioning, rehabilitation & therapy
C640	Sport studies
C650	Sport technology
C690	Sport & exercise science not elsewhere classified
C700	Molecular biology, biophysics & biochemistry
C710	Applied molecular biology, biophysics & biochemistry
C720	Biological chemistry
C730	Metabolic biochemistry
C740	Medical & veterinary biochemistry
C741	Medical biochemistry
C742	Veterinary biochemistry
C750	Plant biochemistry
C760	Biomolecular science
C770	Biophysical science
C790	Molecular biology, biophysics & biochemistry not elsewhere classified
C800	Psychology
C810	Applied psychology
C811	Occupational psychology
C812	Educational psychology
C813	Sport psychology

C814	Organisational psychology
C815	Business psychology
C816	Forensic psychology
C820	Developmental psychology
C821	Child psychology
C822	The psychology of ageing
C830	Methodological & conceptual issues in psychology
C831	Research methods in psychology
C832	Quantitative psychology
C833	Qualitative psychology
C834	History of psychology
C835	Philosophy of psychology
C840	Psychology in health & medicine
C841	Health psychology
C842	Clinical psychology
C843	Counselling psychology
C844	Psychotherapy
C845	Clinical neuropsychology
C846	Community psychology
C847	Psychoanalytical studies
C848	Psychology of mental health
C850	Cognitive & affective psychology
C851	Psychological modelling
C852	Psychology of communication
C853	Psychology of memory & learning
C854	Psychology of perception
C855	Psychology of higher cognitive processes
C856	Experimental psychology
C857	Affective psychology
C858	Transpersonal psychology
C860	Psychobiology
C861	Cognitive neuroscience
C862	Affective neuroscience
C863	Psychopharmacology
C864	Evolutionary psychology
C865	Animal psychology
C870	Personality & individual differences
C871	Psychometrics
C872	Psychology of gender
C873	Cross-cultural psychology
C880	Social psychology
C881	Social cognition
C890	Psychology not elsewhere classified
C900	Others in Biological Sciences
C910	Applied biological sciences
C990	Biological sciences not elsewhere classified
D100	Pre-clinical veterinary medicine
D190	Pre-clinical veterinary medicine not elsewhere classified
D200	Clinical veterinary medicine & dentistry
D210	Clinical veterinary medicine
D220	Clinical veterinary dentistry
D290	Clinical veterinary medicine & dentistry not elsewhere classified
D300	Animal science
D310	Veterinary nursing
D320	Animal health
D321	Animal anatomy
D322	Animal physiology
D323	Animal pathology
D324	Animal pharmacology
D325	Animal toxicology
D326	Animal pharmacy
D327	Animal nutrition
D328	Animal welfare
D330	Veterinary public health

D340	Overseas veterinary development
D390	Animal sciences not elsewhere classified
D400	Agriculture
D410	Arable & fruit farming
D411	Agricultural pests & diseases
D412	Crop physiology
D413	Crop nutrition
D414	Crop protection
D415	Crop production
D416	Glasshouse culture
D417	Amenity horticulture
D418	Exotic plants & crops
D420	Livestock
D421	Livestock husbandry
D422	Equine studies
D423	Poultry keeping
D424	Game keeping
D425	Exotic livestock
D430	Fish farming
D431	Fish husbandry
D432	Freshwater fish
D433	Saltwater fish
D434	Ornamental fish
D435	Aquaculture
D440	Rural estate management
D441	Farm management
D442	Game keeping management
D443	Water resource management
D444	Land management for recreation
D445	Biological heritage site management
D446	Wilderness management
D447	Environmental conservation
D448	Sustainable agricultural & landscape development
D450	International agriculture
D460	Organic farming
D461	Organic arable & fruit farming
D462	Organic livestock
D463	Organic fish farming
D470	Agricultural technology
D471	Agricultural machinery
D472	Agricultural irrigation & drainage
D490	Agriculture not elsewhere classified
D500	Forestry & arboriculture
D510	Trees & shrubs
D511	Forestry pests & diseases
D512	Tree physiology
D513	Tree nutrition
D514	Tree protection
D515	Tree production
D516	Timber production
D517	Community forestry
D520	International forestry
D530	Organic forestry
D540	Forestry technology
D541	Forestry irrigation & drainage
D590	Forestry not elsewhere classified
D600	Food & beverage studies
D610	Food science
D611	Meat science
D612	Cereal science
D613	Vegetable science
D614	Fruit science
D620	Food hygiene
D630	Food & beverage production

D631	Food & beverage manufacture
D632	Food & beverage processing
D633	Food & beverage technology
D634	Industrial baking
D635	Industrial brewing
D640	Food & beverages for the consumer
D641	Food & beverage packaging
D642	Food & beverage delivery
D690	Food & beverage studies not elsewhere classified
D700	Agricultural sciences
D710	Agricultural biology
D711	Agricultural microbiology
D720	Agricultural chemistry
D721	Agricultural biochemistry
D730	Agricultural botany
D740	Agricultural zoology
D750	Soil as an agricultural medium
D790	Agricultural sciences not elsewhere classified
D900	Others in veterinary sciences, agriculture & related subjects
D990	Veterinary sciences, agriculture & related subjects not elsewhere classified
F100	Chemistry
F110	Applied chemistry
F111	Industrial chemistry
F112	Colour chemistry
F120	Inorganic chemistry
F130	Structural chemistry
F131	Crystallography
F140	Environmental chemistry
F141	Marine chemistry
F150	Medicinal chemistry
F151	Pharmaceutical chemistry
F160	Organic chemistry
F161	Organometallic chemistry
F162	Polymer chemistry
F163	Bio-organic chemistry
F164	Petrochemical chemistry
F165	Biomolecular chemistry
F170	Physical chemistry
F180	Analytical chemistry
F190	Chemistry not elsewhere classified
F200	Materials science
F290	Materials science not elsewhere classified
F300	Physics
F310	Applied physics
F311	Engineering physics
F320	Chemical physics
F321	Solid-state physics
F330	Environmental physics
F331	Atmospheric physics
F332	Marine physics
F340	Mathematical & theoretical physics
F341	Electromagnetism
F342	Quantum mechanics
F343	Computational physics
F350	Medical physics
F351	Radiation physics
F360	Optical physics
F361	Laser physics
F370	Nuclear & particle physics
F380	Acoustics
F390	Physics not elsewhere classified
F400	Forensic & archaeological sciences
F410	Forensic science
F420	Archaeological science

F490	Forensic & archaeological sciences not elsewhere classified
F500	Astronomy
F510	Astrophysics
F520	Space & planetary sciences
F521	Space science
F522	Planetary science
F530	Solar & solar terrestrial physics
F540	Astronomy observation
F550	Astronomy theory
F590	Astronomy not elsewhere classified
F600	Geology
F610	Applied geology
F611	Industrial geology
F612	Engineering geology
F620	Mining geology
F621	Exploration geology
F630	Geotechnology
F631	Marine geotechnology
F640	Earth science
F641	Palaeontology
F642	Geoscience
F643	Quaternary studies
F644	Hydrogeology
F645	Mantle & core processes
F646	Land-atmosphere interactions
F650	Geological oceanography
F660	Geophysics
F661	Exploration geophysics
F670	Geochemistry
F680	Geohazards
F681	Seismology & tectonics
F682	Vulcanology
F690	Geology not elsewhere classified
F700	Science of aquatic & terrestrial environments
F710	Marine sciences
F720	Hydrography
F730	Ocean sciences
F731	Ocean circulation
F732	Oceanographic survey & monitoring
F733	Land-ocean interaction
F734	Atmosphere-ocean interactions
F750	Environmental sciences
F751	Applied environmental sciences
F752	Hydrology
F753	Pollution control
F754	Biogeochemical cycles
F755	Environmental informatics
F756	Environmental physiology
F760	Climatology
F761	Meteorology
F762	Large-scale atmospheric dynamics & transport
F763	Boundary-layer meteorology
F764	Climate & climate change
F765	Radiative processes & effects
F770	Soil science
F780	Glaciology & cryospheric systems
F790	Science of aquatic & terrestrial environments not elsewhere classified
F800	Physical geographical sciences
F810	Environmental geography
F811	Biogeography
F840	Physical geography
F841	Maritime geography
F842	Geomorphology
F843	Topography

F844	Cartography
F845	Remote sensing
F846	Geographical information systems
F890	Physical geographical sciences not elsewhere classified
F900	Others in physical sciences
F990	Physical sciences not elsewhere classified
G100	Mathematics
G110	Pure mathematics
G120	Applied mathematics
G121	Mechanics (mathematical)
G130	Mathematical methods
G140	Numerical analysis
G150	Mathematical modelling
G160	Engineering/industrial mathematics
G170	Computational mathematics
G190	Mathematics not elsewhere classified
G200	Operational research
G290	Operational research not elsewhere classified
G300	Statistics
G310	Applied statistics
G311	Medical statistics
G320	Probability
G330	Stochastic processes
G340	Statistical modelling
G350	Mathematical statistics
G390	Statistics not elsewhere classified
G900	Others in mathematical sciences
H100	General engineering
H110	Integrated engineering
H120	Safety engineering
H121	Fire safety engineering
H122	Water quality control
H123	Public health engineering
H130	Computer-aided engineering
H131	Automated engineering design
H140	Mechanics
H141	Fluid mechanics
H142	Solid mechanics
H143	Structural mechanics
H150	Engineering design
H160	Bioengineering, biomedical engineering & clinical engineering
H161	Biomaterials
H162	Biomechanics (including fluid & solid mechanics)
H163	Bioelectronics & bioelectricity
H164	Rehabilitation engineering
H165	Tissue engineering & regenerative medicine
H166	Imaging
H167	Biosensors
H168	Medical devices & instrumentation
H169	Neural engineering
H190	General engineering not elsewhere classified
H200	Civil engineering
H210	Structural engineering
H220	Environmental engineering
H221	Energy resources
H222	Coastal decay
H223	Environmental impact assessment
H230	Transport engineering
H231	Permanent way engineering
H232	Pavement engineering
H240	Surveying science
H241	General practice surveying
H242	Engineering surveying
H250	Geotechnical engineering

H290	Civil engineering not elsewhere classified
H300	Mechanical engineering
H310	Dynamics
H311	Thermodynamics
H320	Mechanisms & machines
H321	Turbine technology
H330	Automotive engineering
H331	Road vehicle engineering
H332	Rail vehicle engineering
H333	Ship propulsion engineering
H340	Acoustics & vibration
H341	Acoustics
H342	Vibration
H350	Offshore engineering
H360	Electromechanical engineering
H390	Mechanical engineering not elsewhere classified
H400	Aerospace engineering
H410	Aeronautical engineering
H411	Air passenger transport engineering
H412	Air freight transport engineering
H413	Air combat engineering
H420	Astronautical engineering
H430	Avionics
H440	Aerodynamics
H441	Flight mechanics
H450	Propulsion systems
H460	Aviation studies
H490	Aerospace engineering not elsewhere classified
H500	Naval architecture
H510	Shipbuilding
H511	Surface passenger ship building
H512	Surface freight ship building
H513	Surface combat ship building
H514	Submarine building
H520	Ship design
H521	Surface passenger ship design
H522	Surface freight ship design
H523	Surface combat ship design
H524	Submarine design
H590	Naval architecture not elsewhere classified
H600	Electronic & electrical engineering
H610	Electronic engineering
H611	Microelectronic engineering
H612	Integrated circuit design
H620	Electrical engineering
H630	Electrical power
H631	Electrical power generation
H632	Electrical power distribution
H640	Communications engineering
H641	Telecommunications engineering
H642	Broadcast engineering
H643	Satellite engineering
H644	Microwave engineering
H650	Systems engineering
H651	Digital circuit engineering
H652	Analogue circuit engineering
H660	Control systems
H661	Instrumentation control
H662	Control by light systems
H670	Robotics & cybernetics
H671	Robotics
H672	Cybernetics
H674	Virtual reality engineering
H680	Optoelectronic engineering

H690	Electronic & electrical engineering not elsewhere classified
H700	Production & manufacturing engineering
H710	Manufacturing systems engineering
H711	Manufacturing systems design
H712	Manufacturing installation systems
H713	Production processes
H714	Manufacturing systems maintenance
H720	Quality assurance engineering
H730	Mechatronics
H790	Production & manufacturing engineering not elsewhere classified
H800	Chemical, process & energy engineering
H810	Chemical engineering
H811	Biochemical engineering
H812	Pharmaceutical engineering
H820	Atomic engineering
H821	Nuclear engineering
H830	Chemical process engineering
H831	Bioprocess engineering
H840	Gas engineering
H850	Petroleum engineering
H890	Chemical, process & energy engineering not elsewhere classified
H900	Others in engineering
H990	Engineering not elsewhere classified
I100	Computer science
I110	Computer architectures & operating systems
I111	Computer architectures
I112	Operating systems
I113	Displays & imaging
I114	High end computing
I115	Parallel computing
I120	Networks & communications
I130	Computational science foundations
I140	Human-computer interaction
I150	Multimedia computing science
I160	Internet
I161	e-business
I190	Computer science not elsewhere classified
I200	Information systems
I210	Information modelling
I220	Systems design methodologies
I230	Systems analysis & design
I240	Databases
I250	Systems auditing
I260	Data management
I270	Intelligent & expert systems
I290	Systems analysis & design not elsewhere classified
I300	Software engineering
I310	Software design
I320	Programming
I321	Procedural programming
I322	Object-oriented programming
I323	Declarative programming
I390	Software engineering not elsewhere classified
I400	Artificial intelligence
I410	Speech & natural language processing
I420	Knowledge representation
I430	Neural computing
I440	Computer vision
I450	Cognitive modelling
I460	Machine learning
I461	Automated reasoning
I490	Artificial intelligence not elsewhere classified
I500	Health informatics
I510	Health technologies

I520	Bioinformatics
I530	Tele healthcare
I590	Health informatics not elsewhere classified
I600	Games
I610	Computer games programming
I620	Computer games design
I630	Computer games graphics
I700	Computer generated visual & audio effects
I710	Computer generated imagery
I900	Others in Computer sciences
I990	Computer sciences not elsewhere classified
J100	Minerals technology
J110	Mining
J120	Quarrying
J130	Rock mechanics
J140	Minerals processing
J150	Minerals surveying
J160	Petrochemical technology
J190	Minerals technology not elsewhere classified
J200	Metallurgy
J210	Applied metallurgy
J220	Metallic fabrication
J221	Pattern making
J230	Corrosion technology
J290	Metallurgy not elsewhere classified
J300	Ceramics & glass
J310	Ceramics
J320	Glass technology
J390	Ceramics & glass not elsewhere classified
J400	Polymers & textiles
J410	Polymers technology
J411	Plastics
J420	Textiles technology
J421	Textile chemistry
J422	Dying & colouring of textiles
J430	Leather technology
J431	Tanning
J440	Clothing production
J441	Machine knitting
J442	Commercial tailoring
J443	Pattern cutting
J444	Millinery
J445	Footwear production
J490	Polymers & textiles not elsewhere classified
J500	Materials technology not otherwise specified
J510	Materials technology
J511	Engineering materials
J512	Paper technology
J513	Furniture technology
J520	Printing
J521	Offset lithography
J522	Photo-lithography
J523	Reprographic techniques
J524	Screen process printing
J530	Gemmology
J590	Materials technology not elsewhere classified
J600	Maritime technology
J610	Marine technology
J611	Marine navigation
J612	Marine radar
J613	Marine radio
J614	Marine plumbing
J690	Maritime technology not elsewhere classified
J700	Biotechnology

J710	Plant biotechnology (crops, trees, shrubs etc.)
J720	Animal biotechnology
J730	Environmental biotechnology
J740	Industrial biotechnology
J750	Medical biotechnology
J790	Biotechnology not elsewhere classified
J900	Others in technology
J910	Energy technologies
J920	Ergonomics
J930	Audio technology
J931	Music recording
J940	Machinery maintenance
J941	Office machinery maintenance
J942	Industrial machinery maintenance
J950	Musical instrument technology
J960	Transport logistics
J970	Emergency & disaster technologies
J990	Technologies not elsewhere classified
K100	Architecture
K110	Architectural design theory
K120	Interior architecture
K130	Architectural technology
K190	Architecture not elsewhere classified
K200	Building
K210	Building technology
K220	Construction management
K230	Building surveying
K240	Quantity surveying
K250	Conservation of buildings
K251	Property development
K290	Building not elsewhere classified
K300	Landscape & garden design
K310	Landscape architecture
K320	Landscape studies
K330	Landscape design
K340	Garden design
K341	Garden horticulture
K390	Landscape & garden design not elsewhere classified
K400	Planning (urban, rural & regional)
K410	Regional planning
K420	Urban & rural planning
K421	Urban planning
K422	Rural planning
K430	Planning studies
K440	Urban studies
K450	Housing
K460	Transport planning
K490	Planning (urban, rural & regional) not elsewhere classified
K900	Others in architecture, building & planning
K990	Architecture, building & planning not elsewhere classified
L100	Economics
L110	Applied economics
L111	Financial economics
L112	Agricultural economics
L113	Economic policy
L120	Microeconomics
L130	Macroeconomics
L140	Econometrics
L150	Political economics
L160	International economics
L170	Economic systems
L171	Capitalism
L172	Monetarism
L173	Keynesianism

L174	Collectivism
L190	Economics not elsewhere classified
L200	Politics
L210	Political theories
L211	Liberalism
L212	Conservatism
L213	Socialism
L214	Nationalism
L215	Fascism
L216	Feminism
L217	Environmentalism
L218	Anarchism
L220	Political systems
L221	Autocracy
L222	Democracy
L223	Plutocracy
L224	Oligarchy
L230	UK government/parliamentary studies
L231	Public administration
L232	UK constitutional studies
L240	International politics
L241	European Union politics
L242	Commonwealth politics
L243	Politics of a specific country/region
L244	International constitutional studies
L250	International relations
L251	Strategic studies
L252	War & peace studies
L253	International criminology
L260	Comparative politics
L290	Politics not elsewhere classified
L300	Sociology
L310	Applied sociology
L311	Applied criminology
L312	Victimology
L320	Gender studies
L321	Women's studies
L322	Men's studies
L330	Ethnic studies
L340	Disability in society
L350	Religion in society
L360	Socio-economics
L370	Social theory
L371	Social hierarchy
L380	Political sociology
L390	Sociology not elsewhere classified
L391	Sociology of science & technology
L400	Social policy
L410	UK social policy
L420	International social policy
L430	Public policy
L431	Health policy
L432	Welfare policy
L433	Education policy
L434	Transport policy
L435	Security policy
L436	Emergency services policy
L437	Criminal justice policy
L490	Social policy not elsewhere classified
L500	Social work
L510	Health & welfare
L520	Child care
L530	Youth work
L540	Community work

L541	Community justice
L550	Careers guidance
L560	Probation/after-care
L590	Social work not elsewhere classified
L600	Anthropology
L610	Social & cultural anthropology
L611	Criminological theory
L620	Physical & biological anthropology
L690	Anthropology not elsewhere classified
L700	Human & social geography
L710	Human & social geography by area
L711	Human & social geography of Europe
L712	Human & social geography of Asia
L713	Human & social geography of Africa
L714	Human & social geography of Australasia
L715	Human & social geography of the Americas
L716	Human & social geography of the Arctic/Antarctic
L720	Human & social geography by topic
L721	Economic geography
L722	Urban geography
L723	Political geography
L724	Transport geography
L725	Historical geography
L726	Cultural geography
L727	Agricultural geography
L728	Human Demography
L790	Human & social geography not elsewhere classified
L800	Development studies
L900	Others in social studies
L990	Social studies not elsewhere classified
M100	Law by area
M110	UK legal systems
M111	English law
M112	Welsh law
M113	Northern Irish law
M114	Scottish law
M120	European Union law
M130	Public international law
M140	Comparative law
M190	Law by area not elsewhere classified
M200	Law by topic
M210	Public law
M211	Criminal law
M220	Private law
M221	Business & commercial law
M222	Contract law
M223	Property law
M224	Torts
M240	Jurisprudence
M250	Legal practice
M260	Medical law
M270	Sociology of law
M290	Law by topic not elsewhere classified
M900	Others in law
M990	Law not elsewhere classified
N100	Business studies
N110	European business studies
N120	International business studies
N190	Business studies not elsewhere classified
N200	Management studies
N210	Management techniques
N211	Strategic management
N212	Creative management
N213	Project management

N214	Change management
N215	Organisational development
N220	Institutional management
N223	Domestic management
N224	Management & organisation of education
N225	Criminal justice management
N230	Land & property management
N231	Land management
N232	Property management
N234	Property valuation & auctioneering
N240	Retail management
N250	Emergency & disaster management
N251	Emergency services management
N252	Disaster management
N290	Management studies not elsewhere classified
N300	Finance
N310	Banking
N320	Investment & insurance
N321	Investment
N322	Insurance
N323	Actuarial science
N330	Taxation
N340	Financial management
N341	Financial risk
N390	Finance not elsewhere classified
N400	Accounting
N410	Accountancy
N411	Cost & management accountancy
N412	Public accountancy
N413	Book keeping
N420	Accounting theory
N421	Auditing of accounts
N422	Financial reporting
N490	Accounting not elsewhere classified
N500	Marketing
N510	Market research
N520	Sales management
N530	Distribution
N550	International marketing
N560	Promotion & advertising
N561	Advertising
N562	Corporate image
N563	Sponsorship
N590	Marketing not elsewhere classified
N600	Human resource management
N611	Industrial relations
N612	Staff development
N613	Training methods
N614	Recruitment methods
N620	Health & safety issues
N690	Human resources management not elsewhere classified
N700	Office skills
N710	Office administration
N720	Secretarial & typing skills
N721	Audio typing
N722	Shorthand & shorthand transcription
N790	Office skills not elsewhere classified
N800	Hospitality, leisure, sport, tourism & transport
N810	Travel management
N820	Event management
N830	Tourism
N831	Tourism studies
N832	Tourism management
N850	Transport studies

N851	Land travel
N852	Sea travel
N853	Air travel
N860	Hospitality
N861	Hospitality studies
N862	Hospitality management
N870	Recreation & leisure studies
N871	Spa management
N872	Salon management
N880	Sport management
N890	Hospitality, leisure, sport, tourism & transport not elsewhere classified
N900	Others in business & administrative studies
N990	Business & administrative studies not elsewhere classified
P100	Information services
P110	Information management
P120	Librarianship
P121	Library studies
P130	Curatorial studies
P131	Museum studies
P132	Archive studies
P190	Information services not elsewhere classified
P200	Publicity studies
P210	Public relations
P290	Publicity studies not elsewhere classified
P300	Media studies
P301	Television studies
P302	Radio studies
P303	Film studies
P304	Electronic media studies
P305	Paper-based media studies
P310	Media production
P311	Television production
P312	Radio production
P313	Film production
P390	Media studies not elsewhere classified
P400	Publishing
P410	Electronic publishing
P411	Publishing on audio/video tape
P412	Publishing on CD-ROM
P413	Publishing via the World Wide Web
P420	Multimedia publishing
P430	Interactive publishing
P490	Publishing not elsewhere classified
P500	Journalism
P510	Factual reporting
P590	Journalism not elsewhere classified
P900	Others in mass communications & documentation
P990	Mass communications & documentation not elsewhere classified
Q100	Linguistics
Q110	Applied linguistics
Q120	Historical linguistics
Q130	Phonetics & phonology
Q131	Phonetics
Q132	Phonology
Q140	Sociolinguistics
Q150	Psycholinguistics
Q160	British Sign Language
Q190	Linguistics not elsewhere classified
Q200	Comparative literary studies
Q210	Literature in translation
Q220	Literature in its original language
Q290	Comparative literary studies not elsewhere classified
Q300	English studies
Q310	English language

Q320	English literature
Q321	English literature by period
Q322	English literature by author
Q323	English literature by topic
Q330	English as a second language
Q340	English literature written as a second language
Q350	Scots language
Q360	Scots literature
Q370	Irish language
Q380	Irish literature
Q390	English studies not elsewhere classified
Q400	Ancient language studies
Q410	Ancient Egyptian
Q411	Coptic
Q420	Classical Arabic
Q430	Akkadian
Q440	Sumerian
Q450	Sanskrit
Q460	Prakrit
Q470	Aramaic
Q480	Hebrew
Q490	Ancient language studies not elsewhere classified
Q500	Celtic studies
Q510	Ancient Celtic studies
Q520	Modern Celtic studies
Q521	Goidelic group of languages
Q522	Brythonic group of languages
Q530	Scottish Gaelic
Q531	Scottish Gaelic literature
Q540	Irish Gaelic
Q541	Irish Gaelic literature
Q550	Manx
Q551	Manx literature
Q560	Welsh
Q561	Welsh literature
Q570	Cornish
Q571	Cornish literature
Q580	Breton
Q581	Breton literature
Q590	Celtic studies not elsewhere classified
Q600	Latin studies
Q610	Latin language
Q611	Church Latin
Q612	Medieval Latin
Q620	Latin literature
Q630	Latin literature in translation
Q690	Latin studies not elsewhere classified
Q700	Classical Greek studies
Q710	Classical Greek language
Q711	Classical Church Greek
Q712	Late Greek
Q720	Classical Greek literature
Q730	Classical Greek literature in translation
Q790	Classical Greek studies not elsewhere classified
Q800	Classical studies
Q810	Classical reception
Q890	Classical studies not elsewhere classified
Q900	Others in linguistics, classics & related subjects
Q910	Translation studies
Q920	Translation theory
Q990	Linguistics, classics & related subjects not elsewhere classified
R100	French studies
R110	French language
R120	French literature

R130	French society & culture
R190	French studies not elsewhere classified
R200	German studies
R210	German language
R220	German literature
R230	German society & culture
R290	German studies not elsewhere classified
R300	Italian studies
R310	Italian language
R320	Italian literature
R330	Italian society & culture
R390	Italian studies not elsewhere classified
R400	Spanish studies
R410	Spanish language
R411	Spanish languages in other countries
R420	Spanish literature
R430	Spanish society & culture
R490	Spanish studies not elsewhere classified
R500	Portuguese studies
R510	Portuguese language
R511	Portuguese languages in other countries
R520	Portuguese literature
R530	Portuguese society & culture
R590	Portuguese studies not elsewhere classified
R600	Scandinavian studies
R610	Scandinavian languages
R611	Swedish language
R612	Norwegian language
R613	Finnish language
R614	Danish language
R620	Scandinavian literature
R621	Swedish literature
R622	Norwegian literature
R623	Finnish literature
R624	Danish literature
R630	Scandinavian society & culture
R631	Swedish society & culture
R632	Norwegian society & culture
R633	Finnish society & culture
R634	Danish society & culture
R690	Scandinavian studies not elsewhere classified
R700	Russian & East European studies
R701	Russian studies
R702	Czech studies
R703	Polish studies
R704	Belarusian studies
R705	Bulgarian studies
R706	Hungarian studies
R707	Romanian studies
R708	Slovak studies
R709	Ukrainian studies
R710	Russian & East European languages
R711	Russian language
R712	Polish language
R713	Czech language
R720	Russian & east European Literature
R721	Russian literature
R722	Polish literature
R723	Czech literature
R730	Russian & east European society & culture
R731	Russian society & culture
R732	Polish society & culture
R733	Czech society & culture
R790	Russian & east European studies not elsewhere classified

R800	European studies
R900	Others in European languages, literature & related subjects
R910	Other European languages
R911	Dutch
R912	Flemish
R920	Other European literature
R930	Other European societies & cultures
R990	European languages, literature & related subjects not elsewhere classified
T100	Chinese studies
T110	Chinese language studies
T120	Chinese literature studies
T130	Chinese society & culture studies
T190	Chinese studies not elsewhere classified
T200	Japanese studies
T210	Japanese language studies
T220	Japanese literature studies
T230	Japanese society & culture studies
T290	Japanese studies not elsewhere classified
T300	South Asian studies
T310	South Asian language studies
T311	Indian language studies
T312	Pakistani language studies
T313	Sri Lankan language studies
T314	Bangladeshi language studies
T315	Nepali language studies
T320	South Asian literature studies
T321	Indian literature studies
T322	Pakistani literature studies
T323	Sri Lankan literature studies
T324	Bangladeshi literature studies
T325	Nepali literature studies
T330	South Asian society & culture studies
T331	Indian society & culture studies
T332	Pakistani society & culture studies
T333	Sri Lankan society & culture studies
T334	Bangladeshi society & culture studies
T335	Nepali society & culture studies
T390	South Asian studies not elsewhere classified
T400	Other Asian studies
T410	Other Asian language studies
T411	East Asian language studies
T412	South East Asian language studies
T420	Other Asian literature studies
T421	East Asian literature studies
T422	South East Asian literature studies
T430	Other Asian society & culture studies
T431	East Asian society & culture studies
T432	South East Asian society & culture studies
T490	Other Asian studies not elsewhere classified
T500	African studies
T510	African language studies
T511	Eastern African language studies
T512	Central African language studies
T513	Northern African language studies
T514	Southern African language studies
T515	Western African language studies
T520	African literature studies
T521	Eastern African literature studies
T522	Central African literature studies
T523	Northern African literature studies
T524	Southern African literature studies
T525	Western African literature studies
T530	African society & culture studies
T531	Eastern African society & culture studies

T532	Central African society & culture studies
T533	Northern African society & culture studies
T534	Southern African society & culture studies
T535	Western African society & culture studies
T590	African studies not elsewhere classified
T600	Modern Middle Eastern studies
T610	Modern Middle Eastern language studies
T611	Arabic language studies
T612	Modern Standard Arabic language studies
T613	Persian language studies
T614	Modern Hebrew language studies
T615	Kurdish language studies
T616	Turkish language studies
T620	Modern Middle Eastern literature studies
T621	Arabic literature studies
T623	Persian literature studies
T624	Modern Hebrew literature studies
T625	Kurdish literature studies
T626	Turkish literature studies
T630	Modern Middle Eastern society & culture studies
T631	Arab society & culture studies
T633	Persian society & culture studies
T634	Modern Hebrew society & culture studies
T635	Kurdish society & culture studies
T636	Turkish society & culture studies
T690	Modern Middle Eastern studies not elsewhere classified
T700	American studies
T710	American language studies
T711	Latin American language studies
T712	United States language studies
T713	Canadian language studies
T714	Caribbean language studies
T720	American literature studies
T721	Latin American literature studies
T722	United States literature studies
T723	Canadian literature studies
T724	Caribbean literature studies
T730	American society & culture studies
T731	Latin American society & culture studies
T732	United States society & culture studies
T733	Canadian society & culture studies
T734	Caribbean society & culture studies
T790	American studies not elsewhere classified
T800	Australasian studies
T810	Australasian language studies
T820	Australasian literature studies
T830	Australasian society & culture studies
T890	Australasian studies not elsewhere classified
T900	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages, literature & related subjects
T910	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages
T920	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian literature
T930	Others in Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian societies & culture
T990	Eastern, Asiatic, African, American & Australasian languages, literature
V100	History by period
V140	Modern history
V141	Modern history 1500-1599
V142	Modern history 1600-1699
V143	Modern history 1700-1799
V144	Modern history 1800-1899
V145	Modern history 1900-1919
V146	Modern history 1920-1949
V147	Modern history 1950-1999

V148	Modern history 2000-2099
V150	Medieval history
V160	Ancient history
V161	Late Antique history
V190	History by period not elsewhere classified
V200	History by area
V210	British history
V211	Irish history
V212	Scottish history
V213	Welsh history
V214	English history
V220	European history
V221	French history
V222	German history
V223	Italian history
V224	Iberian history
V225	Russian history
V230	American history
V231	Canadian history
V232	USA history
V233	South American history
V234	Central American history
V240	Asian history
V241	Chinese history
V242	Indian history
V243	South East Asian history
V244	Byzantine History
V250	African history
V251	North African history
V252	Central African history
V253	Southern African history
V254	East African history
V255	West African history
V260	Australasian history
V261	Australian history
V262	New Zealand history
V270	World history
V271	International history
V290	History by area not elsewhere classified
V300	History by topic
V310	Economic history
V320	Social history
V321	Local history
V322	Oral history
V323	Family history
V324	Crime history
V330	History of religions
V340	Intellectual history
V350	History of art
V360	History of architecture
V370	History of design
V380	History of science
V381	History of physics
V382	History of chemistry
V383	History of mathematics
V384	History of medicine
V390	History by topic not elsewhere classified
V391	Military history
V400	Archaeology
V410	Egyptology
V420	Stone Age
V430	Bronze Age
V440	Iron Age
V450	Archaeological conservation

V460	Archaeological techniques
V470	Classical art & archaeology
V471	Roman art & archaeology
V472	Greek art & archaeology
V490	Archaeology not elsewhere classified
V500	Philosophy
V510	Metaphysics
V511	Epistemology
V520	Moral philosophy
V530	Scholastic philosophy
V540	Social philosophy
V550	Philosophy of science
V560	Mental philosophy
V590	Philosophy not elsewhere classified
V600	Theology & religious studies
V610	Theology
V620	Religious studies
V621	Christian studies
V622	Islamic studies
V623	Judaism
V624	Hinduism
V625	Buddhism
V626	Other Asian religious studies
V627	Comparative religious studies
V630	Divinity
V640	Religious writings
V641	The Bible & Christian texts
V642	The Qur'an & Islamic texts
V643	The Torah & Judaic texts
V644	Asian religious texts
V645	Comparative religious texts
V650	Pastoral studies
V690	Theology & religious studies not elsewhere classified
V700	Heritage studies
V710	Heritage theory
V720	Heritage site management
V730	Natural heritage
V731	Coastal heritage management
V740	Visitor management including interpretation
V750	Oral history, heritage & genealogy
V900	Others in historical & philosophical studies
V990	Historical & philosophical studies not elsewhere classified
W100	Fine art
W110	Drawing
W120	Painting
W130	Sculpture
W140	Printmaking
W150	Calligraphy
W160	Fine art conservation
W190	Fine art not elsewhere classified
W200	Design studies
W210	Graphic design
W211	Typography
W212	Multimedia design
W213	Visual communication
W220	Illustration
W230	Clothing/fashion design
W231	Textile design
W240	Industrial/product design
W250	Interior design
W260	Furniture design
W270	Ceramics design
W280	Interactive & electronic design
W290	Design studies not elsewhere classified

W300	Music
W310	Musicianship/performance studies
W311	Instrumental or vocal performance
W312	Musical theatre
W313	Conducting
W314	Jazz performance
W315	Popular music performance
W316	Electronic/electro-acoustic music performance
W317	Historical performance practice
W320	Music education/teaching
W330	History of music
W340	Types of music
W341	Popular music
W342	Film music/screen music
W343	Jazz
W344	Folk music
W345	Opera
W346	Sacred music
W350	Musicology
W351	Ethnomusicology/world music
W352	Community music
W353	Music & gender
W354	Philosophy, aesthetics & criticism of music
W355	Music psychology
W356	Music theory & analysis
W357	Sociology of music
W360	Musical instrument history
W370	Music technology & industry
W371	Sound design/commercial music recording
W372	Creative music technology
W373	Electro-acoustic studies
W374	Music production
W375	Music management/music industry management/arts management
W376	Music marketing
W380	Composition
W381	Electroacoustic composition/acousmatic composition
W382	Sonic arts
W383	Electronic music
W384	Applied music/musicianship
W385	Commercial music composition
W386	Multimedia music composition
W387	Jazz composition
W388	Popular music composition
W390	Music not elsewhere classified
W400	Drama
W410	Acting
W420	Directing for theatre
W430	Producing for theatre
W440	Theatre studies
W441	Theatre & professional practice
W442	Contemporary theatre
W443	Technical arts & special effects for theatre
W450	Stage management
W451	Theatrical wardrobe design
W452	Theatrical make-up
W453	Technical stage management
W460	Theatre design
W461	Stage design
W470	Performance & live arts
W471	European/world theatre arts
W472	Circus arts
W473	Community theatre
W490	Drama not elsewhere classified
W500	Dance

W510	Choreography
W520	Body awareness
W530	History of dance
W531	Dance & culture
W532	Community dance
W540	Types of dance
W541	Ballet
W542	Dance theatre
W543	Contemporary dance
W544	Jazz dance
W550	Dance performance
W590	Dance not elsewhere classified
W600	Cinematics & photography
W610	Moving image techniques
W611	Directing motion pictures
W612	Producing motion pictures
W613	Film & sound recording
W614	Visual & audio effects
W615	Animation techniques
W620	Cinematography
W630	History of cinematics & photography
W631	History of cinematics
W632	History of photography
W640	Photography
W690	Cinematics & photography not elsewhere classified
W700	Crafts
W710	Fabric & leather crafts
W711	Needlecraft
W712	Dressmaking
W713	Soft furnishing
W714	Weaving
W715	Leatherwork
W720	Metal crafts
W721	Silversmithing/goldsmithing
W722	Blacksmithing
W723	Clock/watchmaking
W730	Wood crafts
W731	Carpentry/joinery
W732	Cabinet making
W733	Marquetry & inlaying
W734	Veneering
W740	Surface decoration
W750	Clay & stone crafts
W751	Pottery
W752	Tile making
W753	Stone crafts
W760	Reed crafts
W761	Basketry
W762	Thatching
W770	Glass crafts
W771	Glassblowing
W780	Paper crafts
W781	Bookbinding
W782	Origami
W790	Crafts not elsewhere classified
W800	Imaginative writing
W810	Scriptwriting
W820	Poetry writing
W830	Prose writing
W890	Imaginative writing not elsewhere classified
W900	Others in creative arts & design
W990	Creative arts & design not elsewhere classified
X100	Training teachers
X110	Training teachers - nursery

	<p>X120 Training teachers - primary X121 Training teachers - infant (key stage 1) X122 Training teachers - junior (key stage 2) X130 Training teachers - secondary X131 Training teachers - key stage 3 X132 Training teachers - key stage 4 X140 Training teachers - tertiary X141 Training teachers - further education X142 Training teachers - higher education X150 Training teachers - adult education X151 Training teachers - coaching X160 Training teachers - specialist X161 Training teachers - special needs X162 Teaching English as a Foreign Language (TEFL) X190 Training teachers not elsewhere classified X200 Research & study skills in education X210 Research skills X220 Study skills X290 Research & study skills in education not elsewhere classified X300 Academic studies in education X310 Academic studies in nursery education X320 Academic studies in primary education X330 Academic studies in secondary education X340 Academic studies in tertiary education X341 Academic studies in further education X342 Academic studies in higher education X350 Academic studies in adult education X360 Academic studies in specialist education X370 Academic studies in education (across phases) X390 Academic studies in education not elsewhere classified X900 Others in education X990 Education not elsewhere classified</p>								
Notes	<p>The Joint Academic Coding System (JACS3) provides for all subjects to be coded according to a common, truly hierarchical, four-character subject code. JACS3 will be used substantially in subject representation across the sector, including for provision of quality assurance information. The full JACS 3.0 classification provides definitions for each JACS subject to assist in coding.</p> <p>The funding councils' advice is to consider the most detailed coding that can be used without unduly raising the burden, since there is an increasing interest in niche provision which often cannot be captured at the JACS3 principal subject level. For example, a progressively more detailed coding of 'microbiology' could be:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>C500 Microbiology</td> <td>The scientific study of micro-organisms encompassing major components of genetics and molecular biology. Includes bacteriology, virology, cell structure and function, and may include some immunology.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C520 Medical and veterinary microbiology</td> <td>The study of the interactions between micro-organisms and their hosts.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C521 Medical microbiology</td> <td>The study of the interactions between micro-organisms and their human hosts.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C522 Veterinary microbiology</td> <td>The study of the interactions between micro-organisms and their animal hosts.</td> </tr> </table> <p>Institutions are required to make appropriate use of the full 4-digit JACS coding in all subject areas. This is needed to future-proof work on strategically important and vulnerable subjects, so that as the landscape changes, it will be possible to assess the past performance of newly important subjects. This requirement applies to both Courses and Modules. There will be some courses and modules where it remains appropriate to code at principal subject level, but others where a more detailed code should be used. So for example, a general Biology course would continue to be coded as C100, but a</p>	C500 Microbiology	The scientific study of micro-organisms encompassing major components of genetics and molecular biology. Includes bacteriology, virology, cell structure and function, and may include some immunology.	C520 Medical and veterinary microbiology	The study of the interactions between micro-organisms and their hosts.	C521 Medical microbiology	The study of the interactions between micro-organisms and their human hosts.	C522 Veterinary microbiology	The study of the interactions between micro-organisms and their animal hosts.
C500 Microbiology	The scientific study of micro-organisms encompassing major components of genetics and molecular biology. Includes bacteriology, virology, cell structure and function, and may include some immunology.								
C520 Medical and veterinary microbiology	The study of the interactions between micro-organisms and their hosts.								
C521 Medical microbiology	The study of the interactions between micro-organisms and their human hosts.								
C522 Veterinary microbiology	The study of the interactions between micro-organisms and their animal hosts.								

	<p>specific course/module in Biodiversity would be coded C181. Similarly, a generic Religious Studies course would be V600, but as specific Islamic Studies course would be V622.</p> <p>The generic codes that consist of a subject group and three zeroes (including Y000) cannot be used in this field.</p>
Reason Required	To calculate the student load split out across the academic cost centres, and split across JACS3 codes.
Part Of	Module subject
Field Length	4
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MODSBJ Data type: MODSBJCodeContentType
Related Fields	MODSBJP
Owner	HESA/UCAS
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-07-30
Change management notes	Link to the full JACS 3.0 classification added to Notes.

Qualifications awarded

Type	entity
Short Name	QualificationsAwarded
Description	Qualification or credit obtained during – or at the end of – an instance
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Compulsory for all instances where Instance.ENDDATE is not null and Instance.RSNEND = 01 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 04 unless Course.COURSEAIM ends with 99. (Optional for all other instances.)
Notes	Qualifications should be returned in the reporting year in which they are awarded. Return of one or more qualifications does not indicate the end of an instance.
Business rules	<p>1 Error QualificationsAwarded entity must exist where Instance.ENDDATE is not null and Instance.RSNEND = 01 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 04, unless Course.COURSEAIM ends with 99.</p> <p>3 Error QualificationsAwarded entity must only occur once where Instance.FESTUMK is coded 1 or 4.</p> <p>4 Error QualificationsAwarded entity must not exist where Instance.REDUCEDI = 08.</p>
Reason Required	This entity is defined to hold information about the qualifications awarded and to allow multiple awards to be recorded in the hierarchical data structure.
Part Of	Instance
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	2
Has Parts	Qualification awarded (QUAL) Classification (CLASS) Outcome of ITT instance (OUTCOME) Teaching qualification gained sector (TQGSEC) Teaching qualification gained subject (TQGSUB)
Related Fields	ENDDATE RSNEND
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 4 added as it is not valid to report awards using the SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return.

Classification

Type	field																																																																																
Short Name	CLASS																																																																																
Description	This field is used to indicate the qualification class that the student obtained.																																																																																
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales																																																																																
Coverage	Compulsory for all qualifications awarded records where (QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, H24, H50, I00, I11, I16). Also compulsory for those students who have achieved a relevant FE qualification (i.e. where a grade is meaningful) at institutions in England and Wales, that is with QUAL codes beginning, P, Q, R, S and X																																																																																
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="width: 5%;">01</td><td>First class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>02</td><td>Upper second class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>03</td><td>Lower second class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>04</td><td>Undivided second class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>05</td><td>Third class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>06</td><td>Fourth class honours</td></tr> <tr><td>07</td><td>Unclassified honours</td></tr> <tr><td>08</td><td>Aegrotat (whether to honours or pass)</td></tr> <tr><td>09</td><td>Pass - degree awarded without honours following an honours course</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>Ordinary (to include divisions of ordinary, if any) - degree awarded after following a non-honours course</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>General degree - degree awarded after following a non-honours course/degree that was not available to be classified</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>Distinction</td></tr> <tr><td>13</td><td>Merit</td></tr> <tr><td>14</td><td>Pass</td></tr> <tr><td>51</td><td>A FE</td></tr> <tr><td>52</td><td>B FE</td></tr> <tr><td>53</td><td>C FE</td></tr> <tr><td>54</td><td>D FE</td></tr> <tr><td>55</td><td>E FE</td></tr> <tr><td>56</td><td>F FE</td></tr> <tr><td>57</td><td>G FE</td></tr> <tr><td>61</td><td>N FE</td></tr> <tr><td>62</td><td>U FE</td></tr> <tr><td>63</td><td>X FE</td></tr> <tr><td>64</td><td>A* FE</td></tr> <tr><td>65</td><td>Y FE</td></tr> <tr><td>71</td><td>Pass FE</td></tr> <tr><td>72</td><td>Merit FE</td></tr> <tr><td>73</td><td>Distinction FE</td></tr> <tr><td>74</td><td>Fail FE</td></tr> <tr><td>81</td><td>1 FE</td></tr> <tr><td>82</td><td>2 FE</td></tr> <tr><td>83</td><td>3 FE</td></tr> <tr><td>84</td><td>4 FE</td></tr> <tr><td>85</td><td>5 FE</td></tr> <tr><td>86</td><td>6 FE</td></tr> <tr><td>87</td><td>7 FE</td></tr> <tr><td>88</td><td>8 FE</td></tr> <tr><td>89</td><td>9 FE</td></tr> <tr><td>90</td><td>10 FE</td></tr> </table>	01	First class honours	02	Upper second class honours	03	Lower second class honours	04	Undivided second class honours	05	Third class honours	06	Fourth class honours	07	Unclassified honours	08	Aegrotat (whether to honours or pass)	09	Pass - degree awarded without honours following an honours course	10	Ordinary (to include divisions of ordinary, if any) - degree awarded after following a non-honours course	11	General degree - degree awarded after following a non-honours course/degree that was not available to be classified	12	Distinction	13	Merit	14	Pass	51	A FE	52	B FE	53	C FE	54	D FE	55	E FE	56	F FE	57	G FE	61	N FE	62	U FE	63	X FE	64	A* FE	65	Y FE	71	Pass FE	72	Merit FE	73	Distinction FE	74	Fail FE	81	1 FE	82	2 FE	83	3 FE	84	4 FE	85	5 FE	86	6 FE	87	7 FE	88	8 FE	89	9 FE	90	10 FE
01	First class honours																																																																																
02	Upper second class honours																																																																																
03	Lower second class honours																																																																																
04	Undivided second class honours																																																																																
05	Third class honours																																																																																
06	Fourth class honours																																																																																
07	Unclassified honours																																																																																
08	Aegrotat (whether to honours or pass)																																																																																
09	Pass - degree awarded without honours following an honours course																																																																																
10	Ordinary (to include divisions of ordinary, if any) - degree awarded after following a non-honours course																																																																																
11	General degree - degree awarded after following a non-honours course/degree that was not available to be classified																																																																																
12	Distinction																																																																																
13	Merit																																																																																
14	Pass																																																																																
51	A FE																																																																																
52	B FE																																																																																
53	C FE																																																																																
54	D FE																																																																																
55	E FE																																																																																
56	F FE																																																																																
57	G FE																																																																																
61	N FE																																																																																
62	U FE																																																																																
63	X FE																																																																																
64	A* FE																																																																																
65	Y FE																																																																																
71	Pass FE																																																																																
72	Merit FE																																																																																
73	Distinction FE																																																																																
74	Fail FE																																																																																
81	1 FE																																																																																
82	2 FE																																																																																
83	3 FE																																																																																
84	4 FE																																																																																
85	5 FE																																																																																
86	6 FE																																																																																
87	7 FE																																																																																
88	8 FE																																																																																
89	9 FE																																																																																
90	10 FE																																																																																
Notes	Only codes 01-11 should be used for students who have achieved an undergraduate degree qualification.																																																																																

	<p>Enhanced degrees should be coded 07 'Unclassified honours', if not classified.</p> <p>HESA aggregates codes 07, 08, 10 and 11 as "unclassified".</p> <p>Medical degrees which are not honours programmes should be coded 10 or 11.</p> <p>Codes 12-14 are only available for students who have achieved an integrated taught masters degree. Institutions may return these students using codes 01-11 if these are more meaningful.</p> <p>Codes 51-90 are the codes to be used for FE level students at institutions in England and Wales. A grade should be returned for all qualifications where the grade is meaningful. Other codes should not be used for FE level students.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error QualificationsAwarded.CLASS must exist where QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, H24, H50, I00, I11, I16.</p> <p>2 Error QualificationsAwarded.CLASS code 04 must have Institution.UKPRN = 10007788.</p> <p>3 Error QualificationsAwarded.CLASS must be coded 01 - 11 where QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, H24, H50.</p> <p>4 Error For institutions in England or Wales QualificationsAwarded.CLASS codes 51 - 90 must have QualificationsAwarded.QUAL beginning with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>5 Error QualificationsAwarded.CLASS must be coded 07 - 11 where QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = I00, I11 or I16.</p> <p>6 Warning QualificationsAwarded.CLASS must exist where QualificationsAwarded.QUAL begins C, P, Q, R, S or X and Instance.FESTUMK is coded 1 or 3.</p> <p>7 Error QualificationsAwarded.CLASS must be coded 01 - 14 where QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = M22 or M26.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor achievement.
Part Of	Qualifications awarded
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: CLASS Data type: CLASSCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 3 updated to remove course aims I00, I11 and I16 as it was conflicting with business rule 5.

Outcome of ITT instance

Type	field
Short Name	OUTCOME
Description	This field describes the course outcome for an initial teacher training student.
Applicable to	England Wales
Coverage	All qualification awarded records at institutions in England and Wales where Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G, H, J or K
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Awarded QTS</p> <p>6 QTS withheld (other standards met but skills test standard not met)</p> <p>7 QTS withheld (other standards not met but skills test standard met)</p> <p>8 QTS withheld (other standards, including skills test standard, not met)</p> <p>A QTS withheld (other standards met, skills test not yet taken)</p> <p>B QTS withheld (other standards not met, skills test not yet taken)</p> <p>C QTS withheld</p>
Notes	<p>In codes 6, 7, 8, A and B 'Other standards met/not met' refers to the academic standards of the institution's ITT course, including the teaching practice element, which are monitored by the institution. 'Skills test' refers to the national skills tests in numeracy, literacy and information and communications technology (ICT) which are assessed externally via NCTL.</p> <p>Students who fail their teaching practice should be coded 7 or 8.</p> <p>Either of codes A and B should be used when the skills test has not yet been taken.</p> <p>Codes 6 - 8 and A - B are available only to institutions in England.</p> <p>Code C 'QTS withheld' should be used by institutions in Wales only where QTS is withheld, including those cases where students are awarded a degree or other qualification but not QTS and where students fail their teaching practice. It is expected that students coded as C who are subsequently awarded QTS should have this recorded in a subsequent return to HESA as an award from dormant status.</p> <p>Resit Exams and/or Results from Late Exam Boards: Students who complete their instance by 31 July but who have resit examinations to take and/or whose final confirmation of award by exam boards may be after this date should be returned to HESA as leavers, with a dateleft in the reporting period ending that 31 July. If their results are known before the Student Record data collection closes, these results should be included in the return. Records for such students will be included in the POPDLHE (assuming that they meet all other criteria). However, if the results are not known before the Student Record data collection closes, a record should be submitted with a dateleft in the reporting period ending that 31 July completed and code 98 'Completion of course - result unknown' in RSNEND. Once known, these results should be returned in the next reporting period by submitting a record with the appropriate dormant code in Instance.MODE. The date returned in Instance.ENDDATE must be the original dateleft and not be up-dated. Records returned in this way will not be included in the POPDLHE.</p> <p>Institutions may wish to decommit their return late in the data collection period in order to include results from late exam or re-sit boards.</p>

	<p>This same guidance applies to ITT NCTL students where the award of QTS may be delayed.</p> <p>ITT NCTL students may finish their course in June/July of the HESA reporting year. This date should be date recorded in ENDDATE. However the institution may not know whether the student has been awarded QTS until later. If award information is known before the HESA data collection closes at the end of November, then this should be included in QUAL and OUTCOME. NCTL have confirmed that trainees who obtain a successful award up until 1 November, and are shown as such in the main HESA return, will be counted in the profiles publication. Award dates after 31 October should be included in the following HESA data collection. In neither case should ENDDATE be up-dated.</p> <p>It is expected that students coded other than 1 in OUTCOME who are subsequently awarded QTS should have this recorded in QualificationsAwarded.QUAL and QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME in a subsequent return to HESA as an award from dormant status. In this case, the QUAL code may reflect award of QTS only, i.e. code I71.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME codes 6 - 8, A and B must be for an institution in England.</p> <p>2 Error QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME code C must be for an institution in Wales.</p> <p>3 Error QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME must exist for institutions in England or Wales where Course.TTCID = 1, 8, G or H.</p> <p>4 Error QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME must not exist for institutions in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>5 Error QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME must not exist for institutions in England or Wales where Course.TTCID = 0.</p>
Reason Required	For NCTL and HEFCW to monitor the outcome of ITT courses.
Part Of	Qualifications awarded
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: OUTCOME Data type: OUTCOMECODECONTENTTYPE
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 3 updated for the introduction of TTCID codes G and H (School Direct initiatives).

Qualification awarded

Type	field
Short Name	QUAL
Description	This field records the qualification awarded.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All qualification awarded records
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>D00 Doctorate degree that meets the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>D01 New Route PhD that meets the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>D90 Advanced supervised research at level D for institutional credit</p> <p>E00 Doctorate degree that does not meet the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>E40 National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) at level E</p> <p>E43 Highly specialist diploma from a professional body</p> <p>E90 Advanced taught study at level E for institutional credit</p> <p>L00 Masters degree that meets the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>L80 Other postgraduate qualification at level L that meets the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>L90 Advanced supervised research at level L for institutional credit</p> <p>L91 Visiting research students at levels D or L, with formal or informal credit</p> <p>M00 Masters degree obtained typically by a combination of coursework and thesis/dissertation, that does not meet the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>M01 Taught masters degree designed specifically as a training in research methods and intended as a preparation for advanced supervised research</p> <p>M02 Masters in Teaching and Learning</p> <p>M10 Post-experience taught masters degree</p> <p>M11 Master of Business Administration (MBA)</p> <p>M16 Pre-registration masters degree leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body</p> <p>M22 Integrated undergraduate/postgraduate taught masters degree on the enhanced/extended pattern</p> <p>M26 Integrated undergraduate/postgraduate taught masters degree on the enhanced/extended pattern leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body</p> <p>M40 Fellowship at level M</p> <p>M41 Diploma at level M</p> <p>M42 Advanced professional certificate at level M</p> <p>M43 National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) at level M</p> <p>M44 Certificate at level M</p> <p>M45 Scottish Vocational Qualification (SVQ) 5</p> <p>M50 Postgraduate bachelors degree at level M obtained typically by a combination of coursework and thesis/dissertation, that does not meet the criteria for a research-based higher degree</p> <p>M70 Professional taught qualification at level M other than a masters degree</p> <p>M71 Postgraduate Certificate in Education or Professional Graduate Diploma in Education</p> <p>M72 Post-registration education qualification at level M other than a masters degree for serving schoolteachers</p> <p>M76 Post-registration health and social care qualification at level M</p> <p>M78 Taught qualification at level M (where qualification at level H and/or level M is a pre-requisite for course entry) leading towards registration with the Architects Registration Board (Part 3 qualification)</p> <p>M79 Level 7 Diploma in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector</p>

M80	Other taught qualification at level M
M86	Taught qualification at level M leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body
M88	Taught qualification at level M (where a qualification at level H is a pre-requisite for course entry) leading towards registration with the Architects Registration Board (Part 2 qualification)
M90	Taught work at level M for institutional credit
M91	Visiting taught students at levels E or M, with formal or informal credit
H00	First degree with honours
H11	First degree with honours leading to Qualified Teacher Status (QTS)/registration with a General Teaching Council (GTC)
H16	Pre-registration first degree with honours leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body
H18	First degree with honours leading towards registration with the Architects Registration Board (Part 1 qualification)
H22	First degree with honours on the enhanced/extended pattern but at level H
H23	First degree with honours and diploma
H24	First degree with honours on the intercalated pattern
H41	Diploma at level H
H42	Certificate at level H
H43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) at level H
H50	Postgraduate bachelors degree at level H
H60	Graduate diploma/certificate at level H
H61	Graduate diploma/certificate at level H but where a previous qualification at level H is a pre-requisite for course entry
H62	Pre-registration graduate diploma/certificate leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body
H70	Professional qualification at level H other than a first degree with honours
H71	Professional Graduate Certificate in Education
H72	Professional qualification at level H for serving schoolteachers other than a first degree with honours
H76	Post-registration health and social care qualification at level H other than a first degree with honours
H78	Other qualification at level H (where other qualifications at level H are a pre-requisite for course entry) leading towards registration with the Architects Registration Board (Part 3 qualification)
H79	Level 6 Diploma in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector
H80	Other qualification at level H
H81	Other qualification at level H but where a previous qualification at level H is a pre-requisite for course entry
H88	Qualification at level H (where another qualification at level H is a pre-requisite for course entry) leading towards registration with the Architects Registration Board (Part 2 qualification)
H90	Credits at level H
H91	Visiting students at level H, with formal or informal credit
I00	Ordinary (non-honours) first degree
I11	Ordinary (non-honours) first degree leading to Qualified Teacher Status (QTS)/registration with a General Teaching Council (GTC)
I16	Pre-registration ordinary (non-honours) first degree leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body
I60	Graduate diploma/certificate at level I
I61	Graduate diploma/certificate at level I but where a previous qualification at level I or H is a pre-requisite for course entry
I70	Professional qualification at level I other than an ordinary (non-honours) first degree
I71	Qualified Teacher Status (QTS)/registration with a General Teaching Council (GTC) only
I72	Professional qualification at level I for serving schoolteachers
I74	Teaching certificate (trained through the medium of Welsh)
I76	Post-registration health and social care qualification at level I other than an

	ordinary (non-honours) first degree
I79	Level 5 Diploma in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector
I80	Other qualification at level I
I81	Other qualification at level I but where a previous qualification at level I or H is a pre-requisite for course entry
I90	Credits at level I
I91	Visiting students at level I, with formal or informal credit
J10	Foundation degree
J16	Foundation degree which on completion meets entry requirement for pre-registration health and social care qualification
J20	Diploma of Higher Education (DipHE)
J26	Diploma of Higher Education (DipHE) leading towards obtaining eligibility to register to practice with a health or social care or veterinary statutory regulatory body
J30	Higher National Diploma (HND)
J41	Diploma at level J
J42	Certificate at level J
J43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) at level J
J45	Scottish Vocational Qualification (SVQ) 4
J76	Post-registration health and social care qualification at level J
J80	Other qualification at level J
J90	Credits at level J
C20	Certificate of Higher Education (CertHE)
C30	Higher National Certificate (HNC)
C41	Diploma at level C
C42	Certificate at level C
C43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) at level C
C77	Level 4 Preparing to Teach in the Lifelong Learning Sector
C78	Level 4 Certificate in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector
C80	Other qualification at level C
C90	Credits at level C
P41	Diploma at level P
P42	Certificate at level P
P43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) 3
P45	Scottish Vocational Qualification (SVQ) 3
P50	A/AS level
P55	Advanced Higher (Scotland)
P56	Higher (Scotland)
P70	Professional qualification at level 3
P77	Level 3 Preparing to Teach in the Lifelong Learning Sector
P78	Level 3 Certificate in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector
P80	Other qualification at level 3
P85	Diploma in Foundation Studies (Art and Design) at level 3
P90	Credits at level 3
Q41	Diploma at level Q
Q42	Certificate at level Q
Q43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) 2
Q45	Scottish Vocational Qualification (SVQ) 2
Q50	GCSE at grade A*-C
Q56	Intermediate 2 (Scotland)
Q57	Standard Grade Credit (Scotland)
Q70	Professional qualification at level 2
Q80	Other qualification at level 2
Q90	Credits at level 2
R42	Certificate at level R
R43	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) 1
R45	Scottish Vocational Qualification (SVQ) 1
R50	GCSE at grade D-G
R56	Intermediate 1 (Scotland)
R57	Standard Grade General (Scotland)
R70	Professional qualification at level 1
R80	Other qualification at level 1
R90	Credits at level 1
S42	National Vocational Qualification (NVQ) Entry level certificate

	<p>S57 Standard Grade Foundation (Scotland)</p> <p>S80 Other qualification at further education (FE) access level</p> <p>S90 Credits at further education (FE) access level</p> <p>X00 Higher education (HE) access course, Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) recognised</p> <p>X01 Higher education (HE) access course, not Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) recognised</p> <p>X41 Welsh for Adults Entry level</p> <p>X42 Welsh for Adults level 1</p> <p>X43 Welsh for Adults level 2</p> <p>X44 Welsh for Adults level 3</p> <p>X45 Welsh for Adults level 4</p> <p>X46 Welsh for Adults specialist/arbennig</p>
Notes	<p>For some students whose course qualification aim may be, for example, first degree but who terminate their studies after a successful second year, occasionally a different qualification such as an HND or DipHE may be awarded. It is the awarded qualification which must be coded here.</p> <p>This field records the qualification obtained by the student during the reporting year. If a student is awarded more than one qualification during the reporting year then the QualificationsAwarded element should be repeated. A qualification obtained is not assumed from Instance.RSNEND and Instance.ENDDATE</p> <p>Some professional awarding bodies do not currently release results information to institutions. Where this is the case, institutions should leave this field blank and complete field Instance.RSNEND with code 98 'Completion of course - result unknown'.</p> <p>Interim Awards: In most cases qualifications are obtained at the end of a course. Therefore typically where there is a QualificationsAwarded a reason for leaving and a date left would be expected. It is recognised, however, that there are a few courses where interim qualifications are actually awarded and so these fields may not be completed. Institutions that award interim qualifications for students who are continuing on a course can return this information to HESA in the reporting year in which the interim qualification is awarded if they wish, in which case Instance.ENDDATE should not be completed in order to indicate that these students are continuing on the course. However records returned in this way will not be included in the POPDLHE. Alternatively institutions can return interim qualifications when the student completes the course by completing the QualificationsAwarded fields and indicating the date the student completed the course in Instance.ENDDATE. Records returned in this way will be included in the POPDLHE (assuming that all other criteria are met).</p> <p>Resit exams and/or results from late exam boards: Students who complete their instance by 31 July but who have resit examinations to take and/or whose final confirmation of award by exam boards may be after this date should be returned to HESA as leavers, with a dateleft in the reporting period ending that 31 July. If their results are known before the Student Record data collection closes, these results should be included in the return. Records for such students will be included in the POPDLHE (assuming that they meet all other criteria). However, if the results are not known before the Student Record data collection closes, a record should be submitted with a dateleft in the reporting period ending that 31 July completed and code 98 'Completion of course - result unknown' in RSNEND. Once known, these results should be returned in the next reporting period by submitting a record with the appropriate dormant code in Instance.MODE. The date returned in Instance.ENDDATE must be the original dateleft and not be up-dated. Records returned in this way will not be included in the POPDLHE.</p> <p>Institutions may wish to decommit their return late in the data collection period in order to include results from late exam or re-sit boards.</p>

	<p>This same guidance applies to ITT NCTL students where the award of QTS may be delayed.</p> <p>ITT NCTL students may finish their course in June/July of the HESA reporting year. This date should be date recorded in ENDDATE. However the institution may not know whether the student has been awarded QTS until later. If award information is known before the HESA data collection closes at the end of November, then this should be included in QUAL and OUTCOME. NCTL have confirmed that trainees who obtain a successful award up until 1 November, and are shown as such in the main HESA return, will be counted in the profiles publication. Award dates after 31 October should be included in the following HESA data collection. In neither case should ENDDATE be up-dated.</p> <p>It is expected that students coded other than 1 or 4 in OUTCOME who are subsequently awarded QTS should have this recorded in QualificationsAwarded.QUAL and QualificationsAwarded.OUTCOME in a subsequent return to HESA as an award from dormant status.</p>
Business rules	<p>2 Error QualificationsAwarded.QUAL cannot be coded H16, H62, I16, M16, M26 or M86 where the first two characters of CourseSubject.SBJCA = D1 or D2 and Institution.UKPRN does not equal 10007154, 10007786, 10007788, 10006842, 10007779, 10007790 or 10007794.</p> <p>3 Error QualificationsAwarded.QUAL cannot be coded H16, H62, I16, M16, M26 or M86 where the first character of CourseSubject.SBJCA = A and Institution.UKPRN does not equal 10000886, 10007801, 10006840, 10007785, 10007786, 10007788, 10007143, 10007789, 10007792, 10007149, 10007767, 10007795, 10007796, 10006842, 10003270, 10003645, 10007775, 10007782, 10007784, 10007799, 10007154, 10007774, 10007157, 10007158, 10007806, 10007163, 10007167, 10007790, 10007794, 10007783, 10007803, 10007814, 10007852, 10007855, 10005343, 10007798, 10007141 or 10007161</p> <p>5 Error QualificationsAwarded.QUAL cannot be coded X00 where Scottish institution.</p> <p>6 Error QualificationsAwarded.QUAL must be coded M22, M26, H00, H11, H16, H18, H22, H23, H24, H50, I00, I11, I16, M86 where QualificationsAwarded.CLASS is coded 01 - 11.</p> <p>7 Error QualificationsAwarded.QUAL cannot begin D, E, L, M, H, I, J or C where Course.COURSEAIM begins P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>8 Warning QualificationsAwarded.QUAL should not begin D, E, L or M (excluding M22, M26) where Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J or C.</p> <p>9 Warning QualificationsAwarded.QUAL should not begin H or I where Course.COURSEAIM begins J or C.</p> <p>10 Error QualificationsAwarded.QUAL must be coded H90 where Course.TTCID = F</p> <p>11 Error QualificationsAwarded.QUAL must not be coded H71 or M71 where Course.TTCID = 0.</p> <p>12 Error Where QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = D00 or D01, Course.COURSEAIM must begin with D or L.</p>
Reason Required	To allow analysis of qualifications awarded
Part Of	Qualifications awarded
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: QUAL Data type: QUALCodeContentType

Related Fields	COURSEAIM
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 2 and 3 updated for the addition of code H62 to the coding frame. Business rule 12 added to validate that PhDs are only awarded to postgraduate research students.

Teaching qualification gained sector

Type	field												
Short Name	TQGSEC												
Description	This field is used by institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland for all teacher training courses and indicates the education sector in which teacher training students have gained their teaching qualification.												
Applicable to	Northern Ireland Scotland												
Coverage	All records at institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 2												
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="width: 15%;"></td> <td>Primary</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> <td></td> <td>Secondary</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">3</td> <td></td> <td>Further education/Higher education</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">4</td> <td></td> <td>Nursing & midwifery</td> </tr> </table>	1		Primary	2		Secondary	3		Further education/Higher education	4		Nursing & midwifery
1		Primary											
2		Secondary											
3		Further education/Higher education											
4		Nursing & midwifery											
Notes													
Business rules	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: right;">2</td> <td style="width: 15%; text-align: left;">Error</td> <td>QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must be coded 3 or 4 by institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 2.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">3</td> <td style="text-align: left;">Error</td> <td>QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must be coded 1 or 2 by institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 2 and QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = H71, M71, H11 or I11.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">4</td> <td style="text-align: left;">Error</td> <td>QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 0 or 5.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">5</td> <td style="text-align: left;">Error</td> <td>QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must not exist for institutions in England or Wales.</td> </tr> </table>	2	Error	QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must be coded 3 or 4 by institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 2.	3	Error	QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must be coded 1 or 2 by institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 2 and QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = H71, M71, H11 or I11.	4	Error	QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 0 or 5.	5	Error	QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must not exist for institutions in England or Wales.
2	Error	QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must be coded 3 or 4 by institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 2.											
3	Error	QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must be coded 1 or 2 by institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 1 or 2 and QualificationsAwarded.QUAL = H71, M71, H11 or I11.											
4	Error	QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must not exist for institutions in Scotland or Northern Ireland where Course.TTCID = 0 or 5.											
5	Error	QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC must not exist for institutions in England or Wales.											
Reason Required	To allow monitoring of qualifications sought and gained.												
Part Of	Qualifications awarded												
Field Length	1												
Minimum Occurrences	0												
Maximum Occurrences	1												
Schema Components	Element: TQGSEC Data type: TQGSECCodeContentType												
Related Fields	TQGSUB												
Owner	HESA												
Version	1.0												

Teaching qualification gained subject

Type	field
Short Name	TQGSUB
Description	This field is used by institutions in Scotland for courses that lead to teacher qualifications and indicates the subject(s) in which teacher training students have gained their teaching qualification.
Applicable to	Scotland
Coverage	All QualificationsAwarded records for teaching qualifications at institutions in Scotland where QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC = 2
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>010 English</p> <p>020 History</p> <p>030 Geography</p> <p>040 Modern Studies</p> <p>060 Economics (only as a 2nd subject)</p> <p>070 French</p> <p>080 German</p> <p>090 Spanish</p> <p>091 Italian</p> <p>100 Russian</p> <p>110 Gaelic</p> <p>111 Community languages</p> <p>120 Other modern language</p> <p>130 Classics</p> <p>140 Latin</p> <p>150 Greek</p> <p>160 Mathematics</p> <p>161 Computing</p> <p>180 Biology with science</p> <p>190 Chemistry with science</p> <p>200 Physics with science</p> <p>220 Art & design</p> <p>240 Business studies</p> <p>250 Home economics</p> <p>260 Physical education</p> <p>280 Technological/ technical education</p> <p>290 Music</p> <p>301 Drama</p> <p>350 Religious education</p> <p>360 Other</p> <p>370 Media studies</p>
Notes	When more than one subject is returned the tags surrounding the main subject code should include the attribute Main="1". For example if the subjects of the teaching qualification gained are English and History, with English as the main subject, this should be returned as: <TQGSUB Main="1">010</TQGSUB> <TQGSUB>020</TQGSUB>. When only one subject is returned this subject should include the attribute Main="1"
Business rules	<p>1 Error QualificationsAwarded.TQGSUB must exist for institutions in Scotland where QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC = 2.</p> <p>2 Error QualificationsAwarded.TQGSUB must not exist for institutions in England, Wales or Northern Ireland.</p> <p>4 Warning QualificationsAwarded.TQGSUB should not be coded 360 by institutions in Scotland where QualificationsAwarded.TQGSEC = 2.</p> <p>5 Error When one or more instances of QualificationsAwarded.TQGSUB exists,</p>

	one and only one instance's attribute Main must be set to "1".
Reason Required	To allow monitoring of qualifications sought and gained.
Part Of	Qualifications awarded
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	3
Schema Components	Element: TQGSUB Data type: TQGSUBType
Related Fields	TQGSEC
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Qualifications on entry

Type	entity
Short Name	QualificationsOnEntry
Description	Detail of the qualifications held by the student when the instance begins
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	<p>All entrants at institutions in England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland where EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists and this data has been provided by UCAS.</p> <p>For institutions in England this information must also be returned where (EntryProfile.QUALENT3 = P41, P42, P46, P47, P50, P51, P53, P62, P63, P64, P65, P68, P80, P93, P94, X00 or X01) and (EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM).</p>
Notes	<p>The awarding bodies have given their consent, via the Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ), for some of the results data that they forward to UCAS to be shared with HEIs for admission purposes, to also be used in preparing the Student Record from 2007/08. The detail of the agreement is still to be finalised.</p> <p>In Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland, this information is only required for UCAS entrants with tariff-bearing qualifications. In England, there is the additional requirement that this information is returned for UK-domiciled entrants where the highest qualification on entry is at level 3, including Access courses (EntryProfile.QUALENT3 codes X00 and X01).</p> <p>Institutions are, however, encouraged to provide the same information for other undergraduate students, in order to contribute more complete statistical information for the sector.</p> <p>If returning qualification on entry data for a continuing student in order to add to or correct data returned in a previous year, then the complete set of qualifications should be returned not just the updated ones.</p> <p>The existence of this entity cannot be tested by validation rules. However, submissions will be compared with the data supplied to HESA by UCAS for quality assurance purposes.</p>
Business rules	1 Warning There are more than 30 occurrences of QualificationsOnEntry for an instance.
Reason Required	This entity exists to hold information about the individual qualifications a student holds when they begin an instance.
Part Of	Entry profile
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	unbounded
Has Parts	Qualification type (QUALTYPE) Qualification subject (QUALSBJ) Qualification grade (QUALGRADE) Qualification year (QUALYEAR)

	Qualification sitting (QUALSIT)
Owner	HESA
Version	1.3
Date modified	2013-06-25
Change management notes	Coverage statement corrected for English institutions to include Access qualifications in the list of required EntryProfile.QVALENT3 codes. Notes updated to reflect this change.

Qualification grade

Type	field
Short Name	QUALGRADE
Description	This field collects the grade of qualification obtained on entry to the instance
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All Qualification on entry records
Valid Entries and Labels	A A1 A2 A3 A4 A5 A# Ad Am Ap Au AA AB AA# AB# A#A A#B A#A# A#B# A* A*d A*m a* * *# ** *A *d *m A*# A*A A*A* B B1 B2 B3 B4 B6 B7 B# Bd Bm Bp Bu BB BC BB# BC# B#B B#C

B#B#
B#C#
Band 1
Band 2
C
C1
C2
C3
C5
C6
C8
C9
C#
Cd
Cm
Cp
Cu
CC
CD
CC#
CD#
C#C
C#D
C#C#
C#D#
D
D1
D2
D3
D7
D#
Dd
Dm
Dp
Du
DD
DE
DD#
DE#
D#D
D#E
D#D#
D#E#
Distinction
DM
D*
D*D*
D*D
D*D*D*
D*D*D
D*DD
DDD
DDM
DMM
E
E#
Ed
Em
Ep
Eu
EE
EE#
E#E
E#E#

EA
EB
EC
ED
EN
EP
F
FC
Fail
H1
H2
H3
H4
H5
H6
H7
HC
HD
HN
HP
I
J
K
M
M1
M2
M3
MM
MP
Merit
MMM
MMP
MPP
N
NA
P
P1
P2
P3
PP
Pass
PPP
Q
Q#
QQ
QQ#
S
S1
S2
S3
S4
S5
S6
S7
SN
SD
SP
SS
SSS
SSD
SDD
U
UC
UG

	UU #U# U# UU# V U#U W X XX X# XX# 0 1 2 3 +1 +2 +3 10 11 12 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45
Notes	<p>The awarding bodies have given their consent, via the Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ), for some of the results data that they forward to UCAS to be shared with HEIs for admission purposes, to also be used in preparing the Student Record from 2007/08. The detail of the agreement is still to be finalised.</p> <p>This data will be made available to institutions by UCAS (through the *J transaction). The HESA record will work to the existing UCAS coding frame.</p> <p>Grades may be valid with a number of qualifications, so the list below is a list of all</p>

	<p>grades valid in this field. The meaning of each grade can vary depending on which qualification it is associated with.</p> <p>Further explanation of which grades belong to which qualification is available from the UCAS website.</p> <p>Institutions are encouraged to provide this information for other full-time undergraduate students, in order to contribute more complete statistical information for the sector.</p> <p>Access to HE diploma marker</p> <p>For institutions in England where an Access to HE diploma (QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPEs Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4, Y5, Y6, Y7, Y8, Y9, YA, YB, YC, YD, YF, LD) has been awarded and an appropriate grade has been achieved for ABB+ equivalency, then the Instance.INITIATIVES valid entry code B 'Access to HE diploma marker' should be completed to support the ABB+ policy for student number control. The appropriate grade to meet ABB+ equivalency is defined as an overall pass which includes 45 credits at Level 3, of which 30 credits must be at Distinction and the other 15 at Merit or higher, as identified in the HEFCE publication documentation 'Students outside the Student Number Control in 2013-14 ABB+ population'.</p>
Reason Required	To allow detailed analysis of qualifications on entry and consequent progression.
Part Of	Qualifications on entry
Field Length	11
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: QUALGRADE Data type: QUALGRADECodeContentType
Owner	UCAS
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-07-30
Change management notes	Addition of valid entries HC, HD, I, J, and K.

Qualification sitting

Type	field
Short Name	QUALSIT
Description	This field identifies which exam sitting the qualification on entry to the instance was obtained.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All Qualification on entry records
Valid Entries and Labels	S Summer W Winter 9 Not known
Notes	<p>The awarding bodies have given their consent, via the Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ), for some of the results data that they forward to UCAS to be shared with HEIs for admission purposes, to also be used in preparing the Student Record from 2007/08.</p> <p>This data will be made available to institutions by UCAS (through the *J transaction). The HESA record will work to the existing UCAS coding frame.</p> <p>Institutions are encouraged to provide this information for other full-time undergraduate students, in order to contribute more complete statistical information for the sector</p>
Reason Required	To allow detailed analysis of qualifications on entry and consequent progression.
Part Of	Qualifications on entry
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: QUALSIT Data type: QUALSITCodeContentType
Owner	UCAS
Version	1.0

Qualification subject

Type	field
Short Name	QUALSBJ
Description	This field identifies the subject of qualification obtained on entry to the instance
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All Qualification on entry records
Valid Entries and Labels	10A Analytical Science 10C Combined Studies 10F Forensic Crime Investigations 10H Health and Science 10I Mathematical Studies 10J Photojournalism 10M Metratronics 10Q QA For Computer Games Development 10U Uniformed Public Services (Int.Only) 11A Classical and Computer Animation 11B Applied Science (Applied Biology) (QCF) 11C Applied Science (Applied Chemistry) (QCF) 11D Dentistry 11E Education Studies and Early Year Professions 11F Analytical and Forensic Science 11G Geographic Information Systems 11H Health and Social Work 11J Media & Journalism Practice 11L Applied Law (QCF) 11M Digital Media 11P Applied Science (Applied Physics) (QCF) 11T Applied Technology 11Z Zoo Resource Management 12B Science (Applied Microbiology) 12C Combined Humanities and Social Studies 12D Dentistry, Pharmacy and Medical Sciences 12E Education & Social Work 12F Providing Financial Advice 12G Geomatics (Surveying and Mapping) 12H Health and Care Professions 12J Journalism and Media 12L Legal Studies 12P Physical Activity and Sports Leadership 12T Live Event Technology 13C Education Professions 13E Education & Community Learning & Development 13H Health and Social Care Professions 13J Justice & Crime Prevention 13L Law and Social Science 14A Humanities and Arts 14B Social Studies 14C Criminological Social Sciences 14F Credit Union Studies 14H Health and Caring 14J Social Justice 14L Law and Society 14S Life Sciences 14T Coin Slot Systems and Casino Technologies 15A Creative and Visual Arts 15B Social Science & Social Work

15C	Counselling and Psychology
15F	Footwear
15G	Wildlife and Countryside
15H	Health and Human Sciences
15L	Leadership Studies
15P	Physiology and Pharmacology
15S	Aviation Science
15T	Merchant Vessel Technology
16A	Creative Enterprises
16B	Social Studies/ Social Work
16C	Chemical Engineering
16G	Garden and Landscape Design
16H	Health and Life Sciences
16L	Lean Service Management
16P	Pharmacy Services
16S	Human and Social Sciences
17B	Social Care Professionals
17C	Community Development
17F	Furniture Design, Production and Enterprise
17H	Health and Physiotherapy
17L	Life and Biological Science
17P	Pharmaceutical Science (QCF)
17S	Children's Care, Learn & Dev'ment (Int.Only)
18B	Social Work and Community Work
18C	Developing Counselling Skills
18H	Health and Science Professions
18P	Pharmacy and Bio-Medical Science
18S	Combined Social Studies
19C	Chemical Dependency Counselling
19H	Health and Social Science
19S	Applied Social Studies
20B	Biology & Mgmt Of Marine & Freshwater Ecosys.
20C	Life Coaching Skills and Practice
20F	Fashion Business
20H	Health Care and Midwifery
20I	Ict: Hardware & Networks
20Q	Quality Management
20S	Nautical Science (NQF)
20V	Visual Communication
21C	Communication and Computer Networks
21D	Indust. Prog'ng Eng. (Robotics & Computing)
21F	Fashion Marketing
21G	Gemmology
21H	Health Professions and Nursing
21I	Ict Systems Support
21N	Food Science
21P	Physical and Natural Sciences
21V	Visualisation
22B	Biochemical Sciences
22C	Computer and Electronic Engineering
22F	Fashion Media and Communication
22H	Health, Social Care & Early Years Professions
22T	Performing Arts (Musical Theatre) (QCF)
22V	Visual Arts In The Community
23B	Biomedical Science (NQF)
23C	Computer and Digital Product Technology
23F	Fashion
23L	Logistics
23T	Performing Arts (Physical Theatre) (QCF)
23V	Vocational Science
24A	Accountancy and Economics
24C	Computer and Network Technology
24L	Labour & International Studies
24T	Performing Arts (Technical)

24V	Vocational
25B	Biology and Chemistry With Business Studies
25C	Computer Networks
25D	3D Spatial Design
25I	Information Engineering With Business
25L	Laboratory Technician Studies
25T	Production Arts (Stage Management) (QCF)
25V	Media and Visual Communication
26C	Computer Games Production
26D	Computer Aided Product Design
26T	Performing Arts (Stage Design)
27C	Computer Systems Security
27D	Two Dimensional Design (Drawing For Design)
27E	Science, Engineering and Computing
27I	International Studies
27L	Lift Engineering
27T	Performing Arts (Set Construction)
28B	Biological and Environmental Science
28C	Computer Systems (Engineering)
28E	Science, Medicine and Engineering
28T	Production Arts (Technical) (QCF)
29C	Computer Aided Engineering
29T	Production Arts (Arts Management) (QCF)
30E	Applied Linguistics
30F	Baking Technology
30Q	Quantity Surveying
30T	Sound Engineering & Multimedia Integration
30V	Veterinary Nursing
31C	Computer Aided Visualisation
31D	Assistive Technology and Disability Studies
31E	Electrical/Electronic Eng (Int. Only)
31F	Culinary Arts Management
31G	Local Government Administration
31S	Minerals Surveying
31T	3D Design (Theatre Costume)
31V	Veterinary Practice Management
32C	Computer Forensics
32D	Disability and Society
32E	Construction Engineering
32F	Food and Beverage Service
33C	Computer Rendered Enter'ent & Animated Media
33E	Aeronautical Engineering (QCF)
33F	Food Safety and Hygiene
34C	Computer Studies and Ict
34E	Aerospace Engineering
34F	Food Development and Production
35C	Computing and Maths
35E	Applied Aviation Studies
35F	Aquatic & Fisheries Management
35R	Radiography
36C	Computing With Business
36E	Biomedical Equipment Engineering
36F	Fish Management (QCF)
37C	Computing Engineering
37E	Marine Engineering (NQF)
37F	International Cuisine
38E	Materials Technology
39E	Nuclear Engineering
39N	Natural Sciences
40B	Business, Legal and Language Studies
40E	Operations & Maint. Engineering (Int. Only)
40F	Compartment Fire Behaviour Training
40H	Therapeutic Hair Sciences
40N	Nature Conservation

40T	Theatre Arts
40V	Video and Television Studies
40W	Working With Medication
41A	Archaeology and Ancient History
41B	Business and Travel
41C	3D Design Crafts
41E	Electronics Design
41F	Fire Safety Engineering
41H	Horticulture (QCF)
41I	Interactive Use Of Media
41S	Research and Laboratory Science
41T	Adventure Tourism
42E	Electronics Technology
42F	Fire Service Training & Command
42H	Equine Studies
42S	Science and Allied Medical Professions
43B	Agri Marketing and Business Administration
43E	Communications Electronic Engineering
43H	Heritage Management
43P	Physiological Measurements
43S	Science and Forensics
44E	Medical Technology
44P	Physiotherapy
44S	Science and Health
45E	Enterprise and Entrepreneurship (QCF)
45N	New Media Production Technology
45P	Politics, Policy Making & Globalisation
45R	Railway Engineering
45S	Science and Mathematics
45T	Transport Planning and Engineering
45W	Waste Management
46G	Game Design and Development Engineering
46P	Practitioner In Substance Misuse
46S	Science and Nursing
47B	Business and Enterprise
47G	Interactive Game Development
47P	Power Generation
47S	Science For Health & Sport
47W	Water and Environmental Management
48B	Business & Marketing
48P	Process Technology and Logistics Management
48S	Science For Health Practitioners
49P	Production Management
49S	Science For Professions Allied To Medicine
50C	Communications Systems
50F	Floristry (QCF)
50I	General Illustration
50L	Turfgrass Science and Management
50N	Nursery Production & Garden Centre Management
50P	Psychology and Community Studies
50R	Real Estate
50V	Vehicle Tech (Motorsports) (Int. Only)
51C	Call Handling Operations
51P	Psychology and Health Studies
51V	Vehicle Operations Management (NQF)
52C	Consumer Marketing
52E	Air Conditioning and Sustainable Energy
52P	Psychology and Social Science
53C	Construction Management
53H	Health and Community Studies
53M	3D Animation and Multimedia
53P	Professions In English, Writing and Media
54B	European Building Design & Management
54C	Construction Technology and Management

54H	Health and Safety In The Workplace
54P	Professions In Law and Criminology
55B	Architectural Glass
55C	Adv Pract In Wrk W Child & Fam's (Mgmt) NQF
55D	Dental Technology (QCF)
55H	Housing (NQF)
55I	Immunology
55N	Nursing Studies
55P	Printing
56C	Construction (Architectural Design)
56H	Health, Public Services and Care
56P	Law and Criminology
57M	Advertising and Marketing Communication
57N	Healthcare, Nursing and Midwifery
58C	Children and Young People
58E	Exercise and Health In The Community
58H	Horse Management (QCF)
58I	Instrumentation and Control
58R	Refrigeration and Sustainable Energy
59C	Community Studies, Psychology and Education
59H	Horse Studies (Technology and Management)
59R	Renewable Energy Technology (Wind Turbines)
59S	Adventure Sports
60B	Salon Management
60F	Facilities Management (NQF)
60G	Glass
60I	Interior Design
60M	Motor Sports
60R	Rescue and Emergency Management
60S	Outdoor Activities
61M	Blacksmithing and Metalworking (QCF)
61P	Applied Photography
62P	Performing Arts (Acting) (International Only)
62R	Restoration & Decorative Studies
63P	Performing Arts (Dance) (QCF)
64P	Performing Arts (Performance)
65C	Customer Service (Onscreen Only)
65D	Design Metals
65G	Golf and Sports Turf Management
65H	Horology
65P	Performing Arts (Production)
65R	Rural and Country Management
66C	Applied Consumer Studies
66H	Human Resource Management
66M	Mobile and Interactive TV Development
66P	Plant & Process Engineering
67M	Wireless Applications and Mobile Solutions
67S	Speech and Language Therapy
68C	Coastal Zone and Marine Environment Studies
68M	Aircraft Maintenance
69C	Cartography
69E	International Event Management Studies
69M	Culture & Media Studies
69P	Police Studies
70C	Countryside Management (QCF)
70H	Humanities
70M	Multimedia
70P	Polymer Processing and Materials Technology
71B	Broadcast Post Production
71H	Humanities, Arts and Social Sciences
72H	Humanities and Social Science
72M	Music (Performing) (QCF)
73H	Humanities and Heritage
73M	Music (Composing) (QCF)

74E	Childhood Studies
74H	Humanities and Science
74P	Sport, Health and Exercise
75E	Early Years and Child Care For Playworkers
75H	Humanities - History
76E	Property Appraisal and Energy Management
76H	Humanities Literature
77E	Estate Management
78E	Early Years
78S	Speech , Occupational Therapy & Allied Profes
79S	Science/Health Science
80H	Humanities/Soc Sciences/Teaching/Social Work
80M	Midwifery
80S	Professional Social Care
80T	Teaching
81H	Humanities, Soc Sciences & Related Profession
81M	Medicine
81S	Social, Youth and Community Work Studies
81T	Teaching Studies
82M	Medicine and Medical Biosciences
82S	Social Work, Teaching and Social Sciences
82T	Teaching - Science
83M	Medicine & Health Professions
83S	Social and Community Studies
83T	Teacher Education
84M	Medical Science
84S	Social Science and Humanities
84T	Primary Teaching
85M	Medical and Health Science Professions
85S	Social Sciences and Community Work
85T	Teacher Training
86S	Scientific Careers
86T	Teaching - Humanities
87S	Social Sciences & Public Sector Professions
87T	Teaching and Learning
88P	Paramedic Studies
88S	Social Studies
88T	Teaching In The Lifelong Learning Sector
89S	Social Studies and Humanities
89T	Teaching: Early Years
90H	Hospitality, Leisure and Tourism
90S	Social and Cultural Studies
92C	Caring Professions
92M	Airline and Airport Operations
93C	Explore Complementary Therapies
93M	Conservation and Environment
97S	Social Science & Social Care
98S	Social Science and Health Professions
A10	GCE Applied Art & Design Advanced & Additional AS
A11	Art
A12	Painting
A13	Sculpture
A14	Art and Crafts
A15	Art and Design
A16	Art With Art History
A17	History of Art
A18	History & Appreciation of Art
A19	Study of Visual Art
A20	Art and Design -Fine Art
A21	Accounting
A22	Principles of Accounts
A23	Fine Art
A24	Accounting and Finance
A25	Administration

A26	Application of Number
A27	Applied Art and Design
A28	OCR National Certificate in Art & Design
A29	EDI level 3 Certificate in Accounting (IAS)
A30	Anthropology
A31	Agricultural Science
A32	Agricultural Economics
A33	Agriculture
A34	Make-up artist
A35	NVQ Level 3 in Accounting
A36	EDI level 3 certificate in Accounting
A37	Animal Care
A38	OCR National Extended Diploma in Art & Design
A39	OCR National Diploma in Art & Design
A40	Art History (Principal Subject)
A41	Archaeology
A51	Anatomy Physiology And Health
A60	Art & Design Unendorsed
A61	Art & Design - Textiles
A62	Art & Design - Graphics
A63	Art & Design - Photography
A64	Art & Design - 3D Studies
A66	Art & Design - Fashion/textile
A67	Art & Design Lens Based Imagery (Principal Subject)
A68	Art & Design-Film & Video
A69	Art & Design-Crit/Hist.Studies
A80	Arabic
A81	Afrikaans
A82	Amharic
A83	Classical Arabic
A84	Modern Arabic
A85	Armenian
A86	Classical Armenian
A87	Albanian
A88	Asante
A89	Asian Arts
A90	Aice Diploma
A91	Astronomy
B11	Biology
B12	Nuffield Biology
B13	Human Biology
B14	Social Biology
B15	Human/Social Biology
B16	Biology with Practical (Singapore)
B17	AQA Baccalaureate
B18	AQA Enrichment
B20	Bio-technology
B21	Botany
B22	Project Botany
B23	Biochemistry
B24	Biological Sciences
B25	Biosciences
B26	Biological and Health Science
B28	Biological & Biomedical Sciences
B29	Bonus
B31	British Constitution
B39	Business and Professional Studies
B40	Business Economics
B41	Business Studies
B42	Business Organisation
B43	Business Administration
B44	Business and Finance
B45	Business
B46	business studies and economics

B47	Applied Business
B48	Business Administration
B49	Business Environment
B50	Business Management
B51	Building Construction
B52	Built Environment
B53	Building Studies
B54	Building Technology
B55	Building & Architectural Techn
B56	Building Services
B57	GCE Applied Business Advanced and Additional AS
B60	Beauty Therapy
B80	Bemba
B81	Bengali
B82	Bulgarian
B83	Burmese
B84	Bahasa
B85	SI Bosnian A1
B86	My Basque
B87	SI Brazilian Std
B91	OCR National Cert. in Business
B92	OCR National Dip. in Business
B93	OCR National Ext. Dip. in Business
B94	B/Russian A1
C10	Certificate in the Arts
C11	Chemistry
C12	Nuffield Chemistry
C13	Chemistry B (Salters)
C14	Childcare
C15	Chemistry with Practical (Singapore)
C16	Chemistry A
C17	Communication & Culture
C18	Calculus
C19	Chemical Process Tech.
C21	Computer Science
C22	Computer Studies
C23	Computer Science Endorsement
C24	Computing
C25	Computer Awareness
C26	Computer Programming
C27	Comparative Government & Politics (principal subject)
C28	Computer Aided Arch. & Des.
C29	Classical Heritage (Principal Subject)
C30	Creative & Media
C31	Classical Civilisation
C32	Jact Classical Civilisation
C33	Classical Studies
C34	Classical Civ & History
C35	Classics Ancient History
C36	Classics Latin
C39	Critical and Contextual Studies in Art
C40	Critical Thinking
C41	Craft
C42	Pottery
C43	Integrated Craftwork
C44	Craft And Design
C45	Craft - Printing
C46	Craft - Embroidery
C47	Craft Design & Technology
C49	Creative Design
C50	Commercial Studies
C51	Communication Studies
C52	Commerce
C53	Construction

C54	Construction/Built Environment
C61	Computations Endorsement
C62	General & Communication
C64	Service Industries
C65	Communication Skills
C66	Cornish
C68	Process Control
C69	Control System
C70	China Studies in English
C71	Ceramics
C79	Cantonese
C80	Catalan
C81	Chinese
C82	Classical Chinese
C83	Modern Chinese
C84	Modern Standard Chinese
C85	Mandarin Chinese
C86	Chinese with Translation
C87	Chinese History
C88	Chinese Language & Literature
C89	Croatian
C90	Chile & Pac.
C91	Czech
C92	Classical Language
C93	Caring
C94	China Studies in English
C95	Media and Cultural Studies
C97	Chinese (Traditional)
C98	Chinese (Simplified)
C99	Children and Young Peoples Workforce
D10	Pre-U Diploma
D11	Technical Drawing
D12	Geometric/Mechanical Drawing
D13	Geometric/Engineering Drawing
D14	Geometric/Building Drawing
D15	Technical/Engineering Drawing
D16	Engineering Drawing
D17	Decision Mathematics
D21	Design
D22	Design And Technology
D23	Craft and Technology Design
D24	Communication & Imp. Design
D25	Design & Tech. Product Design (3D Design)
D26	Design & Tech. Product Design (Textiles)
D31	Domestic Science
D32	Dress
D41	Dance
D42	Drama and Theatre Arts
D43	Drama
D44	Drama and Theatre Studies
D50	Distribution
D61	Design & Tech:Food Technology
D62	Design and Tech:Product Design
D63	DesignTEC:Systems Tec
D64	Design & Communication Graphics
D65	Des & Tec. Resistant Materials
D66	Design & Tech. Product Design
D81	Danish
D82	Dutch
D83	Dhivehi
D84	SI Dzongkha A1
D91	OCR National Cert. in Design
D92	OCR National Dip. in Design
D93	OCR National Ext. Dip. in Design

E10	Extended Project
E11	English Literature
E12	English Language & Literature
E13	English
E14	English Language
E15	English for Speakers of Other Languages
E16	(Camb. Assess.) Certificate of Advanced English (CAE)
E17	(Camb. Assess.) Certificate of Proficiency English (CPE)
E18	English and Humanities
E19	English and Creative Writing
E20	Literature in English (Principal Subject)
E21	Economics
E22	Economics and Business (Nuff)
E23	Mathematics for Engineering
E24	Math Techniques & Applications For Engineers
E25	Economic and Public Affairs
E26	Economic and Political Studies
E27	Economics and Business
E28	English and Education
E30	English Language & Linguistics
E31	Engineering
E32	Engineering Science
E33	Engineering Drawing and Design
E34	Elements of Engineering Design
E35	Manufacturing & Product Development
E36	Manufacturing & Product Design
E37	English and Media
E41	Electronic Systems
E42	Electronics Endorsement
E43	Electronics
E51	Environmental Science
E52	Environmental Studies
E53	Social & Environmental Biology
E54	Environmental Management
E55	ENV. AND SOC.
E61	Embroidery
E62	Engineering Design
E63	Engineering and Technology
E64	Mechanical Engineering
E67	Civil Engineering
E68	Engineering Practice
E71	European Community
E73	Ecology
E74	European Studies
E81	Estonian
E82	Fante
E91	Education
E92	Education, Training and Support
F11	Fashion & Textiles
F12	IFS-Services Practice
F13	Certificate in Financial Studies
F14	Diploma in Financial Studies
F15	Foundations of Advanced Mathematics (MEI)
F16	Level 4 Diploma in Foundation Studies (Art, Design & Media)
F17	Level 3 Diploma in Fashion Retail
F18	Diploma in Foundation Studies (Art & Design)
F19	Diploma in Foundation Studies (Art Design & Media)
F20	Further Mathematics (Additional)
F21	Film Studies
F22	Fabrication and Welding
F23	Data Analysis
F24	Dynamics
F25	Mathematical Principles in Personal Finance
F31	Food preparation and cooking

F81	French
F82	Fijian
F83	Finnish
F84	Finnish Language
F85	Finnish Literature
G10	Georgian A1
G11	Geography
G12	Economic Geography
G13	'School Council' Geography
G14	Physical Geography
G15	Human Geography
G16	Global Perspectives & Independent Research
G17	Global Perspectives
G21	Geology
G31	Government & Politics
G32	British Government & Politics
G33	Govt: Pol and Econ (European Un)
G40	Art & Design (Graphic Comm) (Principal Subject)
G41	Graphic Communication
G42	Technical Graphics
G43	Applied Engineering Graphics
G44	Graphics
G45	Graphic Design
G51	General Studies
G81	German
G82	Gaelic
G83	Gaelic (as a first language)
G84	Gaelic (as a second language)
G85	Gujarati
G86	Galician
G91	Greek
G92	Modern Greek
G93	Greek Literature
G94	Greek & Greek History
G95	Greek Literature & History
G96	Classical Greek
H10	Human Rights
H11	History
H12	British Econ. & Social History
H13	Economic History
H14	Economic & Social History
H15	Greek and Roman History
H16	History & Arch. Roman Britain
H17	Political History
H18	History A
H19	History B
H20	Hypothesis Testing
H21	Ancient History
H22	Jact Ancient History
H23	Ancient History & Literature
H24	Hist. Africa
H25	Hist. Americas
H26	Hist. E. Asia
H27	Hist. Europe
H28	Hist. W. Asia
H29	U.S. History
H31	Home Economics
H32	Fabric & Fashion
H33	Food & Nutrition
H34	Family & Society
H35	Home & Social Science
H36	Home & Community Studies
H37	Home Econ.(Dress & Fabrics)
H38	Hospitality and Catering

H39	Hospitality
H40	Hair & Beauty Studies
H41	Horticultural Science
H42	Horse Knowledge and Care
H43	Horse Riding
H45	European History
H46	Mediaeval History
H47	Modern History
H48	Historical Studies
H49	Hafaz Al-Quran
H50	Health and Social Studies
H51	Health and Social Services
H52	Healthcare Practitioners
H53	Health and Social Care
H54	GCE Health & Social Care Advanced & Additional AS
H55	Health Care
H56	BHS Level 3 Certificate in Stage 3 Horse Knowledge & Care
H57	BHS Know & Care Rid.
H58	BHS Level 3 Preliminary Teacher's Certificate (Equine Coach)
H59	Health Studies: Biosciences
H60	Applied Health & Social Care Adv & Add AS
H71	OCR Nat. Cert. Health, Soc. Care
H72	OCR Nat. Dip. Health, Soc. Care
H73	OCR Nat. Ext. Dip. Health, Soc. Care
H81	Hebrew
H82	Classical Hebrew
H83	Modern Hebrew
H84	Biblical Hebrew
H90	Beg. Hindi
H91	Hindi
H92	Hungarian
H93	Hinduism
H94	Hispanic Std
H95	Hotel and Catering
H96	SI Hiskcon Bistu
I10	Maths.Sets
I11	Industrial Studies
I12	Industrial Plant Support
I13	Malay B
I14	Maths.Discrete
I15	OCR iPro Certificate
I16	OCR iPro Diploma
I17	GCE Applied ICT Advanced & Additional AS
I18	Applied Information and Communication Technology
I19	Information Tec
I20	Info. and Comm. Technology
I21	Information Technology
I22	Information Tech & Business
I23	Information Processing
I24	Information Studies
I25	Information Systems
I26	International Affairs
I27	International Trade
I28	Imp. own Learning/Performance
I29	OCR National Certificate in ICT
I30	OCR National Diploma in ICT
I31	National Extended Diploma in ICT
I37	Maths.Series
I40	OCR Cert. iMedia Users
I42	OCR Dip. iMedia Users
I80	India Studies
I81	Irish
I82	Italian
I83	Islam

I84	Icelandic
I85	Igbo
I86	Indonesian
I87	Inuktitut
I88	ITGS
I89	Malayalam A1
J81	Japanese
K10	Level 1 Working with Others
K11	Level 1 Communication
K12	Level 1 Application of Number
K13	Level 1 IT
K15	Certificate of Personal Effectiveness
K16	KAZAKHSTAN
K20	Level 2 Working with Others
K21	Level 2 Communication
K22	Level 2 Application of Number
K23	Level 2 IT
K30	Level 3 Working with Others
K31	Level 3 Communication
K32	Level 3 Application of Number
K33	Level 3 IT
K41	Level 4 Communication
K42	Level 4 Application of Number
K43	Level 4 IT
K44	Critical Thinking
K45	Oral Communication
K46	Oral Communication (Gaidhlig)
K47	Planning and Organising
K48	Reviewing and Evaluating
K49	Using Graphical Information
K50	Using Information Technology
K51	Using Number
K52	Working with Others
K53	Written Communication
K54	Written Comms Gaidhlig
K55	Critical Thinking
K56	Oral Communication
K57	Planning and Organising
K58	Reviewing and Evaluating
K59	Using Graphical Information
K60	Using Information Technology
K61	Using Number
K62	Working with Others
K63	Written Communication
K64	Oral Communication (Gaidhlig)
K65	Written Communication (Gaidhlig)
K66	Accessing Information
K67	Accessing Information
K68	Providing/Creating Information
K69	Providing/Creating Information
K70	Working Co-operatively with Others
K71	Level 1 Improving Own Learning and Performance
K72	Level 2 Improving Own Learning and Performance
K73	Level 3 Improving Own Learning and Performance
K74	Level 4 Improving Own Learning and Performance
K75	Working Co-operatively with Others
K76	Reviewing Co-operative Contribution
K77	Reviewing Co-operative Contribution
K81	Korean
K82	Knowledge and Inquiry
K90	Level 4 Wider Key Skills Problem Solving
K91	Level 1 Problem Solving
K92	Level 2 Problem Solving
K93	Level 3 Problem Solving

K94	Level 4 Problem Solving
L11	Law
L12	Constitutional Law
L13	Gen. Principles of English Law
L14	Business Law
L21	Logic
L49	GCE Leisure Studies Advanced & Additional AS
L50	Leisure and Recreation
L51	Land-based Occupations (Arig/e)
L52	Leisure and Tourism
L56	Land Use
L57	Environmental & Land Based Studies
L58	Land-Based Studies
L59	Landscape Design
L61	Links module
L81	Latin
L82	Latin with Roman History
L83	Latin Literature
L84	Latin Literature & History
L85	Literature, History and Social Science
L86	Language and Literature
L91	Latvian
L92	Lithuanian
L93	Lozi
L94	Luganda
L95	Lunda
L96	Luo
M10	Mongolian A1
M11	Mathematics
M12	MEI Mathematics
M13	SMP Mathematics
M14	Use of Mathematics
M15	Higher Mathematics
M16	OCR National Cert. in Media
M17	OCR National Dip. in Media
M18	Mathematics & Statistics
M19	OCR National Ext. Dip. in Media
M20	Pure Maths with Further Maths
M21	Pure Mathematics
M22	Pure & Applied Mathematics
M23	Pure Maths. & Statistics
M24	Pure Maths. with Computations
M25	MEI Pure Mathematics
M26	Pure Maths with Mechanics
M27	Further Pure Maths & Mechanics
M28	Further Maths(add)(mei)
M29	Use of Mathematics
M30	Mechanical Mathematics
M31	Additional Mathematics
M32	SMP Additional Mathematics
M33	Applied Mathematics
M34	MEI Applied Mathematics
M35	Further Mathematics
M36	SMP Further Mathematics
M37	MEI Further Mathematics
M38	Applied Maths. & Statistics
M39	Maths with Applications
M40	Using and Applying Statistics
M41	Mathematics (I)
M42	Mathematics (II)
M43	Mathematics (III)
M44	Mathematics (IV)
M45	Mathematics (V)
M46	Maths. (Mechanics with Stats)

M47	Mathematics (Statistics)
M48	Maths 1 Step
M49	Maths 2 Step
M50	Media Studies
M51	Modern Studies
M52	Maths Step 3
M53	Media/Communications
M54	Working with Algebraic and Graphical Techniques
M55	Modelling with Calculus
M56	Manufacturing
M57	Marketing
M58	Using and Applying Decision Mathematics
M59	Using Algebra Functions and Graphs
M60	Motor Vehicle Maintenance
M61	Metalwork
M62	Silver Metalwork
M63	Making Connections in Mathematics
M64	Handling and Interpreting Data
M65	Applied Mechanics
M66	Mechanics
M67	Solving Problems in Shape and Space
M68	Theoretical Mechanics
M69	Mechatronics
M70	Media Comm. and Production
M71	Music
M72	General Music
M73	Practical Music
M74	Theoretical Music
M75	Musical Appreciation
M76	History & App. Of Music
M77	Music & Musicianship
M78	Music Technology
M79	Music Composition
M80	Calculating Finances
M81	Malay
M82	Maltese
M83	Marathi
M84	Macedonian
M85	Malayalam
M86	Maori
M87	Making Sense of Data
M88	Working in 2 and 3 Dimensions
M89	Managing Money
M90	Additional Mathematics
M91	Management Information Studies
M92	Management
M93	Management Studies
M94	Music Theory Level 6
M95	Music Practical Level 6
M96	Music Theory Level 7
M97	Music Practical Level 7
M98	Music Theory Level 8
M99	Music Practical Level 8
N11	Navigation
N12	Cache theory
N13	Cache practical
N14	CACHE Diploma in Child Care and Education
N15	CACHE Certificate in Child Care and Education
N16	CACHE Award in Child Care and Education
N20	Nutrition
N21	Nutrition. Sc.
N31	Nuffield Mathematics
N32	Nuffield Further Mathematics
N56	Nursing and Midwifery

N57	Nursing & Social Care
N58	Nursing and Health Related Occupations
N59	Nursing, Health and Science
N60	Nursing, Midwifery and Health Studies
N81	Norwegian
N82	Ndebele
N83	Ndonga
N84	Nepali
N85	Beginner Nynorsk
O11	Occupational Therapy
O12	Osteopathic Sciences & Health Care
O13	Osteopathy
P11	Physics
P12	Nuffield Physics
P13	Physics and Mathematics
P14	Physics and Chemistry
P15	Proteomics
P16	Project Work
P17	Pharmaceutical Chemistry
P18	Essentials of Modern Physics
P19	Physics with Practical (Singapore)
P20	Physics B (Advancing Physics)
P21	Physical Science
P22	Nuffield Physical Science
P23	Physics A
P24	Philosophy & Theology (Principal Subject)
P30	Political Science
P31	Political Studies
P32	Peace & Con. St.
P33	Practical
P34	Politics
P41	Psychology
P42	Philosophy
P43	Physiology
P51	Public and Social Admin
P52	Public Affairs
P53	Prof. Practice Placement
P60	Photography & Digital Imaging
P61	Photography
P62	Performing Arts
P63	Performance Studies
P64	Cert Speech & Drama Perf Study
P67	Visual and Performing Arts
P71	Physical Education
P72	P.E. (Sports Studies)
P73	Sports Science
P74	Sports Studies
P75	Sport Science, Physical Education & Dietetics
P76	Sports and Physical Education
P81	Persian
P82	Classical Persian
P83	Panjabi
P84	Polish
P85	Portuguese
P86	S.American Portuguese
P87	Pashto
P88	Philipino
P91	OCR Nat. Cert. Public Services
P92	OCR Nat. Dip. Public Services
P93	OCR Nat. Ext. Dip. Public Services
P94	Public Services
P95	Government & Public Organizations Services
R11	Religious Studies
R12	Christian Theology

R13	Religious Knowledge
R14	Theology
R15	Religious, Moral PHIL Studies
R16	Research Project AICE Diploma
R17	REF. PROJECT - IB
R30	Retail & Distributive Services
R31	Retail Business
R40	Resultant Award
R81	Russian
R82	Rumanian
S10	GCE Applied Science Advanced & Additional AS
S11	Sociology
S12	Science in Society
S13	Science Studies
S14	Science
S15	Marine Sci.
S16	Social Anthropology
S17	Care
S18	Statistics (MEI)
S19	Social Care
S20	Marine Science
S21	Statistics
S22	Statistics Endorsement
S23	Science-Public Understanding
S24	Applied Science
S25	Sports Exercise Science
S26	Support Spec. Learn. Needs
S27	Scottish Baccalaureate Languages
S28	Scottish Baccalaureate Science
S29	Scottish Interdisciplinary Project Languages
S30	Scottish Interdisciplinary Project Science
S31	Surveying
S32	Scottish National Progression Award - PCPassport
S33	Scottish Ungraded National Certificate
S41	Secretarial Studies
S42	Shorthand
S43	Society, Health & Development
S51	Scripture
S59	Sport and Active Leisure
S60	Sport & Hospitality Management
S61	OCR National Cert. in Sport
S62	OCR National Diploma in Sport
S63	OCR National Ext. Diploma in Sport
S64	Level 3 Award in HSL
S65	Drama (D6)
S66	Drama (D7)
S67	Drama (D8)
S78	Social Science: Citizenship
S79	Social Policy
S80	Social Work
S81	Spanish
S82	Serbo-Croat
S83	Siamese
S84	Sinhalese
S85	Slovak
S86	Sanskrit
S87	Swahili
S88	Swedish
S89	Shona
S90	Samcan
S91	Sesotho
S92	Setswana
S93	Siswati
S94	Slavey

S95	Somali
S96	Syariah
S97	SI Serbian
S98	Slovene
T10	Thai A2
T11	Technology
T12	Technology and Design
T13	Tech. Design & Graphic Comm.
T14	Technological Studies
T15	Theoretical element
T16	Thinking Skills
T17	Tibetan A1
T21	Textiles and Dress
T31	Theatre Studies
T32	IB-TOK
T33	Total Score
T34	Theory
T39	Tourism
T40	GCE Travel and Tourism Advanced and Additional AS
T41	Travel and Tourism
T42	Applied Travel & Tourism Adv & Add AS
T80	Tafsir Al-Quran
T81	Tamil
T82	Turkish
T83	Telugu
T84	Thai
T85	Tigrinya
T86	Tonga
T87	Training & Development
T88	Text and Performance
T91	OCR Nat. Cert. Travel and Tourism
T92	OCR Nat. Dip. Travel and Tourism
T93	OCR Nat. Ext. Dip. Travel and Tourism
U01	Unknown Subject
U81	Ukrainian
U82	Urdu
U83	Usuliddin
U84	Ulum Al-Quran
V10	ASDAN Community Volunteering Cert.
V11	ASDAN Community Volunteering Award
V81	Vietnamese
W10	Web Design and Digital Media
W11	Woodwork
W12	Woodwork (Fine Craft & Design)
W13	World Development
W14	World Affairs
W15	World Studies
W16	World Politics
W17	WLD ART CULT
W19	Welfare Studies
W20	Working In The Community
W21	Creative Writing
W35	World Cultures
W81	Welsh
W82	Welsh (as a first language)
W83	Welsh (as a second language)
W88	Working with Others
WBA	Welsh BACC Advanced Diploma
X81	Xhosa
XXX	SISWAT
Y10	Certificate For Young Enterprise
Y80	Youth and Community Work
Y81	Yoruba
Z11	Zoology

	Z81 Zulu
Notes	<p>The awarding bodies have given their consent, via the Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ), for some of the results data that they forward to UCAS to be shared with HEIs for admission purposes, to also be used in preparing the Student Record from 2007/08.</p> <p>This data will be made available to institutions by UCAS (through the *J transaction). The HESA record will work to existing UCAS coding frames.</p> <p>Institutions are encouraged to provide this information for other full-time undergraduate students, in order to contribute more complete statistical information for the sector</p> <p>QUALSBJ contains the list of codes that have been valid since 2006. Qualifications obtained before this date should be mapped to this list where possible; if this is not possible then code U01 should be used.</p>
Business rules	<p>6 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALSBJ code 'U01' (unknown subject) used more than once so may not be counted in the tariff score.</p> <p>7 Error QualificationsOnEntry.QUALSBJ must be coded 'WBA' where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE = 'WB'.</p> <p>8 Error QualificationsOnEntry.QUALSBJ must be coded 'T33' where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE = IE</p> <p>9 Error QualificationsOnEntry.QUALSBJ must be coded 'B29' where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE = ID</p>
Reason Required	To allow detailed analysis of qualifications on entry and consequent progression.
Part Of	Qualifications on entry
Field Length	3
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: QUALSBJ Data type: QUALSBJCodeContentType
Owner	UCAS
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Addition of new valid entries C66 'Cornish' and S18 'Statistics (MEI)'.

Qualification type

Type	field
Short Name	QUALTYPE
Description	This field identifies the type of qualification obtained on entry to the instance, for example 'A' Level, Higher.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All Qualification on entry records
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>0A BTEC Certificate (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>0B BTEC Lvl 3 Award Group A (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>1A BTEC Extended Certificate (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>1B BTEC Specialist Diploma (QCF)</p> <p>1C BTEC Lvl 3 Award Group B (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>2B BTEC Specialist Certificate (QCF)</p> <p>2C BTEC Lvl 3 Award Group C (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>3B BTEC Specialist Award (QCF)</p> <p>3C BTEC Certificate Group A (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>4B BTEC Certificate Group B (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>4C BTEC Lvl 3 National Certificate (NQF/CQF)</p> <p>5B BTEC Certificate Group C (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>6B BTEC Certificate Group D (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>6M Music Theory Level 6</p> <p>7B BTEC Lvl 3 Diploma Group A (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>7M Music Theory Level 7</p> <p>8B BTEC Lvl 3 Diploma Group B (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>8M Music Theory Level 8</p> <p>9B BTEC Lvl 3 Diploma Group C (NQF/ASL)</p> <p>9U GCE 9 Unit Award</p> <p>A GCE A Level</p> <p>A1 Advanced Subsidiary</p> <p>AB AQA Baccalaureate</p> <p>AC CACHE Theory</p> <p>AD GCE AS Level (Double)</p> <p>AE Advanced Extension Award</p> <p>AG Level 3 NVQ in Accounting</p> <p>AH SQA Advanced Highers</p> <p>AI AICE</p> <p>AL Asset Languages - Listening</p> <p>AN GCE Advanced Level with Advanced Subsidiary (9 units)</p> <p>AO CIE AO (Advanced Ordinary)</p> <p>AP Asset Languages - Speaking</p> <p>AQ AQA Enrichment</p> <p>AR Asset Languages - Reading</p> <p>AS GCE AS Level</p> <p>AT AAT Diploma in Accounting</p> <p>AW Asset Languages - Writing</p> <p>B BTEC National Award/Certificate/Diploma (NQF) where not coded separately</p> <p>B0 BTEC Lvl 3 National Certificate (Legacy)</p> <p>B1 BTEC Lvl 3 Extended Dip. (was National Dip. 180+) (QCF)</p> <p>B2 BTEC Lvl 3 Diploma (was National Certificate 120+) (QCF)</p> <p>B3 BTEC Lvl 3 Subsidiary Dip (was National Award 60+) (QCF)</p> <p>B4 BTEC Lvl 3 Cert (= 50% of National Award 28-36) (QCF)</p> <p>B5 BTEC National Award (NQF)</p> <p>B6 BTEC National Certificate (NQF)</p> <p>B7 BTEC National Diploma (NQF)</p> <p>B8 BTEC Higher National Certificate (NQF)</p>

B9	BTEC Higher National Diploma (NQF)
BA	BTEC Lvl 3 Award (NQF/ASL)
BB	BTEC Lvl 3 Extended Certificate (NQF/ASL)
BC	BTEC Lvl 3 Diploma (NQF/ASL)
BD	BTEC Lvl 3 National Award (NQF/CQF)
BE	BTEC National in Early Years (NQF)
BF	BTEC Lvl 3 National Diploma (NQF/CQF)
BG	BTEC Lvl 5 Higher National Certificate (NQF/CQF)
BH	BTEC Lvl 5 Higher National Diploma (NQF/CQF)
BI	BTEC Lvl 3 Foundation Diploma 120 (QCF/FAD)
BJ	BTEC Lvl 4 Foundation Diploma 120+ (QCF/FAD)
BK	BTEC Lvl 4 HNC Diploma 120+ (QCF)
BL	BTEC Lvl 5 HND Diploma 240+ (QCF)
BM	BTEC Lvl 4 HNC Diploma 120+ (QCF/CQF)
BN	BTEC Lvl 5 HND Diploma 240+ (QCF/CQF)
BP	BTEC Lvl 5 Higher National Certificate (Legacy)
BQ	BTEC Diploma (FAD/Legacy)
BR	BTEC Lvl 3 National Diploma (Legacy)
BS	BTEC Lvl 5 Higher National Diploma (Legacy)
BT	BTEC Lvl 3 Cert (= 50% of National Award 28-36) (QCF/CQF)
BU	BTEC Lvl 3 Subsidiary Dip (was National Award 60+) (QCF/CQF)
BV	BTEC Lvl 3 Diploma (was National Certificate 120+) (QCF/CQF)
BW	BTEC Lvl 3 Extended Dip (was National Dip. 180+) (QCF/CQF)
BX	BTEC Lvl 3 Foundation Diploma (NQF/FAD)
BY	BTEC Lvl 3 Extended Certificate (NQF/ASL)
BZ	BTEC 90 Credit Diploma (QCF)
C1	Certificate of Proficiency in English (CPE)
C2	Certificate of Advanced English (CAE)
CA	CACHE Practical
CC	CACHE Certificate in Child Care and Education
CD	CACHE Diploma in Child Care and Education
CE	CACHE Award in Child Care and Education
CO	Cope Awards
CS	SQA CSYS
CW	Cache Extended Diploma for Children & young people workforce
D3	Graded Speech and Drama Examinations at Level 3 (LAMDA)
D6	Speech and Drama Studies Grade 6
D7	Speech and Drama Studies Grade 7
D8	Speech and Drama Studies Grade 8
DA	GCE A Level (Double)
E1	Essential Skills (NI) (Level 1)
E2	Essential Skills (NI) (Level 2)
E3	Essential Skills (NI) (Level 3)
E4	Essential Skills (NI) (Level 4)
EA	EDI level 3 certificate in Accounting
EI	EDI level 3 Certificate in Accounting (IAS)
EP	Extended Project
EQ	EQL level 3 Certificate (British Horse Society)
F1	Functional Skills Level 1
F2	Functional Skills Level 2
F3	Functional Skills Level 3
F4	Functional Skills Level 4
FA	Diploma in Foundation Studies (Art and Design)
FD	Financial Services (Diploma)
FM	Free Standing Maths
FR	Level 3 Diploma in Fashion Retail
FS	Financial Services (Certificate)
FY	Foundation Studies
G6	Graded Dance: Grade 6
G7	Graded Dance: Grade 7
G8	Graded Dance: Grade 8
GN	GNVQ
H	SQA Highers
H1	GCE A Level (H1)

H2	GCE A Level (H2)
H3	GCE A Level (H3)
HK	Higher Core Skills
HL	Higher Sports Leader Award
HS	Higher School Certificate
I1	SQA Intermediate 1
I2	SQA Intermediate 2
IB	Int. Bacculaureate (Higher level)
IC	IB Theory of Knowledge
ID	IB Bonus points
IE	IB Total points
IF	IB Overall result
IK	Int 2 Core Skills
IL	Irish Leaving (Higher)
IN	Scottish Inter Disciplinary Project
IO	Irish Leaving (Ordinary)
IS	IB Standard (Subsidiary) Level
IX	IB Extended Essay
K1	Key Skill Level 1
K2	Key Skill Level 2
K3	Key Skill Level 3
K4	Key Skill Level 4
LD	Access to HE Diploma
M6	Music Practical Level 6
M7	Music Practical Level 7
M8	Music Practical Level 8
MC	i-Media Certificate
MD	i-Media Diploma
ME	Certificate in Mathematics for Engineers
MU	Music
N1	City and Guilds Land Based Services Level 3 qualifications: Extended Diploma
N2	City and Guilds Land Based Services Level 3 qualifications: Diploma
N3	City and Guilds Land Based Services Level 3 qualifications: Subsidiary Diploma
N4	City and Guilds Land Based Services Level 3 qualifications: Certificate
NC	SQA Higher National Cert
ND	SQA Higher National Dip
O6	OCR National Certificate
OC	OCR iPro Certificate
OD	OCR iPro Diploma
OE	OCR National Extended Diploma
OT	OCR National Diploma
PA	Advanced Diploma
PD	Progression Diploma
PE	Extended Diploma
PL	Level 3 Certificate in Speech and Drama: Performance Student (PCertLam)
PP	Scottish PP Passport
PR	Principal Learning
R1	Music Practitioner Extended Diploma
R2	Music Practitioner Diploma
R3	Music Practitioner Subsidiary Diploma
R4	Music Practitioner Extended Certificate
R5	Music Practitioner Certificate
S1	Scottish National Certificate (Band A)
S2	Scottish National Certificate (Band B)
S3	Scottish National Certificate (Band C)
SB	Scottish Bacculaureate
SI	CISI Introduction to Securities and Investment
SP	GCE Special Paper
SS	Scottish Standard Grade
ST	Step Award
SW	SQA Skills for Work INT2
TA	Institute of Arts Award (Gold)

	UC Pre-U Certificate UD Pre-U Diploma UG Pre-U GPR US Pre-U Short Course V VCE Advanced V1 VCE Advanced Subsidiary V2 VCE Advanced Double Award VA Community Volunteering Award VC Community Volunteering Certificate VF Vocational Dance Advanced Foundation VI Vocational Dance Intermediate W1 Essential Skills Wales (Level 1) W2 Essential Skills Wales (Level 2) W3 Essential Skills Wales (Level 3) W4 Essential Skills Wales (Level 4) WB Welsh Baccalaureate Y1 Access to HE Diploma (CAVA) Y2 Access to HE Diploma (West Midlands) Y3 Access to HE Diploma (Eastern Region) Y4 Access to HE Diploma (AIM Awards) Y5 Access to HE Diploma (London) Y6 Access to HE Diploma (North East Region) Y7 Access to HE Diploma (Ascentis) Y8 Access to HE Diploma (Open Awards) Y9 Access to HE Diploma (Credit 4 Learning) YA Access to HE Diploma (Laser Learning Awards) YB Access to HE Diploma (South West Learning) YC Access to HE Diploma (Agored Cymru) YD Access to HE Diploma (Yorkshire & Humber) YE Certificate for Young Enterprise YF Access to HE Diploma (AQA)
Notes	<p>The awarding bodies have given their consent, via the Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ), for some of the results data that they forward to UCAS to be shared with HEIs for admission purposes, to also be used in preparing the Student Record from 2007/08 onwards .</p> <p>This data will be made available to institutions by UCAS (through the *J transaction). The HESA record will work to the existing UCAS coding frame.</p> <p>From 2008/09, the UCAS coding frame only is used for qualifications that are available from UCAS.</p> <p>Institutions are encouraged to provide this information for other full-time undergraduate students, in order to contribute more complete statistical information for the sector. In order for institutions to be able to add information about qualifications that are included in the UCAS Tariff, but for which UCAS do not provide electronic results information, additional codes have been added.</p> <p>Guidance on specific qualifications</p> <p>Access to HE diploma</p> <p>For Institutions in England where an Access to HE diploma (QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPEs Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4, Y5, Y6, Y7, Y8, Y9, YA, YB, YC, YD, YF, LD) has been awarded and an appropriate grade has been achieved for ABB+ equivalency, then the Instance.INITIATIVES valid entry code B 'Access to HE diploma marker' should be completed to support the ABB+ policy for student number control. The appropriate grade to meet ABB+ equivalency is defined as an overall pass which includes 45 credits at Level 3, of which 30 credits must be at Distinction and the other</p>

	<p>15 at Merit or higher, as identified in the HEFCE publication documentation Students outside the Student Number Control in 2013-14 ABB+ population.</p> <p>Singapore Higher qualifications</p> <p>Note that H1, H2 and H3 A level qualifications are Singapore Higher qualifications awarded by University of Cambridge International Examinations (CIE)</p> <p>BTECs</p> <p>From 2012/13, BTEC qualifications are available through the UCAS Data for HESA (also known as *J) transaction. The ability to return these qualifications through the HESA record was previously accomplished through the provision of a HESA-specific code: B 'BTEC Nationals (NQF)'. This permitted the return of a subset of BTEC qualifications to allow for analytical requirements.</p> <p>A suite of new QUALTYPEs have been introduced by UCAS for the range of BTECs which can now be supplied through the the UCAS Data for HESA transaction. These new codes also cover the qualifications that correspond to those that could previously be returned under QUALTYPE 'B'.</p> <p>To minimise burden on institutions, HESA will accept qualifications for continuing students coded using either system. There is no requirement for continuing students to be recoded to the more detailed QUALTYPEs; instances under either coding system will be treated identically for analysis purposes. Data obtained from UCAS using the newer codes does not need to be altered in order to be submitted in the HESA Student record - the UCAS codes should be used unchanged.</p> <p>In addition to the B code, HESA previously made available QUALTYPEs BE, 1B, 2B, 3B, B1, B2, B3 and B4. These map directly to the equivalent qualifications under the new UCAS codes.</p> <p>Additional information on qualifications may be found in the Further guidance on reporting qualifications on entry document.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE = IE must only occur once. 2 Error QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE = WB must only occur once. 3 Error There must be at least one occurrence of QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE = LD, Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4, Y5, Y6, Y7, Y8, Y9, YA, YB, YC, YD or YF where Instance.INITIATIVES = B and Instance.COMDATE > Y1-07-31. 4 Warning For institutions in England, where Instance.COMDATE > Y1-07-31 and EntryProfile.QUALENT3 = P50, there should be at least one occurrence of QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE = A, AD, AN, A1, DA, V, V1, V2 or 9U.
Reason Required	To allow detailed analysis of qualifications on entry and consequent progression
Part Of	Qualifications on entry
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: QUALTYPE Data type: QUALTYPECodeContentType
Owner	UCAS
Version	1.1

Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Addition of new QUALTYPEs G6, G7 and G8 to cover Graded Dance qualifications. Business rule 3 updated for institutions in England for the introduction of new codes for Access to HE Diplomas. Business rule 4 added to check that where QUALENT3 = P50 the qualifications on entry data includes an A-level.

Qualification year

Type	field
Short Name	QUALYEAR
Description	This field records the year in which qualification on entry to the instance was obtained.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All Qualification on entry records
Notes	<p>The awarding bodies have given their consent, via the Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ), for some of the results data that they forward to UCAS to be shared with HEIs for admission purposes, to also be used in preparing the Student Record from 2007/08.</p> <p>This data will be made available to institutions by UCAS (through the *J transaction). The HESA record will work to the existing UCAS coding frame.</p> <p>Institutions are encouraged to provide this information for other full-time undergraduate students, in order to contribute more complete statistical information for the sector</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 1951 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is A. 2 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 1986 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is SS. 3 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 1987 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is A1 or AS. 4 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2000 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is H. 5 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2000 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is HK or IK. 6 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2000 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is I2. 7 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2000 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is K2, K3, K4. 8 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2001 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is CA or AC. 9 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2001 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is FA. 10 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2001 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is V1. 11 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2001 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is AH. 12 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2002 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is AE. 13 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2002 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is FM. 14 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2002 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is FS. 15 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2002 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is V. 17 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2003 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is B. 18 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2003 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is BE. 19 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2008 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is OC (for Certificate). 20 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2008 or later where

	<p>QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is OD (for Diploma).</p> <p>21 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2003 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is OE (for extended diploma).</p> <p>22 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2004 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is CO.</p> <p>23 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2005 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is WB.</p> <p>24 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2006 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is AD.</p> <p>25 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be 2007 or later where QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is DA.</p> <p>26 Warning QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be less than or equal to Instance.COMDATE year.</p> <p>27 Error Where Student.BIRTHDTE is not null and QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE not coded M6, M7, M8, 6M, 7M or 8M, QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be greater than (Student.BIRTHDTE + 13) years.</p> <p>28 Warning For institutions in England, Northern Ireland and Wales, where Student.BIRTHDTE is not null and QualificationsOnEntry.QUALTYPE is not coded M6, M7, M8, 6M, 7M, 8M or SS, QualificationsOnEntry.QUALYEAR should be greater than (Student.BIRTHDTE + 15) year</p>
Reason Required	To allow detailed analysis of qualifications on entry and consequent progression.
Part Of	Qualifications on entry
Field Length	4
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: QUALYEAR Data type: YearType
Owner	UCAS
Version	1.0

RAE Data

Type	entity
Short Name	RAEData
Description	A set of fields that describe the RAE unit of assessment relating to an Instance
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All instances where Course.COURSEAIM = L00, L80, L90 or L99 or begins with D and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00
Notes	The sum of RAEData.UOAPCNT must equal 100 for each instance in which it occurs.
Business rules	<p>1 Error RAEData entity must exist where Course.COURSEAIM = L00, L80, L90 or L99 or begins with D and corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00.</p> <p>2 Error RAEData entity must not exist unless (Course.COURSEAIM = L00, L80, L90 or L99 or Course.COURSEAIM begins with D).</p>
Reason Required	This repeating element exists to allow an instance to be linked to more than one RAE unit of assessment.
Part Of	Instance
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	3
Has Parts	RAE unit of assessment (UOA2008) Unit of assessment percentage (UOAPCNT)
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

RAE unit of assessment

Type	field
Short Name	UOA2008
Description	This field should record the Unit of Assessment (UOA) to which the student's supervisor was returned in the 2008 Research Assessment Exercise (RAE2008).
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All RAEData records
Valid Entries and Labels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 01 Cardiovascular medicine 02 Cancer studies 03 Infection & immunology 04 Other hospital based clinical subjects 05 Other laboratory based clinical subjects 06 Epidemiology & public health 07 Health services research 08 Primary care & other community based clinical subjects 09 Psychiatry, neuroscience & clinical psychology 10 Dentistry 11 Nursing & midwifery 12 Allied health professions & studies 13 Pharmacy 14 Biological sciences 15 Pre-clinical & human biological sciences 16 Agriculture, veterinary & food science 17 Earth systems & environmental sciences 18 Chemistry 19 Physics 20 Pure mathematics 21 Applied mathematics 22 Statistics & operational research 23 Computer science & informatics 24 Electrical & electronic engineering 25 General engineering & mineral & mining engineering 26 Chemical engineering 27 Civil engineering 28 Mechanical, aeronautical & manufacturing engineering 29 Metallurgy & materials 30 Architecture & the built environment 31 Town & country planning 32 Geography & environmental studies 33 Archaeology 34 Economics & econometrics 35 Accounting & finance 36 Business & management studies 37 Library & information management 38 Law 39 Politics & international studies 40 Social work & social policy & administration 41 Sociology 42 Anthropology 43 Development studies 44 Psychology 45 Education 46 Sports-related studies 47 American studies & anglophone area studies 48 Middle Eastern & African studies 49 Asian studies

	50 European studies 51 Russian, Slavonic & East European languages 52 French 53 German, Dutch & Scandinavian languages 54 Italian 55 Iberian & Latin American languages 56 Celtic studies 57 English language & literature 58 Linguistics 59 Classics, ancient history, byzantine & modern Greek studies 60 Philosophy 61 Theology, divinity & religious studies 62 History 63 Art & design 64 History of art, architecture & design 65 Drama, dance & performing arts 66 Communication, cultural & media studies 67 Music
Notes	<p>Where a student's supervisor has been allocated to a Unit of Assessment for the 2008 RAE, then the student should be allocated to the same UOA.</p> <p>Where the supervisor has not been explicitly allocated to a UOA because</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the student's supervisor was not employed by the reporting institution at the time of the most recent RAE, or • the student's supervisor was not allocated to a Unit of Assessment as despite being employed by the reporting institution at the time of the most recent RAE, they were not eligible for selection <p>then the student should be assigned to the Unit of Assessment which is closest in academic content to their subject of study. (The Unit of Assessment chosen should be from the list of subjects defined by the most recent RAE, not any future RAE.)</p> <p>Where a student was supervised by more than one member of staff and/or these supervisors are returned in more than one UOA, the student may be returned split either according to the agreed division of responsibility, or in proportion to the number of supervisors.</p> <p>This field occurs as a pair with RAEData.UOAPCNT with a maximum of 3 pairs permitted.</p>
Reason Required	Collection of this information will allow better monitoring of funding allocations by units of assessment.
Part Of	RAE Data
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: UOA2008 Data type: UOA2008CodeContentType
Related Fields	UOAPCNT
Owner	HEFCE
Version	1.1

Date modified	2012-11-29
Change management notes	Amendment to the guidance specifying how to treat students with a supervisor who has not been explicitly allocated to a UOA: deletion of the phrase 'the student instance started after the 2008 RAE' as a reason for the supervisor not having been allocated; addition of text 'as despite being employed by the reporting institution at the time of the most recent RAE, they were not eligible for selection' to the final bullet point.

Unit of assessment percentage

Type	field
Short Name	UOAPCNT
Description	<p>This field collects the proportion where a student is supervised by more than one member of staff and these supervisors are returned in more than one Unit of Assessment (UOA); the student may be returned split either according to the agreed division of responsibility, or in proportion to the number of supervisors. Research students should be returned to the UOA in which their supervisor is returned.</p> <p>This field can contain a value between 0 and 100 and can be recorded to one decimal place.</p>
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All RAEData records
Notes	<p>This field occurs as a pair with RAEData.UOA2008 with a maximum of 3 pairs permitted.</p> <p>The sum of RAEData.UOAPCNT must equal 100 for each instance in which it occurs.</p>
Business rules	1 Error For each Instance in which it occurs the sum of RAEData.UOAPCNT must equal 100.
Reason Required	Collection of this information will allow better monitoring of funding allocations by UOA.
Part Of	RAE Data
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: UOAPCNT Data type: PercentType
Related Fields	UOA2008
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Student

Type	entity
Short Name	Student
Description	This describes a person undertaking a course, i.e. a student
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All institutions
Notes	<p>A student can only be included once on this entity. Student.HUSID is the primary key for this entity.</p> <p>Although many of the fields in this entity will not change from one year to the next, institutions must return all required fields in each year.</p>
Reason Required	This entity exists to hold elements that describe the student and to hold the instances relating to the student.
Part Of	Institution
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	unbounded
Has Parts	<p>HESA unique student identifier (HUSID) Unique Learner Number (ULN) UCAS Personal Identifier (UCASPERID) Scottish Candidate Number (SCN) Institution's own identifier for student (OWNSTU) Date of birth (BIRTHDTE) Family name (SURNAME) Forenames (FNAMES) Family name on 16th birthday (SNAME16) Sex identifier (SEXID) Nationality (NATION) Ethnicity (ETHNIC) Disability (DISABLE) Dependants in reporting year (SDEPEND) Welsh speaker indicator (WELSSP) National identity (NATIOND) Term-time accommodation (TTACCOM) Term-time postcode (TTPCODE) Religion or belief (RELBLF) Sexual orientation (SEXORT) Gender identity (GENDERID) Instance</p>
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Date of birth

Type	field
Short Name	BIRTHDTE
Description	This field records the date of birth of the student.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students
Notes	<p>All date fields in the Student Record must be completed using the ISO8601 format of YYYY-MM-DD. The specification of this field falls within the scope of the Aligned Data Definitions and follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <p>If the date of birth is not known, an empty element should be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 1 (not known), i.e:</p> <pre><BIRTHDTE ReasonForNull="1"></BIRTHDTE></pre> <p>HESA monitors the number of unknown birth dates submitted by each institution.</p> <p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction.</p> <p>Where Y0/Y1/Y2 appear in business rules, these refer to the reporting period Y1-Y2 (e.g. for the 2007-08 reporting period, Y0 is 2006, Y1 is 2007 and Y2 is 2008).</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Where exists Student.BIRTHDTE cannot be before (Y1-99)-08-01.</p> <p>3 Warning Where exists Student.BIRTHDTE should be less than (Y1-20)-08-01 where Course.COURSEAIM = M71 or H71.</p> <p>4 Warning Where exists Student.BIRTHDTE should be less than (Y1-17)-08-01 where Course.COURSEAIM = H11 or I11.</p> <p>5 Warning Where exists Student.BIRTHDTE should be greater than (Y1-70)-07-31.</p> <p>6 Error Where exists Student.BIRTHDTE must be less than (Y1-14)-08-01.</p> <p>8 Error Student.BIRTHDTE must not be null except when ReasonForNull = 1.</p> <p>9 Error Student.BIRTHDTE must be null when ReasonForNull = 1.</p> <p>10 Error Where exists Student.BIRTHDTE must be < Y1-08-01</p>
Reason Required	The date of birth is required to generate the student's age and to provide an additional item of information for record linkage. To permit age-based analysis and also facilitate record linkage across collections.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	10
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: BIRTHDTE Data type: DateWithNullStructure1
Owner	Information Standards Board - Aligned Data Definitions
Version	1.0

Dependants in reporting year

Type	field
Short Name	SDEPEND
Description	This field will record whether the student has any dependents.
Applicable to	Scotland
Coverage	All students at institutions in Scotland where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00
Valid Entries and Labels	01 Young people/children 02 Other relatives/friends 03 No dependents 04 Both young people/children & other relatives/friends 99 Not known
Notes	This field should be updated for each reporting period. In codes 01 and 04, 'Young people/children' refers to young people aged 17 and under financially or otherwise dependant on the student.
Business rules	1 Error Student.SDEPEND must exist for all students at institutions in Scotland where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 2 Error Student.SDEPEND must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Wales.
Reason Required	To monitor and develop student support policies in Scotland.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SDEPEND Data type: SDEPENDCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Disability

Type	field																																										
Short Name	DISABLE																																										
Description	This field records the type of disability that a student has, on the basis of the student's own self-assessment.																																										
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales																																										
Coverage	All students where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 07																																										
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="width: 5%;">00</td><td>No known disability</td></tr> <tr><td>02</td><td>Blind/partially sighted</td></tr> <tr><td>03</td><td>Deaf/hearing impairment</td></tr> <tr><td>04</td><td>Wheelchair user/mobility difficulties</td></tr> <tr><td>05</td><td>Personal care support</td></tr> <tr><td>06</td><td>Mental health difficulties</td></tr> <tr><td>07</td><td>An unseen disability, e.g. diabetes, epilepsy, asthma</td></tr> <tr><td>08</td><td>Two or more impairments and/or disabling medical conditions</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>Autistic Spectrum Disorder</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>A specific learning difficulty e.g. dyslexia</td></tr> <tr><td>51</td><td>A specific learning difficulty such as dyslexia, dyspraxia or AD(H)D</td></tr> <tr><td>53</td><td>A social/communication impairment such as Asperger's syndrome/other autistic spectrum disorder</td></tr> <tr><td>54</td><td>A long standing illness or health condition such as cancer, HIV, diabetes, chronic heart disease, or epilepsy</td></tr> <tr><td>55</td><td>A mental health condition, such as depression, schizophrenia or anxiety disorder</td></tr> <tr><td>56</td><td>A physical impairment or mobility issues, such as difficulty using arms or using a wheelchair or crutches</td></tr> <tr><td>57</td><td>Deaf or a serious hearing impairment</td></tr> <tr><td>58</td><td>Blind or a serious visual impairment uncorrected by glasses</td></tr> <tr><td>96</td><td>A disability, impairment or medical condition that is not listed above</td></tr> <tr><td>97</td><td>Information refused</td></tr> <tr><td>98</td><td>Information not sought</td></tr> <tr><td>99</td><td>Not known</td></tr> </table>	00	No known disability	02	Blind/partially sighted	03	Deaf/hearing impairment	04	Wheelchair user/mobility difficulties	05	Personal care support	06	Mental health difficulties	07	An unseen disability, e.g. diabetes, epilepsy, asthma	08	Two or more impairments and/or disabling medical conditions	10	Autistic Spectrum Disorder	11	A specific learning difficulty e.g. dyslexia	51	A specific learning difficulty such as dyslexia, dyspraxia or AD(H)D	53	A social/communication impairment such as Asperger's syndrome/other autistic spectrum disorder	54	A long standing illness or health condition such as cancer, HIV, diabetes, chronic heart disease, or epilepsy	55	A mental health condition, such as depression, schizophrenia or anxiety disorder	56	A physical impairment or mobility issues, such as difficulty using arms or using a wheelchair or crutches	57	Deaf or a serious hearing impairment	58	Blind or a serious visual impairment uncorrected by glasses	96	A disability, impairment or medical condition that is not listed above	97	Information refused	98	Information not sought	99	Not known
00	No known disability																																										
02	Blind/partially sighted																																										
03	Deaf/hearing impairment																																										
04	Wheelchair user/mobility difficulties																																										
05	Personal care support																																										
06	Mental health difficulties																																										
07	An unseen disability, e.g. diabetes, epilepsy, asthma																																										
08	Two or more impairments and/or disabling medical conditions																																										
10	Autistic Spectrum Disorder																																										
11	A specific learning difficulty e.g. dyslexia																																										
51	A specific learning difficulty such as dyslexia, dyspraxia or AD(H)D																																										
53	A social/communication impairment such as Asperger's syndrome/other autistic spectrum disorder																																										
54	A long standing illness or health condition such as cancer, HIV, diabetes, chronic heart disease, or epilepsy																																										
55	A mental health condition, such as depression, schizophrenia or anxiety disorder																																										
56	A physical impairment or mobility issues, such as difficulty using arms or using a wheelchair or crutches																																										
57	Deaf or a serious hearing impairment																																										
58	Blind or a serious visual impairment uncorrected by glasses																																										
96	A disability, impairment or medical condition that is not listed above																																										
97	Information refused																																										
98	Information not sought																																										
99	Not known																																										
Notes	<p>With the introduction of the Disability Equality Duty, and on the recommendation of the Equality Challenge Unit (ECU), HESA has introduced a version of the coding frame introduced by the Disability Rights Commission (DRC).</p> <p>This new coding frame is included in the 2010/11 specification of the UCAS data for HESA (*J), and for students entering through UCAS from this academic year, this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction. Disability is recorded on the basis of the student's own self-assessment.</p> <p>The additional valid entries for 2010/11 entrants onwards are coded 51 to 58.</p> <p>Codes 51 and 53 are both types of learning disability/difficulty or cognitive impairment.</p> <p>Only serious visual impairments are covered by the Disability Discrimination Act (DDA). For example, a person whose eyesight can be corrected through the use of prescription lenses is not covered by the DDA; neither is a simple inability to distinguish between red and green.</p> <p>The same logic does not apply to hearing aids. If someone needs to wear a hearing aid,</p>																																										

	<p>then they are likely to be covered by the DDA. However, both hearing and visual impairments have to have a substantial adverse effect on the ability to carry out normal day-to-day activities in order for a person to be covered by the DDA. For more information see the Secretary of State's Revised Guidance on the definition of disability.</p> <p>The pre-2010/11 valid entry codes 08 'Multiple disabilities and 96 'A disability not listed above' have been re-labelled to be consistent with the UCAS (*J) file entries as follows: 08 'Two or more impairments and/or disabling medical conditions' and 96 'A disability, impairment or medical condition that is not listed above'. There is no change required for continuing students already coded 08 or 96.</p> <p>For 2010/11 entrants onwards there are no valid entry codes to replace 97 'Information refused', 98 'Information not sought' or 99 'Not known'. For new entrants from 2010/11 onwards, where it is not known whether or not a student has a disability, code 00 'No known disability' should be returned.</p> <p>HESA will continue to accept codes 02, 03, 04, 05, 06, 07, 10, 11, 97, 98 and 99 for continuing students (where Instance.COMDATE is before 2010-08-01), so there will be no requirement for institutions to resurvey or recode. However, institutions are welcome to use the new codes for continuing students if they wish to do so.</p> <p>Codes 02, 03, 04, 05, 06, 07, 10, 11, 97, 98 and 99 can only be used where Instance.COMDATE is before 2010-08-01.</p> <p>If this field is coded 02-96 indicating that the student has a disability, then Instance.DISALL should be coded 4, 5 or 9.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Student.DISABLE must exist where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01 or 07.</p> <p>2 Warning Student.DISABLE should be coded 02-96 where Instance.DISALL exists.</p> <p>3 Error Student.DISABLE must not be coded 02, 03, 04, 05, 06, 07, 10, 11, 97, 98 or 99 where any Instance.COMDATE > 2010-07-31</p>
Reason Required	To permit disability-based analysis; for monitoring levels and trends in participation by particular groups of people; to monitor take-up of Disabled Students' Allowance as Disabled Students' Allowance is now not means tested; to permit analysis based on type of disability.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: DISABLE Data type: DISABLECodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-07-30
Change management notes	Additional guidance added to Notes, specifying how to return students entering from 2010/11 for whom no disability status is known.

Ethnicity

Type	field																														
Short Name	ETHNIC																														
Description	This field records the ethnicity of the student, on the basis of their own self-assessment																														
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales																														
Coverage	All students where EntryProfile.DOMICILE in the current submission as well as those previously submitted =XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE, IM and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 07 or 08																														
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>10 White</p> <p>13 White - Scottish</p> <p>14 Irish Traveller</p> <p>15 Gypsy or Traveller</p> <p>19 Other White background</p> <p>21 Black or Black British - Caribbean</p> <p>22 Black or Black British - African</p> <p>29 Other Black background</p> <p>31 Asian or Asian British - Indian</p> <p>32 Asian or Asian British - Pakistani</p> <p>33 Asian or Asian British - Bangladeshi</p> <p>34 Chinese</p> <p>39 Other Asian background</p> <p>41 Mixed - White and Black Caribbean</p> <p>42 Mixed - White and Black African</p> <p>43 Mixed - White and Asian</p> <p>49 Other mixed background</p> <p>50 Arab</p> <p>80 Other ethnic background</p> <p>90 Not known</p> <p>98 Information refused</p>																														
Notes	<p>Ethnicity is recorded on the basis of the student's own self-assessment.</p> <p>Code 80 'Other ethnic background' should be used when a student indicates their ethnicity as something not included in the coding frame.</p> <p>Code 90 'Not known' can be used when a student genuinely does not know their ethnicity, for example individuals who were adopted.</p> <p>Code 98 'Information refused' should be returned when a student has explicitly refused to provide the information. The phrase 'Prefer not to say' can be used when collecting the data.</p> <p>Coverage of HESA 2012/13 coding frame is shown in the following table.</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th>HESA 2012/13 coding frame for institutions in:</th> <th>E</th> <th>S</th> <th>W</th> <th>NI</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>10 White</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y*</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>13 White - Scottish</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>14 Irish Traveller</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>15 Gypsy or Traveller</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>19 Other White background</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	HESA 2012/13 coding frame for institutions in:	E	S	W	NI	10 White	Y	Y*	Y	Y	13 White - Scottish		Y			14 Irish Traveller				Y	15 Gypsy or Traveller	Y	Y	Y	Y	19 Other White background		Y		
HESA 2012/13 coding frame for institutions in:	E	S	W	NI																											
10 White	Y	Y*	Y	Y																											
13 White - Scottish		Y																													
14 Irish Traveller				Y																											
15 Gypsy or Traveller	Y	Y	Y	Y																											
19 Other White background		Y																													

	<table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>21 Black or Black British - Caribbean</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>22 Black or Black British - African</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>29 Other Black background</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>31 Asian or Asian British - Indian</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>32 Asian or Asian British - Pakistani</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>33 Asian or Asian British - Bangladeshi</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>34 Chinese</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>39 Other Asian background</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>41 Mixed - White and Black Caribbean</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>42 Mixed - White and Black African</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>43 Mixed - White and Asian</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>49 Other mixed background</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>50 Arab</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>80 Other ethnic background</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>90 Not known</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>98 Information refused</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* please see 'UCAS coding'</p> <p>The Equality Challenge Unit (ECU) has a number of resources relating to gathering information across the protected characteristics covered by the Equality Act 2010. These resources can be found at Equality Challenge Unit. If you have any further queries regarding equality monitoring, please email ECU at admin@ecu.ac.uk.</p> <p>UCAS/HESA coding</p> <p>The coding frame used by UCAS for 2012 entrants is as listed above with the exclusion of codes 13 White - Scottish, 19 Other White background and 15 Gypsy or Traveller. It is expected by DEL(NI) and the SFC that institutions in Northern Ireland and Scotland will re-code from the UCAS subset to the full HESA coding frame. This will require institutions in Northern Ireland and Scotland to survey students for ethnicity on registration. Code 10 'White', although not a Census code available in Scotland, has been left as a valid entry as UCAS will be passing this code to institutions. It has been agreed with the SFC that to minimise the recoding burden on HEIs, this code may be submitted by institutions in Scotland.</p>	21 Black or Black British - Caribbean	Y	Y	Y	Y	22 Black or Black British - African	Y	Y	Y	Y	29 Other Black background	Y	Y	Y	Y	31 Asian or Asian British - Indian	Y	Y	Y	Y	32 Asian or Asian British - Pakistani	Y	Y	Y	Y	33 Asian or Asian British - Bangladeshi	Y	Y	Y	Y	34 Chinese	Y	Y	Y	Y	39 Other Asian background	Y	Y	Y	Y	41 Mixed - White and Black Caribbean	Y	Y	Y	Y	42 Mixed - White and Black African	Y	Y	Y	Y	43 Mixed - White and Asian	Y	Y	Y	Y	49 Other mixed background	Y	Y	Y	Y	50 Arab	Y	Y	Y	Y	80 Other ethnic background	Y	Y	Y	Y	90 Not known	Y	Y	Y	Y	98 Information refused	Y	Y	Y	Y
21 Black or Black British - Caribbean	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
22 Black or Black British - African	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
29 Other Black background	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
31 Asian or Asian British - Indian	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
32 Asian or Asian British - Pakistani	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
33 Asian or Asian British - Bangladeshi	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
34 Chinese	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
39 Other Asian background	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
41 Mixed - White and Black Caribbean	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
42 Mixed - White and Black African	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
43 Mixed - White and Asian	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
49 Other mixed background	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
50 Arab	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
80 Other ethnic background	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
90 Not known	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
98 Information refused	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																																													
Examples																																																																																	
Business rules	<p>1 Error Student.ETHNIC code 14 must be for an institution in Northern Ireland.</p> <p>2 Error Student.ETHNIC must exist where (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XF, XG, XH, XI, XK, XL, GG, JE or IM) and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 07 or 08.</p> <p>3 Error Student.ETHNIC codes 13 and 19 must be for an institution in Scotland.</p>																																																																																
Reason Required	To monitor equal opportunities issues in the higher education sector and support higher education institutions (HEIs) in meeting their obligations under the Equality Act 2010																																																																																

Part Of	Student
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ETHNIC Data type: ETHNICCodeContentType
Owner	Equality Challenge Unit (ECU)
Version	1.3
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 2 amended to enforce coverage for SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return. Business rule 3 added for the introduction of codes 13 and 19 to the coding frame for institutions in Scotland.

Family name

Type	field
Short Name	SURNAME
Description	This field is the student's family name.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04, 08 or 09
Notes	<p>In cases where the student does not split their name between family and forenames, the whole name should be entered in Student.SURNAME and Student.FNAMES should be returned as an empty element with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 9 (not applicable), i.e.:</p> <pre><FNAMES ReasonForNull="9"></FNAMES></pre> <p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction.</p> <p>The field length has been set to 100 characters to align this field with the ISB Aligned Data Definitions.</p> <p>Valid characters</p> <p>The question of valid characters is significant in this field since many names include characters with accents and other diacritics that are not supported by the standard ASCII character set. The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+1E00 to U+1EFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p> <p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file</p>

	(i.e. <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>) and to ensure that their files are actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.
Business rules	1 Error Student.SURNAME must exist where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04, 08 or 09.
Reason Required	To facilitate HESA checking data with institutions and for Statutory Customers to link student records collected by HESA for statistical purposes.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	100
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SURNAME Data type: NameType
Owner	Information Standards Board - Aligned Data Definitions
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 amended to enforce coverage for the SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return and the Unistats (09) reduced return.

Family name on 16th birthday

Type	field
Short Name	SNAME16
Description	This field records the Family name on 16th birthday field and is the surname field that can be used as a stable look up point for lost student identifiers.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students (optional)
Notes	<p>HEIs indicated that they would like the option to return this field for students for ease of reference in case of enquiries.</p> <p>Valid characters</p> <p>The question of valid characters is significant in this field since many names include characters with accents and other diacritics that are not supported by the standard ASCII character set. The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+1E00 to U+1EFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p> <p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>) and to ensure that their files are actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.</p>
Reason Required	To facilitate HESA checking data with institutions and for Statutory Customers to link student records collected by HESA for statistical purposes.
Part Of	Student

Field Length	100
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SNAME16 Data type: NameType
Owner	Information Standards Board - Aligned Data Definitions
Version	1.0

Forenames

Type	field
Short Name	FNAMES
Description	This field records the forenames of the student.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04, 08 or 09
Notes	<p>In cases where the student does not split their name between family and forenames, the whole name should be entered in Student.SURNAME and an empty element should be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 9 (not applicable), i.e:</p> <pre><FNAMES ReasonForNull="9"></FNAMES></pre> <p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction.</p> <p>The field length has been set to 100 characters to align this field with the ISB Aligned Data Definitions.</p> <p>Valid characters</p> <p>The question of valid characters is significant in this field since many names include characters with accents and other diacritics that are not supported by the standard ASCII character set. The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+IE00 to U+IEFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p> <p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>) and to ensure that their files are</p>

	actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.
Business rules	<p>1 Error Student.FNAMES must exist where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00, 01, 04, 08 or 09.</p> <p>2 Error Student.FNAMES must not be null except when ReasonForNull = 9.</p> <p>3 Error Student.FNAMES must be null when ReasonForNull = 9.</p> <p>4 Error Student.FNAMES must not exist where Student.SURNAME does not exist.</p>
Reason Required	To facilitate HESA checking data with institutions and for Statutory Customers to link student records collected by HESA for statistical purposes.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	100
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: FNAMES Data type: NameWithNullStructure
Owner	Information Standards Board - Aligned Data Definitions
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 amended to enforce coverage for SLC attendance confirmation (08) reduced return and the Unistats (09) reduced return.

Gender identity

Type	field
Short Name	GENDERID
Description	This field records the gender identity of the student. Students should, according to their own self-assessment, indicate if their gender identity is the same as the gender originally assigned to them at birth.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students (optional)
Valid Entries and Labels	01 Yes 02 No 98 Information refused
Notes	<p>Gender identity is recorded on the basis of the student's own self-assessment.</p> <p>The Equality Challenge Unit (ECU) suggested question: Is your gender identity the same as the gender you were originally assigned at birth?</p> <p>ECU has a number of resources relating to gathering information across the protected characteristics covered by the Equality Act 2010. These resources can be found at Equality Challenge Unit. If you have any further queries regarding equality monitoring, please email ECU at admin@ecu.ac.uk.</p> <p>Code 98 'Information refused' should be returned when the question was asked but the individual answered that they 'preferred not to say'.</p>
Examples	
Reason Required	To monitor equal opportunities issues in the higher education sector and support higher education institutions (HEIs) in meeting their obligations under the Equality Act 2010
Part Of	Student
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: GENDERID Data type: GENDERIDCodeContentType
Owner	Equality Challenge Unit (ECU)
Version	1.0

HESA unique student identifier

Type	field
Short Name	HUSID
Description	This field records the student identifier which is to be unique to each student. It is intended that the identifier is to be transferred with the student to each institution of higher education he or she may attend. The objective is that the use of this number will facilitate the accurate tracking of students throughout their experience within the sector for which HESA collects data.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students
Notes	<p>Students included on a previous year's return must retain the previously used HUSID.</p> <p>Previously, students entering higher education through UCAS have had their HUSID automatically derived from their UCAS application number. Development of the new UCAS Application Identifier means that it is no longer possible to generate a unique HUSID in this manner. Therefore all students having a HUSID allocated from 2007/08 onwards should now have a HUSID allocated using the same algorithm, irrespective of how they came to enter HE. The algorithm to use is the one previously used for students that did not enter through UCAS.</p> <p>Students entering a course of study should be asked whether they have a previous HESA unique student identifier, and if so this identifier should be used. This will commonly be the situation for new postgraduates moving on from undergraduate study. If students are unable to recall their student identifier, the HUSID look-up service should be used to determine any previously allocated HUSID.</p> <p>Students whose details have previously been returned to HESA by the reporting institution MUST keep the same unique student identifier in future returns. For students whose details have previously been returned to HESA by another institution, the same unique student identifier should be used if this is known. This is to facilitate the possibility of backward tracking within previous data sets. Where the previous number is not known, or there is any doubt about its accuracy, institutions are NOT expected to seek student identifiers from previous institutions but should use the HUSID look-up service.</p> <p>For direct entrants, once a number has been allocated it should never be re-used, even in the case of students who leave the institution without completing their studies.</p> <p>Students who move from one institution to another should keep their original student identifier. Where the previous HE student identifier is in direct entry format, the number must NOT be changed to reflect the current institution's identifier. This is to ensure that the student identifier remains unique and to allow tracking of the student through the use of the same unique student identifier.</p> <p>Linkage between different years of a student instance will be through the HIN. The HIN is a combination of three main identifier fields, the Student.HUSID (person), Institution.UKPRN (institution) and Instance.NUMHUS (instance), which uniquely identify a student on a course leading to a course aim. Further guidance on the importance of maintaining the HIN link across years can be found here.</p>

	<p>A national framework for post-compulsory education student identifiers is being developed as a part of the Managing Information Across Partners (MIAP) programme. It is envisaged that the HESA student identifier will be replaced in due course.</p> <p>The structure of the HESA student identifier is created as follows:</p> <p>First 2 digits: Year of entry into institution (last 2 digits of year) Next 4 digits: HESA Institution identifier + 1000 Next 6 digits: 6 digit reference number internally allocated by institution. Last digit: Check digit.</p> <p>Although the Student Record now utilises the Institution.UKPRN as an institution identifier, institutions should continue to use the old HESA identifier code for this calculation since the structure of the new identifier is not compatible with this algorithm.</p> <p>Calculation of Check Digit</p> <p>The check digit is calculated using the first 12 digits and provides a means of detecting errors of transcription. To calculate the check digit, each of the first 12 digits is multiplied by a weight which depends on its position in the number, and the resulting products added. The check digit is then obtained by subtracting the final digit of the resulting sum from ten.</p> <p>If the final digit of the sum of the products is 0, the check digit would be the final digit after the subtraction i.e. $10 - 0 = 10$, check digit is 0.</p> <p>The weights used are :</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Position</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> <td>4</td> <td>5</td> <td>6</td> <td>7</td> <td>8</td> <td>9</td> <td>10</td> <td>11</td> <td>12</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Weight</td> <td>1</td> <td>3</td> <td>7</td> <td>9</td> <td>1</td> <td>3</td> <td>7</td> <td>9</td> <td>1</td> <td>3</td> <td>7</td> <td>9</td> </tr> </table> <p>For example, in October 2007 a student enters Leeds Metropolitan University is allocated the internal number 123456. The check digit calculation for the student's reference number, 071064123456, would be calculated as :</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Number</td> <td>0</td> <td>7</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>6</td> <td>4</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> <td>4</td> <td>5</td> <td>6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Weight</td> <td>1</td> <td>3</td> <td>7</td> <td>9</td> <td>1</td> <td>3</td> <td>7</td> <td>9</td> <td>1</td> <td>3</td> <td>7</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Product</td> <td>0</td> <td>21</td> <td>7</td> <td>0</td> <td>6</td> <td>12</td> <td>7</td> <td>18</td> <td>3</td> <td>12</td> <td>35</td> <td>54</td> </tr> </table> <p>The sum of the products is 175, the final digit being 5, so the check digit is $10 - 5$, or 5. The full identifier is therefore 0710641234565.</p>	Position	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	Weight	1	3	7	9	1	3	7	9	1	3	7	9	Number	0	7	1	0	6	4	1	2	3	4	5	6	Weight	1	3	7	9	1	3	7	9	1	3	7	9	Product	0	21	7	0	6	12	7	18	3	12	35	54
Position	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12																																																						
Weight	1	3	7	9	1	3	7	9	1	3	7	9																																																						
Number	0	7	1	0	6	4	1	2	3	4	5	6																																																						
Weight	1	3	7	9	1	3	7	9	1	3	7	9																																																						
Product	0	21	7	0	6	12	7	18	3	12	35	54																																																						
Examples	<p>An entrant to Leeds Metropolitan University in 2007 might have a HUSID of 0710641234565</p> <p>A student who entered through UCAS in 1997 might have a HUSID of 0000971234561</p>																																																																	
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Student.HUSID must not contain all zeros. 2 Error If characters 1-4 are not 0000 then chars 3-6 of Student.HUSID must be a valid INSTID plus 1000. 3 Error Student.HUSID must pass the checksum test given in the coding manual. 4 Error If characters 1-4 of Student.HUSID are not 0000 then characters 3-6 of Student.HUSID must not be 3001 when Instance.COMDATE is after 2007-07-31 (INSTID 2001 is invalid). 																																																																	

Reason Required	The most significant key into the set of records for file management and record linkage.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	13
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: HUSID Data type: HUSIDType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Institution's own identifier for student

Type	field
Short Name	OWNSTU
Description	This field records the institution's own internal identifier for the student.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students (optional)
Notes	<p>Valid characters</p> <p>The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+IE00 to U+IEFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p> <p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <code><?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?></code>) and to ensure that their files are actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.</p>
Reason Required	To facilitate HESA checking data with institutions, for example, validation reports, etc.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	20
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: OWNSTU Data type: OWNSTUType

Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

National identity

Type	field																
Short Name	NATIOND																
Description	This field records the national identity of the student. National identity is different from both ethnicity and nationality and could be based on many things including, for example, culture, language or ancestry/family history. National identity reflects how an individual chooses to classify himself or herself.																
Applicable to	Wales																
Coverage	All students at institutions in Wales where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XI and any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00																
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="border: none;"> <tr><td>B</td><td>British</td></tr> <tr><td>E</td><td>English</td></tr> <tr><td>I</td><td>Irish</td></tr> <tr><td>O</td><td>Other</td></tr> <tr><td>R</td><td>Information refused</td></tr> <tr><td>S</td><td>Scottish</td></tr> <tr><td>U</td><td>Unknown</td></tr> <tr><td>W</td><td>Welsh</td></tr> </table>	B	British	E	English	I	Irish	O	Other	R	Information refused	S	Scottish	U	Unknown	W	Welsh
B	British																
E	English																
I	Irish																
O	Other																
R	Information refused																
S	Scottish																
U	Unknown																
W	Welsh																
Notes	<p>The coding structure reflects that used in other national surveys and so allows comparative statistics to be derived both within and outside the sector.</p> <p>A student can identify himself or herself as having up to two national identities.</p> <p>Code 'U' Unknown should be used where a student has either not been asked or has failed to respond to a request for information about his or her national identity.</p> <p>Code 'R' Information refused should be used when the student has explicitly refused to provide the information.</p>																
Business rules	<table style="border: none;"> <tr><td>1</td><td>Error</td><td>Student.NATIOND must exist for institutions in Wales where any (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XI) and the corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00.</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>Error</td><td>Student.NATIOND must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland.</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>Error</td><td>Where there are two occurrences of Student.NATIOND they must not be identical.</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>Error</td><td>Where Student.NATIOND is coded R or U there must be only one occurrence of Student.NATIOND</td></tr> </table>	1	Error	Student.NATIOND must exist for institutions in Wales where any (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XI) and the corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00.	2	Error	Student.NATIOND must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland.	3	Error	Where there are two occurrences of Student.NATIOND they must not be identical.	4	Error	Where Student.NATIOND is coded R or U there must be only one occurrence of Student.NATIOND				
1	Error	Student.NATIOND must exist for institutions in Wales where any (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XI) and the corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00.															
2	Error	Student.NATIOND must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland.															
3	Error	Where there are two occurrences of Student.NATIOND they must not be identical.															
4	Error	Where Student.NATIOND is coded R or U there must be only one occurrence of Student.NATIOND															
Reason Required	<p>To monitor the impact of policies and practices on students of Welsh or other UK background.</p> <p>To compare sector data with that from other areas of the economy.</p>																
Part Of	Student																
Field Length	1																
Minimum Occurrences	0																
Maximum Occurrences	2																

Schema Components	Element: NATIOND Data type: NATIONDCocontentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid.

Nationality

Type	field
Short Name	NATION
Description	This field defines the country of legal nationality.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Compulsory for all students where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 03 and where any Instance.COMDATE is on or after 2007-08-01. Optional but strongly encouraged for all other students. This field is optional for all students at institutions in Northern Ireland.
Valid Entries and Labels	AF Afghanistan AL Albania DZ Algeria AS American Samoa AD Andorra AO Angola AI Anguilla AG Antigua and Barbuda AR Argentina AM Armenia AU Australia AT Austria AZ Azerbaijan BS Bahamas, The BH Bahrain BD Bangladesh BB Barbados BY Belarus BE Belgium BZ Belize BJ Benin BM Bermuda BT Bhutan BO Bolivia BA Bosnia and Herzegovina BW Botswana BR Brazil IO British Indian Ocean Territory (BIOT) VG British Virgin Islands [Virgin Islands, British] BN Brunei [Brunei Darussalam] BG Bulgaria BF Burkina [Burkina Faso] MM Burma [Myanmar] BI Burundi KH Cambodia CM Cameroon CA Canada CV Cape Verde KY Cayman Islands CF Central African Republic TD Chad XL Channel Islands not otherwise specified CL Chile CN China CO Colombia KM Comoros CG Congo CD Congo (Democratic Republic) [Congo (The Democratic Republic of the)]

		{formerly Zaire}
CR		Costa Rica
HR		Croatia
CU		Cuba
XA		Cyprus (European Union)
XB		Cyprus (Non-European Union)
XC		Cyprus not otherwise specified
CZ		Czech Republic
XM		Czechoslovakia not otherwise specified
DK		Denmark
DJ		Djibouti
DM		Dominica
DO		Dominican Republic
TL		East Timor [Timor Leste]
EC		Ecuador
EG		Egypt
SV		El Salvador
GQ		Equatorial Guinea
ER		Eritrea
EE		Estonia
ET		Ethiopia
FK		Falkland Islands [Falkland Islands (Malvinas)]
FO		Faroe Islands
FJ		Fiji
FI		Finland
FR		France {includes Corsica}
GA		Gabon
GM		Gambia, The
GE		Georgia
DE		Germany
GH		Ghana
GI		Gibraltar
GR		Greece
GL		Greenland
GD		Grenada
GU		Guam
GT		Guatemala
GG		Guernsey
GN		Guinea
GW		Guinea-Bissau
GY		Guyana
HT		Haiti
HN		Honduras
HK		Hong Kong (Special Administrative Region of China) [Hong Kong]
HU		Hungary
IS		Iceland
IN		India
ID		Indonesia
IR		Iran [Iran, Islamic Republic of]
IQ		Iraq
IE		Ireland
IM		Isle of Man
IL		Israel
IT		Italy {Includes Sardinia, Sicily}
CI		Ivory Coast [Côte D'ivoire]
JM		Jamaica
JP		Japan
JE		Jersey
JO		Jordan
KZ		Kazakhstan
KE		Kenya
KI		Kiribati
KP		Korea (North) [Korea, Democratic People's Republic of]
KR		Korea (South) [Korea, Republic of]

QO	Kosovo
KW	Kuwait
KG	Kyrgyzstan
LA	Laos [Lao People's Democratic Republic]
LV	Latvia
LB	Lebanon
LS	Lesotho
LR	Liberia
LY	Libya [Libyan Arab Jamahiriya]
LI	Liechtenstein
LT	Lithuania
LU	Luxembourg
MO	Macao (Special Administrative Region of China) [Macao]
MK	Macedonia [Macedonia, The Former Yugoslav Republic of]
MG	Madagascar
MW	Malawi
MY	Malaysia
MV	Maldives
ML	Mali
MT	Malta
MH	Marshall Islands
MR	Mauritania
MU	Mauritius
MX	Mexico
FM	Micronesia [Micronesia, Federated States of]
MD	Moldova [Moldova, Republic of]
MC	Monaco
MN	Mongolia
ME	Montenegro
MS	Montserrat
MA	Morocco
MZ	Mozambique
NA	Namibia
NR	Nauru
NP	Nepal
NL	Netherlands
NZ	New Zealand
NI	Nicaragua
NE	Niger
NG	Nigeria
MP	Northern Mariana Islands
NO	Norway
ZZ	Not known
PS	Occupied Palestinian Territories [Palestine, State of] {formerly West Bank (including East Jerusalem) and Gaza Strip}
OM	Oman
PK	Pakistan
PW	Palau
PA	Panama
PG	Papua New Guinea
PY	Paraguay
PE	Peru
PH	Philippines
PN	Pitcairn, Henderson, Ducie and Oeno Islands [Pitcairn]
PL	Poland
PT	Portugal {includes Madeira, Azores}
QA	Qatar
RO	Romania
RU	Russia [Russian Federation]
RW	Rwanda
WS	Samoa
SM	San Marino
ST	Sao Tome and Principe
SA	Saudi Arabia

	SN Senegal RS Serbia QN Serbia and Montenegro not otherwise specified SC Seychelles SL Sierra Leone SG Singapore SK Slovakia SI Slovenia SB Solomon Islands SO Somalia ZA South Africa GS South Georgia and The South Sandwich Islands SS South Sudan ES Spain {includes Ceuta, Melilla} LK Sri Lanka SH St Helena, Ascension and Tristan da Cunha KN St Kitts and Nevis LC St Lucia VC St Vincent and The Grenadines AA Stateless SD Sudan SR Surinam [Suriname] SZ Swaziland SE Sweden CH Switzerland SY Syria [Syrian Arab Republic] TW Taiwan [Taiwan, Province of China] TJ Tajikistan TZ Tanzania [Tanzania, United Republic of] TH Thailand TG Togo TO Tonga TT Trinidad and Tobago TN Tunisia TR Turkey TM Turkmenistan TC Turks and Caicos Islands TV Tuvalu UG Uganda UA Ukraine XN Union of Soviet Socialist Republics not otherwise specified AE United Arab Emirates GB United Kingdom US United States UY Uruguay UZ Uzbekistan VU Vanuatu VA Vatican City [Holy See (Vatican City State)] VE Venezuela VN Vietnam [Viet Nam] EH Western Sahara YE Yemen XO Yugoslavia not otherwise specified ZM Zambia ZW Zimbabwe
Notes	<p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction. UCAS will first use the complete new code list for entrants in 2009. Therefore in 2007/08 (and 2008/09) institutions can use the more limited codes as provided in the *J, however, institutions can recode if they choose. The details of the coding that will be provided by UCAS can be found in the *J specification.</p> <p>Where a student has dual nationality including British, they should be coded as United</p>

Kingdom (GB). If a dual nationality, not including British, but including non-UK EU country then use relevant EU country code. If neither British or non-UK EU country then code as either nationality.

HESA Guidance

This coding frame is determined by the National Statistics Country Classification 2006 (NSCC), which is based on ISO 3166-1 Codes for the Representation of Names of Countries and their Subdivisions, and the United Nations' Standard Country or Area Codes for Statistical Use. In a small number of cases, the NSCC usage differs from the usage in ISO 3166 on which the NSCC is based. Where that happens, the ISO 3166 usage is given in brackets after the preferred UK usage, to facilitate cross-reference to the international standard. For example for code KR the description is Korea (South). The text in brackets, [Korea, Republic of], is the ISO 3166 description. Information in braces is provided by HESA to clarify usage, and is not derived either from NSCC or ISO 3166 lists of short country names, for example Spain {includes Ceuta, Melilla}.

Where HESA publishes domicile and nationality data it does so using the National Statistics Country Classification 2006 (NSCC) code labels. HESA includes the ISO 3166-1 description [text in brackets] and additional information {text in braces} within the valid entry labels to ensure that labeling standards, both UK and international, are available only for cross-referencing. HESA does not insist that HEIs display these additional descriptions in their own output.

Note: 'no settled inhabitants' means no inhabitants apart from military and scientific personnel, staff of contractors, and seasonal residents. Codes for countries with no settled inhabitants are referred to in the guidance but omitted from the list, for example, AQ Antarctica.

GB, XF, XG, XH, XI, XJ, XK: United Kingdom

For **domicile** the separate country codes XF, XG, XH, XI must be used, and if domicile is known to be United Kingdom but the individual country is not known, XK must be used. The code GB is invalid for domicile. For **nationality** the code GB must be used. The codes XF, XG, XH, XI, XK are invalid for nationality. The code XJ is invalid for both domicile and nationality. Note that the code UK is not on the NSCC list and is invalid for both domicile and nationality. Students with British nationality should be coded GB (there are no separate nationality codes for British National (Overseas) and other forms of British nationality).

GG, JE, XL: Guernsey and Jersey (Channel Islands)

The Channel Islands are not part of the United Kingdom and not part of the European Union. United Kingdom codes must not be used for either domicile or nationality. The Bailiwicks of Guernsey (which includes the smaller islands of Alderney and Sark) and of Jersey must be treated separately, and the codes GG and JE must be used for both **domicile** and **nationality**. The code XL may be used for either domicile or nationality, but only for student instances from 2007/08 onwards that were already current in 2006/07, to avoid the need for re-coding.

IM: Isle of Man

The Isle of Man is not part of the United Kingdom and not part of the European Union.

United Kingdom codes must not be used either for domicile or nationality. The code IM must be used for both **domicile** and **nationality**.

CY, XA, XB, XC: Cyprus

The following treatment does not imply any recognition that the *de facto* Turkish occupation and control of northern Cyprus is legitimate, but does deal with the practical need to record the source of students. The separate codes Cyprus (European Union) (XA) and Cyprus (non European Union) (XB) must be used for both **domicile** and **nationality**. The code XC may be used for either domicile or nationality, but only for student instances from 2007/08 that were already current in 2006/07, to avoid the need for re-coding, or for new entrants in 2007/08 who entered through UCAS. Note that an appropriate United Kingdom code should be used for both domicile and nationality for students from the British sovereign military areas on Cyprus. The code CY is invalid for both domicile and nationality unless and until there is any change in the political situation, in which case the coding arrangements will be reviewed.

FI, AX: Finland and the Åland Islands

The Åland Islands (Åhvenamaa) are an autonomous demilitarised region of Finland, and are part of the European Union subject to some derogations and special provisions. For **domicile** the code FI must be used only for Finland excluding the Åland Islands, and the code AX must be used for the Åland Islands. The passport held by Åland Islanders is an EU-style passport distinguished from the normal Finnish passport by the addition of the word 'Åland' below 'FINLAND', but this does not imply a separate nationality. Accordingly, for **nationality** only the code FI is to be used, and the code AX is invalid.'

FO, GL: Faroe Islands and Greenland

The Faroe Islands and Greenland must be treated separately, and the codes FO and GL must be used for both **domicile** and **nationality**. Note that, despite their relationship with Denmark, neither Greenland nor the Faroe Islands are part of the European Union.

FR, GF, GP, MQ, RE, YT, PM, PF, WF, BL, MF, TF and NC: French Republic

The French Republic comprises Metropolitan France (France Métropolitain) [including Corsica], the four Overseas Departments (Départements d'Outre-Mer, or D.O.M.) of French Guiana (GF), Guadeloupe (GP), Martinique (MQ), and Réunion (RE), the six Overseas Collectivities (Collectivités d'Outre-Mer, or C.O.M.) of Mayotte (YT), St Pierre & Miquelon (PM), French Polynesia (PF) [also designated as a Pays d'Outre-Mer], and Wallis & Futuna (WF), St Barthélemy (BL), St Martin (French Part) (MF), the Overseas Territory (Territoire d'Outre-Mer, or T.O.M.) of the French Southern Territories (TF), and finally New Caledonia (NC) which has a special status similar to a T.O.M..

Metropolitan France and the four Overseas Departments are all part of the European Union. For **domicile**, the code FR must be used **only** for Metropolitan France, and other codes must be used with their natural meaning, except that there are no settled inhabitants in the French Southern Territories, so code TF is invalid. For **nationality** the code FR must be used throughout, and all the other codes in this group are invalid.

IT, VA: Italy and Vatican City (Holy See)

Italy and Vatican City must be treated separately, and the codes IT and VA must be used for both **domicile** and **nationality**.

NL, AW, CW, SX, BQ : Kingdom of the Netherlands

The Kingdom of the Netherlands comprises the European country of The Netherlands (NL); the Caribbean country of Aruba (AW), and the former island territories of the Netherlands Antilles: the countries of Curaçao (CW) and Sint Maarten (Dutch part) (SX); and the combined special municipalities of Bonaire, Sint Eustatius and Saba (BQ).

For **domicile**, the code NL must be used only for The Netherlands in Europe, and the codes AW, CW, SX, and BQ must be used with their natural meaning. For **nationality** the code NL must be used throughout, and other codes are invalid.

ES, IC, XD, XE: Spain and the Canary Islands

The Canary Islands are part of Spain, and hence of the European Union, but with some special derogations and provisions particularly relating to customs and fiscal matters. For **domicile**, the code ES must be used for mainland Spain and the code IC must be used for the Canaries. For **nationality**, the code ES must be used for both mainland Spain and the Canaries. The codes XD and XE, although in the NSCC list, are invalid for both domicile and nationality. No separate codes are provided in the NSCC list for the exclaves of Ceuta and Melilla on the coast of north Africa, and for both domicile and nationality purposes they should be regarded as part of mainland Spain.

NO, SJ, BV: Norway and Svalbard and Jan Mayen

Svalbard (Spitzbergen) is an inhabited Norwegian territory in the Arctic Ocean. for **domicile** the code SJ must be used for Svalbard, and the code NO must be used only for Norway excluding Svalbard. For **nationality** the code NO must be used throughout, and SJ is invalid. Jan Mayen Island is included with Svalbard under code SJ, but has no settled inhabitants. Bouvet Island (BV) is a Norwegian island in the South Atlantic Ocean, but has no settled inhabitants, so code BV is invalid for both domicile and nationality.

MA, EH; Morocco, Western Sahara

Western Sahara (EH) is a disputed territory occupied and administered by Morocco (MA). The code EH should be used where appropriate for both **domicile** and **nationality**.

PS: Occupied Palestinian Territories

This code description changed in 2008/09 to reflect the change in the National Statistics Country Classification. It must be used where appropriate for both **domicile** and **nationality**.

US, PR, VI, GU, MP, AS, UM, MH, FM, PW: United States, Puerto Rico, US Virgin Islands, Guam, Northern Mariana Islands, American Samoa, United States Minor Outlying Islands, Marshall Islands, Micronesia, Palau

The Commonwealth of Puerto Rico is an Unincorporated Organized Territory of the United States; its current Commonwealth status grants it a measure of internal self-government, but the US Constitution reserves ultimate governance of the island to the US Congress and President. The Democratic Party 2008 Platform included an undertaking to resolve the permanent status of Puerto Rico by 2012, the principal alternatives being independence, US statehood, or a clarification of the present position.

Puerto Ricans have been citizens of the United States since 1917. For **domicile** the code PR must be used. For **nationality** the code US must be used and the code PR is invalid.

The US Virgin Islands (the former Danish West Indies, purchased from Denmark by the United States in 1916) is an Unincorporated Organized Territory of the United States. US Virgin Islanders are citizens of the United States. For **domicile** the code VI must be used. For **nationality** the code US must be used and the code VI is invalid.

Guam (formerly part of the UN Trust Territory of the Pacific) is an Unincorporated Organized Territory of the United States. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code GU must be used.

The Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (formerly part of the UN Trust Territory of the Pacific) is an Unincorporated Organized Territory of the United States; its Commonwealth status grants it a measure of internal self-government. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code MP must be used.

American Samoa is an Unincorporated Unorganized Territory of the United States. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code AS must be used. The United States Minor Outlying Islands comprise Baker Island, Howland Island, Jarvis Island, Johnston Atoll, Kingman Reef, Midway Atoll, Palmyra Atoll and Wake Island in the Pacific, and Navassa Island in the Caribbean. They are Unincorporated (Incorporated in the case of Palmyra Atoll) Unorganized Territories of the United States. They have no settled inhabitants and the code UM is accordingly invalid for both **domicile** and **nationality**.

The Marshall Islands (formerly part of the UN Trust Territory of the Pacific) are a self-governing state in free association with the United States. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code MH must be used.

The Federated States of Micronesia (formerly part of the UN Trust Territory of the Pacific) are a self-governing state in free association with the United States. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code FM must be used.

Palau (formerly part of the UN Trust Territory of the Pacific) is a self-governing state in free association with the United States. For **domicile** and **nationality** the code PW must be used.

The use of the code US for **domicile** is accordingly limited to the United States only.

CN, TW, HK, MO: China, Taiwan, Hong Kong, Macao

China (CN) should be used for both **domicile** and **nationality** where relevant in cases not covered by the following guidance. Taiwan (TW) - The United Kingdom acknowledges the position of the Chinese Government that Taiwan is a province of China and recognises the Chinese Government as the sole legal government of China. The United Kingdom does not recognise Taiwan as a state and does not have diplomatic relations with Taiwan. However, because the United Kingdom accepts passports issued by the Taiwanese Authorities for immigration purposes, it is necessary to use a separate country code TW for Taiwan in both the **domicile** and **nationality** fields. This has no bearing on the United Kingdom's position on Taiwan's status.

Hong Kong (Special Administrative Region of China) (HK) appears separately for historical and immigration reasons as this Special Administrative Region issues different passports from those of the PRC. This code is not regarded as having any implications

for issues of nationality, but should continue to be used in both the **domicile** and **nationality** fields.

Macao (Special Administrative Region of China) (MO) appears separately for historical and immigration reasons as this Special Administrative Region issues different passports from those of the PRC. This code is not regarded as having any implications for issues of nationality, but should continue to be used in both the **domicile** and **nationality** fields.

AU, CX, CC, NF, HM: Australia, Christmas Island, Cocos (Keeling) Islands, Norfolk Island, Heard Island and MacDonald Islands.

Christmas Island is a non-self-governing territory of Australia. For **domicile** the code CX must be used. For **nationality** the code AU must be used and the code CX is invalid.

Cocos (Keeling) Islands is a non-self-governing territory of Australia. For **domicile** the code CC must be used. For **nationality** the code AU must be used and the code CC is invalid.

Norfolk Island is a non-self-governing territory of Australia. For **domicile** the code NF must be used. For **nationality** the code AU must be used and the code NF is invalid.

Heard Island and MacDonald Islands are a territory of Australia with no settled inhabitants. The code HM is accordingly invalid for both **domicile** and **nationality**

The use of the code AU for **domicile** is accordingly limited to Australia only.

NZ, CK, NU, TK: New Zealand, Cook Islands, Niue, and Tokelau

The Cook Islands are a self-governing state in free association with New Zealand; they form part of the Realm of New Zealand and Cook Islanders are New Zealand citizens. Accordingly, for **domicile** the code CK must be used for the Cook Islands, but for **nationality** the code NZ must be used and the code CK is invalid.

Niue is a self-governing state in free association with New Zealand; it forms part of the Realm of New Zealand and Niueans are New Zealand citizens. Accordingly, for **domicile** the code NU must be used for Niue, but for **nationality** the code NZ must be used and the code NU is invalid.

Tokelau is a non-self-governing territory of New Zealand. A proposal for Tokelau to become a self-governing state in free association with New Zealand, on a basis similar to that of the Cook Islands and Niue, narrowly failed to achieve the required two-thirds majority at a second referendum on self-determination in 2007. Following that outcome, further consideration of any change in the status of the territory has been suspended sine die. Accordingly, for **domicile** the code TK must be used, but for **nationality** the code NZ must be used and the code TK is invalid.

The use of the code NZ for **domicile** is accordingly limited to New Zealand only.

IO: British Indian Ocean Territory (BIOT)

The Chagos Islands form the principal part of this territory, and these include the island

	<p>of Diego Garcia which is a leased to the United States of America as a major military base. The indigenous inhabitants of BIOT have been displaced elsewhere, and the territory accordingly has no settled inhabitants at present (on the above definition). Accordingly the code IO is invalid for domicile, but may be used as a nationality code for displaced indigenous inhabitants. IO will be made valid for domicile if at some point return of the indigenous inhabitants is permitted.</p> <p>AQ: Antarctica</p> <p>Since there are no settled inhabitants in Antarctica, code AQ is invalid for both domicile and nationality and is omitted from the list. See also code XX. Although there are a number of national territorial claims to parts of Antarctica, these have been in abeyance since the coming into force of the Antarctic Treaty in 1961.</p> <p>QO: Kosovo</p> <p>A new code for Kosovo (QO) has been added to the classification in acknowledgement of the UK's recognition of Kosovo as an independent nation. This code is available for use from 2007/08, but institutions are not required to re-code existing students.</p> <p>SD and SS: Sudan and South Sudan</p> <p>South Sudan (SS), formerly part of Sudan (SD), became a country in its own right on July 9th 2011. There is no obligation for institutions to recode continuing students recorded with a nationality of SD to the newer code, but they may do so if the information is available.</p> <p>XM, XN, XO, EU, XP-XX, XY, XZ, AA, ZZ: Obsolete Countries, Regions, Stateless, and Unknown</p> <p>Codes XM, XN, XO, AA may not be used for domicile, for which they are invalid. The regional codes EU and XP to XX may be used if domicile is known only to this level of accuracy, in preference to using ZZ which should be a last resort. EU should be used in preference to XP if appropriate. For nationality, codes XM, XN, XO may be used only for students who hold these obsolete nationalities and no other, presumably because they emigrated at a time when the nationalities were current and they have never acquired any other nationality. Codes EU and XP to XX may not be used for nationality, for which they are invalid. Code SXX may be used only in relation to Oceania, not Antarctica. Code AA should be used only when a student is known to be stateless, and code ZZ should be used when nationality is not known or when it is impossible from the available documentation to assign a nationality from the above list. Codes XY and XZ although in the NSCC list, are invalid for both domicile and nationality. Note that codes AA, EU and ZZ do not appear on the NSCC list.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Student.NATION must exist for institutions in England, Wales or Scotland where any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 03 and Instance.COMDATE is on or after 2007-08-01. 2 Error Student.NATION code XL must have Instance.COMDATE before 2007-08-01. 3 Error Student.NATION code XC must have Instance.COMDATE before 2007-08-01 unless (EntryProfile entity exists and EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists) or EntryProfile entity does not exist.
Reason Required	To enable the UK contribution to the higher education of nationals of other countries to be determined; used by Statutory Customers and others with a legitimate interest to analyse this contribution.

	To meet EC and OECD requests for information.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: NATION Data type: NATIONCodeContentType
Owner	Information Standards Board - Aligned Data Definitions
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Valid entry PS relabelled from 'Occupied Palestinian Territories [Palestinian Territory, Occupied] {formerly West Bank (including East Jerusalem) and Gaza Strip}' to 'Occupied Palestinian Territories [Palestine, State of] {formerly West Bank (including East Jerusalem) and Gaza Strip}' to align with ISO 3166-1.

Religion or belief

Type	field																																
Short Name	RELBLF																																
Description	This field records the religious belief of the student, on the basis of their own self-assessment																																
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales																																
Coverage	All students (optional)																																
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="border: none;"> <tr><td>01</td><td>No religion</td></tr> <tr><td>02</td><td>Buddhist</td></tr> <tr><td>03</td><td>Christian</td></tr> <tr><td>04</td><td>Christian - Church of Scotland</td></tr> <tr><td>05</td><td>Christian - Roman Catholic</td></tr> <tr><td>06</td><td>Christian - Presbyterian Church in Ireland</td></tr> <tr><td>07</td><td>Christian - Church of Ireland</td></tr> <tr><td>08</td><td>Christian - Methodist Church in Ireland</td></tr> <tr><td>09</td><td>Christian - Other denomination</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>Hindu</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>Jewish</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>Muslim</td></tr> <tr><td>13</td><td>Sikh</td></tr> <tr><td>14</td><td>Spiritual</td></tr> <tr><td>80</td><td>Any other religion or belief</td></tr> <tr><td>98</td><td>Information refused</td></tr> </table>	01	No religion	02	Buddhist	03	Christian	04	Christian - Church of Scotland	05	Christian - Roman Catholic	06	Christian - Presbyterian Church in Ireland	07	Christian - Church of Ireland	08	Christian - Methodist Church in Ireland	09	Christian - Other denomination	10	Hindu	11	Jewish	12	Muslim	13	Sikh	14	Spiritual	80	Any other religion or belief	98	Information refused
01	No religion																																
02	Buddhist																																
03	Christian																																
04	Christian - Church of Scotland																																
05	Christian - Roman Catholic																																
06	Christian - Presbyterian Church in Ireland																																
07	Christian - Church of Ireland																																
08	Christian - Methodist Church in Ireland																																
09	Christian - Other denomination																																
10	Hindu																																
11	Jewish																																
12	Muslim																																
13	Sikh																																
14	Spiritual																																
80	Any other religion or belief																																
98	Information refused																																
Notes	<p>Religion or belief is recorded on the basis of the student's own self-assessment.</p> <p>Suggested questions are those used in the 2011 census.</p> <p>England and Wales: What is your religion?</p> <p>Scotland: What religion, religious body, or denomination do you belong to?</p> <p>Northern Ireland: What religion, religious denomination or body do you belong to?</p> <p>The phrase 'Prefer not to say' can be used when collecting the data.</p> <p>Coverage of HESA 2012/13 coding frame is shown in the following table.</p> <p>Code 98 'Information refused' should be returned when the question was asked but the individual answered that they 'preferred not to say'.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">HESA 2012/13 coding frame for institutions in:</th> <th style="text-align: center;">E</th> <th style="text-align: center;">S</th> <th style="text-align: center;">W</th> <th style="text-align: center;">NI</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>01 No religion</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>02 Buddhist</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>03 Christian</td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>04 Christian - Church of Scotland</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">Y</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	HESA 2012/13 coding frame for institutions in:	E	S	W	NI	01 No religion	Y	Y	Y	Y	02 Buddhist	Y	Y	Y	Y	03 Christian	Y		Y		04 Christian - Church of Scotland		Y									
HESA 2012/13 coding frame for institutions in:	E	S	W	NI																													
01 No religion	Y	Y	Y	Y																													
02 Buddhist	Y	Y	Y	Y																													
03 Christian	Y		Y																														
04 Christian - Church of Scotland		Y																															

	<table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>05 Christian - Roman Catholic</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>06 Christian - Presbyterian Church in Ireland</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>07 Christian - Church of Ireland</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>08 Christian - Methodist Church in Ireland</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>09 Christian - Other denomination</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> <td></td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10 Hindu</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11 Jewish</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>12 Muslim</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>13 Sikh</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>14 Spiritual</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>80 Any other religion or belief</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>98 Prefer not to say/Information refused</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>The Equality Challenge Unit (ECU) has recommended inclusion of code 14 'Spiritual' which was not included in the Census. This will be grouped with 'Any other religion or belief' for onward analysis. ECU define 'Spiritual' as 'Spiritual - belief in the spiritual dimension of all life, which can be experienced directly and without the assistance of conventional religion'. All other categories are consistent with the census of the applicable country.</p> <p>ECU has a number of resources relating to gathering information across the protected characteristics covered by the Equality Act 2010. These resources can be found at Equality Challenge Unit. If you have any further queries regarding equality monitoring, please email ECU at admin@ecu.ac.uk.</p>	05 Christian - Roman Catholic		Y		Y	06 Christian - Presbyterian Church in Ireland				Y	07 Christian - Church of Ireland				Y	08 Christian - Methodist Church in Ireland				Y	09 Christian - Other denomination		Y		Y	10 Hindu	Y	Y	Y	Y	11 Jewish	Y	Y	Y	Y	12 Muslim	Y	Y	Y	Y	13 Sikh	Y	Y	Y	Y	14 Spiritual	Y	Y	Y	Y	80 Any other religion or belief	Y	Y	Y	Y	98 Prefer not to say/Information refused	Y	Y	Y	Y
05 Christian - Roman Catholic		Y		Y																																																									
06 Christian - Presbyterian Church in Ireland				Y																																																									
07 Christian - Church of Ireland				Y																																																									
08 Christian - Methodist Church in Ireland				Y																																																									
09 Christian - Other denomination		Y		Y																																																									
10 Hindu	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																									
11 Jewish	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																									
12 Muslim	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																									
13 Sikh	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																									
14 Spiritual	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																									
80 Any other religion or belief	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																									
98 Prefer not to say/Information refused	Y	Y	Y	Y																																																									
Examples																																																													
Business rules	<p>1 Error Where Student.RELBLF = 03 the institution must be in England or Wales.</p> <p>2 Error Where Student.RELBLF = 04 the institution must be in Scotland.</p> <p>3 Error Where Student.RELBLF = 05 or 09 the institution must be in Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p> <p>4 Error Where Student.RELBLF = 06, 07 or 08 the institution must be in Northern Ireland.</p>																																																												
Reason Required	To monitor equal opportunities issues in the higher education sector and support higher education institutions (HEIs) in meeting their obligations under the Equality Act 2010																																																												
Part Of	Student																																																												
Field Length	2																																																												
Minimum Occurrences	0																																																												
Maximum Occurrences	1																																																												
Schema Components	Element: RELBLF Data type: RELBLFCodeContentType																																																												
Owner	Equality Challenge Unit (ECU)																																																												
Version	1.2																																																												
Date modified	2013-04-30																																																												
Change management	Business rules 1 to 4 added to check that codes which are only valid in specific																																																												

notes	countries are used correctly.
-------	-------------------------------

Scottish Candidate Number

Type	field
Short Name	SCN
Description	This field records the Scottish Candidate Number (formerly SCOTVEC number) which is allocated to pupils at school and in FE colleges who undertake Scottish Qualifications Authority (formerly SCOTVEC or SEB Scottish Examination Board) courses. Many Scottish students will therefore have a Scottish Candidate Number, and coverage should increase over the next few years to cover almost all Scottish entrants. The Scottish Candidate Number should be completed for all students who have one.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XH and EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists and Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J, C, P, Q, R or S. Also all other students at institutions in Scotland where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XH and Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J, C, P, Q, R or S
Notes	<p>The Scottish Candidate Number consists of eight decimal data digits followed by a decimal check digit. The first two data digits are the final two digits of the year of issue (so 2004/05 is 05); note that this implies the occurrence of leading zeroes on numbers issued during the current decade, which must be retained. The next six digits are arbitrary, and are unique within the year but are not guaranteed to be unique across years. The final digit is a check digit calculated according to a modulus 11 algorithm using the weights 3 2 7 6 5 4 3 2.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Each digit is multiplied by its weight factor and the results totalled • The total is divided by 11 • Take the remainder from this division and subtract it from 11 • The result of the subtraction is the check digit <p>If the remainder from the division is 1 and result of the subtraction is therefore 10 the number is incorrect. If there is no remainder from the division, the check digit will be 0.</p> <p>All UCAS entrants domiciled in Scotland require a Scottish Candidate Number irrespective of whether they are studying in Scotland or elsewhere in the United Kingdom. A Scottish Candidate Number is not applicable to non-Scottish domiciled entrants studying at institutions in Scotland. UCAS collects the Scottish candidate number for all Scottish domiciled new entrants. Institutions in Scotland will need to collect this information for direct entrants of Scottish domicile.</p> <p>For students entering through UCAS this information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction.</p> <p>If the Scottish Candidate Number is not known, an empty element should be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 1 (not known), i.e:</p> <pre><SCN ReasonForNull="1"></SCN></pre> <p>A Scottish Candidate Number is not required for those students entering postgraduate courses.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Student.SCN must pass the checksum test as shown in the coding manual.</p> <p>2 Error Student.SCN must exist where (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XH) and EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists and Course.COURSEAIM begins</p>

	<p>H, I, J, C, P, Q, R or S.</p> <p>3 Error Student.SCN must exist for institutions in Scotland where (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XH) and Course.COURSEAIM begins H, I, J, C, P, Q, R or S.</p> <p>4 Error Student.SCN must not be null except when ReasonForNull = 1.</p> <p>5 Error Student.SCN must be null when ReasonForNull = 1.</p>
Reason Required	Allows linkage between HESA records and earlier records of achievement on pre-HE Scottish courses. Such linkages can provide additional information about the flows between school, further education and higher education.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	9
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SCN Data type: SCNWithNullStructure
Owner	Scottish Qualifications Authority
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 2 and 3 updated to remove the reference to reduced returns in line with the coverage in the manual.

Sex identifier

Type	field
Short Name	SEXID
Description	This field records the sex of the student.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students
Valid Entries and Labels	1 Male 2 Female 3 Other
Notes	<p>The Equality Challenge Unit (ECU) has a number of resources relating to gathering information across the protected characteristics covered by the Equality Act 2010. These resources can be found at Equality Challenge Unit. If you have any further queries regarding equality monitoring, please email ECU at admin@ecu.ac.uk or view ECU's guidance on Monitoring sex and gender.</p> <p>The use of 'other' is more appropriate for people who associate with the terms intersex, androgyne, intergender, ambigender, gender fluid, polygender and gender queer.</p> <p>HESA will not be including a 'prefer not to say' option.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor equal opportunities issues in the higher education sector and support higher education institutions (HEIs) in meeting their obligations under the Equality Act 2010
Part Of	Student
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SEXID Data type: SEXIDCodeContentType
Owner	Equality Challenge Unit (ECU)
Version	1.0

Sexual orientation

Type	field
Short Name	SEXORT
Description	This field records the sexual orientation of the student, on the basis of their own self-assessment
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students (optional)
Valid Entries and Labels	01 Bisexual 02 Gay man 03 Gay woman/lesbian 04 Heterosexual 05 Other 98 Information refused
Notes	<p>Sexual orientation is recorded on the basis of the student's own self-assessment.</p> <p>Suggested question (recommended by Stonewall): What is your sexual orientation?</p> <p>The Equality Challenge Unit (ECU) has a number of resources relating to gathering information across the protected characteristics covered by the Equality Act 2010. These resources can be found at Equality Challenge Unit. If you have any further queries regarding equality monitoring, please email ECU at admin@ecu.ac.uk</p> <p>Code 98 'Information refused' should be returned when the question was asked but the individual answered that they 'preferred not to say'.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor equal opportunities issues in the higher education sector and support higher education institutions (HEIs) in meeting their obligations under the Equality Act 2010
Part Of	Student
Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: SEXORT Data type: SEXORTCodeContentType
Owner	Equality Challenge Unit (ECU)
Version	1.0

Term-time accommodation

Type	field																
Short Name	TTACCOM																
Description	This field records where the student is living during the current year.																
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales																
Coverage	All students who are studying where Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24 or 25 and any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 and any Instance.LOCSDY does not equal S																
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="border: none;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">1</td> <td>Institution maintained property</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Parental/guardian home</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Other</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Not known</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>Not in attendance at the institution</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>Own residence</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>Other rented accommodation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>Private-sector halls</td> </tr> </table>	1	Institution maintained property	2	Parental/guardian home	4	Other	5	Not known	6	Not in attendance at the institution	7	Own residence	8	Other rented accommodation	9	Private-sector halls
1	Institution maintained property																
2	Parental/guardian home																
4	Other																
5	Not known																
6	Not in attendance at the institution																
7	Own residence																
8	Other rented accommodation																
9	Private-sector halls																
Notes	<p>This information should be collected once per academic year. If a student is in temporary accommodation at the time of collection but has permanent accommodation agreed, then the planned accommodation should be returned in this field.</p> <p>Full-time for the purpose of this field excludes students on short full-time programmes of study (ie. those of total length 24 weeks or less).</p> <p>Code 1 Institution maintained property refers to residences owned by the institution returning data</p> <p>Code: 6 'Not in attendance at the institution' to be used for full-time and sandwich students not currently in attendance at the institution for reasons such as industrial placement or language year abroad.</p> <p>Code 7 'Own residence' includes a student's permanent residence, which may be either owned or rented by them.</p> <p>Code 8 'Other rented accommodation' refers to a more temporary arrangement eg. where a number of students each rent a room in the same house on a yearly basis.</p>																
Business rules	<table style="border: none;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 20px;">1</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Student.TTACCOM must exist where a student has at least one instance where Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24 or 25 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 and Instance.LOCSDY not equal to S.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Warning</td> <td>Student.TTACCOM should not be coded 6 where Instance.LOCSDY = X.</td> </tr> </table>	1	Error	Student.TTACCOM must exist where a student has at least one instance where Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24 or 25 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 and Instance.LOCSDY not equal to S.	2	Warning	Student.TTACCOM should not be coded 6 where Instance.LOCSDY = X.										
1	Error	Student.TTACCOM must exist where a student has at least one instance where Instance.MODE = 01, 02, 23, 24 or 25 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 and Instance.LOCSDY not equal to S.															
2	Warning	Student.TTACCOM should not be coded 6 where Instance.LOCSDY = X.															
Reason Required	To monitor student accommodation patterns.																
Part Of	Student																
Field Length	1																
Minimum Occurrences	0																
Maximum Occurrences	1																

Schema Components	Element: TTACCOM Data type: TTACCOMCodeContentType
Related Fields	TTPCODE
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Term-time postcode

Type	field
Short Name	TTPCODE
Description	This field records a postcode for the student's term-time address at some point during the reporting year
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students where any (Instance.LOCSDY does not equal 6, 9, D, F or S and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 07) unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.
Notes	<p>This field is required for all students except those studying by distance learning and those on placements.</p> <p>This can be a postcode from any point during term-time, but should not be a correspondence or summer contact address. It is expected that in many cases the postcode will change between years. Where students spend all or part of the year in a hall of residence the institution will be able to insert a generic postcode for that that hall into all of the relevant records.</p> <p>Although completion of the field will be compulsory for all students, 'Unknown' values will be acceptable. If no valid postcode (full or outward only) can be ascertained an empty element should be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 1 (not known), i.e:</p> <pre><TTPCODE ReasonForNull="1"></TTPCODE></pre> <p>It will be possible to provide only the outward part of the postcode if this is all that is known, although that is not expected to arise commonly.</p> <p>Postcodes returned must pass schema validation of format. Individual postcodes will be validated against the Royal Mail list but only a warning rather than an error will be generated if validation fails. This is intended to assist institutions that attach importance to the accuracy of their contact information but who may not be in a position to validate postcodes themselves.</p> <p>British Forces Post Office (BFPO) postcodes</p> <p>Where BFPO codes relate to UK locations, institutions will need to locate the Royal Mail equivalent postcode for the base. If this is not known, then an empty element must be returned with the ReasonForNull attribute set to 1 (not known), i.e:</p> <pre><POSTCODE ReasonForNull="1"></POSTCODE></pre> <p>There is further guidance on valid postcode formats at: http://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/http://www.cabinetoffice.gov.uk/govtalk/schemasstandards The business rule structure validation will be slightly less strict than that described in UK Government Data Standards Catalogue, as not all parsers will support the full GDSC definition. All postcodes are validated against valid postcodes at exception.</p>

Examples	<p>A typical postcode such as GL50 3DA would be coded with a blank in the fifth character position. A postcode such as B1 6SR would have a blank in position 3. The part of the postcode before the space is known as the outward part of the postcode and can be 2, 3 or 4 characters long. The part of the postcode after the space is known as the inward part of the postcode and is a fixed length of 3 characters. The space between the outward and inward parts of the postcode must always be shown as part of the postcode.</p> <p>There is further guidance on valid postcode formats at: http://webarchive.nationalarchives.gov.uk/+http://www.cabinetoffice.gov.uk/govtalk/schemasstandards The business rule structure validation is slightly less strict than that described in UK Government Data Standards Catalogue, as not all parsers will support the full GDSC definition. All postcodes are validated against valid postcodes at exception, using the Office for National Statistics Postcode Directory (ONSPD).</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error Student.TTPCODE must exist where any Instance.LOCSY does not equal 6, 9, D, F or S and the corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 07 unless institution in Wales and Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>2 Error Where exists Student.TTPCODE must not equal EntryProfile.POSTCODE where Student.TTACCOM = 1 or 9 and Course.COURSEAIM begins with H, I, J, C, P, Q, R, S or X or is M22 or M26.</p> <p>3 Error Student.TTPCODE must not be null except when ReasonForNull = 1.</p> <p>4 Error Student.TTPCODE must be null when ReasonForNull = 1.</p> <p>5 Error Where exists Student.TTPCODE must contain: a valid full postcode structure or a valid outward postcode structure.</p> <p>6 Error Student.TTPCODE must not be null when Student.TTACCOM = 1.</p> <p>7 Warning Student.TTPCODE should not be null when Student.TTACCOM = 9.</p> <p>8 Warning Where exists Student.TTPCODE should not equal EntryProfile.POSTCODE where Student.TTACCOM = 8.</p>
Reason Required	To allow estimates to be made of local student populations.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	8
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: TTPCODE Data type: PostCodeWithNullStructure
Related Fields	TTACCOM
Owner	BS7666
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Clarification added to 'Examples', stating that validation of postcodes is performed against the Office for National Statistics Postcode Directory (ONSPD).

UCAS Personal Identifier

Type	field
Short Name	UCASPERID
Description	This field records the 10-character code issued by UCAS.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All students who entered any of their current instances from 2007 onwards via a UCAS scheme and who have been issued a UCAS Personal Identifier
Notes	<p>The UCAS Personal Identifier together with the UCAS application number (EntryProfile.UCASAPPID) forms the UCAS Application Identifier. The UCAS Personal Identifier is sometimes presented using hyphens between characters 3 and 4 and between characters 6 and 7. These hyphens are not to be included in this field in the Student Record.</p> <p>This information will be available from UCAS via the *J transaction.</p>
Business rules	2 Error Student.UCASPERID must exist where any EntryProfile.UCASAPPID exists and is a 4 character code.
Reason Required	To identify students who entered a current instance via a UCAS application system and to facilitate linking between UCAS and HESA records.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	10
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: UCASPERID Data type: UCASPERIDType
Related Fields	UCASAPPID
Owner	UCAS
Version	1.0

Unique Learner Number

Type	field
Short Name	ULN
Description	This field records a 10-digit numeric identifier.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Compulsory for students at institutions in England where any Instance.FESTUMK is coded 1 or 3.
Notes	<p>The Unique Learner Number (ULN) is being developed, and the specification of this field falls within the scope of the Aligned Data Definitions and follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record. In the long-term it is anticipated that the ULN will replace the plethora of personal identifiers used by different organisations in the education sector.</p> <p>The ULN is a ten-digit number with a non-zero number in the first position and a check digit in the final position. Further information regarding the ULN can be found on the Learning Records Service web site. Since the ULN is issued by the Learning Records Service, an institutions' only obligation will be to check the validity of the number by performing the checksum validation test below.</p> <p>The ULN checksum follows the same basic principles as the NHS number, but has been designed to ensure that there is no replication of ULN and NHS number. The checksum validation process is as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the first digit is nonzero • Sum the product of the digits multiplied by the weights 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 • Divide this number by 11 • The remainder should be 10. <p>(e.g. ULN 9276308686. $(9*10)+(2*9)+(7*8)+(6*7)+(3*6)+(0*5)+(8*4)+(6*3) + (8*2)+(6*1) = 296$. $296/11=26$, remainder 10)</p> <p>For additional information, an Excel spreadsheet showing how the final check digit (and leading digit for Scottish Candidate Number (SCN) based ULNs) is calculated can be downloaded.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error Student.ULN must pass the checksum test. 2 Warning Student.ULN should not be the same as Student.UCASPERID 3 Error Student.ULN must exist for institutions in England where any Instance.FESTUMK = 1 or 3.
Reason Required	To facilitate linking between years of HESA data and between the Student Record and other data sources.
Part Of	Student
Field Length	10
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: ULN

	Data type: UniqueLearnerNumberType
Owner	Learning Records Service
Version	1.1
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rule 3 for institutions in England as ULN is now compulsory for SFA/EFA funded students.

Welsh speaker indicator

Type	field												
Short Name	WELSSP												
Description	This field records whether the student deems themselves to be a Welsh speaker.												
Applicable to	Wales												
Coverage	All students at institutions in Wales where EntryProfile.DOMICILE = XI and any Instance.REDUCEDI = 00												
Valid Entries and Labels	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="width: 10%;"></td> <td>Fluent Welsh speaker</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> <td></td> <td>Welsh speaker not fluent</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">3</td> <td></td> <td>Not Welsh speaker</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">9</td> <td></td> <td>Not known</td> </tr> </table>	1		Fluent Welsh speaker	2		Welsh speaker not fluent	3		Not Welsh speaker	9		Not known
1		Fluent Welsh speaker											
2		Welsh speaker not fluent											
3		Not Welsh speaker											
9		Not known											
Notes	The level of Welsh speaker should be defined by the student and not the institution.												
Business rules	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="width: 10%; text-align: left;">Error</td> <td>Student.WELSSP must exist for institutions in Wales where any (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XI) and the corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> <td style="text-align: left;">Error</td> <td>Student.WELSSP must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland.</td> </tr> </table>	1	Error	Student.WELSSP must exist for institutions in Wales where any (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XI) and the corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00.	2	Error	Student.WELSSP must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland.						
1	Error	Student.WELSSP must exist for institutions in Wales where any (EntryProfile.DOMICILE exists and is coded XI) and the corresponding Instance.REDUCEDI = 00.											
2	Error	Student.WELSSP must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland.											
Reason Required	<p>Required by the Welsh Government (WG) to support the Welsh Language Board in monitoring the number of Welsh speakers continuing their education in Welsh and the potential demand for Welsh medium education.</p> <p>Although the requirement for the data has been stipulated by NAW, HEFCW may also use the data to inform policy development on Welsh medium higher education provision.</p>												
Part Of	Student												
Field Length	1												
Minimum Occurrences	0												
Maximum Occurrences	1												
Schema Components	Element: WELSSP Data type: WELSSPCodeContentType												
Owner	HESA												
Version	1.1												
Date modified	2013-04-30												
Change management notes	Business rule 1 updated as reduced return 02 is no longer valid.												

Student on module

Type	entity
Short Name	StudentOnModule
Description	The link between the instance and the relevant modules for the reporting period
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	Compulsory where Instance.STULOAD is greater than 0 and Instance.REDUCEDI =00 or 01. Optional where Instance.STULOAD = 0 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01
Notes	A student instance can be linked to the same module more than once in a reporting period if the student undertakes the module more than once. An instance should not be linked to the same module more than once in cases where a student is simply re-sitting examinations or assessment.
Business rules	<p>1 Error StudentOnModule entity must exist where Instance.STULOAD is greater than 0 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p> <p>2 Error There must be at least one occurrence of StudentOnModule entity with StudentOnModule.MODSTAT not equal to 4 where Instance.STULOAD is greater than 0 and Instance.REDUCEDI = 00 or 01.</p>
Reason Required	This entity exists to allow one instance to be linked to many modules and one module to be linked to many instances.
Part Of	Instance
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	128
Has Parts	Percentage of module taught in Celtic language (LANGPCNT) Module identifier (MODID) Module status (MODSTAT) Module outcome (MODOUT) Module year (MODYR) Module Countable (MODCOUNT) APEL indicator (APEL)
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

APEL indicator

Type	field
Short Name	APEL
Description	This field indicates if the module was taken through APEL (Accreditation of Prior Experiential Learning).
Applicable to	Wales
Coverage	All modules at institutions in Wales
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Module taken through APEL</p> <p>2 APEL module</p> <p>3 Module not taken/available through APEL</p>
Notes	<p>Accreditation of Prior Experiential Learning (APEL) is a process that enables people of all ages, backgrounds and attitudes to receive formal recognition for skills and knowledge they already possess. This can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • organised prior-learning where the learning has been assessed and where certificates are awarded on completion, • learning gained through unstructured experiences and short courses, arising through leisure pursuits, family experiences and work. <p>A person's learning and experience can be formally recognised and taken into account to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • gain entry to further or higher education courses, • give exemption from certain parts of a new course of study, • qualify for an award in an appropriate subject in further or higher education. <p>Code 1 'Module taken through APEL' is to be used where the student took the module through APEL, where the module can be undertaken through APEL or other means. Assessment could be via a portfolio of evidence, taking the assessment associated with the module, or completion of assignments designed to test the achievement of the required learning outcomes.</p> <p>Code 2 'APEL module' is to be used where the module that the student is studying is only available through APEL. Where any module has an associated StudentOnModule.APEL code of 2, all instances associated with that module should also be coded 2 in this field.</p> <p>Code 3 'Module not taken/available through APEL' is to be used where the student was not assessed through APEL or the module was not available through APEL.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error StudentOnModule.APEL must exist for institutions in Wales</p> <p>2 Error StudentOnModule.APEL must not exist for institutions in England, Northern Ireland or Scotland.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor the amount of provision taken through APEL
Part Of	Student on module
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0

Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: APEL Data type: APELCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.2
Date modified	2013-04-30
Change management notes	Business rules 1 and 2 added to enforce coverage for institutions in Wales only.

Module Countable

Type	field
Short Name	MODCOUNT
Description	This field records whether the module is countable in the academic year under HEFCW HESES/EYM rules.
Applicable to	Wales
Coverage	All StudentOnModule records at institutions in Wales that link to instances (and then to courses) at HE level
Valid Entries and Labels	1 Module not countable 2 Module is countable
Notes	<p>A module undertaken by a student should be coded as countable unless it fits the HESES/EYM rules not to be counted. This will be where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - modules are optional or elective - modules have been counted in the past. For example, where a student is repeating a module that was completed in a previous year and has progressed to a subsequent year of the course, the module would not be countable. <p>The purpose in collecting this information is to ensure that no more than the maximum number of credit values per student on a course, as set out in HESES/EYM, is counted in the determination of the number of credit values for funding purposes. Full guidance can be found in Annex H of HESES/EYM.</p> <p>If institutions have difficulty in identifying modules which should not be counted, then they should contact HEFCW. This is likely to be where it is not possible to determine if modules have already been counted, for example, due to module identifiers changing or modules being taken some time in the past. APEL modules (coded as StudentOnModule.APEL = 1, 2) should be considered countable unless they fit the criteria to not be counted above.</p> <p>A module should not be considered to be not countable simply because it is taken by an enrolment that is not fundable by HEFCW. Although credit value information for non-fundable students is not collected on HESES/EYM, the student enrolment is collected and so any associated modules should be considered countable, unless they fit the criteria above.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error StudentOnModule.MODCOUNT must exist for institutions in Wales unless Course.COURSEAIM begins with P, Q, R, S or X.</p> <p>2 Error StudentOnModule.MODCOUNT must not exist for institutions in England, Scotland and Northern Ireland.</p>
Reason Required	For funding allocation
Part Of	Student on module
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	0

Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MODCOUNT Data type: MODCOUNTCodeContentType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Addition of guidance to Notes clarifying whether APEL modules are counted in this field.

Module identifier

Type	field
Short Name	MODID
Description	This field is the primary key for the Module entity and exists as a foreign key on StudentOnModule.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All student on module records
Notes	<p>Any MODID returned on the StudentOnModule element must exist on the Module entity. Modules that have not been taken up in the reporting year can be included on the Module entity if this is easier.</p> <p>Valid characters</p> <p>The valid character set available for this field follows the Data Standards in the HESA student record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The general policy is to support all Latin-based characters for names, addresses and general text fields, but not non-Latin characters. • All Unicode code charts for Latin characters are supported. These are Basic Latin (excluding the C0 control characters), Latin-1 (excluding the C1 control characters), Latin Extended A, Latin Extended B and Latin Extended Additional. This set corresponds to Unicode code points U+0020 to U+007E, U+00A0 to U+024F and U+IE00 to U+IEFF. • Schemas are built in such a way that an individual project can further restrict the set if required. <p>The character set chosen will support Welsh and Gaelic languages as well as all European and most other languages using a Latin-based character set.</p> <p>The Unicode charts that list each of the characters in this range can be found on the Unicode web site. The specific sets that are defined here are shown in the following PDF documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Latin • Latin-1 • Latin Extended A • Latin Extended B • Latin Extended Additional <p>Files must be encoded with UTF-8 and schema validation will be in place to ensure this. Institutions must specify the encoding used in their XML files in the first line of the file (i.e. <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>) and to ensure that their files are actually saved with that encoding. If XML files are edited with some text editors and the encoding is not specified or does not match the actual file encoding, there may be problems when submitting these files for validation.</p>
Business rules	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Error StudentOnModule.MODID must exist on Module.MODID 2 Error No more than 2 occurrences of identical StudentOnModule.MODID must exist for a single instance. 3 Warning There are 2 occurrences of identical StudentOnModule.MODID for a single instance. An instance should not be linked to the same module more than once in cases where a student is simply re-sitting examinations or

	assessment.
Reason Required	To facilitate linkage with the Instance entity.
Part Of	Module Student on module
Field Length	30
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MODID Data type: MODIDType
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Module outcome

Type	field
Short Name	MODOUT
Description	This field records if the student completed the module and if so whether they gained credit or not. There should be a Module Outcome field for each module taken by the student.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All student on module records
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Completion - gained full credit</p> <p>2 Completion - did not gain credit</p> <p>3 Partial completion (HEFCW HESES Rules)</p> <p>4 Student did not complete module</p> <p>5 Module taken on a not-for-credit basis</p> <p>6 Module outcome not yet known</p> <p>7 Not coded</p> <p>9 Module previously returned in error</p> <p>A Student did not complete module - gained credit</p> <p>B Student did not complete module - deferral</p> <p>C Completion - award of credit not known</p>
Notes	<p>Code 3 'Partial completion' is as defined in HEFCW HESES, and should be used for modules associated with full-time taught courses only.</p> <p>Code 4 'Student did not complete module' includes cases where the student withdrew from the module or transferred from this module to another. Institutions are advised to use codes A and B in preference to code 4 where applicable. This data may inform the development of performance indicators.</p> <p>Code 5 'Module taken on a not-for-credit basis' should be used for a student who takes optional modules on a not for credit basis in addition to compulsory modules for their course, or for modules which do not have any form of assessment.</p> <p>Code 6 'Module Outcome not yet known' should be used for cases where, for example, a student was ill and has been allowed to defer.</p> <p>Code 6 'Module Outcome not yet known' should be used for modules continuing into the next reporting year. StudentOnModule.MODSTAT code 3 or 6 will show that the reason that these module outcomes is not yet known is because the module is continuing into the next reporting year.</p> <p>Code 7 'Not coded' is an acceptable default code for use in this field unless otherwise indicated by the institution's funding council. Institutions in Wales must not use code 7. Institutions in England are encouraged to complete module information on the Student Record, to enable HEFCE to take this information into account in the future distribution of funding. HEFCE plan to include in funding from 2009/10 onwards additional FTE for students who are non-completers in terms of their original study intentions but who nevertheless have completed individual modules. For students who complete according to the current HESES rules there should be no funding implications in using code 7 in this field. However for students who do not complete HEFCE expect to count only modules with outcomes coded 1 or 2 in this field in funding additional FTE for partial completion.</p>

	<p>Code 9 'Module previously returned in error' should be used to close off a module previously attached to a student but which the student never actually started. This code should be used in cases where a student changed/drops a module before it starts, possibly due to a change of course or course requirements.</p> <p>Completion should be as defined by the relevant funding council. For institutions in England this includes the requirement that the student either took the final module assessment or passed it.</p> <p>English and NI HEIs:</p> <p>Additional guidance for: resit exams; late submission of assessments and/or results from late exam boards; students who conclude their module studies by 31 July but who have resit/first sit examinations to take, assessments to submit and/or whose final confirmation of award by exam boards may be after 31 July:</p> <p>If the Module Outcome is known before the Student Record data collection closes, these outcomes should where possible be included in the return reflecting both whether the student was a completion in funding terms and whether credit was awarded.</p> <p>In cases where the academic outcomes are not known one of the following codes should be used:</p> <p>Code B 'Student did not complete module – deferral'. This code should be used where the student did not complete the module according to HEFCE funding rules but may subsequently be awarded credit for it in a later year</p> <p>Code C 'Completion - award of credit not known' should be used where the module has been assessed (and completed in HEFCE funding terms) but the result of the academic assessment is not yet known.</p> <p>Code 6 'Module outcome not yet known'. This code should be used where neither the completion in HEFCE funding terms nor the academic outcome are known.</p> <p>Where the award of credit is known in the next year it should be returned by submitting a record with code 4 'Taken in a previous reporting year (outcome only)' in StudentOnModule.MODSTAT.</p> <p>Welsh HEIs:</p> <p>The requirement to return late module outcomes is compulsory for institutions in Wales. Completion of late module outcomes is optional for other institutions.</p> <p>The outcomes for APEL modules (coded as StudentOnModule.APEL = 1, 2) should be based on the same criteria as for other modules, i.e. if all required assessment for the module is taken, the module will be a completion, otherwise the module will be a non-completion, or, in some circumstances, a partial completion.</p>												
Business rules	<table border="0"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 10px;">1</td> <td style="padding-right: 10px;">Error</td> <td>Institution in Wales cannot use StudentOnModule.MODOUT code 7.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Error</td> <td>StudentOnModule.MODOUT must be coded 6 where Welsh institution and StudentOnModule.MODSTAT = 3.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Institution not in Wales cannot use StudentOnModule.MODOUT code 3.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Error</td> <td>Institutions in Scotland or Wales cannot use StudentOnModule.MODOUT</td> </tr> </table>	1	Error	Institution in Wales cannot use StudentOnModule.MODOUT code 7.	2	Error	StudentOnModule.MODOUT must be coded 6 where Welsh institution and StudentOnModule.MODSTAT = 3.	3	Error	Institution not in Wales cannot use StudentOnModule.MODOUT code 3.	4	Error	Institutions in Scotland or Wales cannot use StudentOnModule.MODOUT
1	Error	Institution in Wales cannot use StudentOnModule.MODOUT code 7.											
2	Error	StudentOnModule.MODOUT must be coded 6 where Welsh institution and StudentOnModule.MODSTAT = 3.											
3	Error	Institution not in Wales cannot use StudentOnModule.MODOUT code 3.											
4	Error	Institutions in Scotland or Wales cannot use StudentOnModule.MODOUT											

	5 Error code C. Where StudentOnModule.MODOUT = 3 and Course.COURSEAIM begins D, L, M, H, I, J or C, Instance.MODE must be coded 01, 23, 24, 52 or 53.
Reason Required	To allow monitoring of completion and achievement.
Part Of	Student on module
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MODOUT Data type: MODOUTCodeContentType
Related Fields	MODSTAT
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Addition of guidance to Notes clarifying how APEL modules are treated in this field.

Module status

Type	field
Short Name	MODSTAT
Description	This field records detail of whether modules span HESA reporting years.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All student on module records
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>1 Continuing from previous reporting year</p> <p>2 Contained within reporting year</p> <p>3 Continuing into next reporting year</p> <p>4 Taken in a previous reporting year (outcome only)</p> <p>5 Not coded</p> <p>6 Continuing from previous reporting year and into next reporting year</p>
Notes	<p>Code 5 'Not coded' is an acceptable default code for use in this field unless otherwise indicated by the institution's funding council. Institutions in Wales must not use code 5. Institutions in England are encouraged to complete module information on the Student Record, to enable HEFCE to take this information into account in the future distribution of funding.</p> <p>Code 6 should normally only be used where students have modules which genuinely span 3 reporting years. This is likely to be relatively rare, and will most likely be relevant to Postgraduate research students where a single module is being used to represent a programme of study.</p> <p>For Welsh HEIs, the status of an APEL module (coded as StudentOnModule.APEL = 1, 2) can either be as for the same module not taken through APEL if the assessment is taken at the same time as other enrolments on that module, or, if the assessment takes place in a particular period it can reflect whether that period of time is contained within a reporting year or spans reporting years, as appropriate.</p>
Business rules	1 Error StudentOnModule.MODSTAT cannot be coded 5 where institution is in Wales.
Reason Required	Collection of this data will allow more accurate allocation of modules to reporting years for monitoring of completion and achievement, and of funding.
Part Of	Student on module
Field Length	1
Minimum Occurrences	1
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MODSTAT Data type: MODSTATCodeContentType
Related Fields	MODOUT
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0
Date modified	2012-09-27
Change management notes	Addition of guidance to Notes clarifying how APEL modules are treated in this field.

Module year

Type	field
Short Name	MODYR
Description	This field indicates the year of instance that a module is associated with.
Applicable to	England Northern Ireland
Coverage	Compulsory where Institution.INSTAPP = 1 and Instance.TYPEYR = 2, 3, 4 or 5
Valid Entries and Labels	<p>10 Year of instance A & wholly contained in this reporting period</p> <p>13 Year of instance A & continuing from previous reporting period</p> <p>20 Year of instance B & wholly contained in this reporting period</p> <p>23 Year of instance B continuing into next reporting period</p> <p>30 Spans both years of instance & contained within this reporting period</p> <p>31 Spans both years of instance continuing from previous reporting period but not continuing into next</p> <p>32 Spans both years of instance continuing into next reporting period but not continuing from previous</p> <p>33 Spans both years of instance continuing from previous reporting period and into next</p>
Notes	<p>This field allows allocation of modules to year of instance. Completion of this field will minimise the impact of HEFCE's approximations that are currently included in the re-creation of the HESSES returns which counts activity against years of instance rather than HESA reporting years. The following diagram illustrates how modules starting and ending at different points before, during and after the reporting year should be coded.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>The diagram shows the alignment between the HESA reporting year (1 Aug to 31 July) and two student years (Student year A: 1 Jan to 1 Jan; Student year B: 1 Jan to 1 Jan). Below this, horizontal arrows represent the duration of various module codes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CODE 10: A small double-headed arrow centered within the HESA reporting year. CODE 20: A double-headed arrow covering the entire HESA reporting year. CODE 13: A double-headed arrow starting at 1 Aug and ending at 1 Jan of the following year. CODE 23: A double-headed arrow starting at 1 Jan and ending at 31 July of the following year. CODE 30: A double-headed arrow starting at 1 Aug and ending at 31 July of the following year. CODE 31: A double-headed arrow starting at 1 Jan and ending at 1 Jan of the following year. CODE 32: A double-headed arrow starting at 1 Aug and ending at 1 Jan of the following year. CODE 33: A double-headed arrow starting at 1 Jan and ending at 1 Jan of the following year. </div>
Business rules	<p>1 Error StudentOnModule.MODYR must exist where Institution.INSTAPP =1 and Instance.TYPEYR = 2, 3, 4 or 5 and StudentOnModule.MODSTAT not coded 4</p> <p>2 Error StudentOnModule.MODYR must not exist where Institution.INSTAPP =0.</p> <p>3 Error StudentOnModule.MODYR must not exist for institutions in Scotland and Wales.</p>
Reason Required	To allow detailed allocation of FTE to years of instance where an institution has opted to provide this information.
Part Of	Student on module

Field Length	2
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: MODYR Data type: MODYRCodeContentType
Related Fields	LOADYRA LOADYRB STULOAD
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

Percentage of module taught in Celtic language

Type	field
Short Name	LANGPCNT
Description	This field is used to indicate the percentage of the module that is taught through the medium of a Celtic language. It can contain a value between 0 and 100 and can be recorded to one decimal place.
Applicable to	Northern Ireland Scotland Wales
Coverage	All student on module records at institutions in Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland
Notes	<p>Celtic languages are Welsh, Gaidhlig and Irish.</p> <p>A 0 entry in this field indicates that the module is taught entirely in English (or another non-Celtic language).</p> <p>For institutions in Wales, the percentage should be based on all delivery that is through the medium of Welsh. If institutions are not able to calculate percentages for individual students on a module, it is acceptable to use an average percentage for the module as a whole for those students who have at least some of their module through the medium of Welsh, though institutions should not use this as the default position.</p> <p>For further guidance on the completion of this field, and in particular with reference to activities which constitute learning through the medium of a Celtic language, please refer to the institution's funding council.</p>
Business rules	<p>1 Error StudentOnModule.LANGPCNT must exist for institutions in Scotland, Wales or Northern Ireland.</p> <p>2 Error StudentOnModule.LANGPCNT must not exist for institutions in England.</p>
Reason Required	To monitor pattern of provision in a Celtic language.
Part Of	Student on module
Field Length	5
Minimum Occurrences	0
Maximum Occurrences	1
Schema Components	Element: LANGPCNT Data type: PercentType
Related Fields	MODLANG
Owner	HESA
Version	1.0

